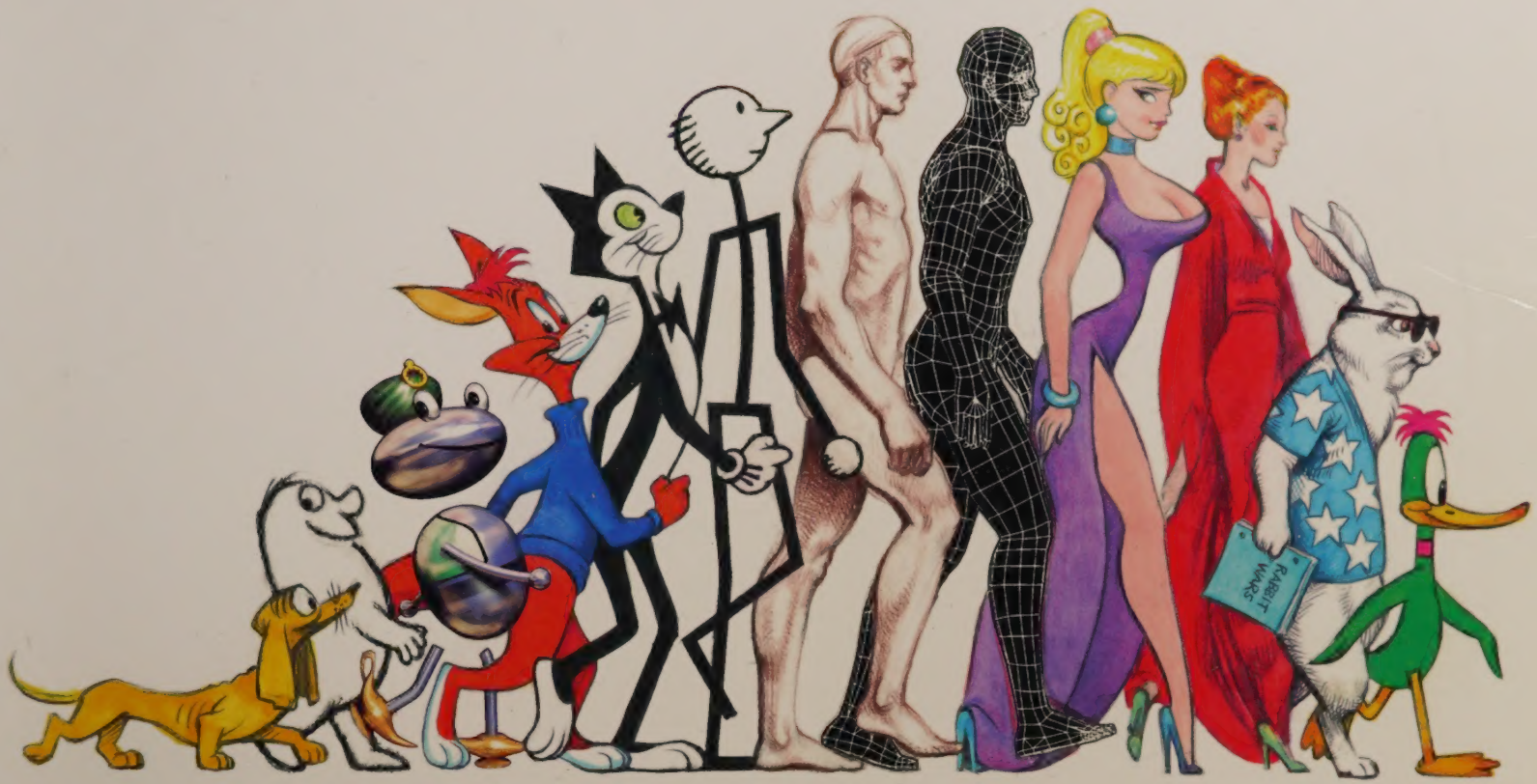
RICHARD WILLIAMS

DIRECTOR OF ANIMATION 'WHO FRAMED ROGER RABBIT'

EXPANDED EDITION



THE ANIMATOR'S SURVIVAL KIT™

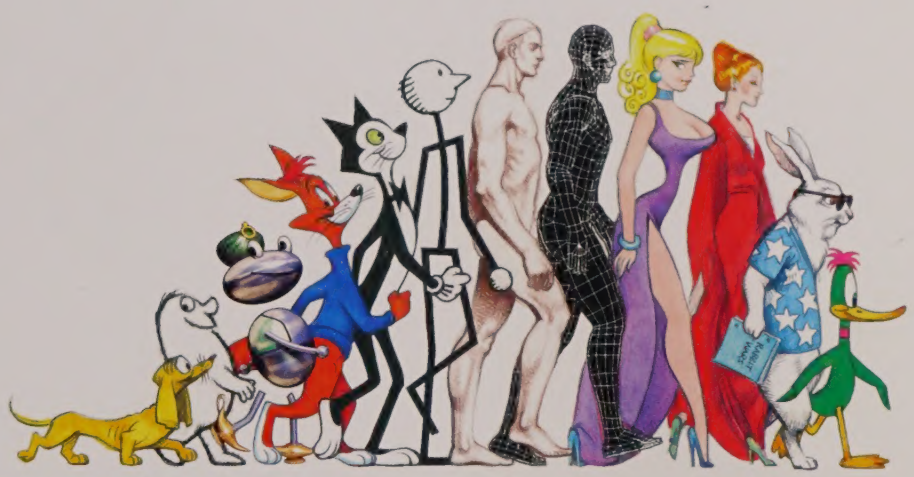
A MANUAL OF METHODS, PRINCIPLES AND FORMULAS

FOR CLASSICAL, COMPUTER, GAMES, STOP MOTION AND INTERNET ANIMATORS

The Animator's Survival Kit

EXPANDED EDITION

RICHARD WILLIAMS



THE ANIMATOR'S SURVIVAL KIT™

EXPANDED EDITION

ff
faber and faber

This Expanded Edition first published in 2009
by Faber and Faber Limited
Bloomsbury House, 74–77 Great Russell Street, London WC1B 3DA

Typeset by Faber and Faber Limited
Printed in China by C&C Offset Printing Co.Ltd., Shenzhen, Guangdong

All rights reserved

© Richard Williams and Imogen Sutton, 2001, 2009

The right of Richard Williams to be identified as author of this work has been asserted in accordance with Section 77 of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988

This book is sold subject to the condition that it shall not, by way of trade or otherwise, be lent, resold, hired out or otherwise circulated without the publisher's prior consent in any form of binding or cover other than that in which it is published and without a similar condition including this condition being imposed on the subsequent purchaser

A CIP record for this book is available from the British Library

ISBN 0–571–23834–7 (pbk)
ISBN 0–571–23833–0 (cased)

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

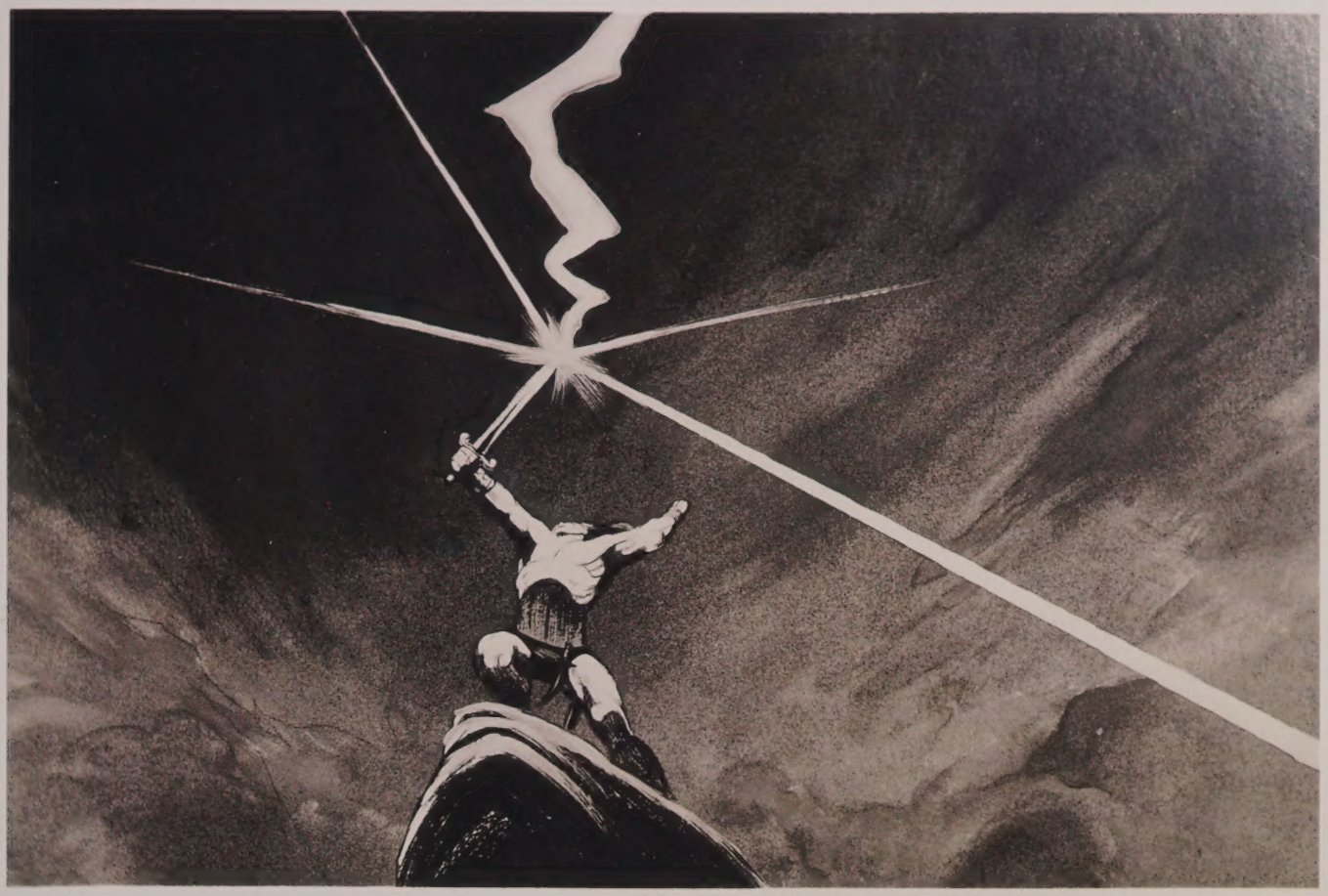
To Imogen,

my co-conspirator and wife, without whom this book would certainly not exist – and the author might not be around to write it.

I want this book to put over what I have found to be the best working methods, so that animating becomes better and easier to do.

There are lots of formulas, principles, clichés and devices here to help, but the main thing I want to pass on is a way of thinking about animation in order to free the mind to do the best work possible.

I learned it from the best in the business and I've boiled it all down into a systematic working order. It transformed my work – I hope it will be useful to you.



A commercial I did based on a Frank Frazetta poster.

CONTENTS

1 WHY THIS BOOK?

11 DRAWING IN TIME

23 TIME TO DRAW

35 IT'S ALL IN THE TIMING AND THE SPACING

41 LESSON 1

46 ADVANCING BACKWARDS TO 1940

47 History of the Chart and Inbetween

48 Extremes and Breakdowns

57 Keys

61 Three Ways to Animate

68 Testing, Testing, Testing

70 The X-Sheet

75 Came the Dawn . . .

76 The Best Numbering System

78 The Great Ones and Twos Battle

80 The Top and Bottom Pegs Battle

84 MORE ON SPACING
88 Classic Inbetween Mistakes
90 Watch Your Arcs
92 Getting More Movement Within the Mass
96 The Elongated Inbetween
99 The Major Beginner's Mistake
99 The 'Ruff' Approach
101 How Much Do We Leave To The Assistant?
101 Take The Long Short Cut

102 WALKS
106 Getting the Weight
109 Set the Tempo
111 The Passing Position or Breakdown
115 Two Ways to Plan a Walk
118 The Double Bounce
120 Loosening it Up
128 Digging Deeper into Walks
135 There's Nothing Like Trying It
136 The Heel
136 Foot Action
142 Normal Walk Spacing
146 Weight Shift
147 The Belt Line
148 Arm Movements
156 Counteraction
163 The Recipe
167 Sneaks
173 The Tip Toe Sneak

176 RUNS, JUMPS AND SKIPS
189 The 4 Drawing Formula Run
192 The 3 Drawing Run
195 The 2 Drawing Run
200 The Recipe
201 Run, Jump, Skip and Leap
209 Skips
212 Jumps
213 Weight on a Jump

217 FLEXIBILITY
218 The Breakdown
223 Simple Overlap
226 Overlapping Action
230 Simple Counteraction
231 Breaking Joints to Give Flexibility
246 Flexibility in the Face
249 Overlapping Action in the Face
251 Instant Read – Profiles for Readability

256 WEIGHT
262 Pressure and Weight
264 How Much Effort Do We Have To Expend?
269 Dancing
272 Rules of Thumb On Synchronising Action

273 ANTICIPATION
282 Surprise Anticipations
283 Invisible Anticipations

285 TAKES AND ACCENTS
295 A Hard Accent Bounces Back
295 A Soft Accent continues

297 TIMING, STAGGERS, WAVE AND WHIP
297 Stagger Timings
299 The Side to Side Vibration Formula
301 Whip Action
301 Wave Action

304 DIALOGUE
305 Phrasing
310 Picture and Sound Sync
311 Accents
314 Attitude
314 The Secret

315 ACTING
320 Change of Expression
321 Look for the Contrast
323 An Acting Point

324 Body Language
324 Symmetry or 'Twinning'
325 Steal It!
325 Eyes

327 ANIMAL ACTION
328 Live Action Reference
330 Basic Animal Walk Pattern

333 DIRECTING
334 The Brief
334 The Leica Reel
334 Separate the Characters
335 Best Foot Forward
335 Casting Animators
335 Making Changes
335 'Say! Say!'
335 Voice Recording
335 Hook Ups
335 Research
335 Editing
335 Believe in Your Material

338 REVIEW
338 The Procedure
339 The Ingredients

340 THE ENLARGED EDITION

342 'Lesson One' on Flexibility
343 Delaying Parts and Progressing the Action
344 Put It Where You Can See It
346 A Hollywood Hop
348 Contrast and Change
348 Phrasing Dialogue
349 Using Live Action for Reference
352 Animal Flexibility
353 Action on a Running Dog
356 How Does a Horse Really Walk?
358 Horse Trotting
359 Horse Galloping
360 Birds
361 A Challenging Assignment in 'Realism' and Weight
368 The Moving Hold
369 The Great 'Realism' Debate
371 The Solution
373 Yes, But . . .
374 Conclusion So Far
376 My Conclusion
377 Life Drawing for Animation
382 Acknowledgements

Roger Rabbit © Touchstone Pictures and Amblin Entertainment, Inc.
Used by permission from Touchstone Pictures and Amblin Entertainment.

WHY THIS BOOK?

When I was ten years old I bought a paperback book, *How to Make Animated Cartoons*, by Nat Falk, published in 1940. It's now long out of print, but I used it as a handy reference guide for 1940s Hollywood cartoon styles when I designed the characters and directed the animation for *Who Framed Roger Rabbit*.

More importantly for me, however, the book was clear and straightforward; the basic information of how animated films are made registered on my tiny ten-year-old brain and, when I took the medium up seriously at twenty-two, the basic information was still lurking there.

I was living and painting in Spain when the incredible possibilities of what animation could do engulfed my mind. I planned my first film and took the money I had left from portrait painting to London. I starved for a bit, finally found work animating television commercials and managed to self-finance *The Little Island* – a half-hour philosophical argument without words which won several international awards.

The Little Island, 1958

Three years later, when I'd finished the film, the unpleasant realisation slowly crept up on me that I really didn't know very much about animation articulation, that is, how to move the stuff. To train myself I traced off the animation that Ken Harris had done of a witch in a Bugs Bunny cartoon (*Broomstick Bunny* – 1955, directed by Chuck Jones). Doing this only confirmed how little I understood about movement.

While I was making *The Little Island* I had seen a re-release of *Bambi*, but since I'd considered myself a revolutionary in the field of animation, I'd rejected the film as conventional. But when I finished my film, I saw *Bambi* again, and almost crawled out of the theatre on my hands and knees. 'How did they ever *do* that?' I'd learned just enough to realise that I really didn't know anything!

Photo Frank Herrmann

Animation master Ken Harris and wannabe, 1969

So, how and where to get the expert knowledge? I was working in England as an independent and didn't want to go into the Hollywood cartoon mill. I wanted it both ways. I wanted my artistic freedom but I also wanted the knowledge.

Preston Blair's *How to Animate Film Cartoons* was available, but because I was put off by the squashy-stretchy 1940s cartoon style, it was harder for me to grasp the underlying principles I was after – although it's a solid book and Preston was a very good animator from the Golden Age. It's ironic that forty years later I would become best known for my work on *Who Framed Roger Rabbit* – drawing in precisely the same style that had put me off learning from Preston.

Much later, I was able to work with Ken Harris, the first 'real' master animator I met, and whose witch in *Broomstick Bunny* I had traced off. It's generally agreed that Ken Harris was *the* master animator at Warner Bros. Certainly he was director Chuck Jones's lead man.

In 1967, I was able to bring Ken to England and my real education in animation articulation and performance started by working with him. I was pushing forty at the time and, with a large successful studio in London, I had been animating for eighteen years, winning over one hundred international awards.

After seven or eight years of working closely with Ken, he said to me, 'Hey Dick, you're starting to draw those things in the right *place.*'

'Yeah, I'm really learning it from you now, aren't I?' I said.

'Yes,' he said thoughtfully, 'you know . . . you could be an *animator*.'

After the initial shock I realised he was right. Ken was the real McCoy whereas I was just doing a lot of fancy drawings in various styles which were functional but didn't have the invisible 'magic' ingredients to make them really live and perform convincingly.

So I redoubled my efforts (mostly in mastering head and hand 'accents') and the next year Ken pronounced, 'OK, you're an animator.'

A couple of years after that, one day he said, 'Hey, Dick, you could be a *good* animator.'

When he was eighty-two, I would go out to Ken's trailer home in Ohai, California and lay out scenes with him that he would later animate. He'd often take a half-hour nap and I'd keep working.

One day he conked out for three hours and by the time he woke up, I had pretty much animated the scene. 'Sorry, Dick,' he said, 'you know . . . I'm just so god-damned *old*.' (long pause) 'Oh . . . I see you've animated the scene . . .'

'Yeah,' I said, 'I didn't know what else to do'.

'Nice drawings . . .' he said, then pointed. 'Hey, that's wrong! You've made a mistake.' And of course he was right.

'Dammit Ken,' I said. 'I've worked with you for thirteen years and I *still* can't get your "thing". I'm afraid it's going to die with you.'

'Ye-e-aaahhhhh . . .' he snickered, then said, 'Well, don't worry, you've your own pretty good thing going.' Then he snickered again.

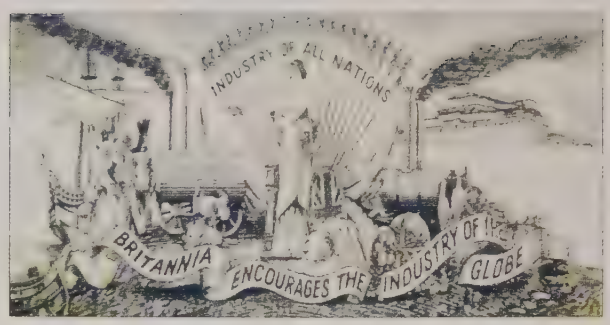
Ken was a very fast worker and I was always squeezing him for more and more footage and getting him to animate even when the taxi was ticking outside waiting for him to catch a plane home to the States.

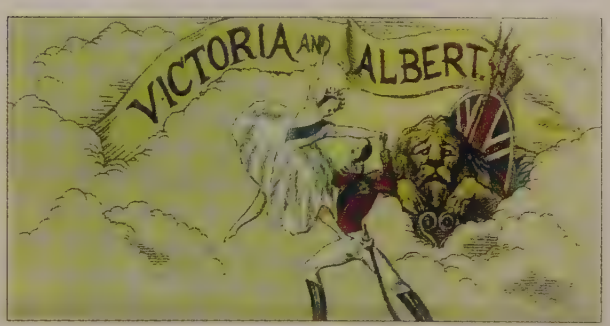
When he died in 1982 at eighty-three, my real regret was that when I was a pallbearer I didn't have the guts to tuck a blackwing pencil into his hand in his open coffin. He would have loved that.

When I first started working with Ken, we had just completed the animation sequences which occur throughout Tony Richardson's epic film *The Charge of the Light Brigade* and I thought I was getting pretty proficient. When Ken saw it in the theatre he said, 'God, Dick, how did you guys ever do all that work?' (pause) "Course it doesn't *move* too good . . .'

But I'm still not ashamed of our work on that film.

After that we went to see The Beatles' feature cartoon *The Yellow Submarine*. Though I liked the designer Heinz Edelman's styling, the 'start-stop, stop-start' jerky quality of most of the animation meant that after a half hour much of the audience went to the lobby. No matter how stylish or inventive – jerky or bumpy animation seems only to be able to hold the audience for about twenty-five minutes. While *The Yellow Submarine* had an enthusiastic cult following from the advertising agencies and university crowd, the general public avoided the film. It killed the non-Disney feature market for years.





My animated sequences from Tony Richardson's epic film, *The Charge of the Light Brigade*, 1968.

A top United Artists executive who distributed *The Yellow Submarine* told me, 'This is the Beatles at the height of their popularity and *still* people stay away from non-Disney animation.' Film executives at that time always said of animation, 'If it doesn't have the Disney name on it, no one will go see it.' But the real point is, it wasn't just the Disney name – it was the Disney *expertise* that captivated the audience and held them for eighty minutes.

Almost the same week Disney's *The Jungle Book* came out and was an instant hit. I went along to see it reluctantly, thinking (as I still considered myself an innovator) that though there might be something interesting, it was probably predictable stuff.

That's how it started – with standard-issue wolves adopting the 'good housekeeping seal of approval' cutesy baby. I remember the boy Mowgli riding a black panther moving and acting in a clichéd way – until he got off. And suddenly everything changed. The drawing changed. The proportions changed. The actions and acting changed. The panther helped the boy up a tree and everything moved to a superb level of entertainment. The action, the drawing, the performance, even the colours were exquisite. Then the snake appeared and tried to hypnotise the boy and the audience was entranced. I was astonished.

The film continued at this high level, and when the tiger entered weighing eight hundred pounds and was both a tiger *and* the actor who did the voice (George Sanders), I realised I didn't even know *how* it was done – let alone ever be able to do it myself. I went back to my studio in shock and, through the night, I wrote a long fan letter.

In those scenes I thought I had recognised the hand of the great Disney genius Milt Kahl, who Ken Harris had raved about. The first name on the directing animator's credits *was* Milt Kahl, so I assumed the work that stunned me had been Milt's. And it turned out that it was – except for one shot that was by Ollie Johnston. Johnston and Frank Thomas had done lots of other marvellous work in the picture.

So I wrote to Milt saying that I thought *The Jungle Book* was the absolute high point of pure animation performance and that I didn't think it would ever be possible for anyone outside the Disney experience to reach that pinnacle.

It turned out Milt said it was the best letter they ever had – and even better, that he knew my work a bit and wanted to meet me.

Irrepressible ambition made me change my opinion that they *alone* could attain such heights; I figured, I think correctly, that given talent, experience, persistence – plus the knowledge of the experts – why should everything not be possible?

I couldn't stand it any more. I had to know *everything* about the medium and master all aspects of it. Cap in hand, I made yearly visits to Milt and Frank Thomas, Ollie Johnston and Ken Anderson at Disney.

One of the most important things Milt said was: 'Our animation differs from anyone else's because it is believable. Things have weight and the characters have muscles and we're giving the illusion of reality.'

Photo Frank Herrmann

A powerhouse of animation knowledge. From the left – Ken Harris, Grim Natwick and Art Babbitt, with students Richard Purdum and me outside my Soho Square studio in London, 1973.

But how to make it believable? I didn't go there to drink Milt's bathwater or to find out what Frank Thomas had for breakfast. I would fire my carefully prepared list of questions at them and later write down everything they said. These wonderful virtuosos became my friends and were incredibly generous with their help. As Milt said, 'If you ask questions you find out what you want to know. *If* you're lucky enough to ask someone who knows.'

I was also fortunate enough to enlist the marvellous legendary animator Art Babbitt as a collaborator and teacher. Babbitt had developed Goofy and animated the Mushroom Dance in *Fantasia*. He 'dumped his kit' of knowledge by giving several month-long in-house seminars as well as working with me in my London and Hollywood studios for several years.

In 1973, I hired the eighty-three-year-old – but still brilliant – Grim Natwick as a 'live-in' tutor in my London studio. Grim had made his name designing Betty Boop and animating most of Snow White herself in *Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs*. I also worked closely with Emery Hawkins who Ken Harris regarded as the most imaginative animator. Emery was wildly creative and rotated in and out of every studio. I was also able to work for a short time with Abe Levitow, Gerry Chiniquy and Cliff Nordberg. Dick Huemer, one of the first New York pioneer animators, and later a key Disney story director (*Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs*, *Dumbo*, *Fantasia* and all the early Disney features) also gave me a very clear picture of the early days of animation.

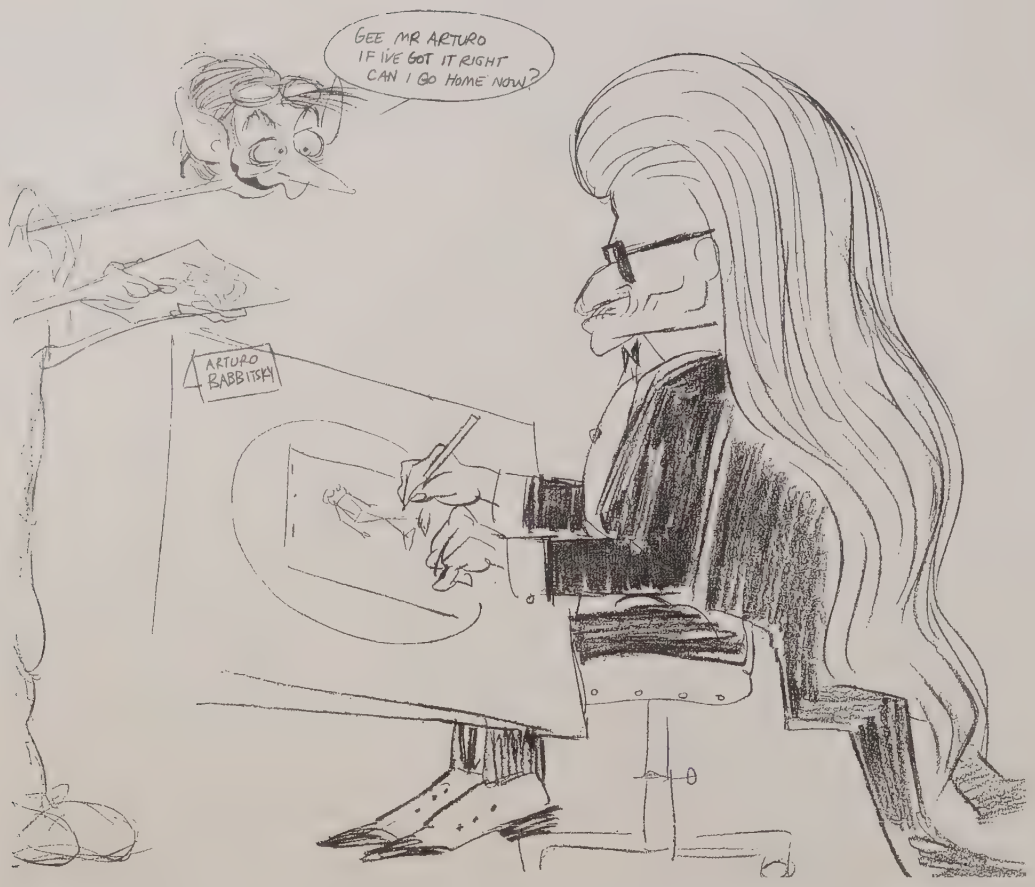
Most of them are gone now but this book is full of their accumulated knowledge and craft.

I scribbled this of Milt when he was lecturing us at my studio. Milt is saying, 'Don't listen to Dick, he's too technical.'

Milt was always encouraging me to do my own personal, more unconventional work, which he liked – but I wanted the knowledge first.

Two geniuses at once tutor the author – Frank Thomas standing and Milt Kahl at the desk, early 1970s.

Used by permission from Disney Enterprises, Inc



'The Arthurian Legend' was a formidable professor who regarded the professional skills of the animator as being equivalent to those of a concert pianist.

Photo Frank Herrmann

Art in action: his first month long seminar at my London studio was like water in the desert for us.

In the three-day masterclasses I've been giving lately, some experienced professionals initially feel that we're running over material that they're quite familiar with. Then about half way through the seminar things deepen and on the last day it all suddenly knits together. Some even describe it as an epiphany. Well, it sure was for me when I finally 'got it'.

So please read the whole thing.

Animation is just doing a lot of simple things – *one at a time!* A lot of really simple things strung together doing one part at a time in a sensible order.

The movie actor, Scott Wilson sat through my three-day San Francisco masterclass. To my surprise he came up at the end and said, 'Of course you realise, Dick, that *this whole thing* has been about acting.'

I said, 'What?' and Scott said, 'These are the *exact* equivalent methods, exercises and analyses we actors do in our acting workshops.'

So acting is intrinsically part of the whole. And if you can't draw or articulate movement how are you ever going to do the acting?

Someone once asked Milt Kahl: 'How did you plan out the counteraction you used on that character?'

Milt blew up: 'That's the wrong way to look at it! Don't think of it like that! I just concentrate on giving the performance – *that's* what's important! The play's the thing. You'll get all tangled up if you think of it in a technical way!'

Of course he's right. If a musician knows his scales, he can concentrate on giving the performance and bringing out the ideas inherent in the music. But if he constantly has to think of the mechanics of what he's doing – then he can hardly play.

Therefore, if we know and understand all the basics – then we've got the tools to create. Only *then* we can give the performance!

This book is an anatomy course in animation. Just like an anatomy course in life drawing, it shows you how things are put together and how they work. This knowledge frees you to do your own expression.

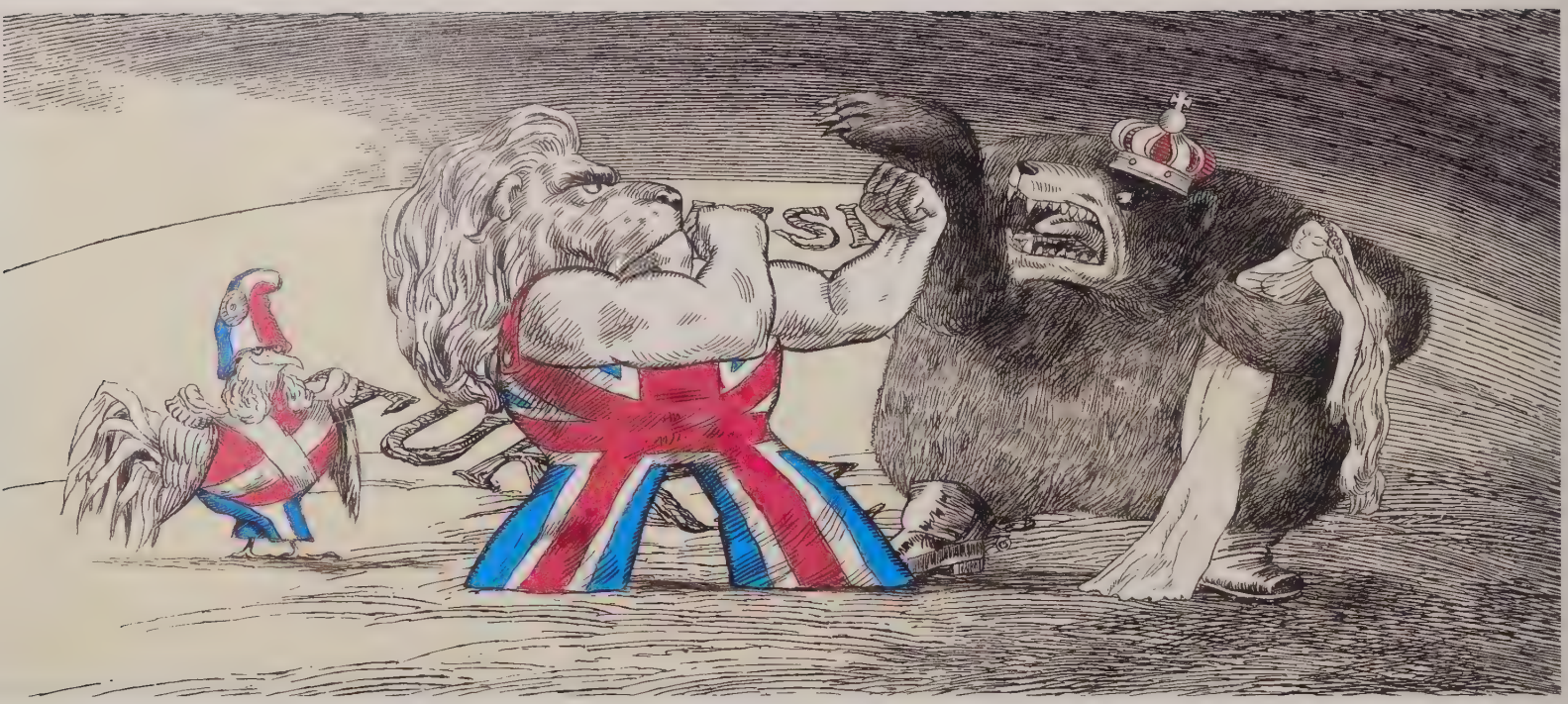
It takes time. I didn't encounter Ken Harris until I was nearly forty and he was sixty-nine. I had to *hire* most of my teachers in order to learn from them.

I hired Ken in order to get below him and be his assistant, so I was both his director and his assistant. I don't know if this is original, but I finally figured out that to learn or to 'understand' I had to 'stand under' the one who knows in order to catch the drippings of his experience.

There's a tale about a decrepit old Zen master wrestler. A very fit and brilliant young wrestler begs the old master to take him on and show him the master's ninety-nine tricks.

The old man says, 'Look at me, I'm old and decrepit and I'm not interested.'

The young man keeps pestering the old man who says, 'Look, son, I'm fragile now and when I show you the ninety-nine tricks, you'll challenge me, they always do – and look at me, you'll make mincemeat of me.'



The Charge of the Light Brigade, 1968

'Please, oh please, master,' pleads the powerful young man. 'I promise I will never challenge you! Oh please teach me the ninety-nine tricks.'

So reluctantly the old man teaches him until the young man has mastered the ninety-nine tricks. The young man becomes a famous wrestler and one day takes his master into a room, locks the door and challenges him.

The old man says, 'I knew you'd do this – that's why I didn't want to teach you in the first place.'

'Come on, old man, there's just me and you in here,' says the young one, 'Let's see what you're made of.'

They start and right away the old man throws the young fellow out of the window. The crumpled-up young man moans up from the street below, 'You didn't show me that one!'

'That was number one hundred,' says the old man.

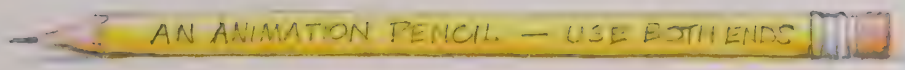
This book is the ninety-nine tricks. The hundredth trick is called talent.

I became a repository for various strands of animation lore and I've taken all this stuff and given it my own twist. The goal here is to master the mechanics in order to do new things. Get the mechanics into your bloodstream so they just become second nature and you don't have to think about them and can concentrate on giving the performance.

I remember once saying to Emery Hawkins (a wonderful, unsung animator), 'I'm afraid my brains are in my hand.'

Emery said, 'Where else would they be? It's a language of drawing. It's not a language of tongue.'

So everything I know about animation that I can put into words, scribbles and drawings is here in this book.



DRAWING IN TIME

Why animate? Everyone knows it's a lot of hard work doing all those drawings and positions. So what's the hook? Why do it?

Answer: Our work is taking place in *time*. We've taken our 'stills' and leapt into another dimension.

Drawings that *walk*: seeing a series of images we've made spring to life and start walking around is already fascinating.

Drawings that walk and *talk*: seeing a series of our drawings talking is a very startling experience.

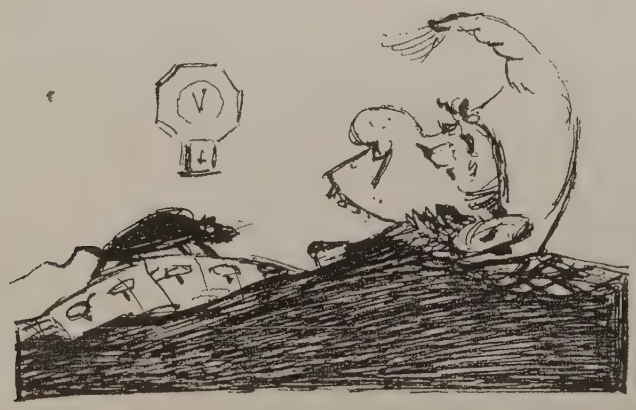
Drawings that walk and talk and *think*: seeing a series of images we've done actually go through a thinking process – and appear to be thinking – is the real aphrodisiac. Plus creating something that is unique, which has never been done before is endlessly fascinating.

We've always been trying to make the pictures move, the idea of animation is aeons older than the movies or television. Here's a quick history:

Over 35,000 years ago, we were painting animals on cave walls, sometimes drawing four pairs of legs to show motion.

In 1600 BC the Egyptian Pharaoh Rameses II built a temple to the goddess Isis which had 110 columns. Ingeniously, each column had a painted figure of the goddess in a progressively changed position. To horsemen or charioteers riding past – Isis appeared to move!

The Ancient Greeks sometimes decorated pots with figures in successive stages of action. Spinning the pot would create a sense of motion.



As far as we know, the first attempt to project drawings onto a wall was made in 1640 by Athonasius Kircher with his 'Magic Lantern'.

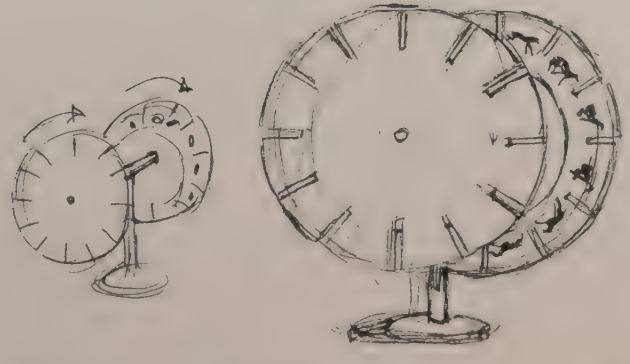
Kircher drew each figure on separate pieces of glass which he placed in his apparatus and projected on a wall. Then he moved the glass with strings, from above. One of these showed a sleeping man's head and a mouse. The man opened and closed his mouth and when his mouth was open the mouse ran in.

Although photography was discovered as early as the 1830s, most new devices for creating an illusion of movement were made using drawings, not photos.

In 1824 Peter Mark Roget discovered (or rediscovered, since it was known in classical times) the vital principle, 'the persistence of vision'. This principle rests on the fact that our eyes temporarily retain the image of anything they've just seen. If this wasn't so, we would never get the illusion of an unbroken connection in a series of images, and neither movies nor animation would be possible. Many people don't realise that movies don't actually move, and that they are still images that appear to move when they are projected in a series.

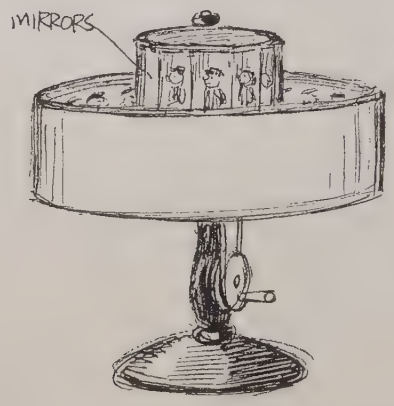
Roget's principle quickly gave birth to various optical contraptions:

The Thaumatrope: A cardboard disc mounted on a top – or held between two pieces of string. A birdcage drawing is on one side and a bird on the other. When the top is spun or the strings are pulled the disc twirls, the images merge and the bird seems to be in the cage.

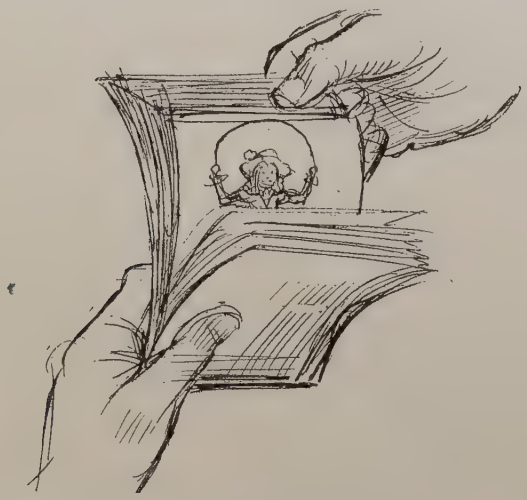


The Phenakistoscope: Two discs mounted on a shaft – the front disc has slits around the edge and the rear disc has a sequence of drawings. Align the drawings with the slits, look through the openings and as the discs revolve we have the illusion of motion.

The 'Wheel of Life' (or the Zoetrope): Appeared in the USA in 1867 and was sold as a toy. Long strips of paper with a sequence of drawings on them were inserted into a cylinder with slits in it. Spin the cylinder, look through the slits and the creature appears to move.

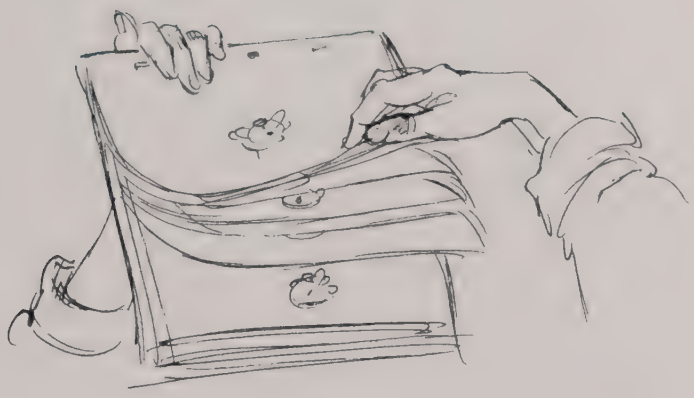


The Praxinoscope: Devised by the Frenchman Emile Reynaud in 1877. He was the first to create short sequences of dramatic action by drawing on a 30 foot strip of transparent substance called 'Crystaloid'. This opened the way for the tremendous advances to come.



The Flipper book: In 1868 a novelty called 'the flipper book' appeared worldwide and it remained the simplest and most popular device. It's just a pad of drawings bound like a book along one edge. Hold the book in one hand along the bound edge and with the other hand flip the pages and 'see 'em move'. The result is animation – the illusion of continuous action. Drawings in time.

This is the same as school kids making drawings in the corners of their math books and flipping the pages.



Today the 'classical' animator still flips his drawings the same way as a flipper book before testing it on the video or film camera. He places the drawings in sequence, with the low numbers on the bottom, then flips through the action from the bottom up. Eventually he should get good enough at it to approximate actual screen time and spot any errors or drawings that need altering. Now that we have the video camera with its instant playback of the drawings at film speed, not everyone learns to flip.

In 1896 a New York newspaper cartoonist James Stuart Blackton interviewed the inventor Thomas Edison who was experimenting with moving pictures. Blackton did some sketches of Edison, who was impressed by Blackton's speed and drawing facility and asked him to do some drawings in a series. Later, Edison photographed these – the first combination of drawings and photography. In 1906 they publicly released *Humorous Phases of Funny Faces*. A man puffed a cigar and blew smoke rings at his girl friend, she rolled her eyes, a dog jumped through a hoop and a juggler performed. Blackton used about 3000 'flickering drawings' to make this first animated picture – the forefather of the animated cartoon. The novelty brought explosions of laughter and was an instant hit.

A year later Emile Cohl made and showed his first animated film at the Follies Bergères in Paris. The figures were childlike – white lines on black – but the story was relatively sophisticated: a tale of a girl, a jealous lover and a policeman. He also gave lampposts and houses intelligence and movement, with emotions and moods of their own. Cohl's work prefigures the later animation dictum, 'Don't do what a camera can do – do what a camera *can't* do!'

Winsor McCay, brilliant creator of the popular comic strip *Little Nemo in Slumberland*, was the first man to try to develop animation as an art form. Inspired by his young son bringing home some flipper books, he made 4000 drawings of 'Little Nemo' move. These were a big hit when flashed on the screen at Hammerstein's theatre in New York in 1911.

As another experiment he drew a bizarre short film, *How a Mosquito Operates*, which was also enthusiastically received.

Then in 1914 McCay drew *Gertie the Dinosaur* and McCay himself performed 'live' in front of the projected animation, holding an apple in front of Gertie and inviting her to eat. Gertie lowered her long neck and swallowed the fruit – astounding the audience. This was the first 'personality' animation – the beginnings of cartoon individuality. It was so lifelike that the audience could identify with Gertie. It was a sensation.

In McCay's words: 'I went into the business and spent thousands of dollars developing this new art. It required considerable time, patience and careful thought – *timing and drawing* the pictures [my italics]. This is the most fascinating work I have ever done – this business of making animated cartoons live on the screen.'

McCay also made the first serious dramatic cartoon, *The Sinking of the Lusitania*, in 1918. A war propaganda film expressing outrage at the catastrophe, it was a huge step forward in realism and drama – the longest animated film so far. It took two years of work and needed 25,000 drawings.

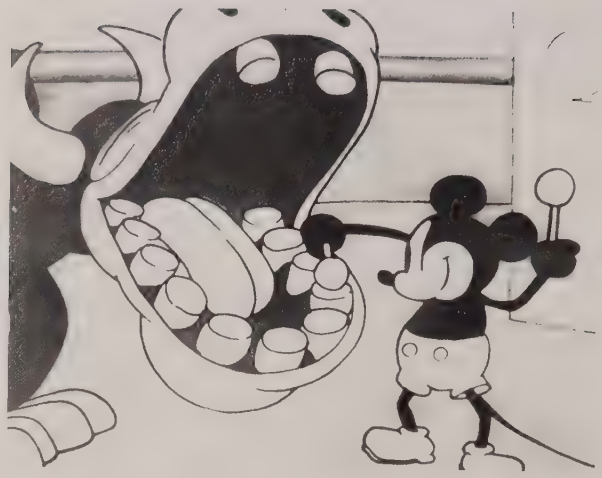
Later, as an older man being celebrated by the younger funny-cartoon animators in the business, McCay lashed out at them saying that he had developed and given them a great new art form which they had cheapened and turned into a crude money-making business done by hack artists.

This well defines the endlessly uncomfortable relationship between the pioneering artist/idealist and the animation industry – working to comfortable and predictable formulas.

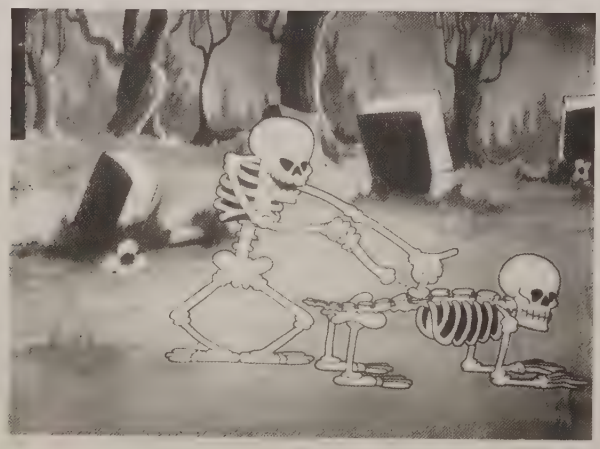
Still doth the battle rage . . .

In the twenties Felix the cat became as popular as Charlie Chaplin. These short Felix cartoons were visually inventive, doing what a camera can't do. But more importantly a real personality emerged from this flurry of silent, black and white drawings and Felix 'himself' connected with audiences worldwide.

The Felix cartoons led straight to the arrival of Walt Disney, and in 1928, Mickey Mouse took off with his appearance in *Steamboat Willie* – the first cartoon with synchronised sound.


© Disney Enterprises, Inc.

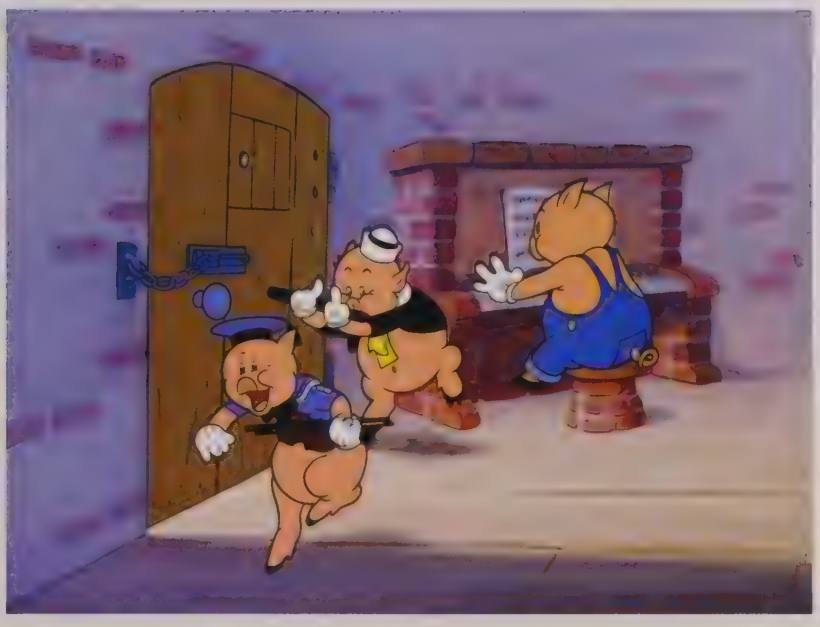
The brilliant Ward Kimball, who animated Jiminy Cricket in *Pinocchio* and the crows in *Dumbo*, once told me, 'You can have *no idea* of the impact that having these drawings suddenly speak and make noises had on audiences at that time. People went crazy over it.'


© Disney Enterprises, Inc.

Disney followed *Steamboat Willie* with *The Skeleton Dance*. For the first time, action was co-ordinated with a proper musical score. This was the first *Silly Symphony*. Ub Iwerks was chief animator on both films and a lot of the sophisticated action of *The Skeleton Dance* still holds up today.

© Disney Enterprises, Inc.

Disney leapt forward again in 1932 with *Flowers and Trees* – the first full colour cartoon.



© Disney Enterprises, Inc

Then he followed it one year later with *Three Little Pigs*. This had a major impact because of its fully developed 'personality' animation – clearly defined and believable separate personalities acting so convinchingly that the audience could identify with and root for them. Another first.

© Disney Enterprises, Inc.

Astonishingly, only four years after that, Disney released *Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs*, the world's first fully-animated feature-length film, raising cartoon drawings to the level of art and holding the audience spellbound for eighty-three minutes. A truly staggering feat accomplished in an incredibly short space of time. (It's said that many of the artists booked themselves in advance into hospital to recover from the effort of completing the film.)

The tremendous financial and critical success of *Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs* became the foundation of Disney's output and gave birth to the 'Golden Age' of animation: *Pinocchio*, *Dumbo*, *Bambi* and *Fantasia*, as well as the *Silly Symphonies* and Donald Duck and Mickey Mouse shorts.

Surrounding the potent Disney centre were the satellite studios: Max Fleischer with two features – *Gulliver's Travels* and *Mr Bug Goes to Town* – and Popeye shorts; Warner Bros' Looney Tunes and Merrie Melodies with Bugs Bunny, Daffy Duck, Porky Pig; MGM with Tom and Jerry, Droopy and the great anarchic Tex Avery shorts, and Walter Lantz with Woody Woodpecker. Fed as they were by the knowledge and expertise emanating from the Disney training centre, their much wilder humour was often in reaction to or in rebellion against Disney 'realism' and 'believability'.

But after the Second World War the situation changed.

The arrival of television and its voracious appetite for rapidly produced product demanded simpler and cruder work. 1950s stylisation gave birth to UPA studios in Hollywood who created Mr. Magoo and Gerald McBoing Boing. UPA's approach was regarded as more graphically sophisticated than Disney and used more 'limited' and much less realistic animation. At the same time there was a worldwide flourishing of personal, experimental and 'art house' animated films made in new ways with many different techniques and with very different content to the Hollywood product. Animators were reinventing the wheel stylistically but were ignorant of the structural knowledge developed in Hollywood's Golden Age.

This knowledge, though residing in the hands of the originators, was generally ignored as being 'old hat' or was forgotten in the following thirty years.

However, in the last few years, the renaissance of animation as a form of mass entertainment is giving rebirth to the old knowledge. The startlingly successful innovations of computer animation are helping to transform animation in all it's multi-faceted forms into a major part of the entertainment mainstream. Alongside this, there is also the explosion in the computer games industry.

If drawn 'classical' animation is an extension of drawing, then computer animation can be seen as an extension of puppetry – high tech marionettes. Both share the same problems of how to give a performance with movement, weight, timing and empathy.

The old knowledge applies to *any* style or approach to the medium no matter what the advances in technology. Most of the work methods and devices in this book were developed and refined in the Hollywood animation studios between 1930–1940.

I've co-ordinated what I've learnt from various approaches and I'm presenting it here in a form based on my own experience in this medium – with its limitless possibilities of imagination.

Emery Hawkins said to me, 'The only limitation in animation is the person doing it. Otherwise there is no limit to what you can do. And why shouldn't you do it?'

I meticulously painted this poster for the 1981 London Film Festival. Everybody said, 'Oh, I didn't know you did collage.'

TIME TO DRAW

This section is really for classical animators. However, I haven't been surprised to find that most of the leading computer animators draw rather well, so it may be interesting to them too. It certainly helps enormously to be able to put down your ideas – even in stick figures. For the classical animator it is crucial.

Drawing should become second nature, so that the animator can concentrate on the actual actions and the timing of them and give the performance life.

When you're doing cartoons all the time, it's very easy to slide into formula drawing. During the making of *Who Framed Roger Rabbit* I found this pinned up on our notice board:

• EPITAPH OF AN UNFORTUNATE ARTIST •

HE FOUND A FORMULA
FOR DRAWING
COMIC RABBITS:
THIS FORMULA FOR
DRAWING COMIC
RABBITS PAID,
SO IN THE END HE
COULD NOT
CHANGE THE
TRAGIC HABITS
THIS FORMULA FOR
DRAWING COMIC
RABBITS MADE.

— ROBERT GRAVES —

Life drawing is the antidote to this.

When you're doing life drawing, you're all alone. One of the main reasons animators – once they become animators – don't like to spend their evenings and spare time life drawing is because it's not a collaborative operation.

Animation is usually a group effort, and one has the stimulus of constant interaction, both competitive and co-operative, with the cut and thrust, highs and lows, political factions of complaint and inspiration, all the tensions and anxieties, rewards and excitement of group production.

With life drawing there's no one to admire your efforts – rather the reverse. It's always shocking to find you're not as advanced or skilled as you thought you were, and since it's about the hardest thing to do with no rewards other than the thing itself – it's no wonder few do it or stick at it.

Most animators are exhausted at the end of a day's work and have families to go to. Also, one has to do a *lot* of life drawing to get anywhere – not just a bit at a time here and there.

But the fact remains that there is no replacement for the hard work of solid life drawing.

There is one payoff and it is substantial – the gradual and fundamental improvement of all one's work.

Winsor McCay once said: 'If I were starting over again, the first thing I'd do would be to make a thorough study of draftsmanship. I would learn perspective, then the human figure, both nude and clothed, and surround it with proper setting.'

And Milt Kahl said: 'I don't think it's possible to be a top notch animator without being an excellent draftsman. You have to try for the whole thing, you know, got to know the figure. Know the figure well enough so that you can concentrate on the particular person – on the *difference* – why this person is different from somebody else. The ability to draw and be able to turn things and the ability, the *knowledge* that enables you to caricature and to exaggerate in the right direction and emphasise the difference between things is what you're doing all the time. Any time you're doing a strong drawing of anything well, your drawing is strong because you're depicting why this is *different* from something else. You need that figure-drawing background in order to sharpen. Every animator should have this background and unfortunately they don't! You just can't know too much. If you're going to lampoon something, or do a satire – you have to understand the straight way. It gives you a jumping-off point. It gives you a contrast. You just do it and do it . . . and do it!'

Art Babbitt is blunter: 'If you can't draw – forget it. You're an actor without arms and legs.'

But we can *learn* to draw. There's the myth that you are either a born draftsman or not. Wrong! Obviously, natural talent is a great help and the *desire* is essential, but drawing can be taught and drawing can be learnt. Its best to have done a ton of it at art school to get the foundation in early. But it can be done at any time. Just do it.

Here are three pieces of drawing advice that were given to me – and which stuck.

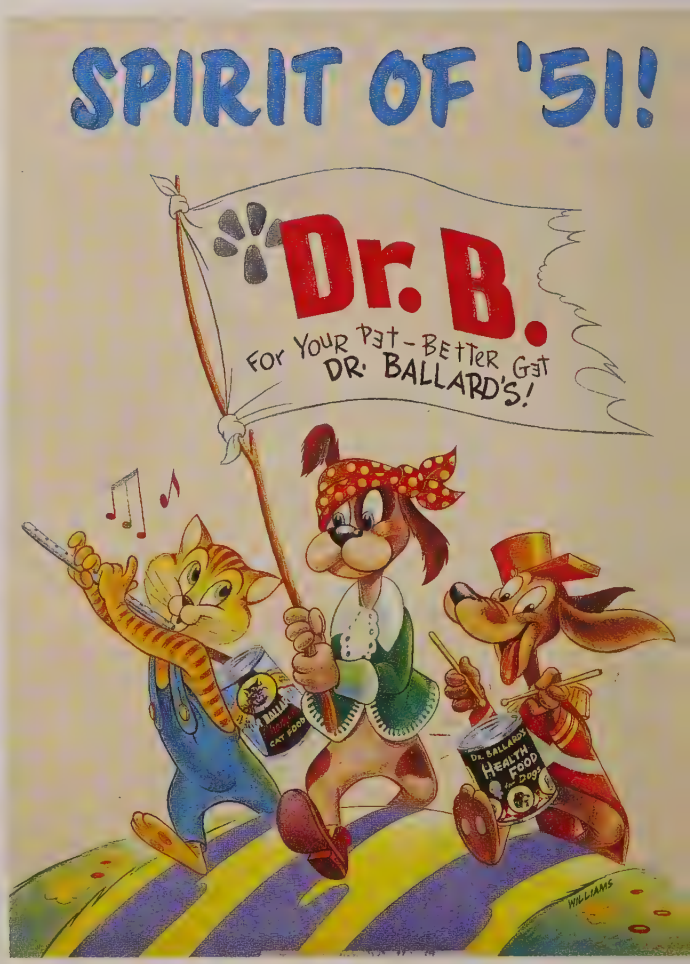
When I was fifteen years old and really keen on being an animator, I took a five day-and-night bus trip from Toronto to Los Angeles, and walked up and down outside the Disney Studio fence for days hoping to get inside. Finally an advertising friend of my mother's saw my drawings and rang up the Disney PR department, and they took me into the Studio for two days; they were very kind to me and even did a press story on me.

It was there that I received my first piece of great advice. Richard Kelsey (Disney story artist and designer/illustrator) said, 'First of all, kid, learn to draw. You can always do the animation stuff later.'

I desperately wanted to become an animator and I produced my sketches of Disney characters, which were kind of at the Roger Rabbit level since I was a precocious little bastard. Dick Kelsey looked at them and said, 'Yes, but I mean *really* learn to draw.'

© Disney Enterprises, Inc.

Richard Kelsey with eager beaver. Disney studios, 1948.



My commercial work, age 17.

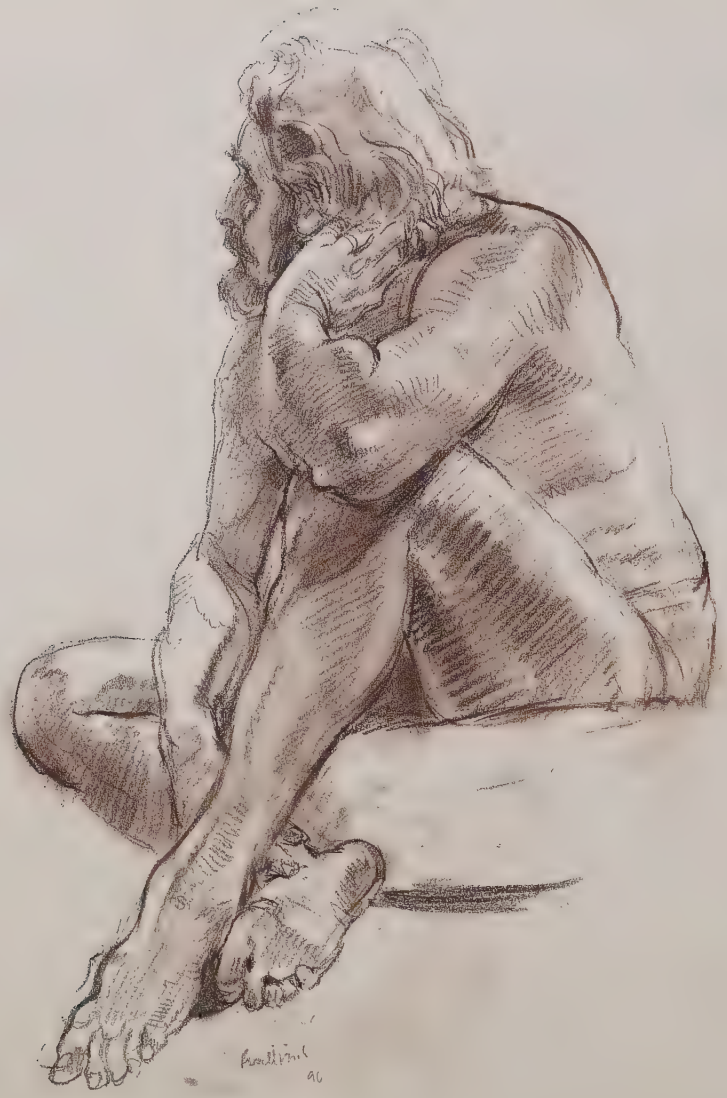
Weeks later when I was getting on the bus to go home to Toronto, I rang Dick up and asked again, 'What do you think I should do?' – 'Learn to draw!' he said.

One great regret I have in my life is that forty years later, when I was animation director on *Who Framed Roger Rabbit*, I saw Dick in the Disney canteen out of the corner of my eye, but I was so caught up in the production politics I didn't break away to go over and thank him. I never had another chance.

After my trip I went straight to art school and received the second piece of advice, from a great teacher and superb draftsman, Eric Freifield, then teaching at the Ontario College of Art. He looked at my life drawings and said, 'Well, here's a clever little fellow who's never seen anything.' I said, 'What should I do?' He said, 'Go to the library and look at Albrecht Dürer for two years.' I did. And not surprisingly my interest in animation vanished for years.

I paid my way through art school by knocking off Disneyesque dog food ads like the one above – at the same time doing 'realismo social' like this lithograph of a revival meeting 'Where the healing waters flow'.

After that I lived in Spain for a couple of years doing paintings like these until a totally unexpected affliction by the animation bug got me. Forty years later a top executive on *Who Framed Roger Rabbit* kept referring to me as 'artsy craftsy' or 'artsy fartsy'. How did he ever know? He must have smelt it as there was no sign of it in my animation.



The third piece of drawing advice came many years later – I was fifty – when I was pretty accomplished, and it came from a much younger man. My talent is primarily 'linear', which makes cartooning easy. However, since animators have to enclose their shapes, there is a tendency to end up just drawing outlines – like colouring-book figures. In other words, animators don't usually draw from the inside-out, like a sculptor does. Sculpture had been my weakest subject – although I'd done a lot of life drawing and had a grounding in basic anatomy.

John Watkiss – then a twenty-three-year-old, self-taught, brilliant draftsman and anatomist – held his own life drawing classes in London. (Recently he was one of the principle designers of Disney's *Tarzan*.) I used to hire John periodically to do presentation artwork and we were friendly. I went to John's evening life classes for a while and one day John, who is ruthlessly honest, pointed to my drawing and said, 'Hey! You missed a stage!' I felt like a butterfly pinned to the wall. He was right. I knew exactly what he meant. I was weak from a sculptural point of view. I was too linear.

Years later, when I had dropped out of the 'industry' part of animation, I re-studied my anatomy and worked on drawing from the inside-out. I advanced backwards and filled in the missing stage.

I showed my ex-illustrator mother several of these life drawings when she was bed-bound just before she died. 'I've been working at reconstituting myself, Mom, doing all these drawings.' She looked at them carefully for some time, then said, 'Very nice, very nice . . . Nothing new.' Advice from the inside – from one's family – somehow doesn't have the same impact as from the outside. However my mother had once said, 'When you go to art school, you'll find everybody sitting around practising how to do their signature,' and sure enough, there they were, some of them doing just that.

She also gave me this great advice: 'Don't try to develop a style. Ignore style. Just concentrate on the drawing and style will just occur.'

Of course there's an opposing view to all of this 'you've got to learn to draw' stuff.

The great Tex Avery, master of animation's ability to do the impossible and make the unreal spring to life – and the first director of Bugs Bunny and Elmer Fudd – said:

'I was never too great an artist. I realised there at Lantz's that most of those fellows could draw rings around me . . . I thought, Brother! Why fight it? I'll never make it! Go the other route. And I'm glad I did. My goodness, I've enjoyed that a lot more than I would have enjoyed just animating scenes all my life.'

Tex stopped animating and became a great, original and innovative director. The biographer John Canemaker said: 'While Disney in the 1930s was trying to convince the audience of the "reality" of his characters in his film world, by creating his "illusion of life", Tex went in the opposite direction, celebrating the cartoon as cartoon, exploring the medium's potential for surrealism.' He never let audiences forget they were watching an animated film.

Tex had a twenty-year run with his wildly funny approach to the medium, but he found it impossible to sustain. 'I'm burned out,' he said. His colleague, animator Mike Lah said, 'He didn't have any more space. He used it up.'

I love Tex Avery's cartoons – his drawings and character designs. His Droopy is my favourite cartoon character. One of the nice things about doing *Who Framed Roger Rabbit* was to emulate Tex Avery's humour – 'But not so brutal!' were my instructions. Though, as Milt said, 'You have to try to have the whole thing.'

I am convinced that if an animator's drawing foundation is strong, he will have the versatility to go in all the different directions possible at his fingertips. He'll be able to draw anything – from the most difficult, realistic characters, to the most wild and wacky. And it's not likely he'll exhaust his resources and suffer burn-out.

Because of his strong drawing ability, Milt Kahl was usually saddled with animating 'the Prince' or Disney's 'straighter' characters – which of course are the hardest ones to do. Whenever anyone criticised his work, he'd say, 'OK, you can do the Prince.' And they'd soon vanish.

Word spread among the more 'cartoony' artists that, 'Milt draws beautifully but he can only do the straight stuff and he can't handle zany stuff at all.' Then, between features, Milt animated most of *Tiger Trouble*, a 'Goofy' short. Everybody shut up, and stayed shut up. His work is a classic of broad and crazy animation.

'If you can draw funny that's enough' is an animation myth that's been around a long time, and still seems to persist. This is because a few of the early animators lacked sophisticated drawing skills – but nevertheless were very inventive and excellent at getting the essence of the drama and performance.

The myth was that all they needed was to have a good draftsman as an assistant to do the final drawings and everything would be fine. But in the mid thirties, when the new wave of young animators with better drawing skills came on the scene and learned from the old guys, the ground was soon littered with out-of work animators who could only handle the cruder cartoons. The new breed of better draftsmen took their jobs away from them. If the present boom in this medium ever contracts it's certain that the more skilled artists will be the survivors.

Bill Tytla – famous for his animation of Stromboli in *Pinocchio*, the Devil in 'Night on Bald Mountain' from *Fantasia,* and *Dumbo* with his mother – once said: 'At times you will have to animate stuff where you can't just be cute and coy. Those are the times when you'll have to know something about drawing. Whether it's called form or force or vitality, you must get it into your work, for that will be what you feel, and drawing is your means of expressing it.'

Obviously all this doesn't apply so much to computer animators since the 'maquette' of the character is already planted inside the machine, ready to be manipulated. But since most of the leading computer animators draw rather well, many work out their positions in small sketches, and, of course, the planning, layout and story artists and designers draw exactly the same as their classical equivalents.

I had an unnerving experience in Canada when a friend asked me to give a one-hour address to a large high school gathering of computer animation students. They had a very impressive set-up of expensive computers but, from what I could see of their work, none of them seemed to have any idea of drawing at all. During my talk I stressed the importance of drawing and the great shortage of good draftsmen.

A laid-back greybeard professor interrupted to inform me, 'What do you mean? All of us here draw very well.'

Words failed me.

At the end of the talk, I showed them how to do a basic walk, and as a result got mobbed at the exit, the kids pleading desperately for me to teach them more. I escaped, but I'm afraid that's what the situation is out there – a lack of any formal training and no one to pass on the 'knowledge'.

You don't know what you don't know.

One of the problems rampant today is that, in the late 1960s, realistic drawing generally became considered unfashionable by the art world, and no one bothered to learn how to do it any more.

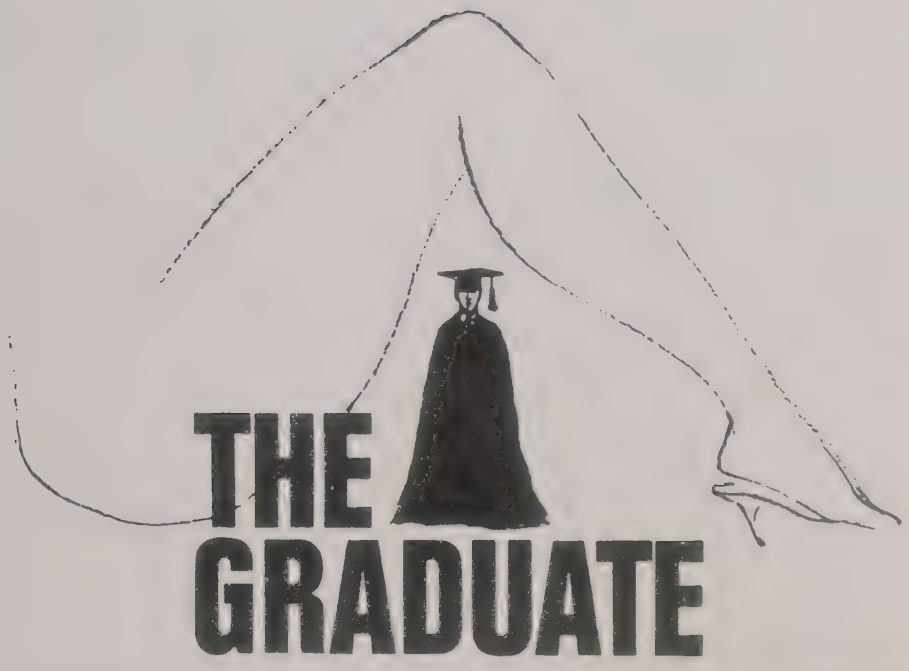
The Slade school in London used to be world-famous for turning out fine British draftsmen. A distinguished British painter who taught at the Slade asked me, 'How did you learn how to do animation?' I answered that I was lucky enough to have done a lot of life drawing at art school, so without realizing it I got the feeling for weight which is so vital to animation.

Then I said, 'What am I telling you for? You're teaching at the Slade and it's famous for its life drawing and excellent draftsmen.'

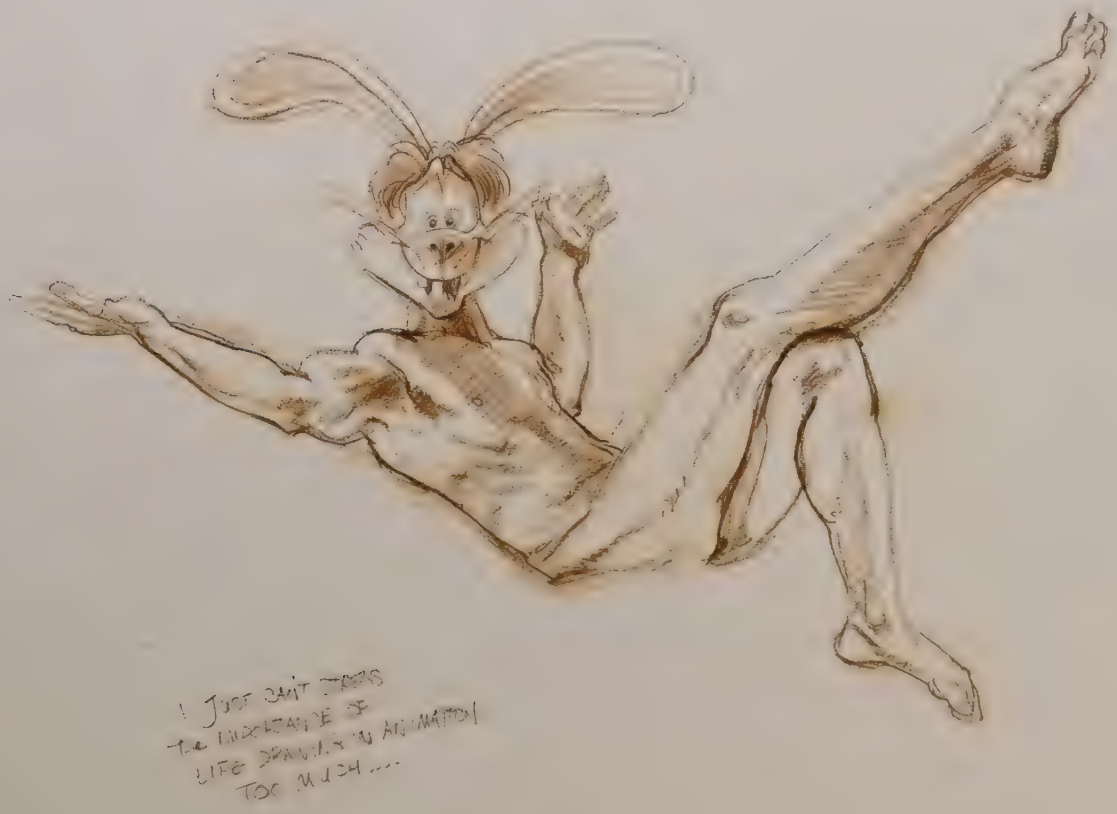
'If the students want to do *that,*' he said, 'then they've got to club together and hire themselves a model and do it in their own home.' At first I thought he was joking – but no! Life drawing as a subject went out years ago. It wasn't even on the curriculum!

I had a boyhood friend who became a bigwig in art education circles. He ran international conferences of the arts. About sixteen years ago he invited me to Amsterdam to a conference of the deans of the leading American art colleges. He knew me well enough to know I was bound to say controversial things, so I was invited as his wild card.

In my talk I found myself lamenting the lack of trained, talented artists and that I was hampered in my own studio's work because I couldn't find trained disciplined artists to hire. The applicants' portfolios were full of textures, abstract collages, scribbles, often nude photos of themselves and friends. No real drawing. I didn't realise how strongly I felt about this and as I talked I found myself nearly in tears.



My advertising campaign design for Mike Nichols' *The Graduate*. A foundation of life drawing was invaluable when I had to draw this simple leg for this movie logo.



I harangued the deans of the art schools for failing in their duty to provide proper skills to their students. Surprisingly, when I finished, the deans called an emergency meeting to which I was invited. 'Look Mr. Williams,' they said, 'you're right, but we have two problems. Number one: since classical drawing was rejected years ago, we have no trained teachers who can draw or teach conventional drawing as *they* never learned it themselves. And number two: our mostly rich students – on whom we count for our funding – don't *want* to learn to draw. They would rather decorate themselves as living works of art – and that's exactly what they do.'

So I said, 'Look, all I know is that I can't find people to hire or train; but otherwise I don't know what you can do.'

They said, 'Neither do we.'

Lately things have improved somewhat. So-called classical drawing seems to be coming back, but with a hyper-realistic photographic approach because skilled artists are thin on the ground. Shading isn't drawing, and it isn't realism.

Good drawing is not copying the *surface*. It has to do with understanding and expression. We don't want to learn to draw just to end up being imprisoned in showing off our knowledge of joints and muscles. We want to get the kind of reality that a camera *can't* get. We want to accentuate and suppress aspects of the model's character to make it more vivid. And we want to develop the co-ordination to be able to get our brains down into the end of our pencil.

Many cartoonists and animators say that the very reason they do cartoons is to get *away* from realism and the realistic world into the free realms of the imagination. They'll correctly point out that most cartoon animals don't look like animals – they're designs, mental constructs. Mickey ain't no mouse, Sylvester ain't no cat. They look more like circus clowns than animals. Frank Thomas always says: 'If you saw Lady and the Tramp walking down the road, there's no way that you are going to buy that they're real dogs.'

But to make these designs work, the *movements* have to be believable – which leads back to realism and real actions, which leads back to studying the human or animal figure to understand its structure and movement. What we want to achieve isn't realism, it's *believability*.

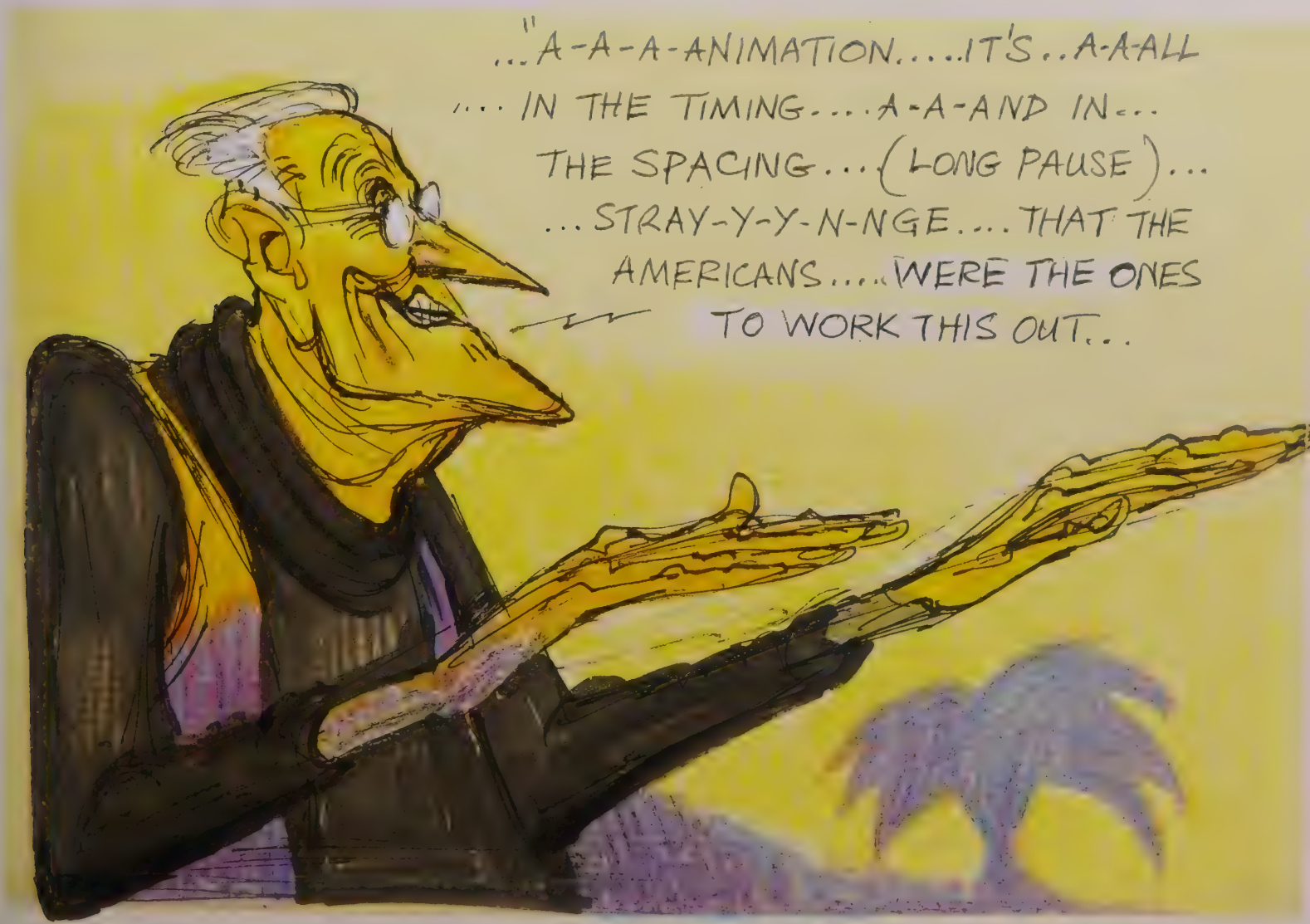
While Tex Avery released the animator from the more literal approach in order to do the impossible, he was only able to do it so successfully because his animation was mostly done by Disney drop-outs who already had 'the Disney knowledge' of articulation, weight, etc. So, ironically, his rebellion, his 'going the other route', had its basis in an underlying knowledge of realism.

But don't confuse a drawing with a map! We're animating *masses*, not lines .So we have to understand how mass works in reality. In order to depart from reality, our work has to be based *on* reality.

IT'S ALL IN THE TIMING AND THE SPACING

I met Grim Natwick (born Myron Nordveig) in a Hollywood basement when he was in his eighties. Grim was the oldest of the great animators, being already in his forties when he animated eighty-three scenes of Snow White in Disney's *Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs*. Previously, he'd designed Betty Boop for Max Fleischer, for which he received nothing and was furious about it 'til the day he died, aged 100.

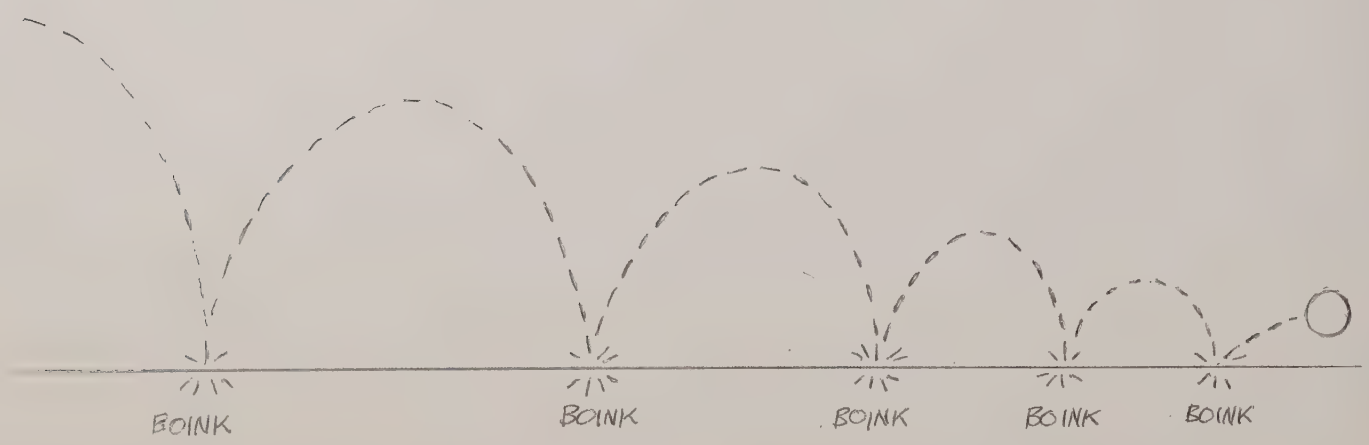
I'll never forget the image of this big Norwegian American sitting in the golden twilight, extending his long arms and spatula hands saying . . .



The bouncing ball says it all.

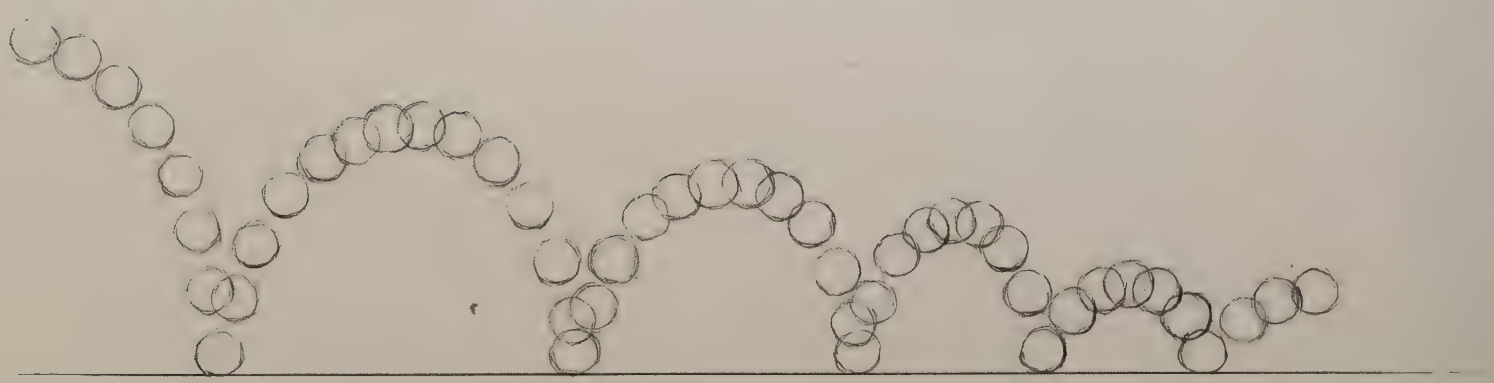
The old bouncing-ball example is often used because it shows so many different aspects of animation.

A ball bounces along,



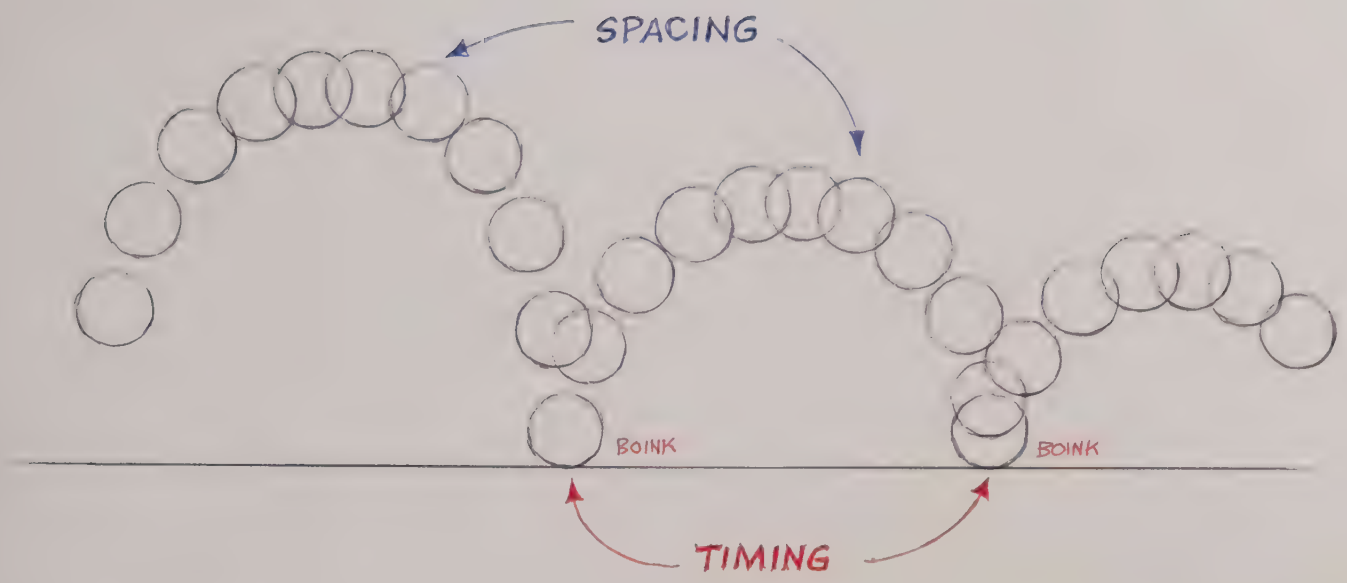
and where it hits – the 'boinks' – that's the *timing*. The impacts – where the ball is hitting the ground – that's the *timing* of the action, the rhythm of where things happen, where the 'accents' or 'beats' or 'hits' happen.

And here's the *spacing*.



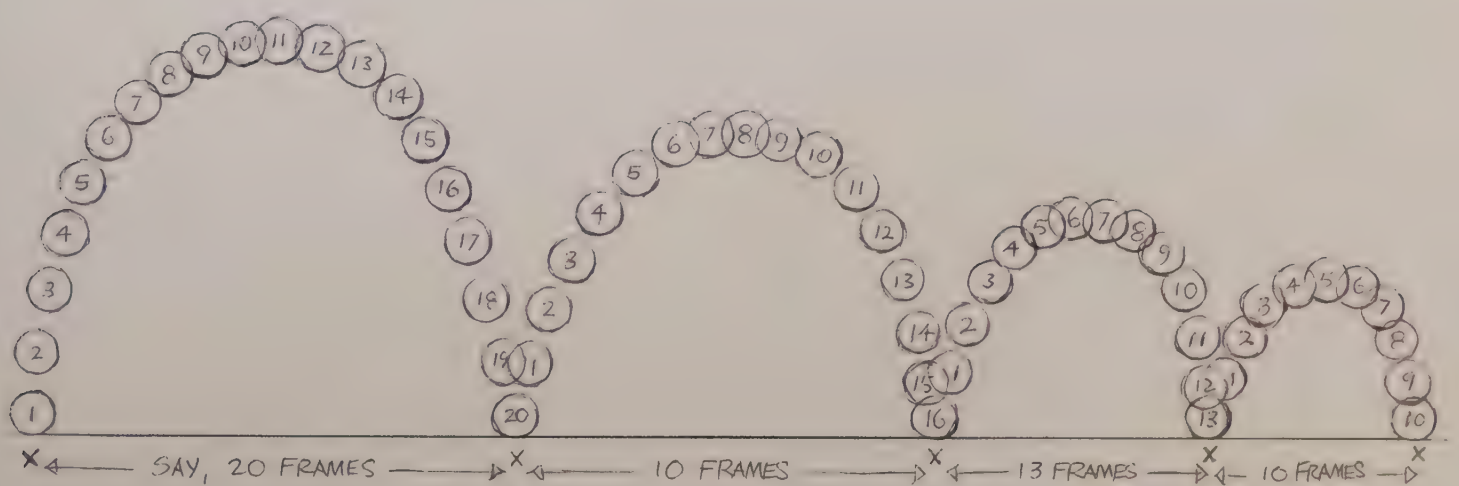
The ball overlaps itself when it's at the slow part of its arc, but when it drops fast, it's spaced further apart. That's the *spacing*. The spacing is how close or far apart those clusters are. That's it. It's simple, but it's important. The spacing is the tricky part. Good animation spacing is a rare commodity.

So we have:



The two basic elements of animation.

To experience this, take a coin and film it in stages under a video camera.



First plot out the *timing* – where you want the ball to hit the ground. Then push the coin around – taking a picture at each frame – and see what looks right or wrong. Try it with different timings and spacing. You're already animating. You're already dealing with the important fundamentals and you haven't even made a single drawing. You're doing pure animation without any drawings.

Hidden in this simple test is the weight of the ball – how it feels, light or heavy; what it's made of. Is it large or small, moving fast or slow? This will all emerge if you do several tests – which only take a few minutes to do. The importance of the timing and the spacing will become obvious.

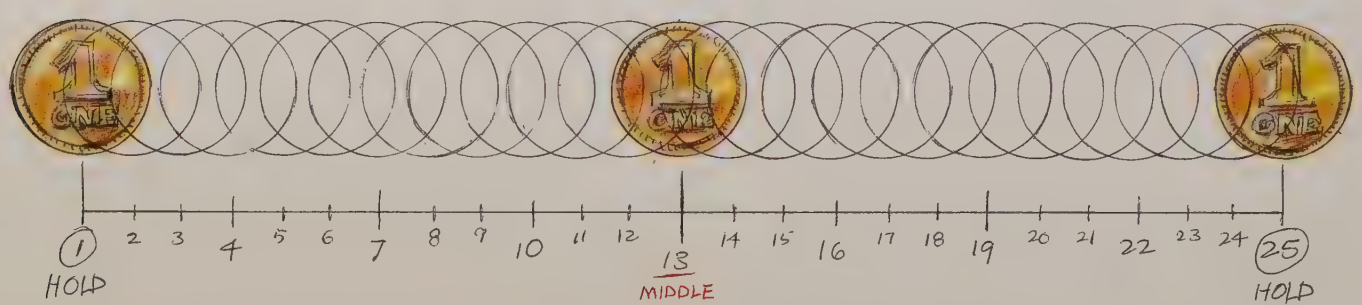
Because *you* did it, a certain amount of personality will creep into the action – whether the ball is deliberate, slow, jaunty, erratic, cautious, even optimistic or pessimistic.

And all this, before you've made a single drawing. This reveals how important and dominant the timing and the spacing is. Even if the ball positions were drawn in detail by Michelangelo or Leonardo da Vinci, the timing and the spacing of the drawings will still dominate.

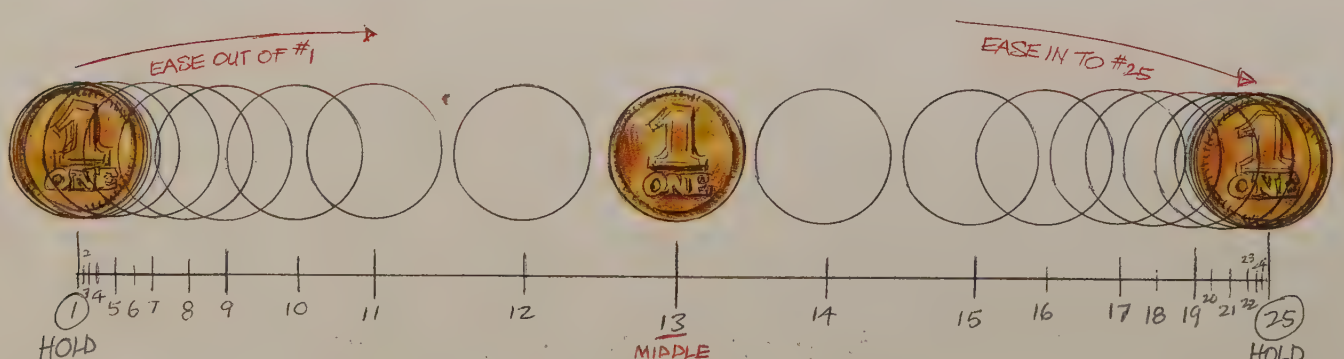
Another interesting way to experience the difference between timing and spacing right away is this:

Let's put a coin under the video camera and move it across the page (or screen) in one second – 24 frames of screen time. That's our *timing*.

We'll space it out evenly – and that's our *spacing*.



Now we'll keep the same *timing* – again taking one second for the coin to move across the page. But we'll change the *spacing* by slowly easing out of position number 1 and easing gradually into position number 25.



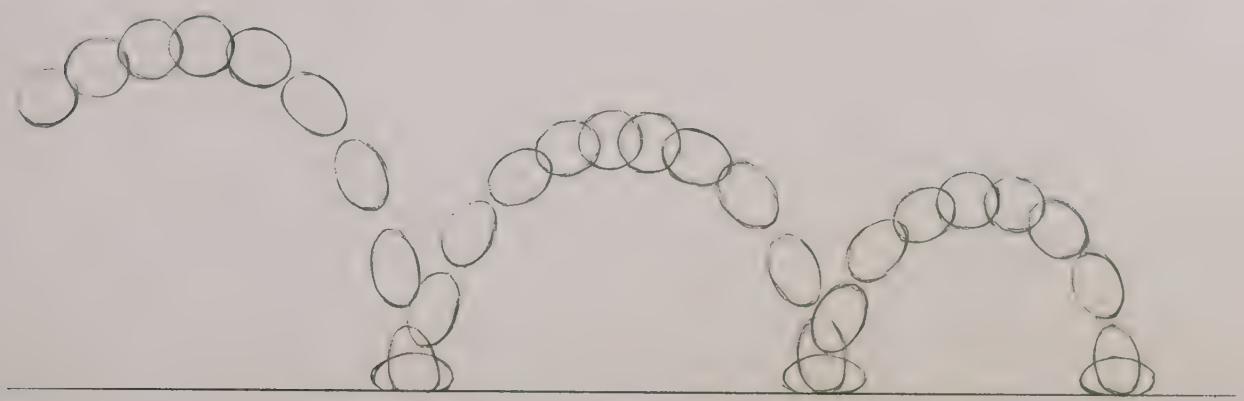
It still takes one second for the coin to get over there. It has the same timing – but there is very different movement because of the different spacing. Both start together – and both hit the middle together – but the spacing is quite different. And so the action is very different.

You could say that animation is the art of timing. But you could say that about all motion pictures.

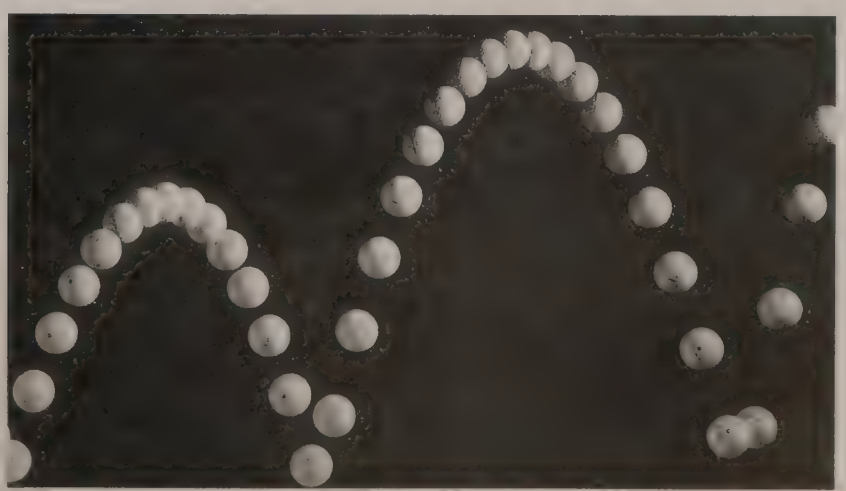
The most brilliant masters of timing were the silent comedians: Charlie Chaplin, Buster Keaton, Laurel and Hardy.

Certainly for a film director, timing is the most important thing. For an animator, it's only half the battle. We need the spacing as well. We can have a natural feel for timing, but we have to learn the spacing of things.

One other thing: The bouncing ball example is often used to show animation 'squash and stretch' – that is, the ball elongates as it falls, flattens on impact with the ground and then returns to its normal shape in the slower part of its arc.
It *might* squash and stretch this way if it was a very soft ball with not much air in it, but what



I've found is that you can get a good enough effect with a rigid coin – *provided* the spacing of it was right – so this added technique is not always necessary. Certainly a hard golf ball isn't going to bend all over the place. In other words, if you do this squishy squashy thing too much, everything comes out a bit 'sploopy', like it's made of rubber. Life ain't like that. At least most of it ain't. More about this later.



© Harold Edgerton

Golf ball bounce, 1951

Having established all this, let's go to lesson one:

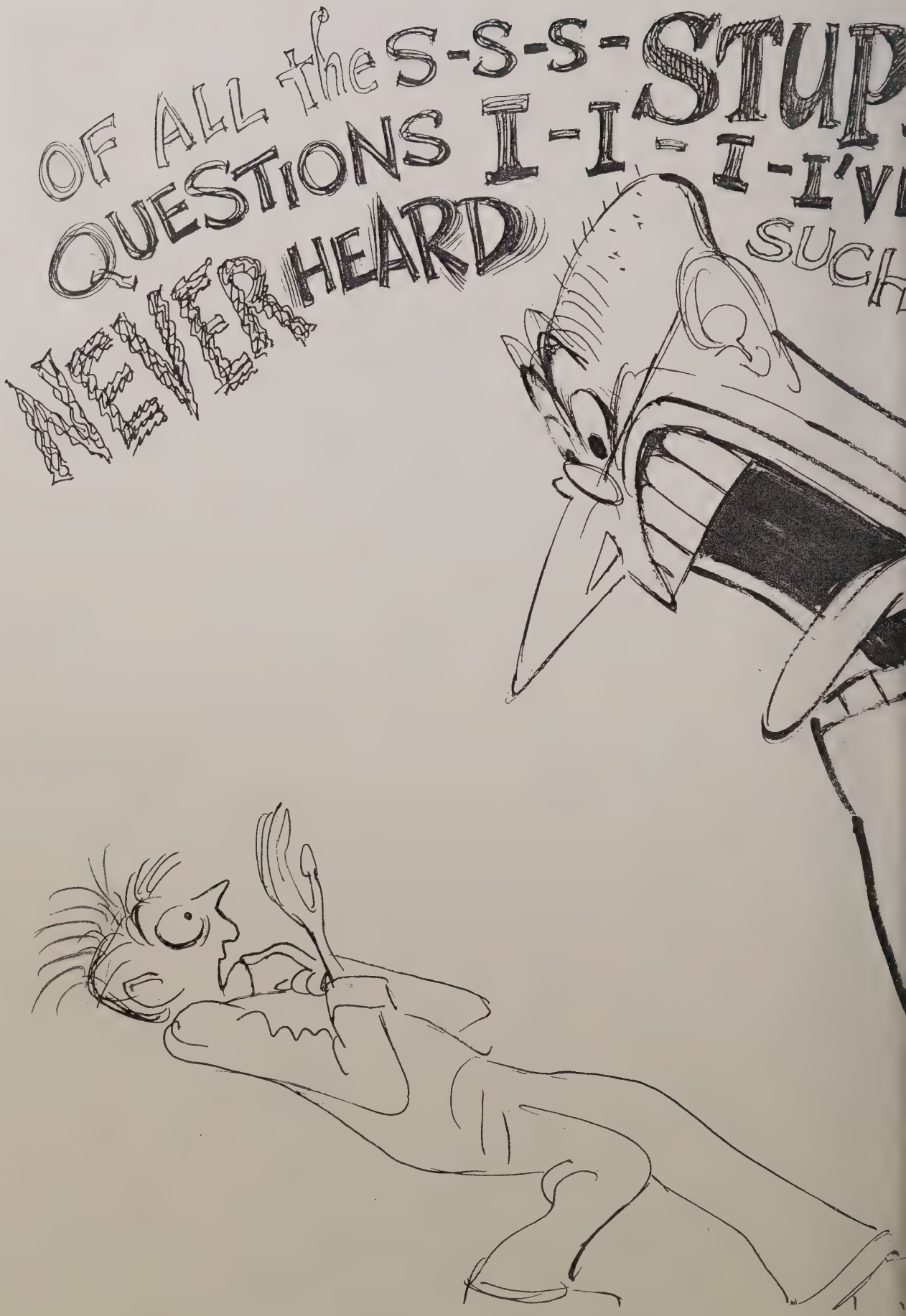
Stills from Charles Dickens' *A Christmas Carol*, 1972. We're starting to get better. I got my first Oscar for this half-hour film made originally for TV. You wouldn't think a lot of this was drawn by Bugs Bunny animators! It couldn't have been done without Ken Harris who carried the load on Scrooge. Towards the end, Chuck Jones (the Executive Producer) lent us Abe Levitow, a great unsung animator with majestic qualities. We also had help from Disney alumni George Nicholas and Hal Ambro. My own stalwarts were Richard Purdum, Sergio Simonetti and Roy Naisbitt.

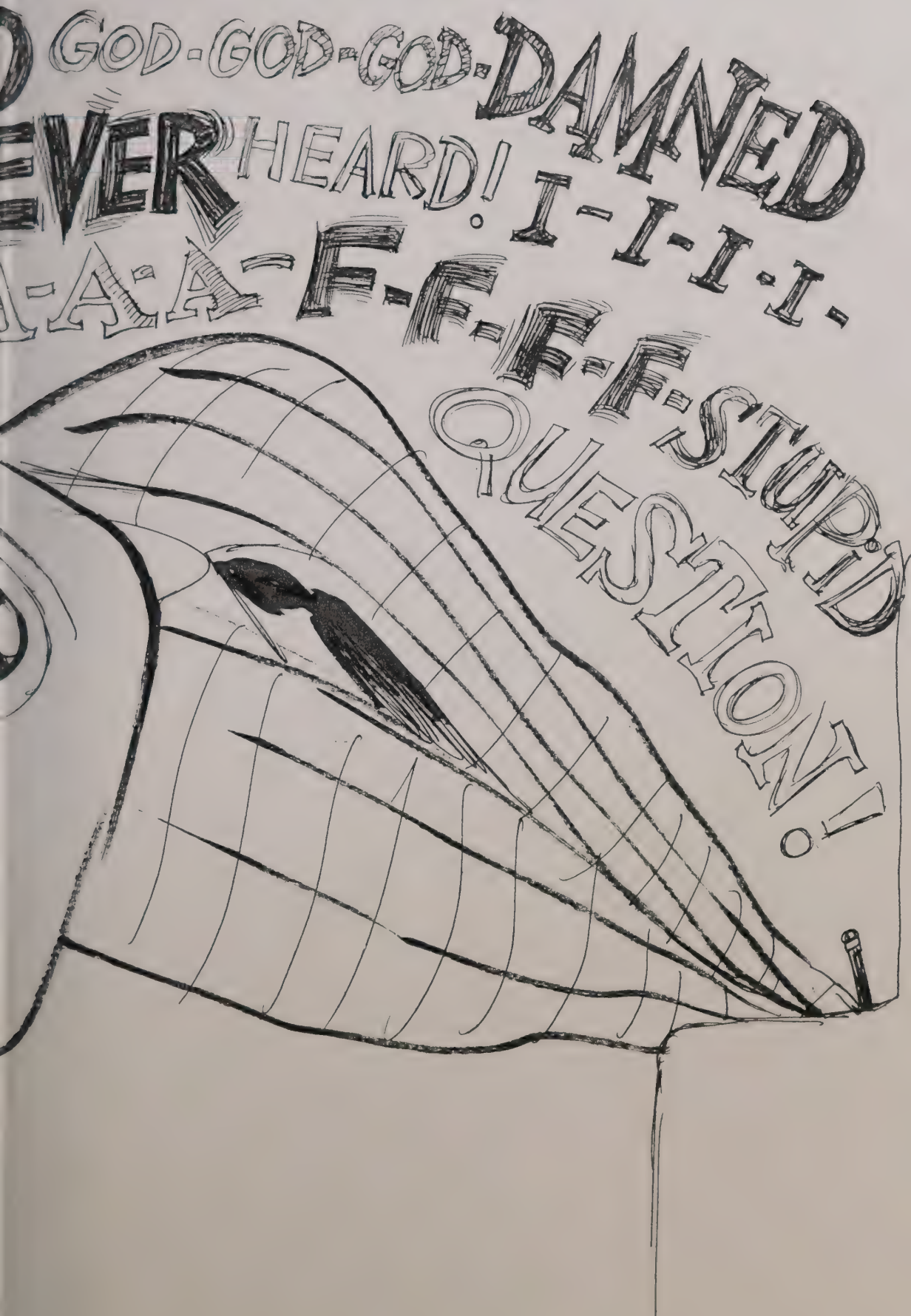
LESSON ONE

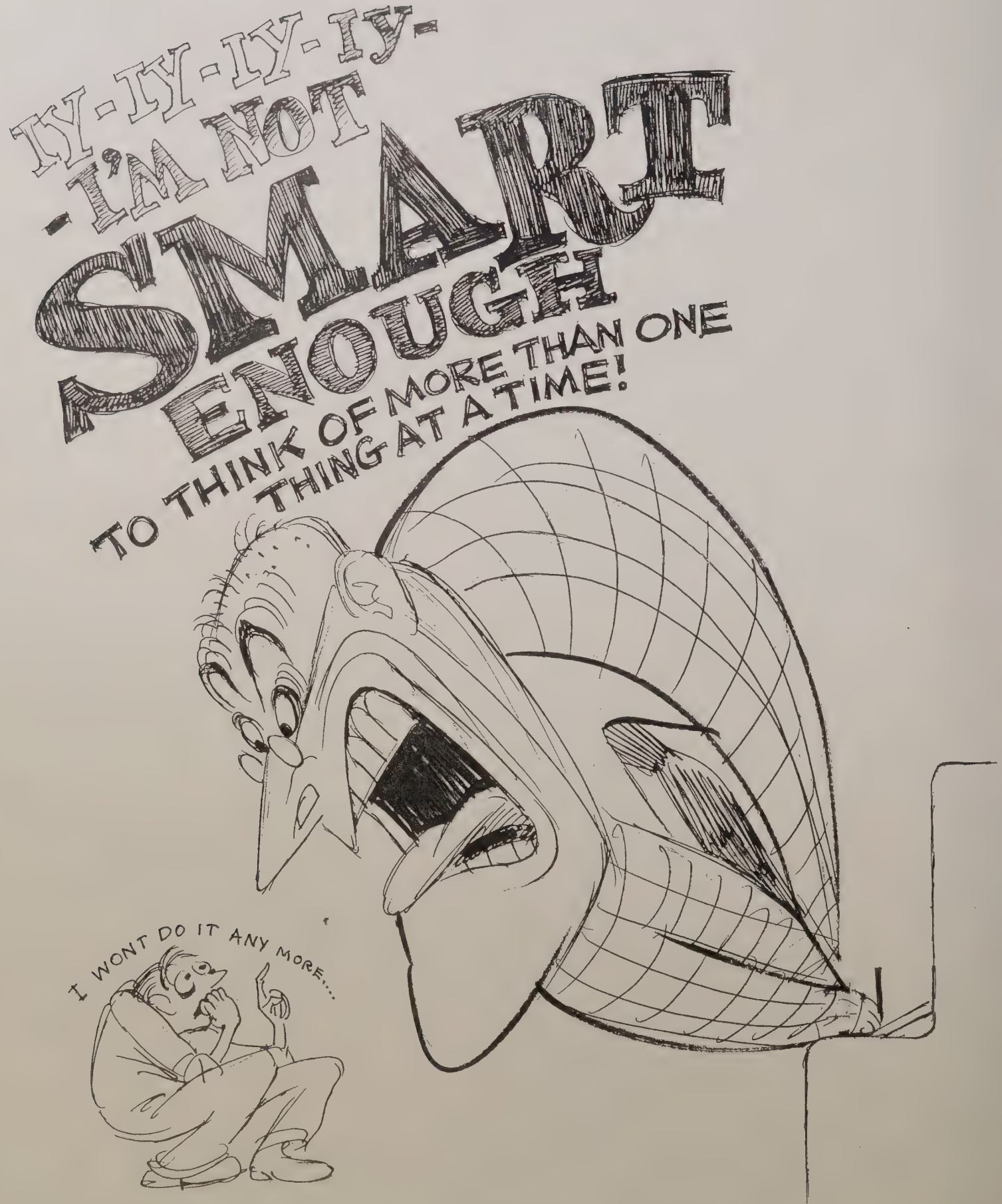
UNPLUG!

Unplug! Take off your head phones! Turn off the radio! Switch off the CD! Turn off the tape! Close the door.

Like many artists, I had the habit of listening to classical music or jazz while working. On one of my first visits to Milt Kahl I innocently asked:


OF ALL the S-S-S-STUP
QUESTIONS I-I-I-I'VE
NEVER HEARD
SUCH


D GOD-GOD-GOD-DAMNED
EVER HEARD! I-I-I-I-I-
A-A-A-F-F-F-F-F-STUPID
QUESTION!


IY-IY-IY-IY-
-I'M NOT
SMART
ENOUGH
TO THINK OF MORE THAN ONE
THING AT A TIME!
I WONT DO IT ANY MORE...

Since it came from a genius, this made quite an impression on me. After this I learnt to face the silence and think before swirling my pencil around. My animation improved right away.

This has been the case with many artists when I've passed this wisdom along. Recently, two previously sound-addicted computer animators were shocked to find that their plugged-in colleagues instantly made them objects of ridicule for not having wires coming out of their ears. They were even more surprised at the startling improvement in their work.

. . . end of lesson one.

Photo Frank Herrmann

Portrait of the artist after receiving lesson 1.

KEN HARRIS

™ & © Warner Bros.

ADVANCING BACKWARDS TO 1940

Let's advance backwards to approach where animators were during the 'Golden Age'. And then go forward from there – so we can do new things.

The thing you are going to build on must be basic.

Everyone wants to decorate their house with interesting pieces before putting in the cornerstones and supports. Everyone wants to jump ahead to the sophisticated bit – glossing over the dull, old support work.

But it's the thorough understanding of the basics that produces real sophistication.

As Art Babbitt said:
'The knowledge that went into making little drawings come to life is in the early Disneys. Nobody taught us how to articulate these fanciful characters. We had to discover the mechanics ourselves and pass them around amongst each other. There are many styles but the mechanics of the old Disney animation remain.'

They had it all worked out by 1940, around the time that *Pinocchio* was released.

It was a wonderful system – precise and *simple*.

First we'll take it bit by bit – and then we'll put it all together.

HISTORY OF THE CHART and INBETWEEN

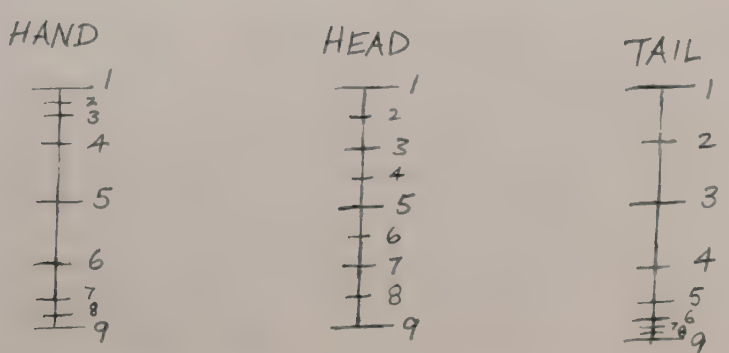
A very interesting thing happened when we worked with Grim Natwick. He was so old that each day he tended to snap back into a different professional period of his life: one day he would come in and do circular 'rubber hose' animation from the 1920s, then the next day he would be in a 1936 '*Snow White*' phase, making tons of smoothly moving drawings, the next day would be sharp, physical actions with plenty of static holds from his 1950 UPA 'Mr Magoo' period, then he'd be doing as few drawings as possible, as if he were animating a 1960s TV ad, and then the next day back into fulsome *Fantasia* mode.

One day I found him drawing in an old style – something like this:

He wasn't just showing the arc of the action – he was indicating all the different spacings on his drawing.

I suddenly realised that this was probably the origin of the charts that animators put on the edge of their drawings

e.g.



I asked, 'Hey, Grim – did these charts just gradually move across the page away from the drawings?

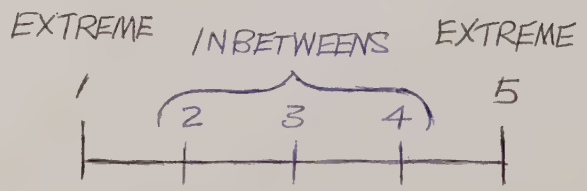
A far-away look came into his eyes – '. . . Yes . . .'

In the 1920s, animators did most of the work themselves. Dick Huemer was the top New York animator and was working for Max and Dave Fleischer on their *Mutt and Jeff* series. Dick told me they said to him, 'Your work is great, Dick, but we can't get enough of it.' So Dick said to them, 'Give me someone to put in the in-between drawings and I'll do two to three times as much work.' And that was the invention of the 'inbetweener'.

Dick later said in an interview that it had been the Fleischers' idea and that he just went along with it. But Dick actually told *me* that he had invented the inbetween and the inbetweener, the helper or assistant.

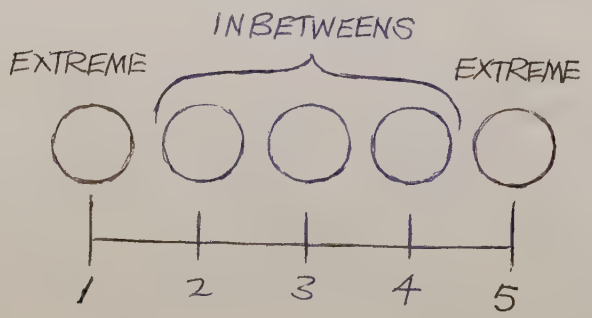
The main drawings or extreme positions came to be called *extremes* and the drawings in between the extremes were called the *inbetweens*.

The chart shows the spacing.



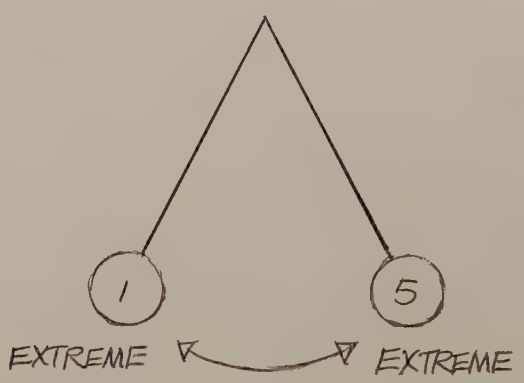
We'll put in three even inbetweens between the two extremes.

Number 3 is smack in the middle between 1 and 5. Then we put number 2 right in the middle between 1 and 3 – and number 4 in the middle between 3 and 5. We've got the inbetweens spaced evenly.

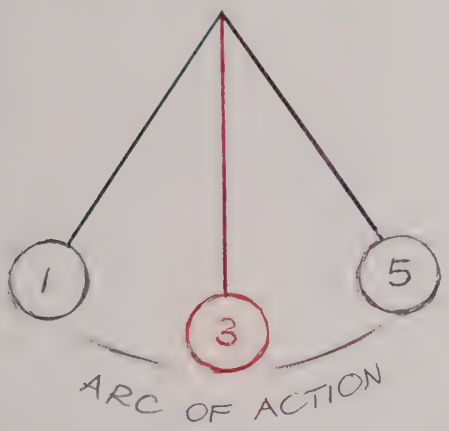


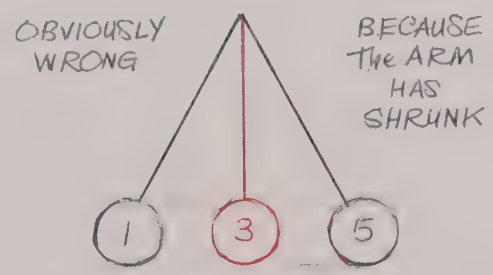
EXTREMES and BREAKDOWNS

Take the example of a swinging pendulum: The extremes are where there is a change in direction – the ends of the action where the direction changes.



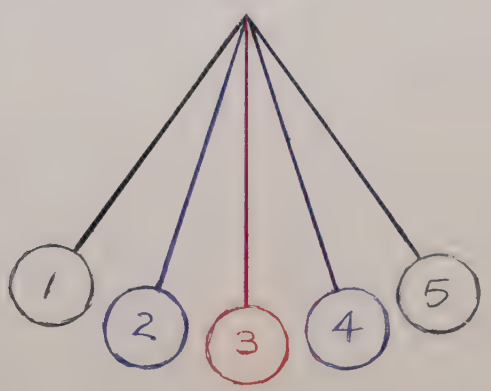
Because the pendulum's arm maintains its length as it swings, the middle position creates an arc in the action. We can see how important that middle position between the two extremes is going to be to us.

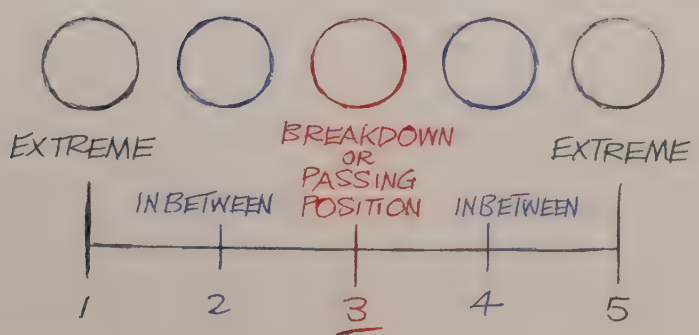




It's obvious how important this middle position is. In the 1930s they called this the 'break-down' drawing or 'passing position' between two extremes.

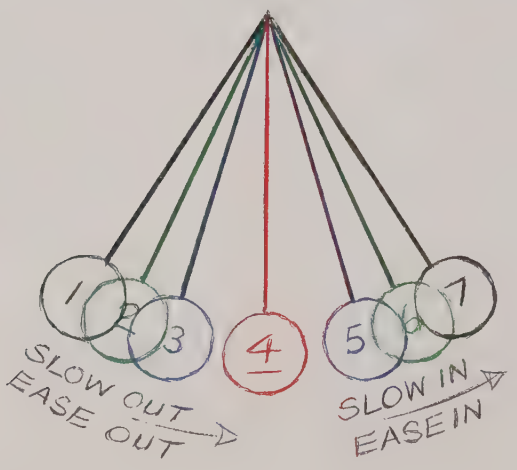
We'll add two inbetweens.





Some animators underline the breakdown or passing position because it's so important to the action. I have the habit of doing this because it's a position which is crucial to helping us invent. We're going to make tremendous use of this middle position later . . .

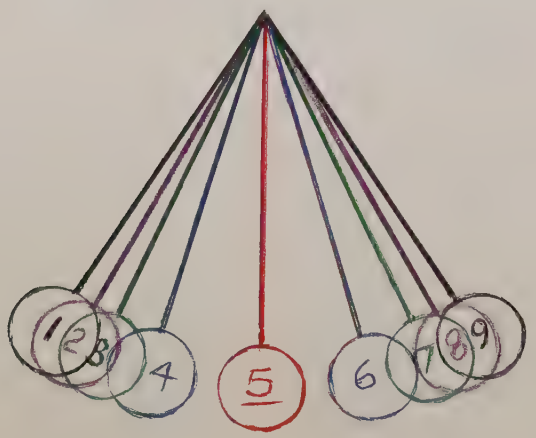
If we want to make our pendulum ease in and out of the extreme positions, we'll need a couple more inbetweens:



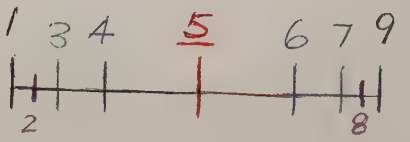
So our chart will look like this.

What we're doing is easing in or easing out of the extreme positions. 'Slowing in' or 'slowing out' is the classical terminology for it, but I prefer today's computer animators' term of 'easing in' and 'easing out'.

To make the action even slower at the ends, let's add a couple more inbetweens.



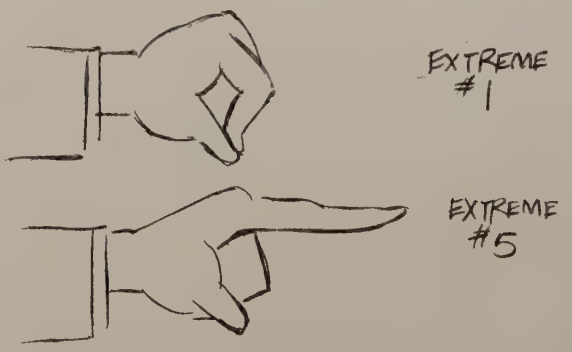
Now our chart will look like this.



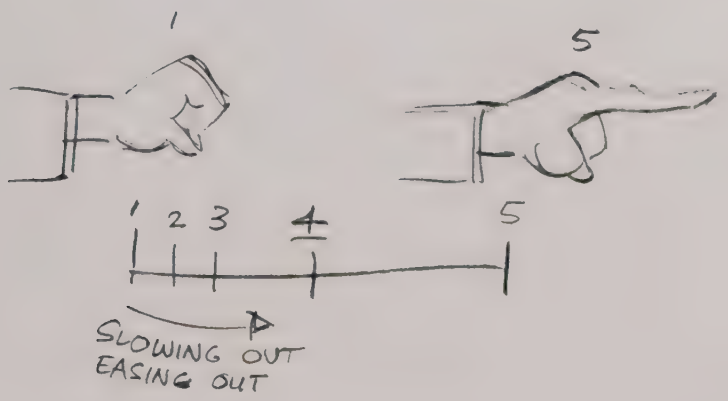
Ken Harris always called it 'cushioning' – which is a nice way to think of it.

Master animator Eric Larson – who became the instructor of the younger Disney animators – says that what animation has to have is a change of shape.

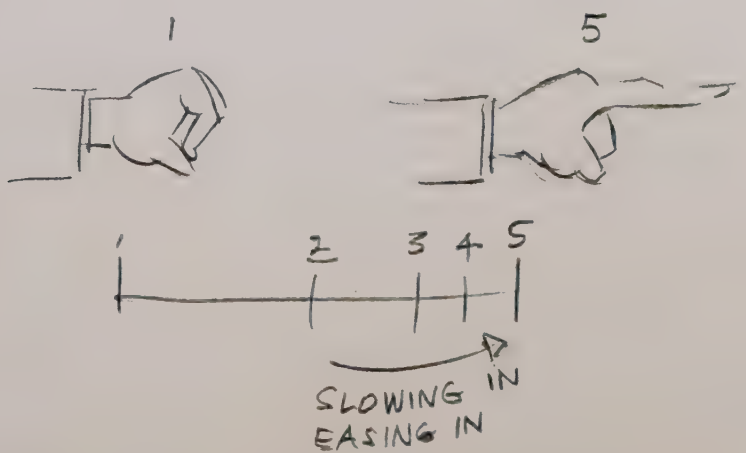
So, let's change from a closed hand to a pointing finger.



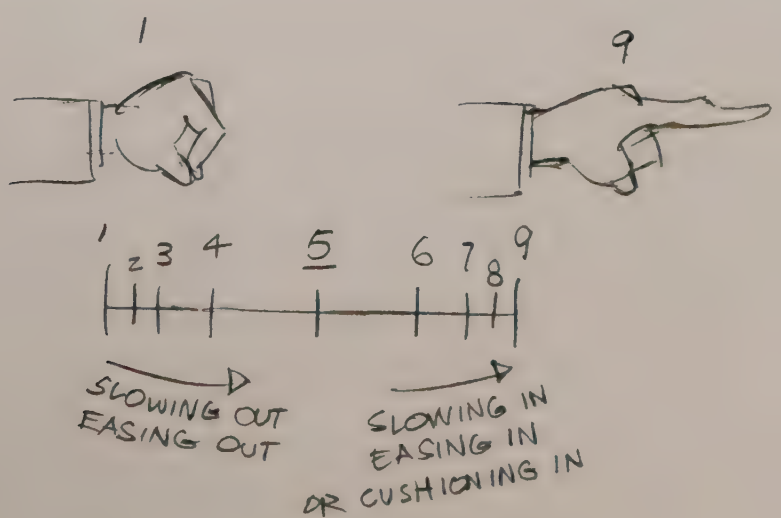
If we 'ease out' of number 1 in order to point – number 5 – the chart will be:



Alternatively, if we 'snap out' or 'speed out' of the closed hand and 'ease in' or 'cushion in' to the pointing finger the chart will be:



For a more relaxed, slower action we could add more inbetweens and ease out of the closed hand, and speed through the middle, and then ease in to the pointing finger.

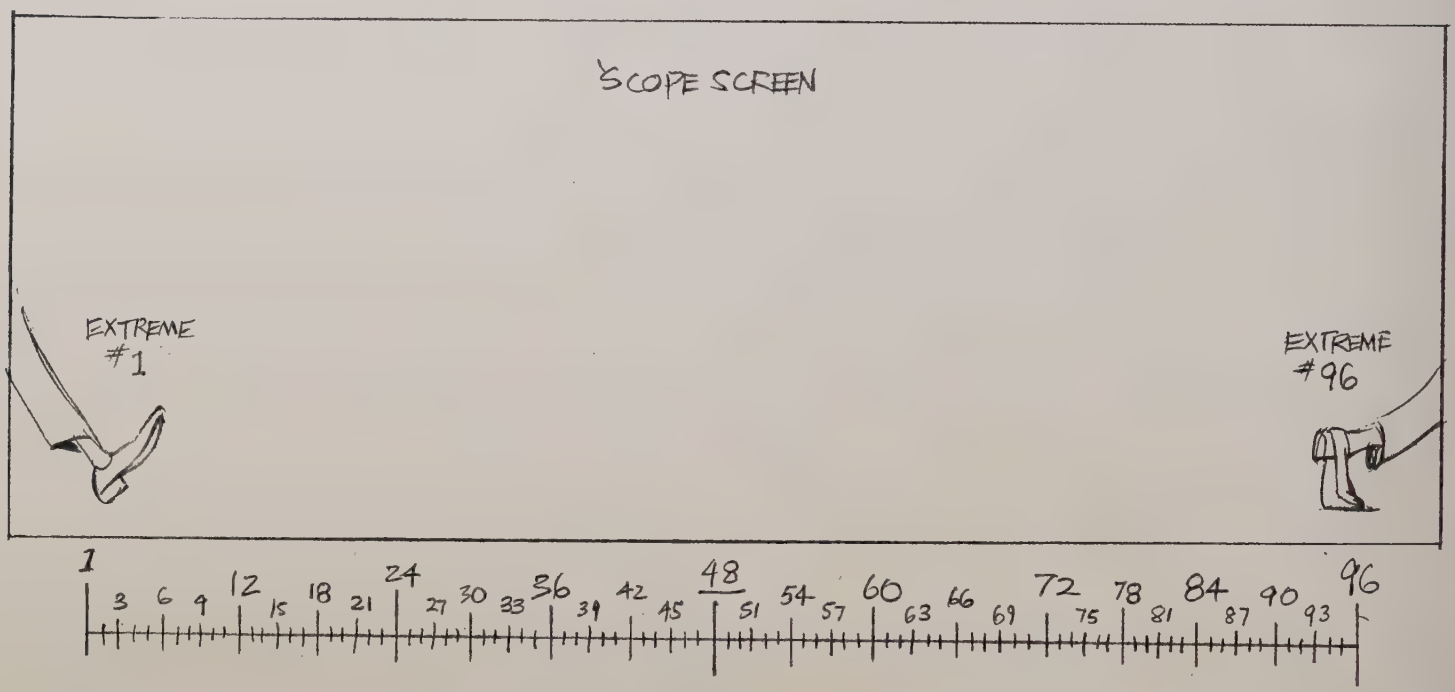


The animator can get away with just drawing the two extreme positions and making a chart for the assistant to put in all the inbetween positions.

I was spoilt by being taught by marvellous, hardworking, top Hollywood animators and I had a few shocks when I worked with some of the lesser mortals.

Here's how a Hollywood hack animator might duck the work:

A character enters screen left . . . and goes out screen right.



To walk across the screen it's going to take 4 seconds – 96 frames. So the animator does drawing number 1 and drawing number 96 and gives this chart to the assistant and goes off to play tennis. He wanders back in next day and blames the assistant for the terrible result.

This may seem far-fetched, but it does happen.

Moving on – we know the extremes and the breakdowns are crucial to the result, but the inbetweens are also very important.

The genie in the computer creates perfect inbetweens, but for 'drawing' people – getting good inbetweens can be a real problem.

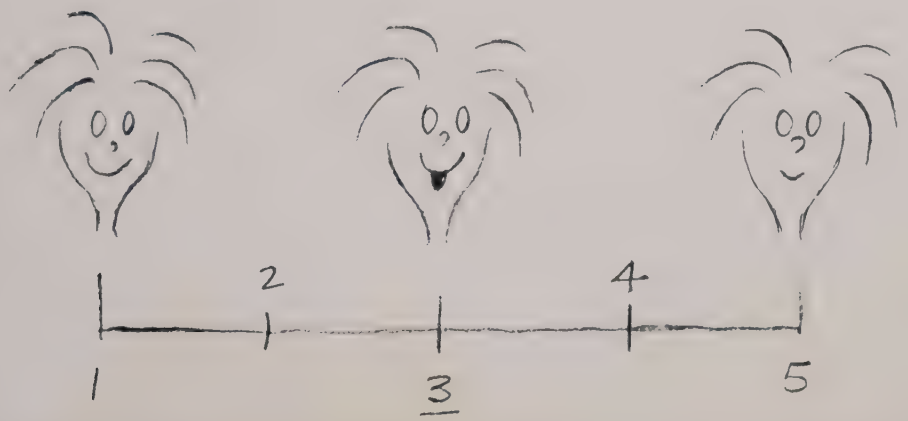
Grim Natwick constantly intoned, 'Bad inbetweens will kill the finest animation.'

In 1934, when the novice Milt Kahl – having just started work at Disney – first met the great Bill Tytla, he told Tytla that he was working in the inbetweening department. Tytla barked, 'Oh yeah? And how many scenes have you screwed up lately?'

Like most people starting out, I did all my own inbetweens. Then I got my first 'official' job animating for UPA in London. They gave me an inexperienced assistant who drew well, but this is what happened:

We had a simple character of the period, a little girl called Aurora who was advertising Kia Ora orange drink. 'Where's the Kia Ora, Aurora?'

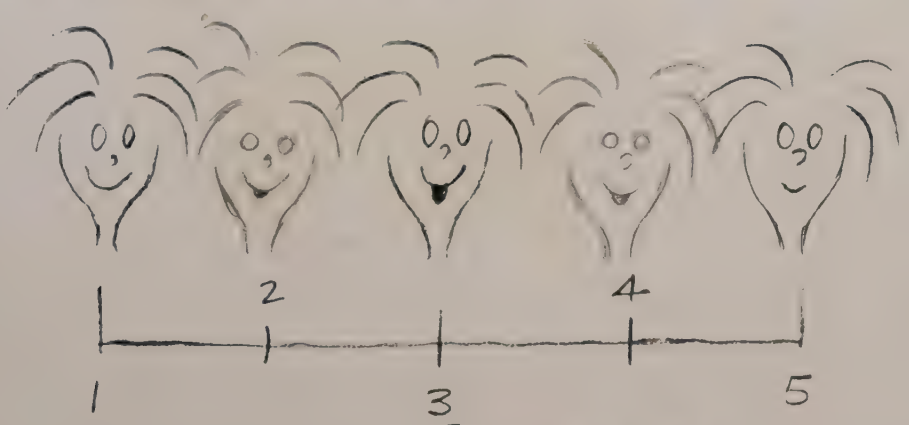
She looked like this.
I drew drawings 1 and 3 and 5, my assistant put in inbetweens 2 and 4.



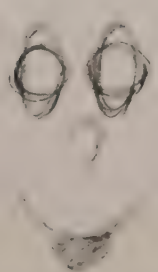
He had ambitions as a designer and he didn't like egg-shaped eyes like this:

He liked circular eyes like *this*:

So the inbetweens all went in like this:



The result on the screen, of course, is this:

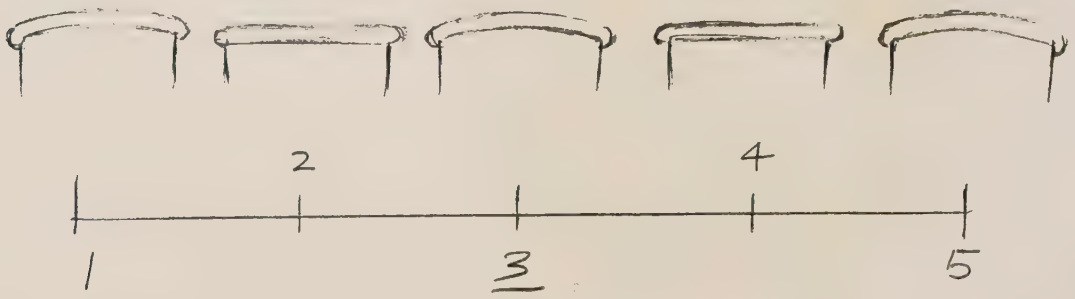


Wobble, wobble, wobble.

As is common in production when racing to meet the deadline, we end up hiring anybody off the street who can hold a pencil. And this is what happens:

Say a live actor is holding an animated coffee cup –

The inbetweener from the streets doesn't understand simple perspective – so the curved top of the cup gets put in *straight* on the inbetweens.

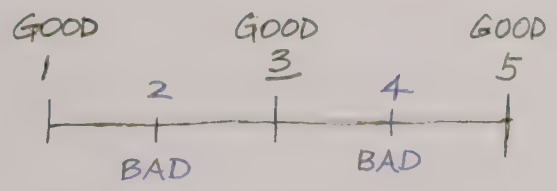


Result: 'Frying tonight.' Wobble, wobble, wobble.

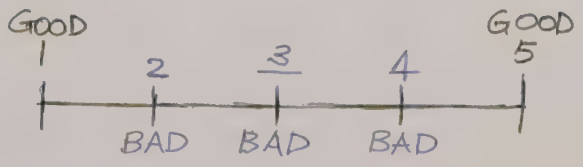
And if it's this wobbly with a simple thing, just imagine what it's going to be like when we are dealing with complex drawings. All the shapes will be doing St Vitus's dance. So the assistants' or inbetweener's job is really *volume control*.

A lot of assistants worry about the quality of their line – matching the animator's line quality. I always say never mind the line quality – just get the volumes right. Keeping the shapes and volumes consistent = volume control! When the thing is coloured in, it's the shapes that we see – it's the shapes that dominate.

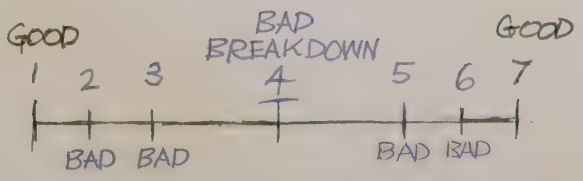
Whenever we were under the gun and short of skilled helpers, we found if we outnumbered the dodgy inbetweens by three good drawings to two bad ones – we just scraped through with an acceptable result.



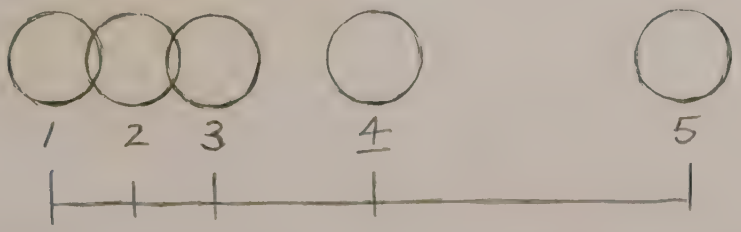
When we only had two good ones with three bad ones in between them – the bad ones outnumbered the good ones and the result was lousy.



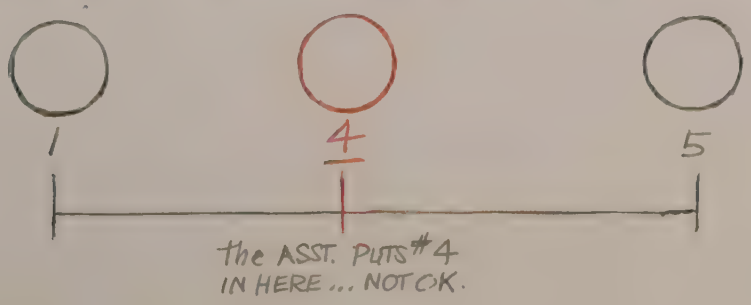
If the breakdown or passing position is wrong, all the inbetweens will be wrong too.

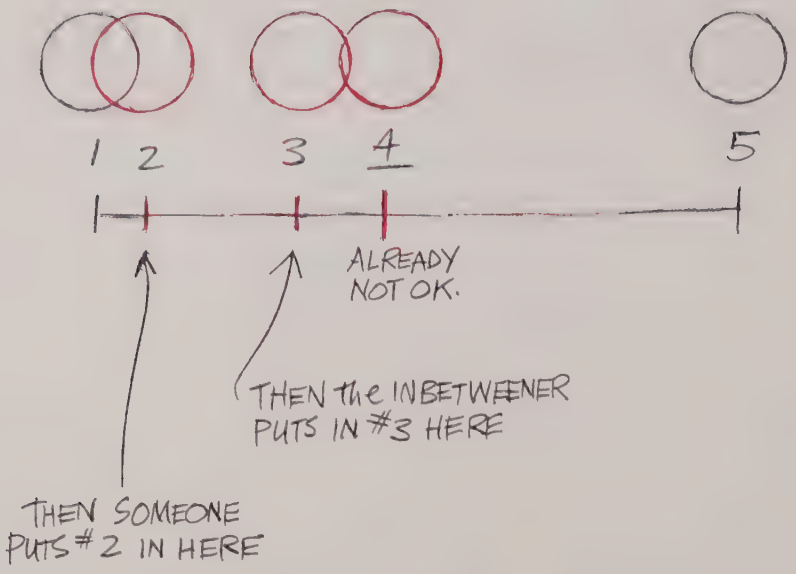


When we're not accurate, here's what happens: The animator supplies a chart and wants equal inbetweens. This is putting them in the right place.



But let's say the assistant puts the breakdown or passing position slightly in the wrong place –





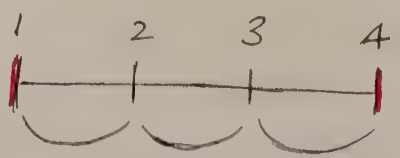
So: Number 4 is wrong.
3 compounds it.
2 compounds it more.

And instead of ending up with fluid actions like this –

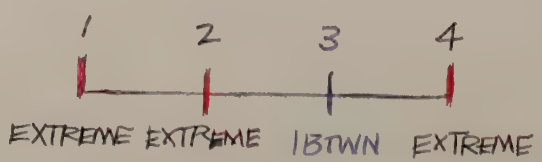
– we'll get this all-over-the-place kind of thing.

One thing an animator should *never* do is to leave his assistant to make 'thirds'.

If we need to divide the chart into thirds –

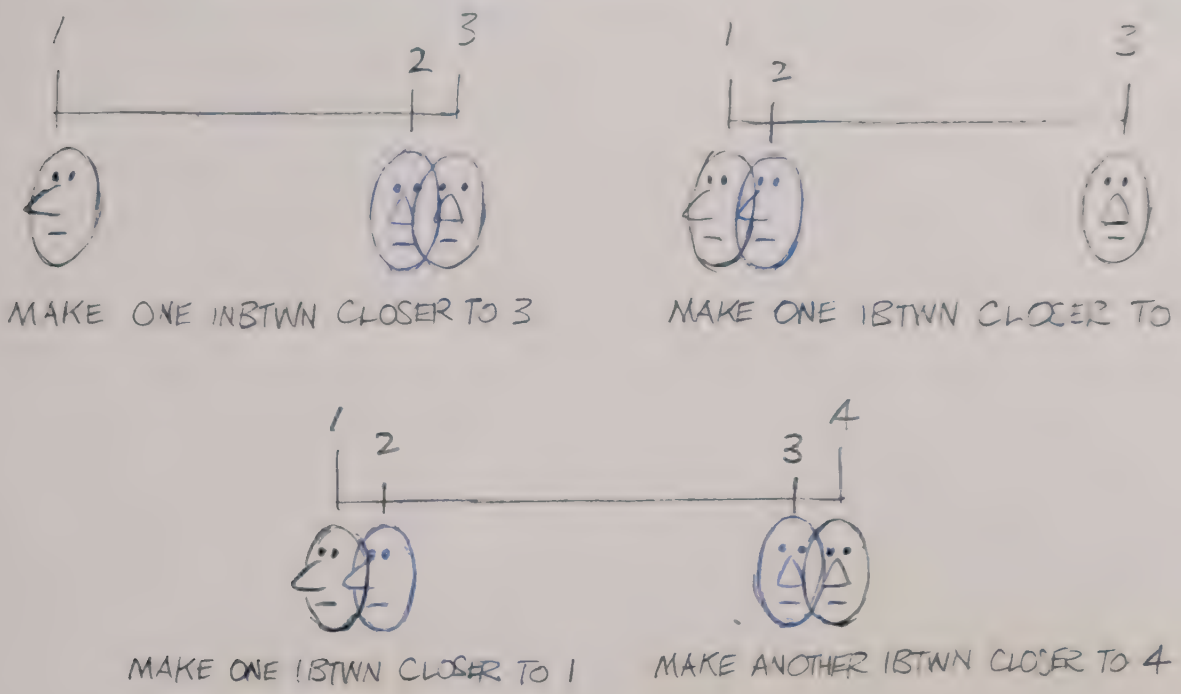


– the animator should make one of the inbetween positions himself –



– in order to leave the assistant to put in the remaining position in the middle.

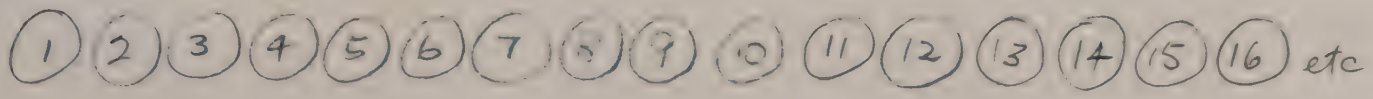
Leaving thirds to the assistant is cruel and is asking for trouble – but it's fair to make a chart like this, calling for an inbetween very close to an extreme:



KEYS

And now we come to the Great Circling Disease. For some reason, animators just *love* circles. We love to circle the numbers on our drawings. Maybe it's because, as old Grim Natwick said, 'Curves are beautiful to watch.' Or maybe it's just a creatively playful thing.

I once worked with a Polish animator who circled every single drawing he made!



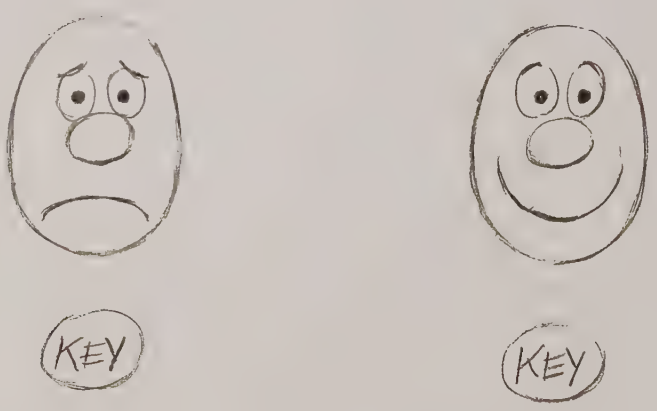
'Is animation, man! Circle! Circle! Circle!'

You'll notice that so far I haven't circled *any* extreme positions. In this clear working system and method developed by the 1940s, the extremes are *not* circled, but the key drawing *is*. The drawings which *are* circled are the 'keys'.

Question: What is a key?

Answer: The storytelling drawing. The drawing or drawings that show what's happening in the shot.

If a sad man sees or hears something that makes him happy, we'd need just two positions to tell the story.

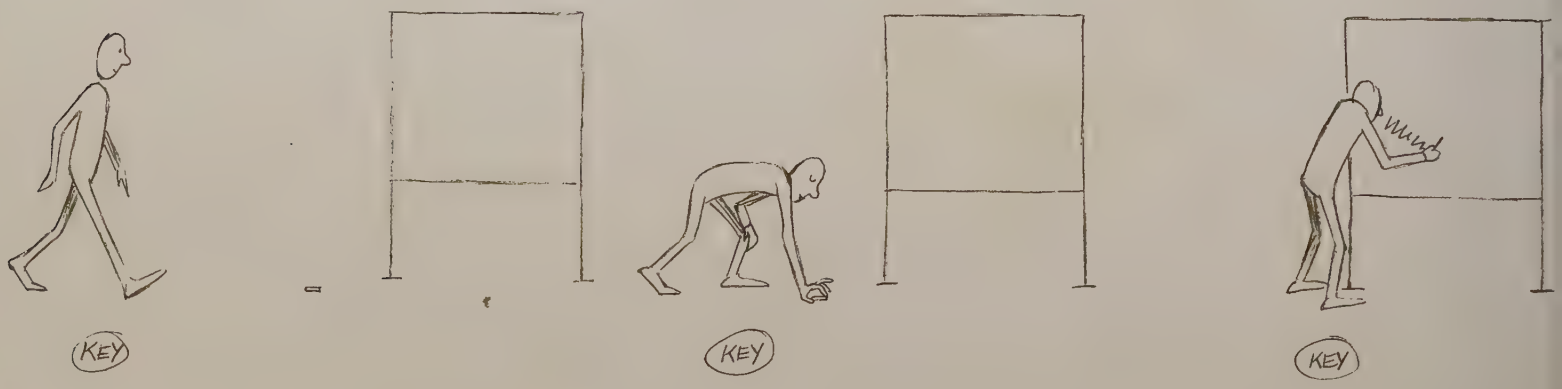


These are the keys and we circle them.

These are the drawings we make first. How we go interestingly from one to the other is what the rest of this book is about.

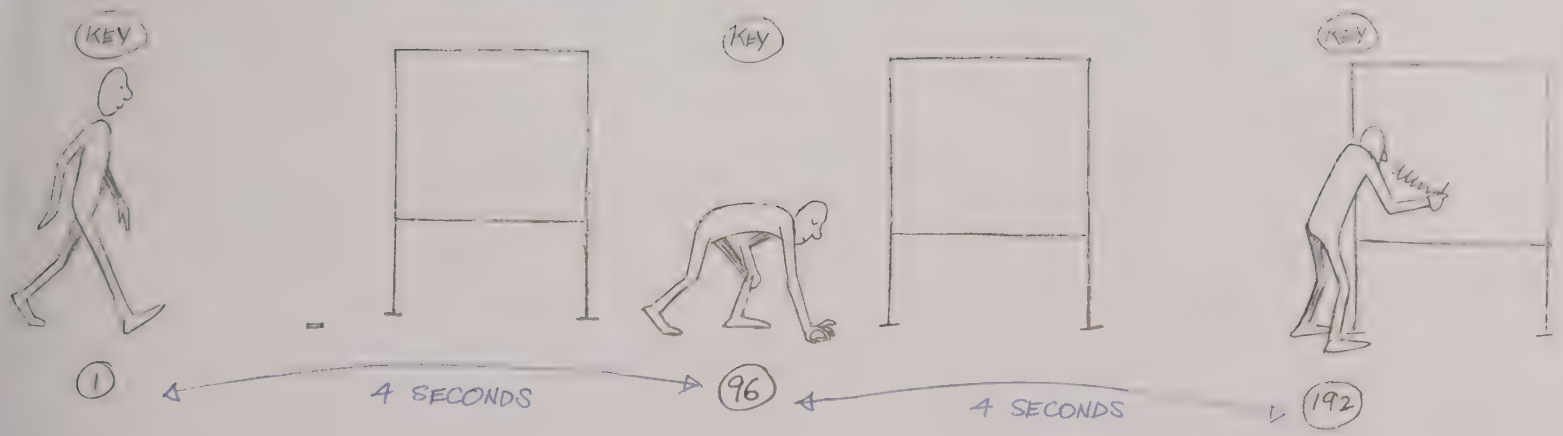
Take a more complex example:

Let's say a man walks over to a board, picks up a piece of chalk from the floor and writes something on the board.



If it was a comic strip or if we wanted to show what's happening on a storyboard, we'd need only three positions. We'll keep it simple and use stick figures so we don't get lost in detail. These three positions become our keys and we circle them.

The keys tell the story. All the other drawings or positions we'll have to make next to bring the thing to life will be the extremes (not circled): the foot 'contacts', the passing positions or breakdowns and inbetweens.



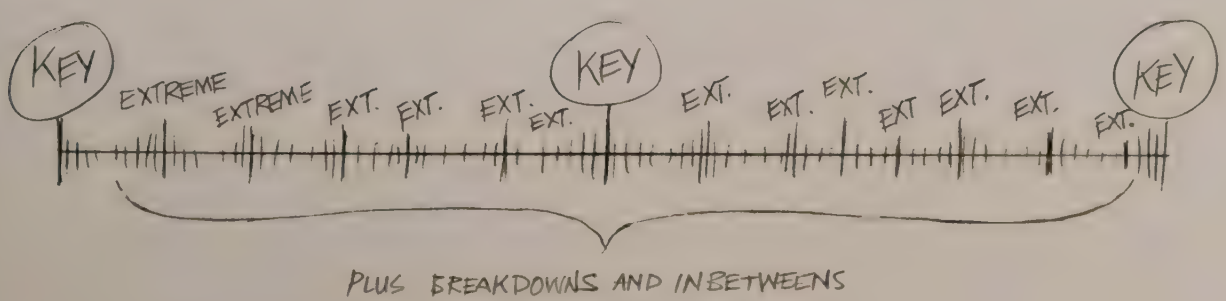
If we time this action out with a stopwatch, we might find that our first key position at the start will be drawing 1. Say it takes him 4 seconds to walk over and contact the chalk on the floor – we'd circle the second key drawing as 96. And when he's stood up, stepped over and written his stuff, it might take another 4 seconds – so our third key could be the last drawing in the shot – 192. The whole shot would then take 8 seconds.

Of course, we don't need to time it all out first, but before we dive into animatorland with all that stuff, we have to clearly set out with our keys what it is we're going to *do* – and we can test our three drawings on film, video or computer.

We haven't dealt with how he or she moves – whether the character is old or young, fat or thin, tall or short, worried or happy, beautiful or ugly, rich or poor, cautious or confident, scholarly or uneducated, quick or slow, repressed or uninhibited, limping or fit, calm or desperate, lazy or energetic, decrepit or shaking with the palsy, drunk or frightened, or whether it's a cold-hearted villain or a sympathetic person – in other words all the 'acting' stuff, plus all the trimmings – clothes, facial expressions etc.

But what we *have* done is made it very plain what *happens* in the shot before we start.

If we were to make a diagrammatic chart of the whole scene, it would end up looking something like this:



Important animators are called key animators, and word got round that they just draw the keys – anything that they draw is a key – and slaves fill in the rest according to the little charts provided by the key animators. Wrong. A key animator is simply like a key executive – an important one.

Many good animators call all their extremes 'keys' – I sure used to. But it makes life so much clearer and easier if you separate the keys from the extremes. Actually, I never heard Ken Harris ever call a drawing a key, but he would say, 'Draw *that* one first. *That's* an important drawing.' And it was a key, really.

I've worked every system, good, bad or half-baked, and experience has convinced me that it's best – even crucial – to separate the storytelling keys from the extremes and all the other stuff. (Of course, as in our example above, the three keys will also function as extremes.) Separating them out stops us getting tangled up and missing the point of the shot, as we vanish into a myriad of drawings and positions.

There may be many keys in a scene – or maybe just one or two – it depends on what it is and the length of the scene. Its whatever it takes to put it over, to read what's to occur.

You can spend time on these keys.

I remember once visiting Frank Thomas and he was drawing a cat. 'Dammit,' he said. 'I've been working all day on this damn drawing – trying to get this expression right.'

I was shocked. All day! Wow! That was the first time I ever saw anyone working so hard on a single drawing. How was he ever going to get the scene done? Finally, the penny dropped. 'Of course, stupid, its his *key*!' It's the most important thing in the scene! He's got to get *that* right!

And it was encouraging to see anyone that great struggling to get it right!

3 WAYS TO ANIMATE

1. The natural way, called STRAIGHT AHEAD

We just start drawing and see what happens – like a kid drawing in the page corners of a schoolbook – stick the numbers on afterwards.

Disney director–animator Woolie Reitherman said, 'When I didn't know what I was doing in an action, I always went straight ahead. I'd just start on ones. Half the time I didn't know what I was doing. To me, it's fun. You find out something you wouldn't have found out otherwise.'

ADVANTAGES

- WE GET A NATURAL FLOW OF FLUID, SPONTANEOUS ACTION.
- IT HAS The VITALITY OF IMPROVISATION.
- IT'S VERY 'CREATIVE' - WE GO WITH The FLOW - TAKING ALL OF The ACTION AS IT COMES ALONG.
- OFTEN The UNCONSCIOUS MIND STARTS TO KICK IN: LIKE AUTHORS SAYING THEIR CHARACTER TELLS THEM WHAT'S GOING TO HAPPEN.
- IT CAN PRODUCE SURPRISES - 'MAGIC'.
- IT'S FUN.

DISADVANTAGES

- THINGS START TO WANDER.
- TIME STRETCHES and The SHOT GETS LONGER and LONGER.
- CHARACTERS GROW and SHRINK.
- WE CAN TEND TO MISS The POINT OF The SHOT and NOT ARRIVE AT The RIGHT PLACE AT The RIGHT TIME
- The DIRECTOR HATES US BECAUSE HE/SHE CAN'T SEE WHAT'S HAPPENING.
- IT'S LOTS OF WORK TO CLEAN UP The MESS AFTERWARDS - and IT'S HARD TO ASSIST.
- IT'S EXPENSIVE - The PRODUCER HATES US.
- IT CAN BE HARD ON The NERVES - MAD ARTIST and NERVOUS BREAK-DOWN TIME, AS WE CREATIVELY LEAP IN and THRASH AROUND IN The VOID - ESPECIALLY WITH LOOMING DEADLINES.

2. The planned way, called POSE TO POSE

First we decide what are the most important drawings – the storytelling drawings, the keys – and put them in. Then we decide what are the next most important positions that have to be in the scene. These are the extremes and we put them in – and any other important poses. Then we work out how to go from one pose to another – finding the nicest transition between two poses. These are the breakdown or passing positions. Then we can clinically make clear charts to cushion and ease in and out of the positions and add any finishing touches or indications for the assistant.

To illustrate how effective the pose to pose method is, the brilliant Disney art director–designer Ken Anderson told me that when he was making layout drawings of characters for animators working on *Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs*, he drew lots and lots of key poses of Grumpy for each shot. Ken's drawings were then given to one of the Grumpy animators. Ken found out later that the guy just put charts on the drawings, handed them to his assistants and went off to lunch, and took the credit, for what in effect, was Ken's fine animation.

ADVANTAGES

- WE GET CLARITY.
- The POINT OF The SCENE IS NICE and CLEAR.
- IT'S STRUCTURED, CALCULATED, LOGICAL.
- WE CAN GET NICE DRAWINGS and CLEARLY READABLE POSITIONS.
- IT'S IN ORDER – The RIGHT THINGS HAPPEN AT The RIGHT TIME and IN The RIGHT PLACE IN The OVERALL TIME ALLOTTED.
- The DIRECTOR LOVES US.
- IT'S EASY TO ASSIST.
- IT'S A QUICK WAY TO WORK and FREES US UP TO DO MORE SCENES.
- The PRODUCER LOVES US.
- WE KEEP SANE, OUR HAIR ISN'T STANDING ON END.
- WE EARN MORE MONEY AS WE ARE SEEN TO BE RESPONSIBLE PEOPLE and CLEARLY NOT MAD ARTISTS.

PRODUCERS HAVE TO DELIVER ON TIME and ON BUDGET, SO BRILLIANCE IS NOT REWARDED AS MUCH AS RELIABILITY. I SPEAK FROM EXPERIENCE WORKING BOTH SIDES OF the FENCE. THEY DON'T PAY US FOR 'MAGIC'. THEY PAY US FOR DELIVERY.

DISADVANTAGES

- BUT – AND IT'S A BIG BUT: WE MISS the FLOW.
- The ACTION CAN BE A BIT CHOPPY A BIT UNNATURAL.
- AND IF WE CORRECT THAT BY ADDING A LOT OF OVERLAPPING ACTION TO IT – IT CAN GO EASILY The OTHER WAY and BE RUBBERY and SQUISHY – EQUALLY UNNATURAL.
- IT CAN BE TOO LITERAL - A BIT COLD-BLOODED. NO SURPRISES.
- WHERE'S the MAGIC?

So it's pretty obvious the best way to work is going to be:

3. The COMBINATION OF STRAIGHT AHEAD and POSE TO POSE

First we plan out what we're going to do in small thumbnail sketches. (It's also a good idea to have done this with the other two methods.)

Then we make the big drawings – the storytelling drawings, the keys. Then we put in any other important drawings that *have* to be there, like anticipations or where hands or feet contact things – the extremes. Now we have the structure, just as we had with the pose-to-pose system.

But now we use these keys and important extremes as *guides* for things and places we want to aim at. After you get your overall thing – go again. *Do one thing at a time.* We'll work straight ahead on top of these guideposts, improvising freely as we go along.

We'll do *several* straight ahead runs on different parts – taking the most important thing first. We may have to change and revise parts of the keys and extremes as we go along, rubbing bits off and re-drawing or replacing them.

So: we make a straight ahead run on the primary thing.

Then take a secondary thing and do a straight ahead run on that.

Then take the third thing and work straight ahead on that.

Then the fourth thing, etc.

Then add the hair or tail or drapery or flapping bits at the end.

ADVANTAGES

— WORKING THIS WAY COMBINES the STRUCTURED PLANNING OF WORKING FROM POSE TO POSE WITH the NATURAL FREE FLOW OF the STRAIGHT AHEAD APPROACH.

— IT'S A BALANCE BETWEEN PLANNING and SPONTANEITY.

— IT'S A BALANCE BETWEEN COLD BLOODEDNESS and PASSION.

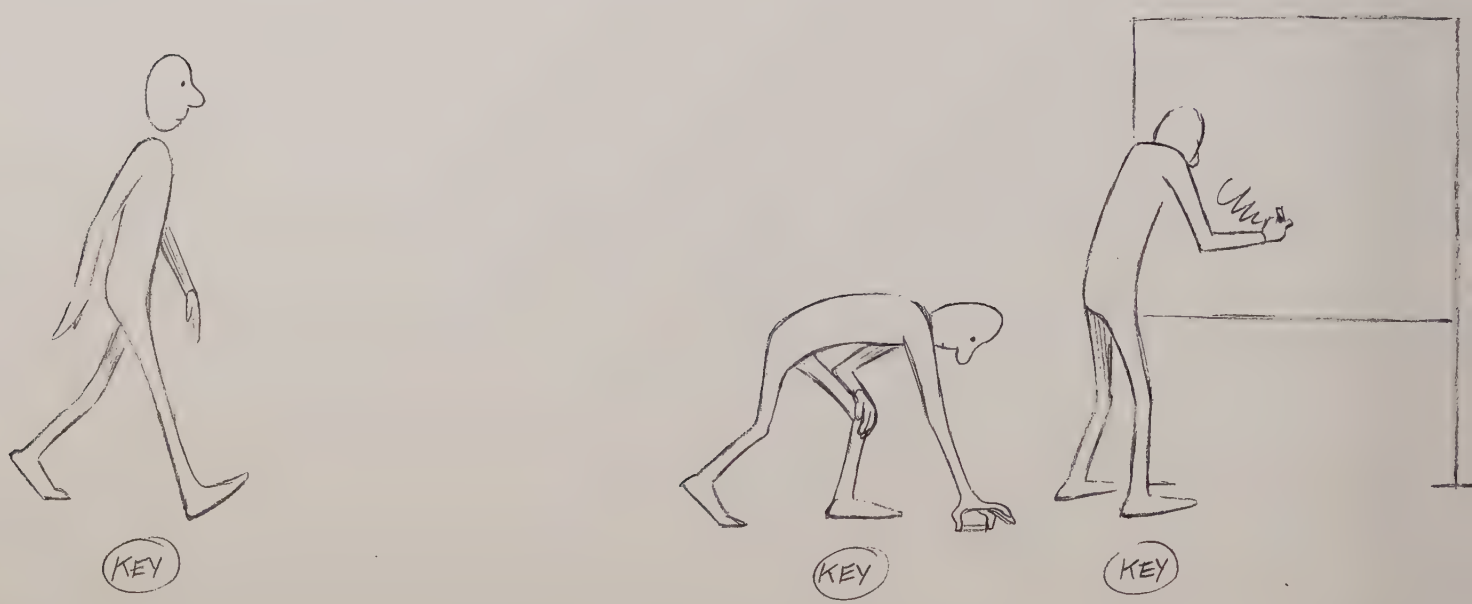
DISADVANTAGES

— NONE THAT I KNOW OF...

Let's take our man going over to the blackboard again.

What do I do first?

Answer: The keys – the storytelling drawings or positions that *have* to be there to show what's happening. Put it where you can see it . . . so it *reads*.



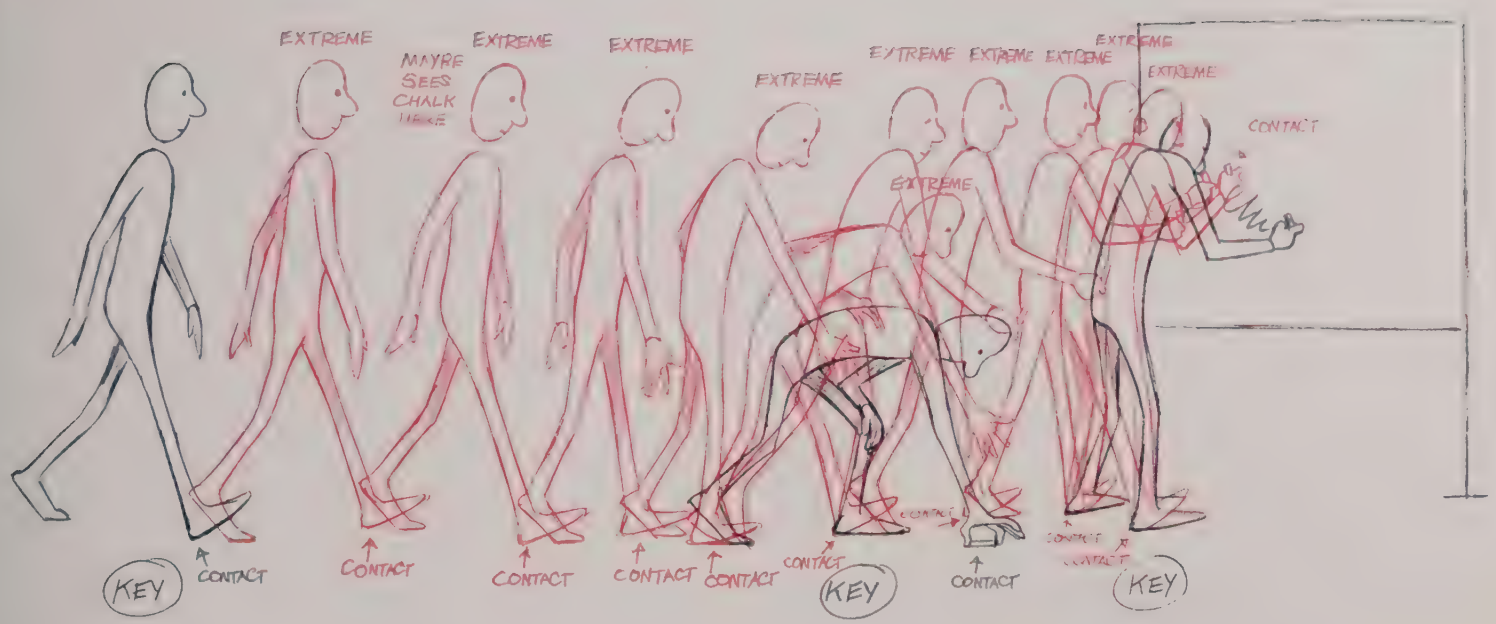
What do we do next?

Answer: Any other drawings that *have* to be in the shot. Obviously, he has to take steps to get over to the chalk – so we make the 'contact' positions on the steps where the feet are just touching the ground.

There's no weight on them yet – the heel is just contacting the ground. As with the fingers just contacting the chalk – they haven't closed on the chalk yet.

If we act all this out, we might find he takes five steps to get to the chalk and bend down. I notice that when I act it out, I automatically pull up my left pant leg as I bend down, then I put my hand on my knee before my other hand contacts the chalk. I would make an extreme where the hand just contacts the pant leg – before it pulls up the pants.

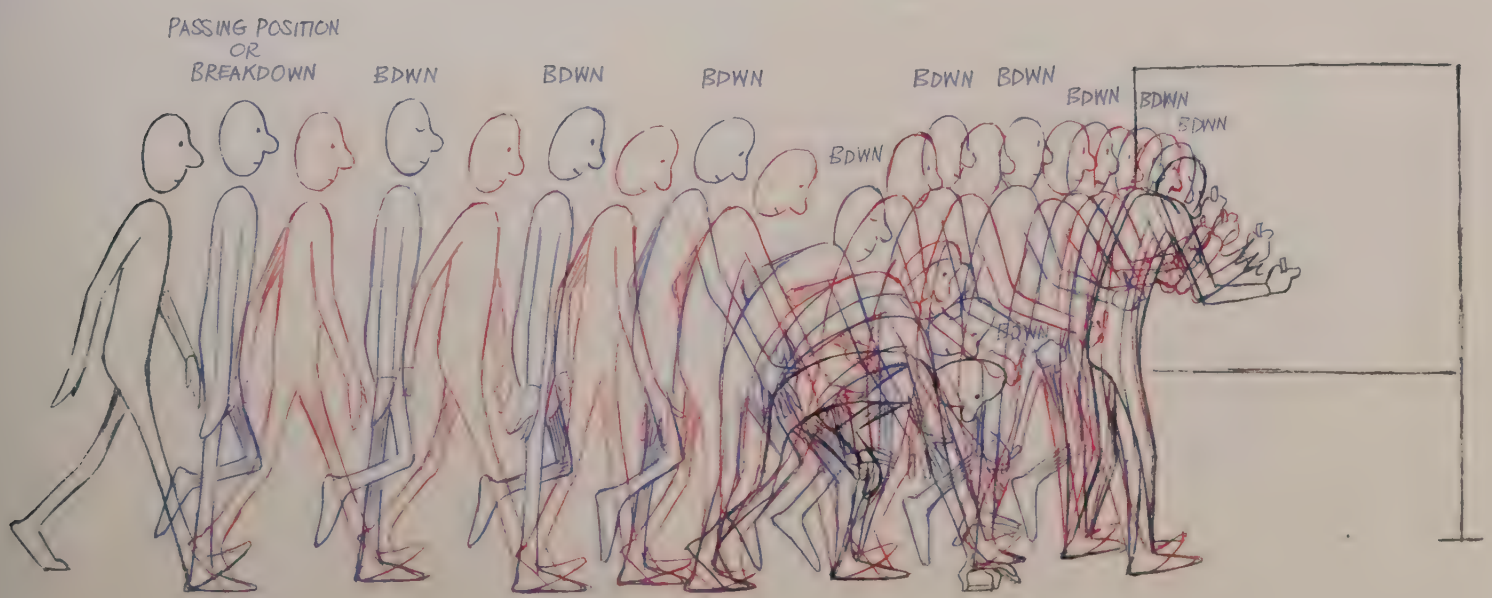
These will be our extremes. We're working rough, sketching things in lightly – although we probably have made rather good drawings of the keys. (I haven't here, because I'm trying to keep it simple, for clarity).



We could act it out, timing the steps and putting numbers on the extremes or we could leave the numbering till later. I would probably put numbers on it now and test it on the video to see how the timing feels as his steps get shorter – and make any adjustments.

What next?

We'll break it down, lightly sketching in our passing positions or 'breakdowns'. We won't get fancy about it now – the fancy stuff comes later in the book. For now, we'll just make the head and body raise up slightly on the passing positions of the steps – like it does on a normal walk.



We'd probably have numbers on the drawings by now, and when we test it, we've got three or four positions for every second – so it's easy to see what our timing is. And to make any adjustments. And if the director wants to see how we're doing – it looks almost animated.

Now we'll make straight ahead runs on the different parts – using our extremes and breakdown positions as a guide – and altering them, or parts of them, if we need to as we go along. Take one thing at a time and animate it straight ahead.

Maybe he's mumbling to himself, or maybe he's talking – maybe his head just wobbles around with self love. Whatever it is, we'll treat it as a separate straight-ahead run, working on top of what we already have.

We'll make another straight-ahead run on the arms and hands. Maybe they'll swing freely in a figure eight or a pendulum movement; or maybe they hardly move before he reaches for the chalk. Maybe he pulls up his pants as he moves along – or scratches or snaps his fingers nervously, or cracks his knuckles. When we arrive at our key, we might rub out the arm and alter it to suit our arm action. Or delay his head. Or raise it early to look at the board.

We can do lots of interesting things with the legs and feet, but for now we just want them to function smoothly. (I'm avoiding the problem of weight at this stage because the up and down on the head and body that we have at the moment will be adequate for now, and the figure won't just float along.)

When he writes on the board, we'll treat that as a separate run. If he has long hair or a pony tail, we'll do that as a separate straight-ahead run. His clothes could be a separate run, baggy pant legs following along. If he'd grown a tail, that would be the last thing we'd put on.

I've shown these things in different colours to be as clear as possible. In my own work I sometimes use different coloured pencils for the separate runs – then pull it all together in black at the end. I was delighted to find that the great Bill Tytla often used colours for the separate bits, then pulled them all together afterwards.

To recap:
Having made the keys, put in the extremes, then put in the breakdowns or passing positions. Now that we've got our main thing – we go again, taking one thing at a time.

First, the most important thing.

Then, the secondary thing.

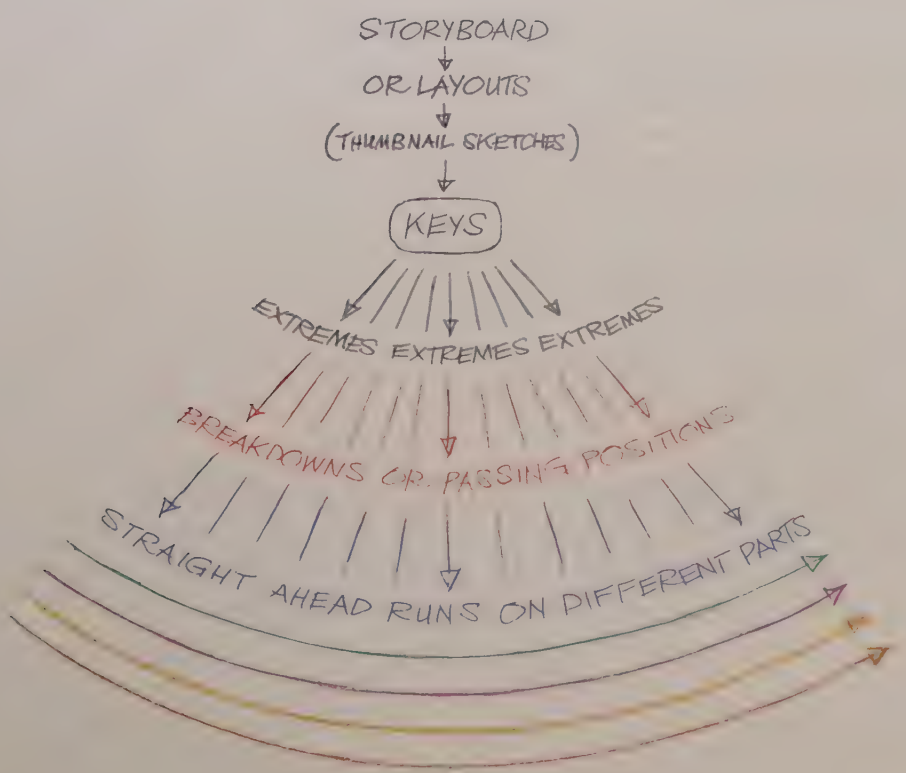
Then, the third thing.

Then, the fourth thing etc.

Then, add any flapping bits, drapery, hair, fat, breasts, tails etc.

The general principle is:
After you've got your first overall thing – go again. Do one thing at a time (testing as you go along). Then pull it all together and polish it up. Make clear charts for the assistant to follow up or do it all yourself.

It's like this:



Of course, you can work any way you want. There are no rules – only methods. You might feel like ignoring all of this and just work straight ahead or work from pose-to-pose, or start one way and switch to the other – why not?

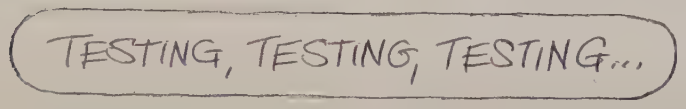
What's to stop us re-inventing the wheel? Lots of people are busy doing it. But on the other hand, why bother?

This method of going at it was developed through concentrated trial and error by geniuses and it's a wonderful basis on which to operate. Having used just about every approach going – including no system – I've found this is the best working method by far. Get it in your blood-stream and it frees you to express yourself. Use this technique to get past the technique!

Milt Kahl worked this way. Near the end of his life I told him, 'Now that I've been working the same way, I really do think that – apart from your talent, brain and skill – fifty per cent of the excellence in your work comes from your working method: the *way* you think about it, and the *way* you go about it.'

'Well . . .' he said thoughtfully, 'you're right. Hey, you've gotten smart!' Milt often told me that by the time he'd plotted everything out this way, he'd pretty much animated the scene – even including the lip sync. Then he'd finish putting numbers on the drawings, add bits and make little clinical charts for the assistant – easing things in and out. He complained he never really got to animate because when he'd finished plotting out all the important stuff – it *was* animated. He'd already done it.

I rest my case.



I always use the video to test my stuff at each stage – even the first scribbles – time them and test them. In the 1970s and 80s, Art Babbitt used to get mad at me for it – 'Goddamit, you're using that video as a crutch!' 'Yes,' I'd say, 'but is it not true that Disney first instituted pencil tests and that's what changed and developed animation? And don't you always say that pencil tests are our rehearsals?'

Assenting grunt.

'And what's the difference between rushing a test in to the cameraman at the end of the day when he's trying to get home, and if he does stay to shoot it, hang around the next day till the lab delivers the print and mid-morning interrupt the editor, who's busy cutting in the main shots, and then finally see your test – when we can use today's video and get a test in ten minutes?'

Art would turn away, 'I am not a Luddite.' (Machine wreckers protesting the Industrial Revolution.)

Whenever Ken Harris had to animate a walk, he would sketch out a quick walk cycle test and we'd shoot it, pop the negative in a bucket of developer, pull out the wet negative (black film with white lines on it), make a loop and run it on the moviola.

'I've done hundreds of walks,' Ken would say, 'all kinds of walks, but I still want to get a test of my basic thing before I start to build on it.'

Bill Tytla said, 'If you do a piece of animation and run over it enough times, you must see what's wrong with it.'

I actually think the video and computer have saved animation!

Certainly the success of *Who Framed Roger Rabbit* contributed substantially to the renaissance of animation, and having the video to test everything as we went along was crucial to us. We had a lot of talented but inexperienced young people, and with a handful of lead animators we were able to say, 'Take that drawing out, change that one, and put more drawings in here' etc. This enabled us to keep improving everything as we raced along, so we were able to collectively hit the target.

Milt always said he would never bother to look at his tests. 'Hell, I know what it looks like – I *did* it!' He would wait to see several of his shots cut together in a sequence but only to see 'how it's getting over'.

But that was his way. I have never reached that stage and probably never will. I test everything as I go along and it really helps. We're building these performances, so why not test our foundations and structure and decorations as we proceed? And since it reveals our mistakes – mistakes are very important since we *do* learn from our mistakes – we make our corrections and improvements as we build.

Of course, at this stage I wouldn't have a problem routining my way through a job without testing – but why?

The video or computer is there, so let's use it.

An interesting thing I've noticed is that when animators get older their perception of time slows up. They move slower and animate things slower. The young guys zip stuff around. So, the video is a useful corrective to us old bastards. And young ones when it's *too* fast.

Before we dive into walks and all the articulation stuff, there are some other important camera techniques we should know about.

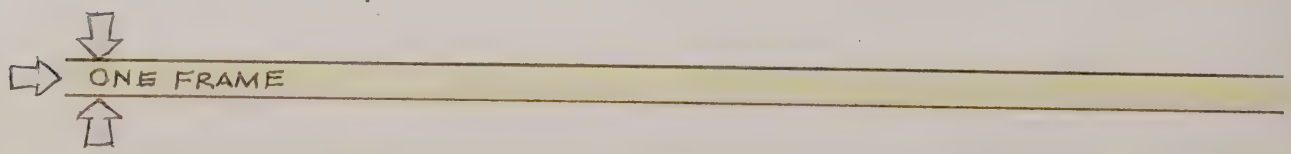
The X-SHEET

On the next page is a 'classic' exposure sheet called the X-sheet or dope sheet – the first sight of which is guaranteed to put any beginner or artist off the whole business. When I was a kid and first saw one of these I thought, 'Oh no, I don't want to be an animator anymore. I'll just make the designs for other people to move around.'

Actually, it's awfully simple when you make friends with it.

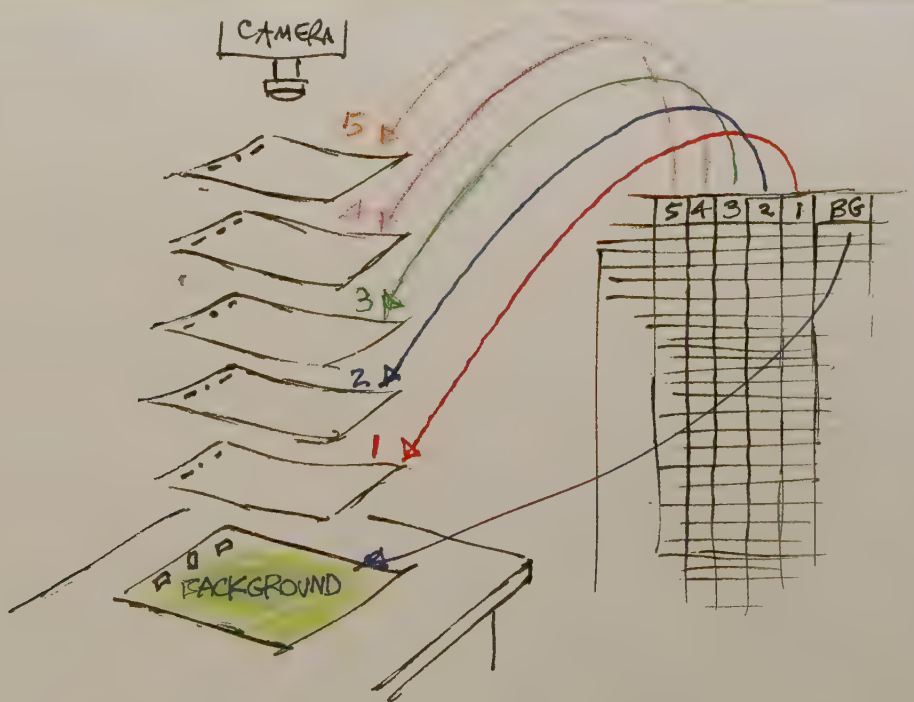
It's just a simple and efficient form where animators write down the action and dialogue (or music beats) for a scene or shot – plus the information for shooting.

Each horizontal line represents a frame of film.



The columns 1 to 5 show five cel levels of animation we can use if we need them. (Usually you need just one or two.)

ACTION	DIAL	5	4	3	2	1	BG	CAMERA



The ACTION column is for us to plan out our timing – how long we want things to take.

The DIAL column is for the measurement of the pre-recorded dialogue and sometimes the breakdown of music into beats etc.

This 'classic' X-sheet is designed to hold 4 seconds of action (1 second = 24 frames).

It has darker lines to show the footage, which is 6 feet of film (1 foot = 16 frames). Many animators always number the footage going down the page.

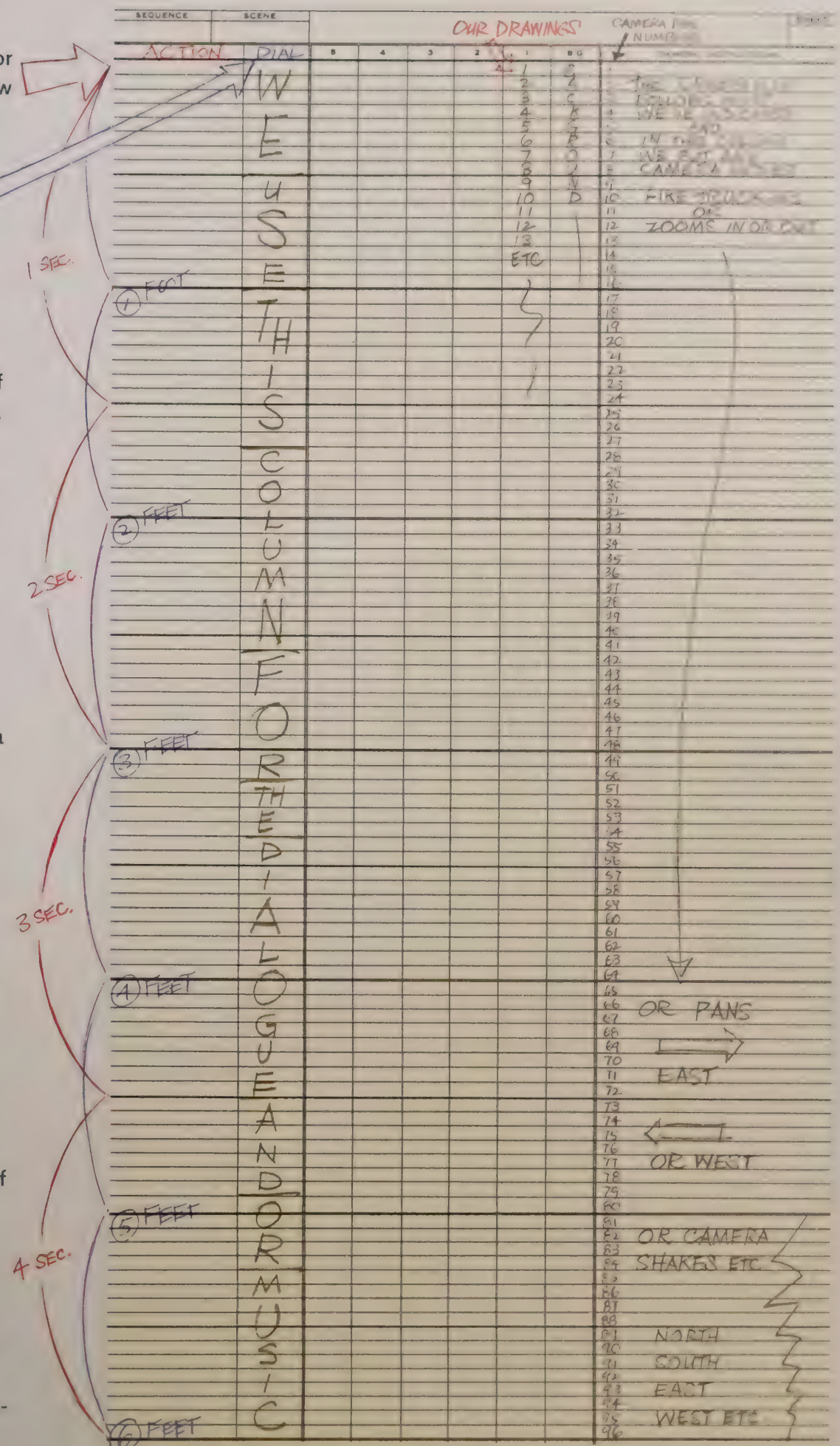
I've also written in the camera dial numbers – the frame numbers in the camera column.

Some animators time things out by thinking in seconds. Others think in feet = 2/3 of a second.

Ken Harris thought in feet and would tap the end of his pencil every foot. I think in both seconds and feet, but seconds is easier for me.

Also, you can think in 1/2 seconds = 12 frames to a half second. That's march time, which is quite easy.

(Computer animators please bear with me here – you obviously have your own systems of timing.)



We'll plan out the action using the action column.

Ken Harris always said, 'Come on, now, you can have fun doing the drawings later, but do the important part first – time it all out.'

So we'd use a metronome or a stopwatch and I'd act it out several times, and we'd mark down on the sheet where things would happen.

Let's take our man walking over to pick up the chalk:

We've got him taking five steps to reach the chalk.

When I act it out, the first two steps are leisurely – 16 frames long (2/3 of a second).

Then during step 3 he sees the chalk, and this step is slightly quicker – 14 frames.

His fourth step is quickest – 12 frames.

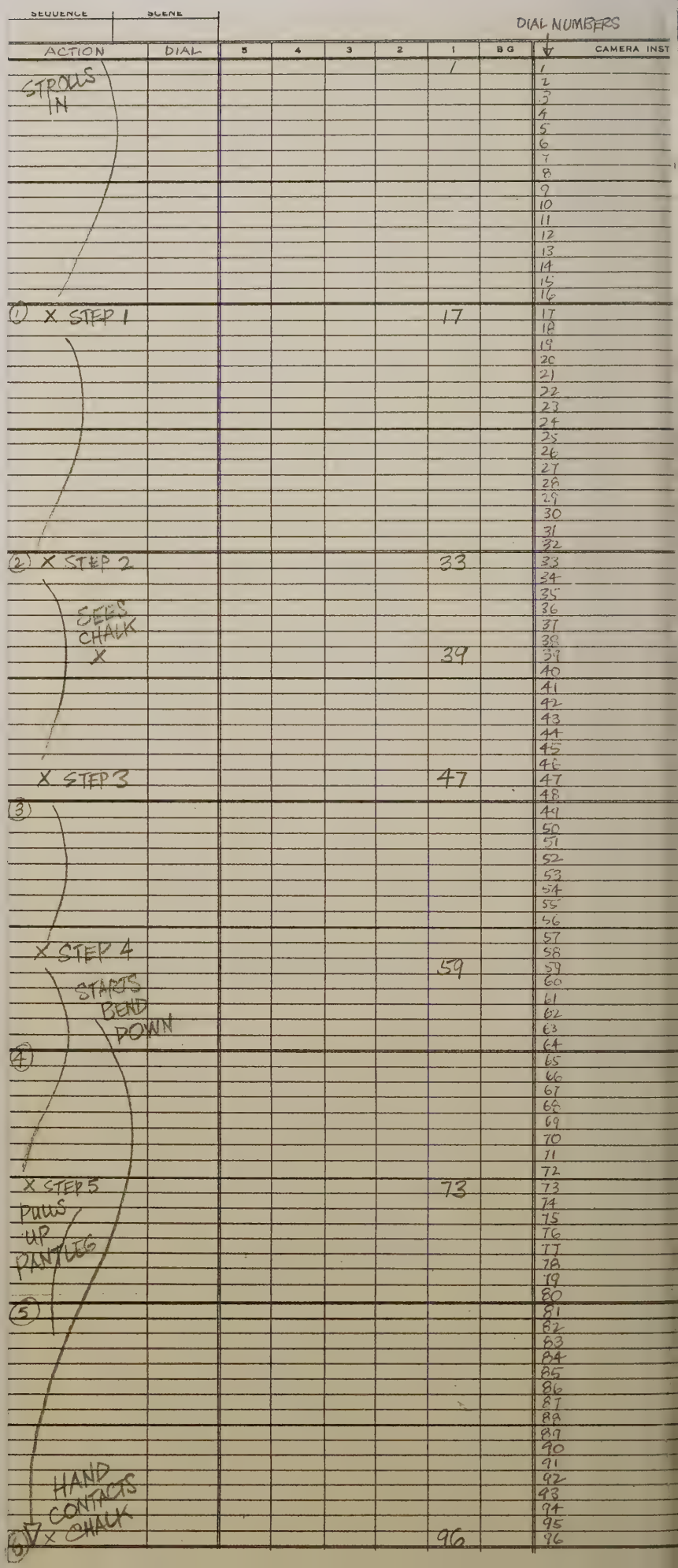
On step 5 he slows up slightly – 14 frames and he's already started bending down, which takes over 2 feet till his hand contacts the chalk.

I've got him tucking up his pant leg above the knee as he goes down – which takes 8 or 10 frames.

Of course, we can change all this as we work, but this becomes our guide and the points to aim for as we go along.

Now we can put the numbers of these drawings on the page as I've done here.

Incidentally, although numbers 1 and 96 are keys and we've circled them, we don't circle the numbers on the X-sheet.



The five available 'cel' levels on this X-sheet are there so we can treat each character or element separately.

Why have different levels – why not draw everything on one level?

Answer: You can, but what do you do if you want to change the timing on one or two parts of the action and leave the other bits as they are? However, it's a good idea to try to keep to just one or two levels for simplicity.

If we wish to use all five levels, start with the main action on level 1. Say a man walks in from one side of the screen and a cat walks in from the other. We animate our main action man on level 1, and the cat on level 2, adding a 'C' after the cat numbers: 1-C, 2-C, 3-C etc., so as not to confuse it with the man drawing. The man drawings, or main action, don't need an identifying letter.

If a woman passes in front of them, we'd put her on level 3, adding a 'W' behind her numbers.

If a truck was to stop in front of them, we'd use level 4 for the truck and add a 'T' to the truck drawings.

If it's raining, we'd put the rain drawings on level 5, adding an 'R' after the numbers.

The X-sheet would look something like this:

RAIN TRUCK WOMAN CAT MAN

ACTION	DIAL	5	4	3	2	1	B G	CAMERA INSTRUCTIONS
		1-R	1-T	1-W	1-C	1	BG# 1	1
		2	2	2	2	2		2
		3	3	3	3	3		3
		4	4	4	4	4		4
		5	5	5	5	5		5
TRUCK X		6	6-T	6	6	6		6
STOPS		7		7	7	7		7
		8		8	8	8		8
		etc	etc	etc	etc	etc		9

This system obviously enables the cameraman to stack his levels correctly – working from the bottom up – and take a frame of film with all the numbers across matching the dial number on his camera.

But there is one very important thing here:

ARE YOU A MEMBER OF K·I·S·S?

Keep It Simple, Stupid!

Use simple numerical sequences! Animation is complicated enough without making it any worse.

My years in England taught me that the English just love complexity. A very brilliant friend, who is a top Oxford mathematician, called me up and said, 'We're about to penetrate your principality.' I said, 'You mean you're coming to visit?' 'Indeed.' 'Wow,' I said. 'You just used nine syllables to say what a North American would say in two! Vi-sit!'

We sure used to pen-e-trate-our-prin-ci-pal-it-y with our exposure sheets until Ken Harris joined the team.

They looked something like this:

CAR WINDSHIELD OVERLAY | BABY YAK | YAK RUNNING | TRUCK AND ZEBRA

ACTION	DIAL	5	4	3	2	1	BG	CAMERA INSTRUCTIOI
			WOL-1	BY-1	Y2B-1	TxB-1	BG-1A	1
					Y2B-2	TxB-1A		2
					Y2B-2½	TxB-2		3
				BY-2	Y2B-3			4
						TxB-2½		5
					Y2B-4	TxB-2¾		6
				BY-3	Y2B-4A			7
					Y2B-4B	TxB-3		8
					Y2B-4C	TxB-3A		9

Can you imagine trying to make any changes or improvements when you're weighed down with numbers like this? It would be like re-numbering the *Encyclopaedia Britannica*.

Not only were our numbers complicated, but our action went from two frames to three frames then to four frames, bumping along then back to two frames etc., giving a jerky stop-start result to the movements.

When we had just one level of action – say it's a tiger – everyone would call the drawings T1-1 and T1-2 and T1-3 etc. One day I asked, 'Why are we doing this?' The answer from the head of the department came, 'So we know it's a tiger.' 'But we can *see* it's a tiger! Why not number it simply 1 and 2 and 3?' Answer: 'That will just confuse the painting department.'

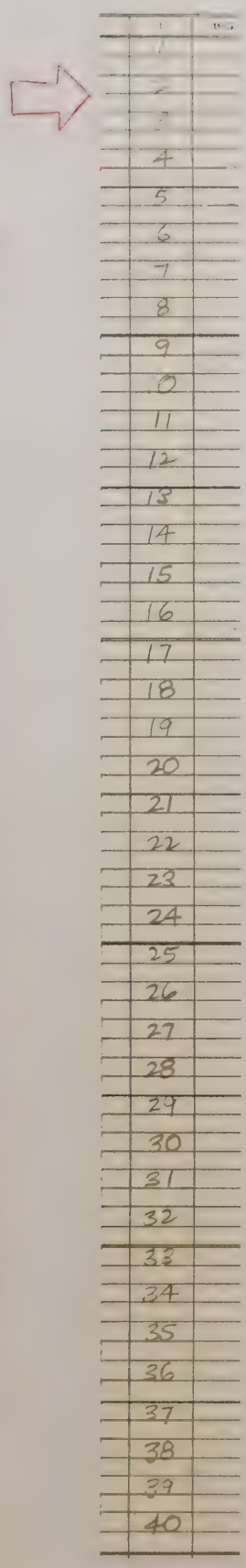
And it's not just the English who can overcomplicate! I once saw the working sheets of an established American animator who's written two books on the subject, and his numbers looked like this:

All smudged and rubbed out and re-entered . . .

30A	104
BX-31X	104⅛
BLANK	104¼
384	104½
BLANK	104¾
(10)	104⅞
11	X-1
11-B	X-1A

CAME THE DAWN...

And then the first real live master animator arrived to work with us. On his first day Ken Harris lightly pencilled in simple numbers going down the page on 'twos', that is, two exposures per drawing. That was the first time I ever saw anyone go down the page on twos!

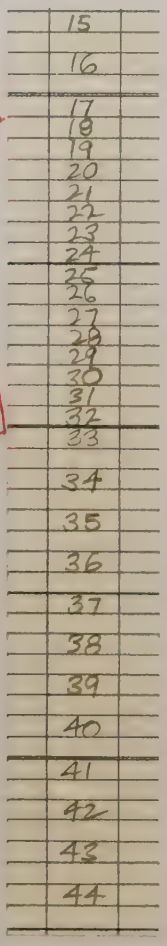


Ken usually planned his action on twos: twelve drawings per second, shooting each drawing for two exposures, instead of working on 'ones', one exposure for each drawing, which is twenty-four drawings per second – twice the amount of work.

Ken was from Warner Bros – used to tight budgets; the animators had to produce an average of 30 feet (20 seconds) a week or be fired.

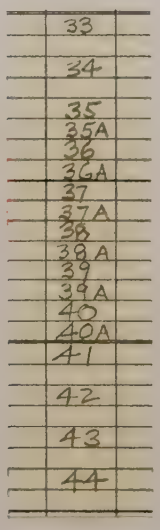
Since most normal actions work well on twos, Warner animators tried to avoid putting actions on ones.

When he needed to go onto ones for fast actions (runs etc.), he'd just number it in on ones. i.e.



Then he'd go back on to twos

'Ok, Ken, but what do you do when you've worked it out on twos, but you find you want to add in ones to smooth it out more?'



Answer: Add 'A' drawings.

Great, so now all this TXL-1 and PP-2 3/4 stuff goes out the window. We're not weighed down with meaningless technology. It becomes simpler to work and easy to make changes and improvements and we start getting better.

But there is an even better and simpler system!

The BEST NUMBERING SYSTEM

Milt Kahl called it his system, but I suspect that the good guys at Disney all discovered it around the same time – it's so logical.

Just use the camera dial numbers for the drawings. Go down the page on twos but use odd numbers.

Then if we do need to smooth something out or we need very fast action, we just add in the ones.

Milt told me, 'Whenever I see my drawings with odd numbers on them, I know I'm on twos and when I see even numbers, I know I'm on ones.'

I asked, 'What do you do when you want to get into a hold – just indicate you're holding that drawing with a line? And when you come back in do you start again on the dial number?'

Answer: 'Yes. Come back in on the dial number.'

Not only does this make it easy for shooting, but it's easier when you *do* need several levels of action. We've now got the same dial numbers horizontally across the frame of film.

5	4	3	2	1	
1-E	1 D	1-C	1-B	1	1
			2		2
3	3		3	3	3
		4-C	4		4
5	5		5	5	5
			6		6
7	7	7-C	7	7	7
			8		8

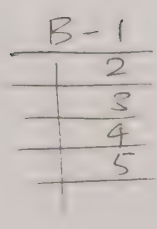
CAMERA DIAL NUMBERS

So, just go down the page with odd numbers – on twos – and drop in ones when you need them.

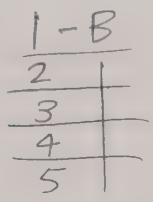
It's simpler and frees you to concentrate on the work. Boy, did my output and quality improve!

There are a couple of other things to mention before we start in on the great argument of ones versus twos.

There's a very important thing I learned from Ken Harris. I know it sounds crazy – but if you have a series of B drawings – don't put the B in front of the number. i.e.



Put the B *after* the number. i.e.

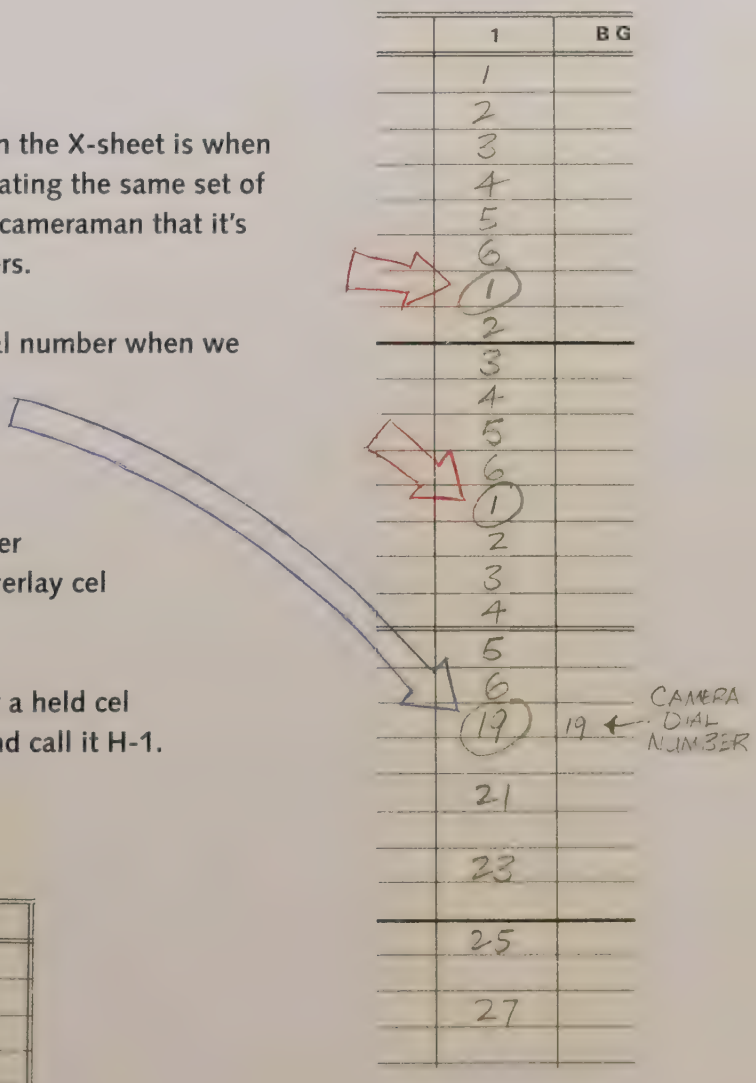


We want to think as simply as we can. Ken said, 'Look, you don't call me *Mister* Ken. Put the letter behind so all you think of is the numbers.' Put any formality or whatever behind. It may seem mad but it helps you do more work. Try it. All we're really doing is thinking of series of numbers from 1 to 10. Anything to keep it simple. Nobody could figure out how this sick old man could produce so much work – and of such high quality. He just kept everything as simple as could be.

Two more things:

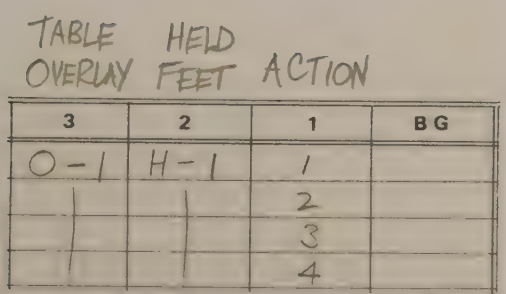
The *only* time you should circle a drawing on the X-sheet is when a cycle of action re-starts – when we're repeating the same set of drawings. We circle drawing (1) to alert the cameraman that it's out of sequence with the normal dial numbers.

Then we circle the drawing in the correct dial number when we come back to a normal sequence.



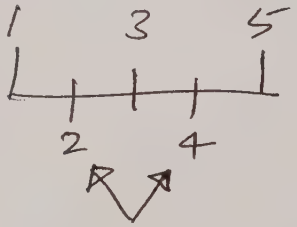
My rule is: The only time you ever put a letter in front of a number is when you have an overlay cel (of something in front of the characters).

Then you put O-1 (for the overlay cel) or for a held cel (somebody's stationary feet, for example) and call it H-1.



The GREAT ONES and TWOS BATTLE

Some people always complicate the numbering by calling ones and twos, 'singles' and 'doubles'. In fact 'singles' is from a 1940s term for inbetweening when the animator did drawings 1 and 3 and 5, made an evenly-spaced chart and said to the assistant, 'I've left you singles.'



i.e. single in betweens

But when to use ones and when to use twos?
The rule of thumb is – use twos for normal actions and ones for very fast actions. For instance, runs always have to be on ones – normal 'acting' on twos.

Walks can function nicely on twos, but they're going to look better on ones.

Obviously, life is on ones (or whatever speed we film it on), but twos work well for most actions and, of course, it's half as much work as doing it on ones. And half as expensive! Working on ones is twice as much work and expense all the way down the production line.

Apparently, in the early 1930s as Disney's animators got better and better, costs were skyrocketing, and since twos work for most things, they tried to stay on twos whenever they could.

A lot of great animators even say that twos are really better than ones, that ones lead to a mushy result, that broad, fast actions on twos 'sparkle' and adding ones diminishes that vitality. Well, yes, this is true if the ones are just dumb, mechanical inbetweens.

My experience is different. I've found that if you *plan* for ones, the result is usually superior to twos.

I feel that twos are an economic answer to an artistic question. With twos being half the work, everybody gets to go home on time, and why would I make a case for ones? Hell, I was a studio *owner*.

When I was re-learning all this stuff, I would wait till my animation on ones was traced and painted, then I'd shoot it on ones as planned and then I'd take out every other cel and shoot the rest on twos to see if it 'sparkled' and was better.

In all but one case, ones worked better. The time the twos worked better was when I had an old lady pulling out a doctor's stethoscope from her pocket. The ones produced a very smooth movement.

It worked just fine, but then I removed every other painted inbetween and shot it on twos. It was better on twos! I cannot figure out why – it just was better.
So they're partly right, I guess. But I became addicted to using ones whenever I could – ones seem to make for compulsive viewing and that's what we're after.

Art Babbitt used to nag at me for using ones. 'That's too realistic – one of the things about animation is that it's *not* like life!' But I would often add ones to Art's work when he wasn't looking and it came out better – and *he* liked it better.

Computer animators have everything on ones – with perfect inbetweens – and it hasn't diminished the appeal of their work – rather the reverse. And twos tire the eye after a few minutes. I feel that ones are twice as much work, but the result is three times as good. Compulsive viewing, easy to watch.

I think my co-animator Neil Boyle said it best :

'Twos work – ones *fly*.'

And Ken Harris, who spent most of his life working on twos, would say to me when I'd be putting ones into his stuff, 'Oh, it's *always* better on ones.'

There's one thing that always makes me crazy. When you have a character animated on twos and the camera is panning with it on ones you get stroboscopic jitter. Either pan with it on twos (not great) or add in single inbetweens so it doesn't strobe!

Some of the really good guys do this. It's a mystery to me. Why don't they add single inbetweens so it doesn't strobe?

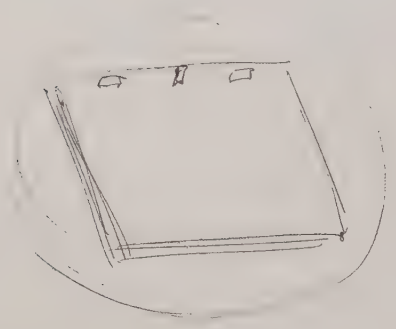
Maybe its because a lot of things don't show up on the pencil test. It's when it's coloured in that we see the bumps.

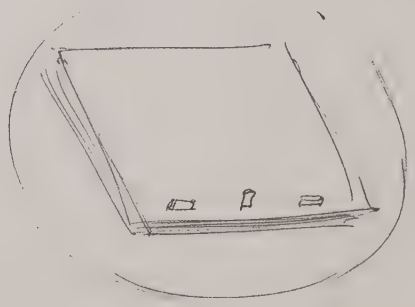
CONCLUSION:

It's a combination of twos and ones. Not only but also.
Normal actions on twos – which is the bulk of our work anyway.
Fast or very smooth actions on ones.
Normal spacing on twos. Far apart spacing on ones.

The TOP and BOTTOM PEGS BATTLE

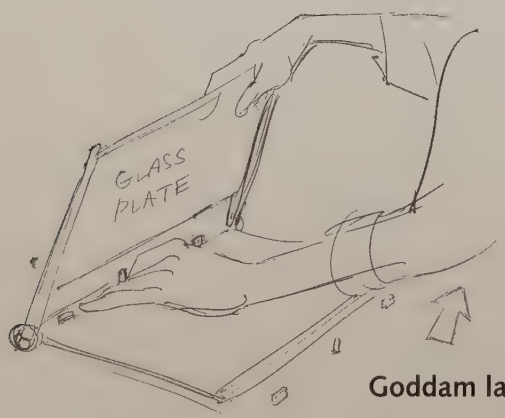
An endless debate has gone on among classical animators about whether to register the drawings on top pegs or bottom pegs. At present, bottom pegs seem to have won out; most people seem to be animating using the bottom pegs to hold their drawings.





Frank Thomas has said, 'Getting off the top pegs and working on bottom pegs has actually *advanced* the art of animation because you can *roll* the drawings as you work and *see* what's happening – whether the creature is doing what you want.' And that's had a tremendous influence. (Disney animators all work on bottom pegs.)

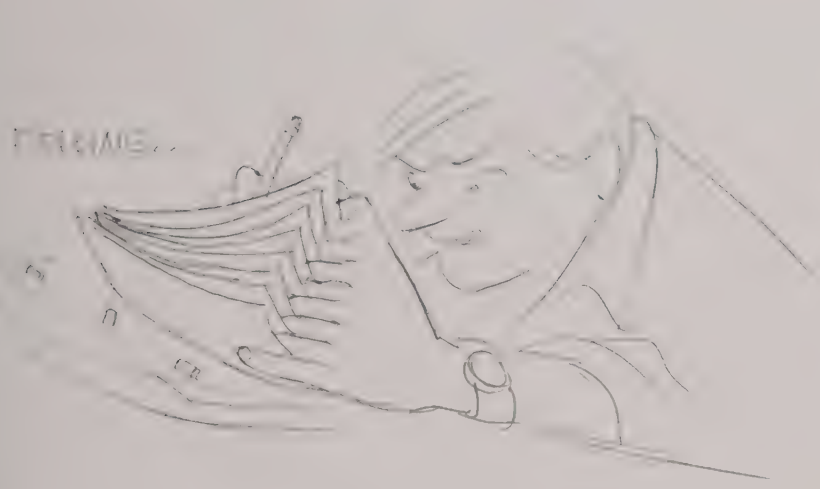
Alternatively, Ken Harris spent his life on top pegs and would *flip* his drawings and see what's happening – whether the creature is doing what he wants. (Warner animators all worked top pegs).



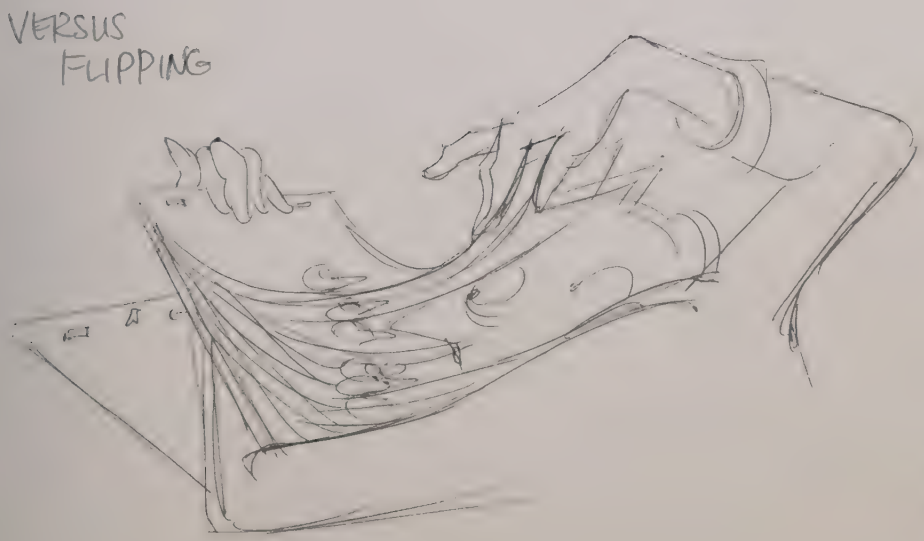
Goddam lazy cameraman

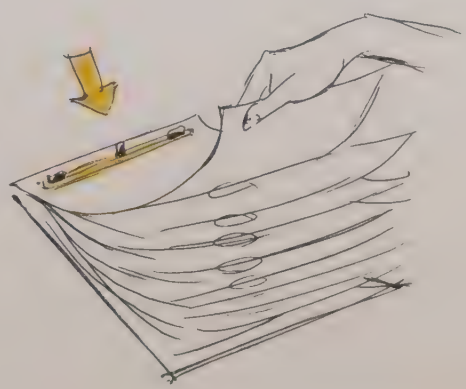
Ken would sometimes go red in the face and explode, 'You know who started that whole bottom pegs business? A goddam lazy cameraman who didn't want to be bothered reaching all the way under the glass pressure plate to place the cels at the top! He's the bum who started bottom pegs!'

It comes down to something like this:



If you only have four fingers you can still roll four sheets at once, plus the bottom drawing – giving us five images.

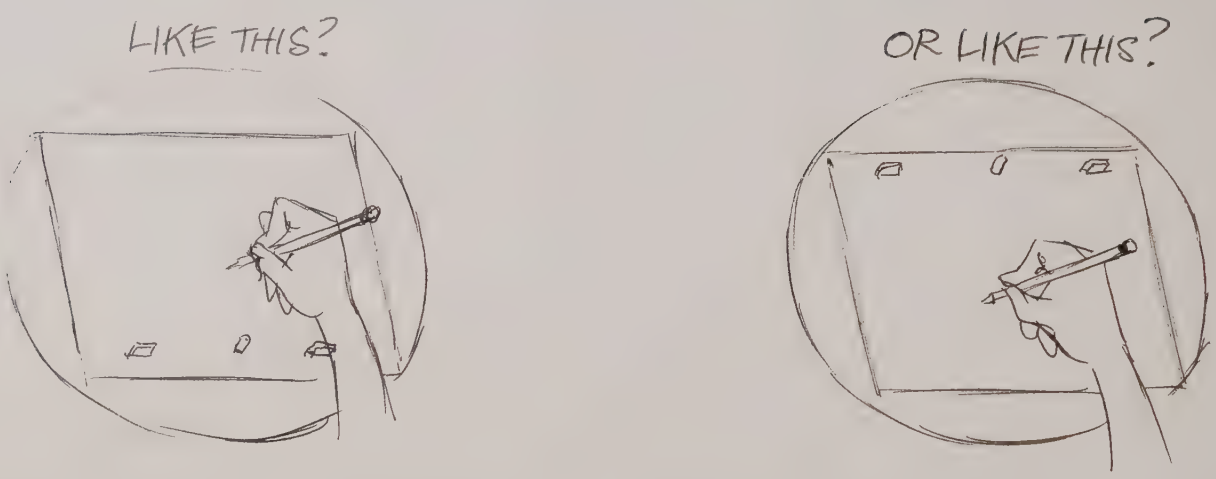




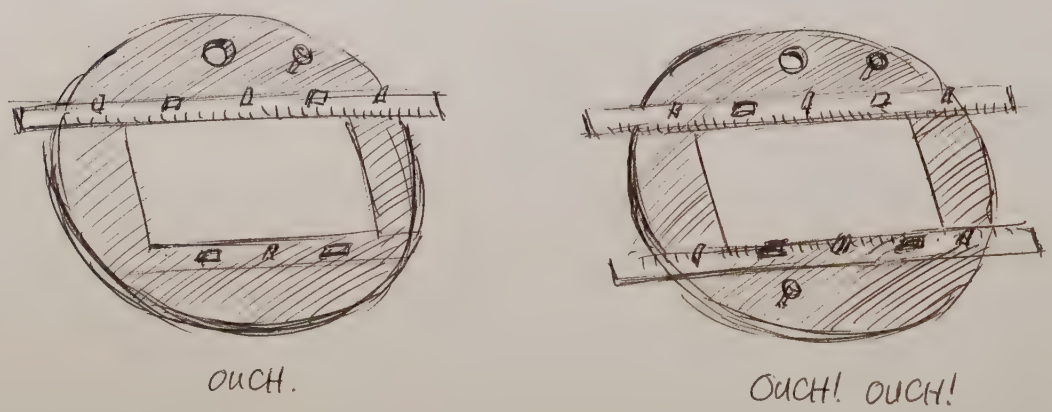
Ken would stretch an elastic band around his pegs to make flipping easier as he drew – without having to take the drawings off the pegs.

When Ken had calmed down, he used this example:

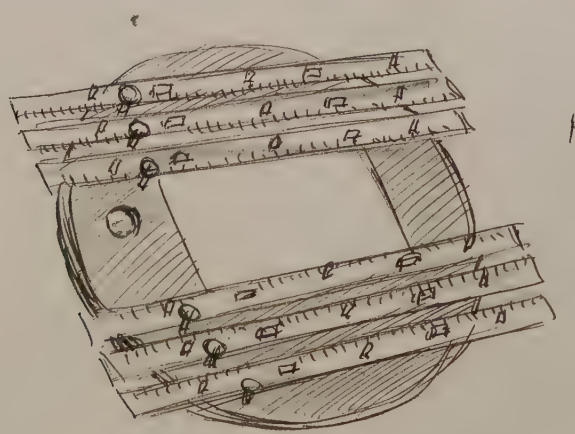
And what's going to make it easiest to draw?



Add to this the fact that most of the discs that animators use are made of heavy metal with inset panning bars with screws to tighten and release them for sliding pans. It's pretty awkward with all these points sticking up and we unconsciously have to dodge the pegs as we draw.

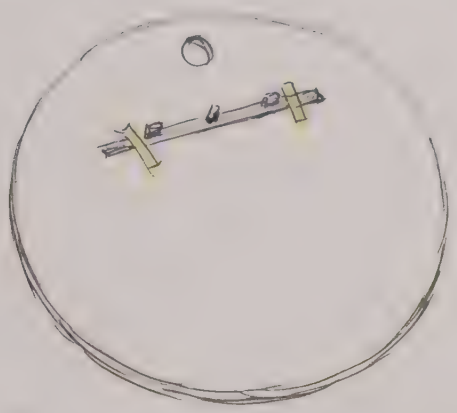


The engineer who made most of the equipment for my English studio arranged the panning bars differently every time. I had to fire a guy once, and his close friend – who was very talented – quit with him. To get even with me they ordered a special disc (on the firm) made with three panning bars for different field sizes, top and bottom – six in all! By the time you added in the screws it looked like this:



But how often do you really use the panning bars? Not too often, in my experience.

One day about fifteen years ago I found layout artist and designer, Roy Naisbitt, working on a big piece of white plastic Perspex (Plexiglass) with a peg bar just taped on to it.



What a solution!

You tape the pegs on wherever you want, top or bottom.
Also, I keep a heavy metal disc with panning bars beside the desk for when I very occasionally need it for a mechanical pan.

This also allows you to tape on taller pegs to carry more drawings if you're on top pegs. The shorter peg bars are OK for bottom pegs, but the drawings keep falling all over the floor. Again, an elastic band helps.

I'm delighted to see that Roy's solution has spread through the industry, as I've seen several animators walking around in Hollywood with Perspex discs and a taped-on peg bar tucked under their arms.

It works just fine. I animated the first close-up on *Who Framed Roger Rabbit* in a Welsh hotel room with a Perspex disc on my knee – and top pegs!

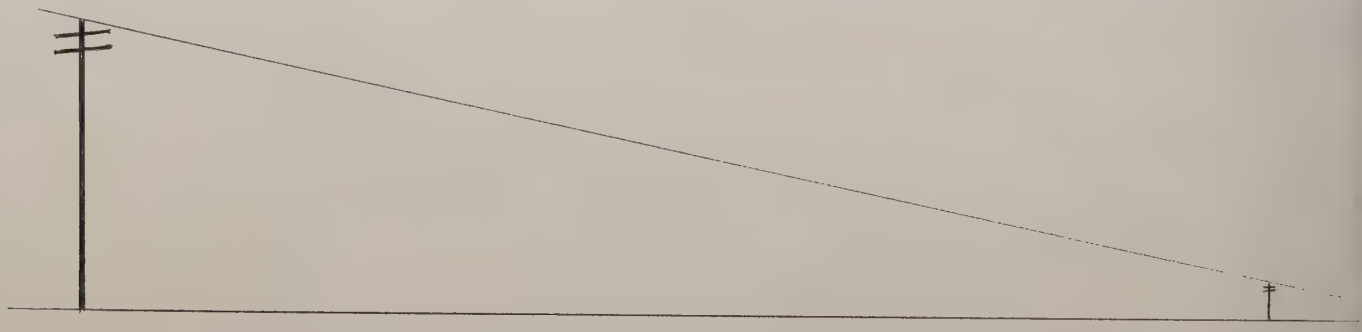
I work both ways. Again, it's not only but also. Top pegs is great for drawing and bottom pegs is great for rolling. Take your pick.

Obviously, computer animators are free from all this tactile nonsense – but I'm sure you have equivalent stuff to cope with. Having started out as a drawing animator, Jim Richardson, now a computer animator, told me that when he first switched over to the computer, he found it was like 'animating with a microwave'.

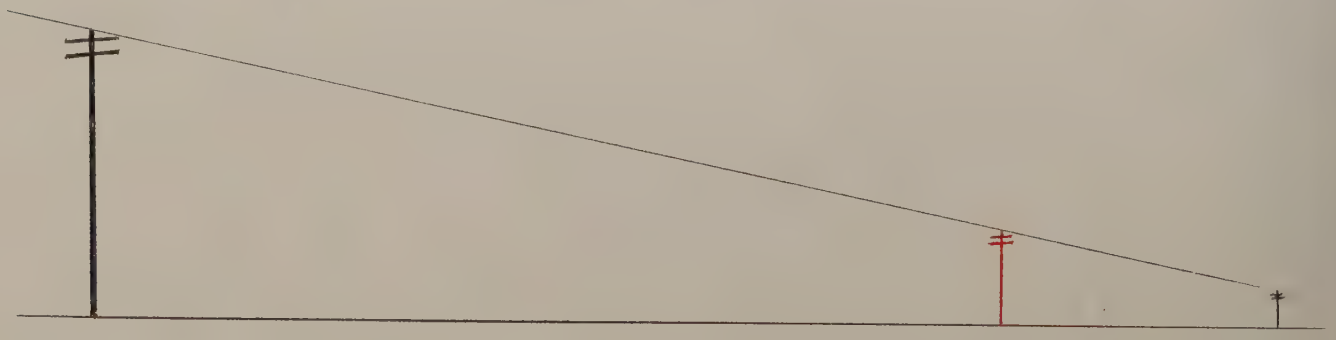
MORE ON SPACING

Somebody once said an animator is something between an artist and a garage mechanic. Here's more nuts and bolts from the garage – but very interesting ones, and it really helps to know them.

Ken Harris showed me this one:



Say we've got a telephone pole moving up quickly in perspective. Where do we put our middle position?



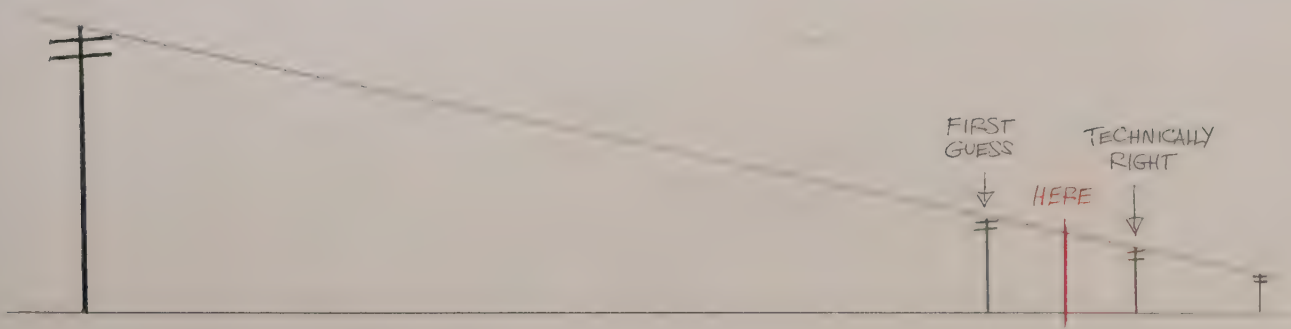
You'd put it in about here, right?

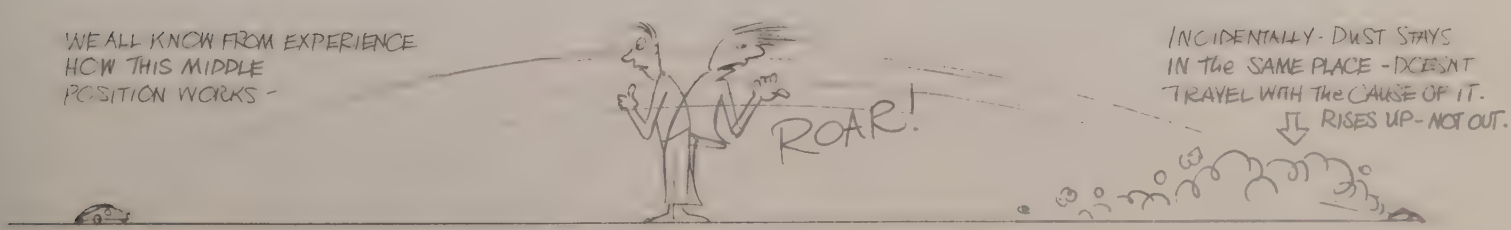
Wrong. Even after fifteen years' experience I got it wrong. And nearly every professional I've asked since has gotten it wrong.

Here's where the middle position is:

Rule in the lines like this and the cross point tells us it's here. At least technically. And just keep doing it:

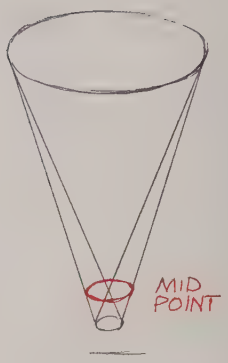
This works well for fast moves. However, for more normal moves it's best to cheat it – split the difference – and come back about half way to where our first guess was. Do that throughout and you'll get a better result.



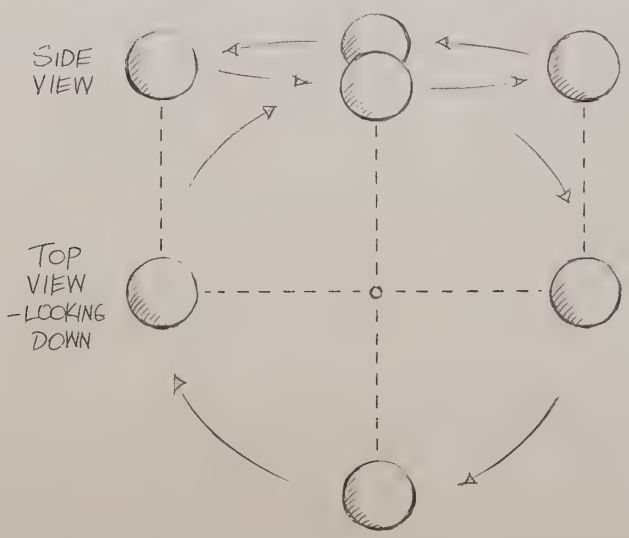

WE ALL KNOW FROM EXPERIENCE HOW THIS MIDDLE POSITION WORKS -
ROAR!
INCIDENTALLY - DUST STAYS IN THE SAME PLACE - DOESN'T TRAVEL WITH THE CAUSE OF IT.
RISES UP - NOT OUT.

THE SAME THING APPLIES TO A FRONT VIEW OF SOMEBODY OR SOMETHING COMING UP AT US - FAST.

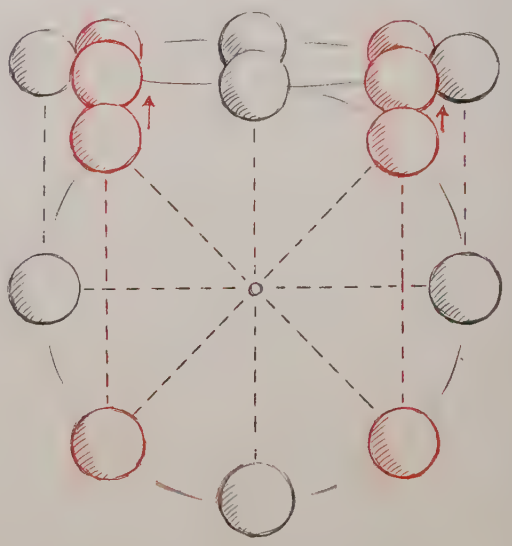
SAY A DISC IS SPINNING UP TOWARDS US -



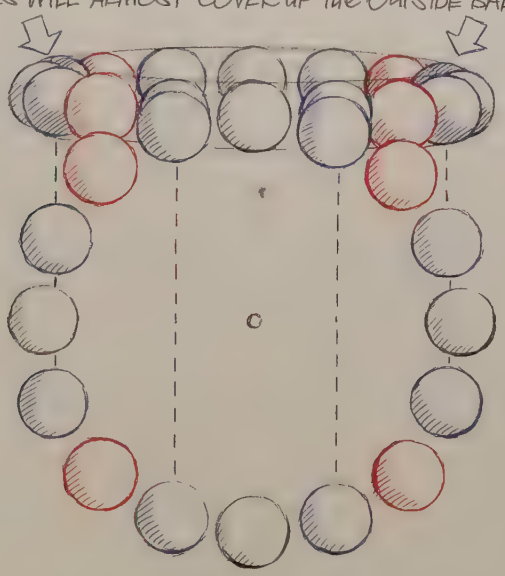
AND TO DO WITH THE SAME SORT OF THING: TAKE 4 POSITIONS OF A BALL REVOLVING AROUND A CENTRAL POINT -



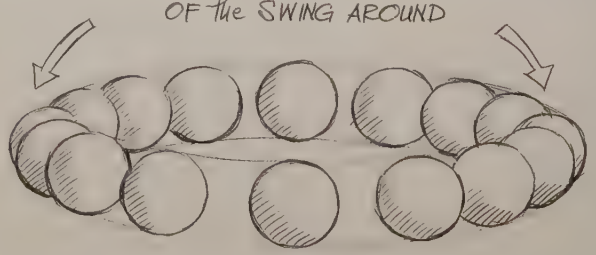
NOW ADD IN THE MIDDLE POSITIONS and SEE HOW CLOSE THEY ARE TO THE OUTSIDE OF THE ARC.



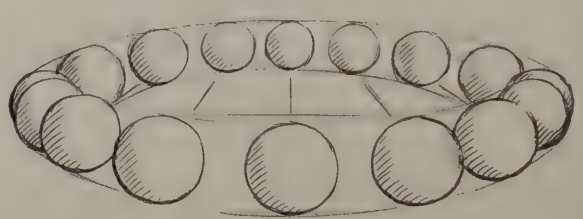
ADD IN THE NEXT MID POSITIONS and THE FURTHEST ONES WILL ALMOST COVER UP THE OUTSIDE BALLS.



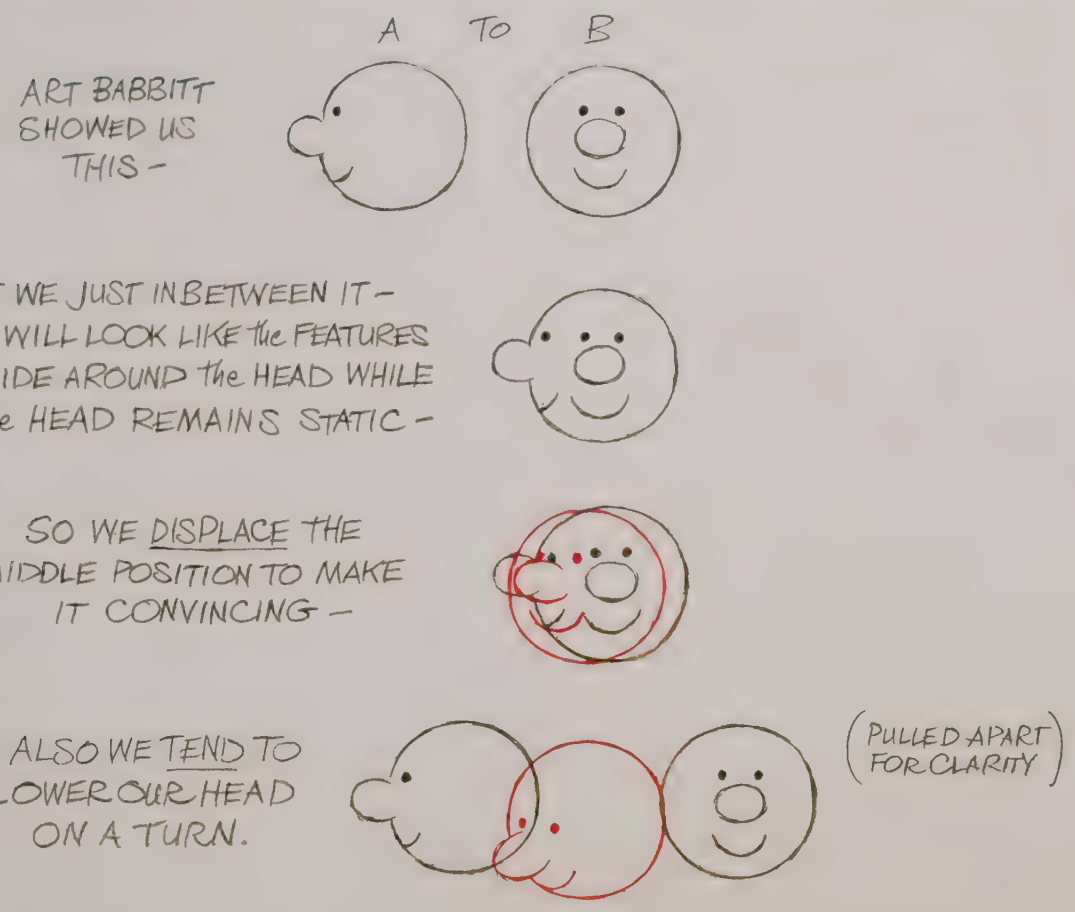
THE POINT IS THAT THE SPACING OF THE INBETWEENS WILL CLUSTER AT THE EDGES OF THE SWING AROUND



WE CAN INCREASE THE PERSPECTIVE BUT IT STILL CLUSTERS AT THE EDGES OF THE ARC AROUND

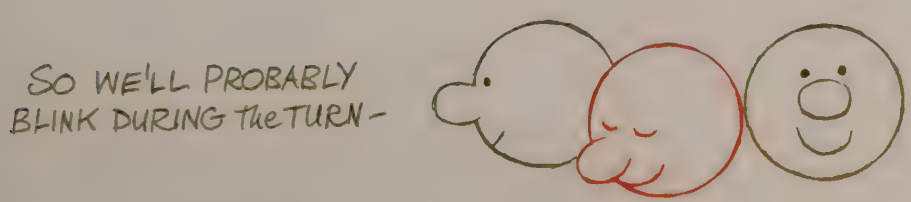


So when we're going to turn a head, it's going to be the same kind of thing:


A TO B
ART BABBITT SHOWED US THIS -
IF WE JUST INBETWEEN IT - IT WILL LOOK LIKE the FEATURES SLIDE AROUND the HEAD WHILE the HEAD REMAINS STATIC -
SO WE DISPLACE THE MIDDLE POSITION TO MAKE IT CONVINCING -
ALSO WE TEND TO LOWER OUR HEAD ON A TURN.
(PULLED APART FOR CLARITY)

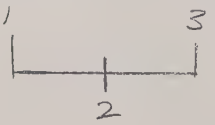
Incidentally – on a head turn, Ken Harris showed me this:

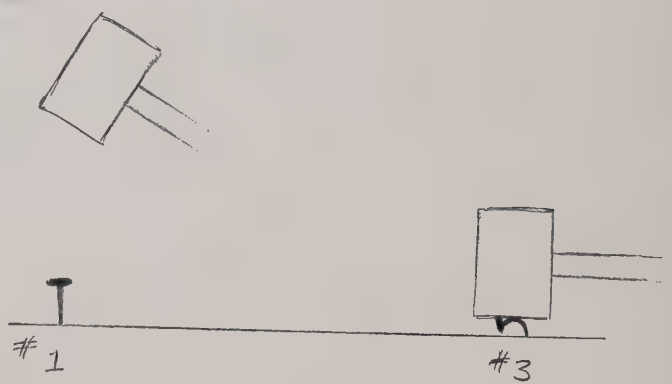
Do it yourself or have somebody else hold up two fingers. Look first at one, relax, then turn the head round to look at the other finger. During the head turn, something interesting will happen. The person will blink. The eye, switching focus from one side to the other, will blink en route. (Unless they're frightened – then the eyes will stay open.)



CLASSIC INBETWEEN MISTAKES

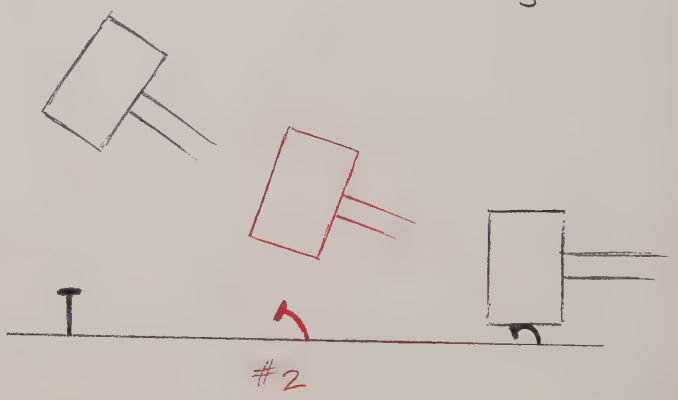
A MALLET HITS A NAIL WHICH BENDS -
AND WE WANT ONE INBETWEEN RIGHT IN THE MIDDLE.



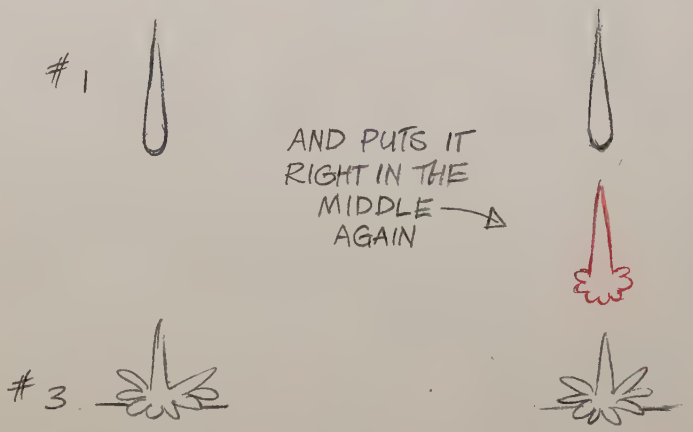


OUR HELPER, WHO IS PLUGGED IN TO A CD, PHONE OR WHATEVER, DOES PRECISELY WHAT'S REQUESTED AND PUTS IT RIGHT IN THE MIDDLE...

"WELL, I FOLLOWED YOUR CHART."



LATER THE SAME PLUGGED-IN PERSON PUTS IN A DROP OF WATER BETWEEN THESE TWO POSITIONS.

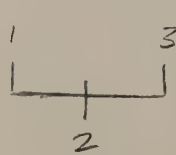


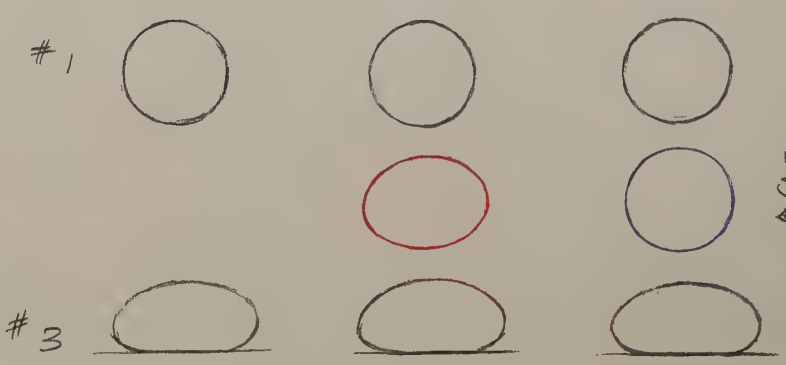
OBVIOUSLY THE CHANGE ONLY TAKES PLACE ON THE CONTACT.

GOT TO USE COMMON SENSE.

IT GOES ON AND ON:

SOFT RUBBER BALL FALLING -





OFTEN WHEN FACED WITH A BREAKDOWN HALF WAY BETWEEN -

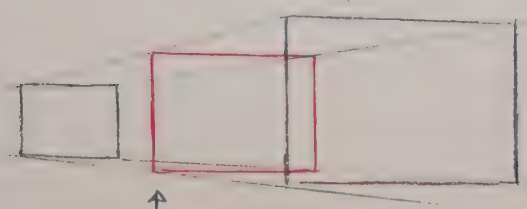
WE GET THIS -

'WELL, I PUT IT RIGHT IN THE MIDDLE LIKE YOU SAID'-

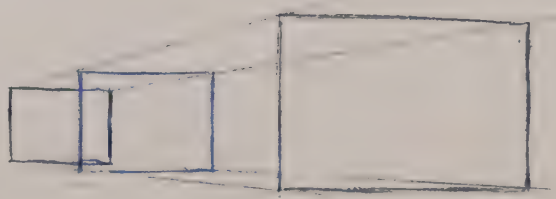
THIS IS RIDICULOUS BUT THE EQUIVALENT OFTEN HAPPENS WITH COMPLEX INBETWEENS-

Every **drawing is important. We can't just have brainless drawings joining things up. In one sense there** *are* **no inbetweens – all the drawings are on the screen for the same amount of time.**

AND, IGNORING OUR TELEPHONE POLE PRINCIPLE...



'BUT I PUT IT RIGHT IN THE MIDDLE'...



IT'S NOT LINES - GOT TO THINK IN TERMS OF MASSES!

WHEN A GOLF CLUB HITS A HARD GOLF BALL-

AT THE MOMENT OF IMPACT WE MIGHT DISTEND THE SHAPE

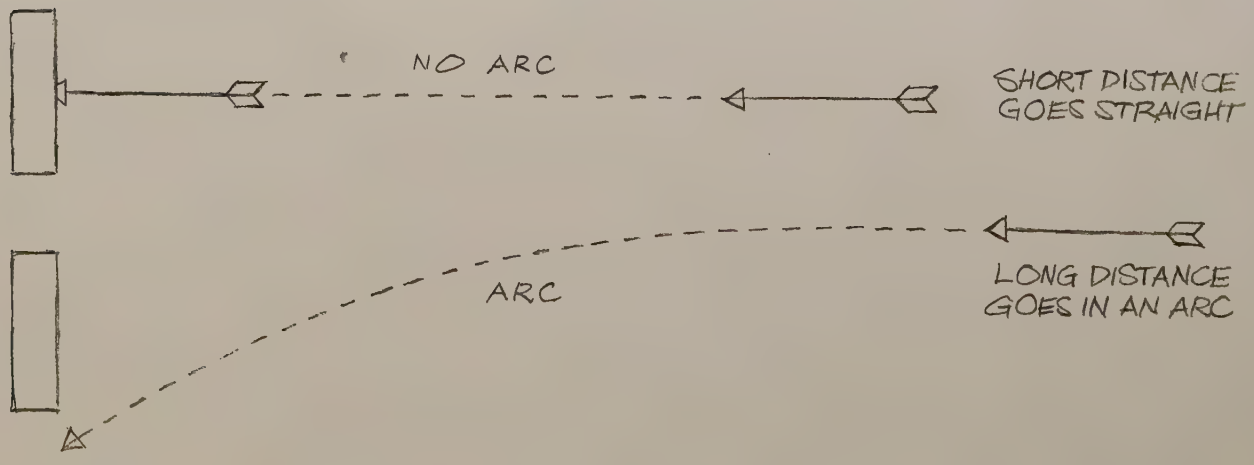
BUT IT WOULD GO BACK TO IT'S OWN SHAPE WITHIN VERY FEW FRAMES.

Ideally the inbetweener should understand and be able to complete eccentric actions.

WATCH YOUR ARCS

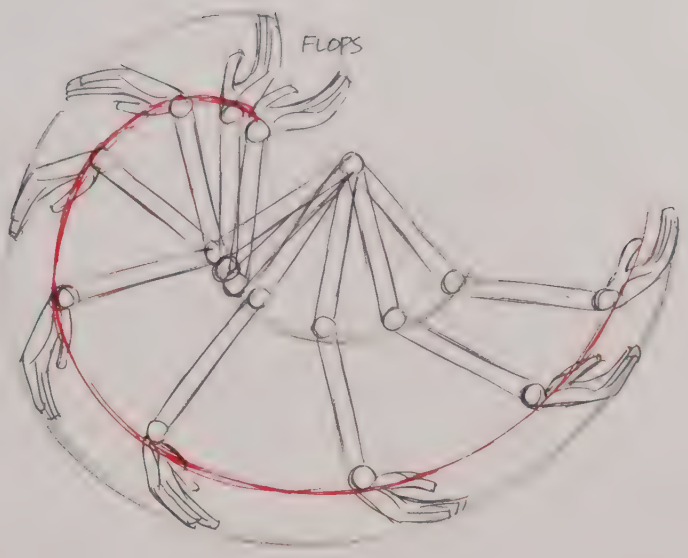
Most actions follow arcs. Generally, an action is in an arc. Most of the time the path of action is either in a wavelike arc or in a sort of figure 8:

But sometimes it is angular or straight. Straight lines give power.

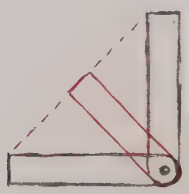


The ARC OF the ACTION GIVES US the CONTINUOUS FLOW

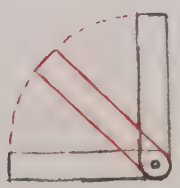
IN THIS ARM SWING the WRIST IS LEADING the ARC and the HAND DRAGS.



AND OF COURSE the BONES DON'T SHRINK and GROW - THEY MAINTAIN THEIR LENGTH

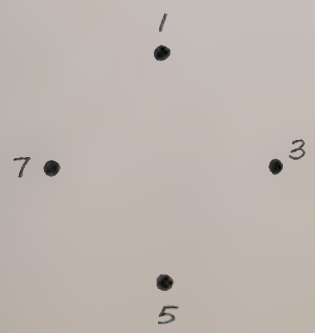


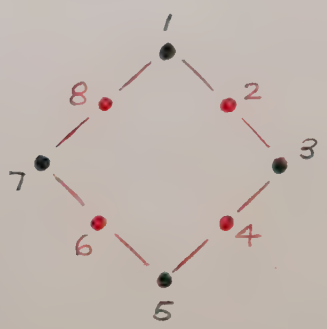
OBVIOUSLY WRONG



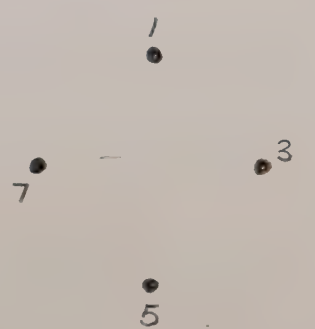
OBVIOUSLY RIGHT

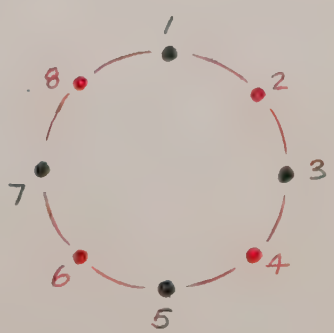
THE ARC IS SO IMPORTANT! SAY WE HAVE POSITIONS 1, 3, 5 and 7 -





DO WE JOIN THEM UP LIKE THIS?





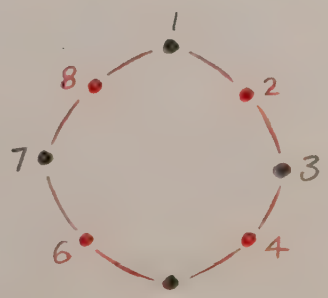
—OR LIKE THIS?

WE'LL GET AN UTTERLY DIFFERENT RESULT - SO WE ROLL OR FLIP the DRAWINGS TO MAKE SURE WHAT the ARC OF the ACTION OR PATH OF ACTION SHOULD BE.

OFTEN WE GET THIS -

USUALLY WE GET THIS -

NEITHER ONE THING NOR THE OTHER



IF IT ISN'T IN THE ARC OR PATH OF ACTION - THE ANIMATION WILL NOT FLOW. GOT TO GO WITH THE FLOW, USING ARCS (UNLESS A STRAIGHT IS REQUIRED.)

The stuff on these pages looks awfully simple set out like this – 'Oh, I knew that.' But as soon as we get into sophisticated images and actions this all tends to go out the window.

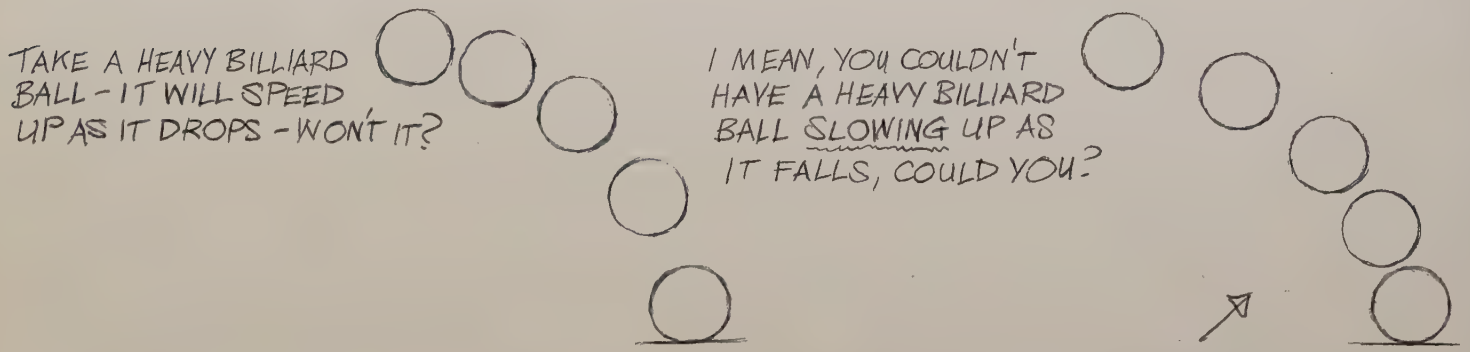
I recently heard about a Hollywood assistant, a talented draftsman who was working on realistic horses (about the hardest thing there is to animate). He drew the stuff beautifully, but he just couldn't get the hang of keeping things in the right arcs. His directing animator, James Baxter, finally suggested he take a blue pencil and just trace the horse's eye positions separately and look what was happening to the flow. Clink! The penny dropped.

BEFORE

AFTER

So we're back to the old bouncing ball again.

These basic things are so important. Most animators would say scornfully – 'Oh sure, the bouncing ball – everyone knows that.' But do they?


TAKE A HEAVY BILLIARD BALL - IT WILL SPEED UP AS IT DROPS - WON'T IT?
I MEAN, YOU COULDN'T HAVE A HEAVY BILLIARD BALL SLOWING UP AS IT FALLS, COULD YOU?
BUT THIS IS EXACTLY WHAT'S IN A PERENNIALLY PUBLISHED INSTRUCTION BOOK FOR ANIMATORS.

AGAIN, IT'S ALL IN THE TIMING and IN THE SPACING!

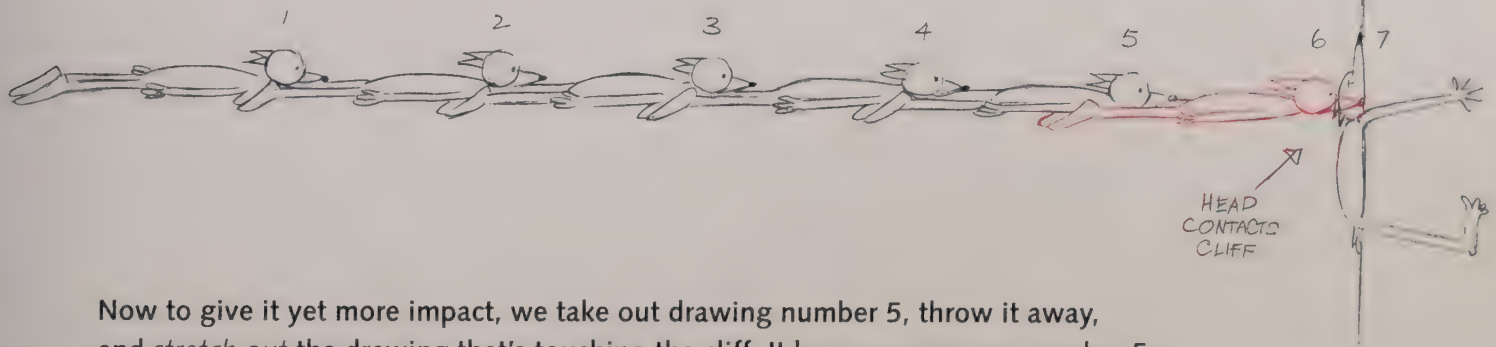
GETTING MORE MOVEMENT WITHIN THE MASS

Now we can start getting more sophisticated. We're going to keep finding ways to get movement *within* movement, action within action – getting more 'change', more bang for the buck.

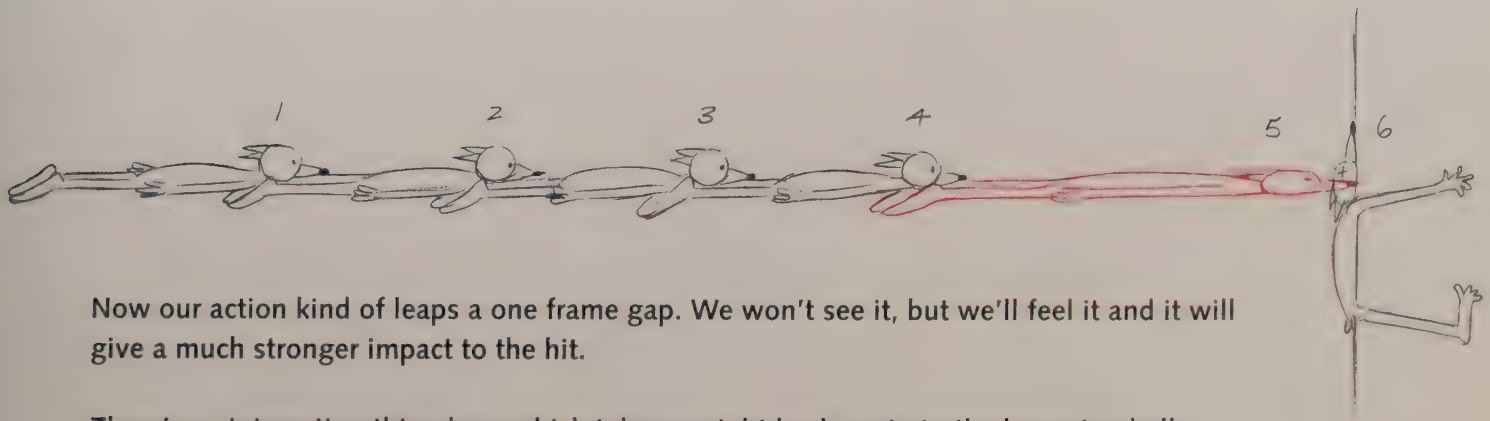
Ken Harris showed me how to exaggerate a hit.
Say a creature shoots through the air to hit a cliff:

We'd need about five drawings – even spacing on the head – to get him over to the cliff. The figures overlap slightly to help carry the eye – on ones, of course, because it's a fast action. No inbetween between 5 and 6.

To get more impact, more power to the hit, add in another drawing where he just touches the cliff, just contacting it before he's flattened on the following frame. This will give more 'change' – action within action.



Now to give it yet more impact, we take out drawing number 5, throw it away, and *stretch out* the drawing that's touching the cliff. It becomes our new number 5.

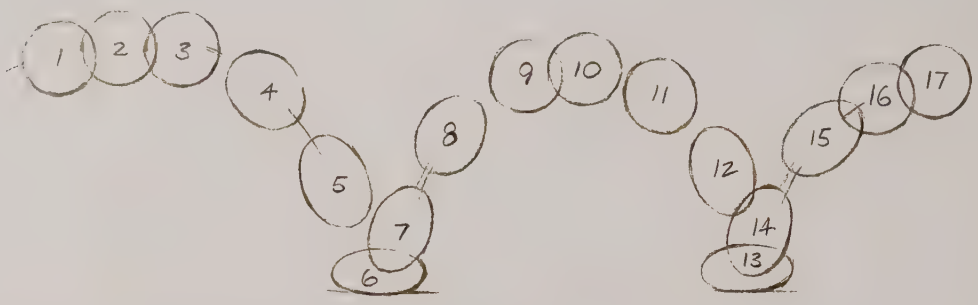


Now our action kind of leaps a one frame gap. We won't see it, but we'll feel it and it will give a much stronger impact to the hit.

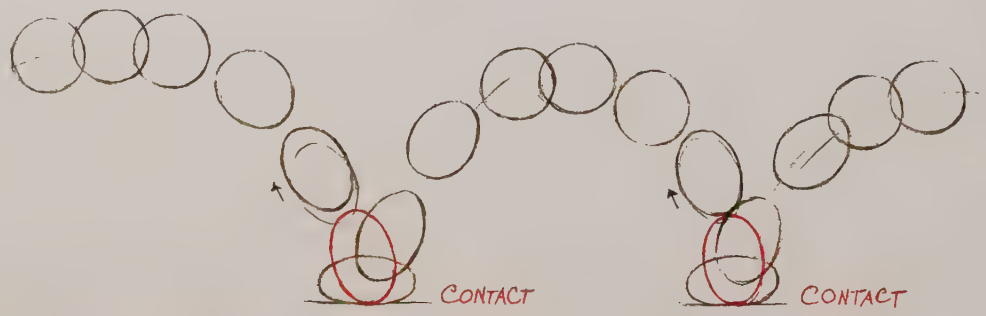
There's an interesting thing here which takes us right back again to the bouncing ball.

In 1970 I showed Ken an early edition of Preston Blair's animation book when I was questioning whether we need that amount of squashing and stretching of things. (You can gather by now that I'm not too keen on 'rubber duck' stretching around – although twenty-five years later that was what was required on *Who Framed Roger Rabbit*, a cartoon of a cartoon.) I noticed that Ken, though famous as a broad action animator, used squash and stretch rather sparingly.

I had the page open on the bouncing ball. It was like this – which certainly works OK.



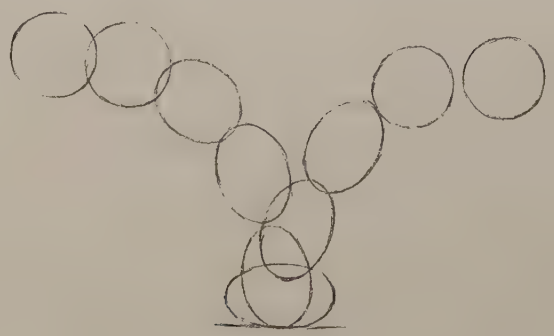
Ken said, 'Yeah, sure, but wait a minute – never mind that. We can make this much better. We need to have a contact in here before the squash.'



'Put in a contact where the ball just touches the ground and *then* it squashes. That'll give it more life.' (Move the preceding drawing back a bit to accommodate it.)

'And do we do the same when it takes off again?' Answer: 'Not in this case – just when it contacts. You get the "change", then it's off again.'

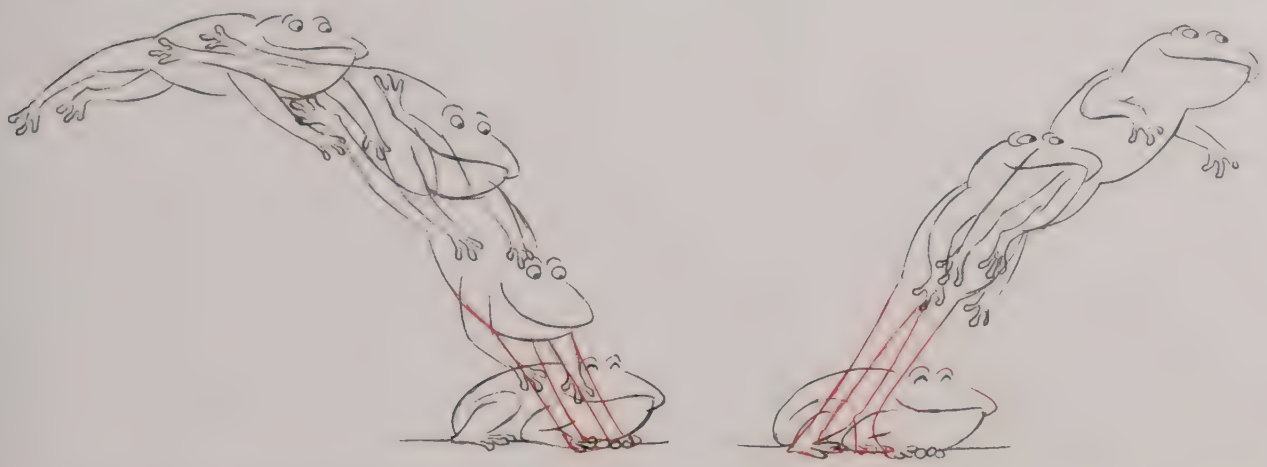
The animation grapevine flows like lightning: 'Did you know Ken Harris in London has corrected Preston Blair's bouncing ball?' Preston's next edition came out like this:



Perfect.

This is not done to show disrespect for a skilled animator like Preston, who was the first classical animator to make real animation knowledge accessible, or to put him down in any way. Ken was just showing an important device to get more action within the movement.

Ken continued, showing the same idea with a frog.



'Have him contact the ground before he squashes down. Then keep his feet contacting the ground as he takes off. That'll give more change to the action.'

Next, a jumping figure.

'Have at least one foot contacting the ground before the squash down, then leave at least one leg still contacting the ground as he takes off again.'

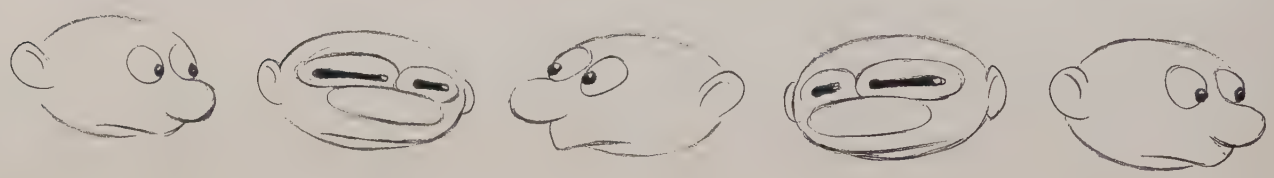
This is great because we're getting more 'change' – more contrast – straight lines playing against curves. We're doing it with bones as well as round masses. We can use straight lines and still get a limber result. More on this later. We don't have to be stuck with rubbery shapes to get smooth movement. This will also free us from having to draw in a prescribed cartoony style because it 'suits animation' and is 'animatable'.

I'm using crude drawings here because I want everything to be crystal clear. I just want to show the structure and not get lost in an overlay of attractive detail.

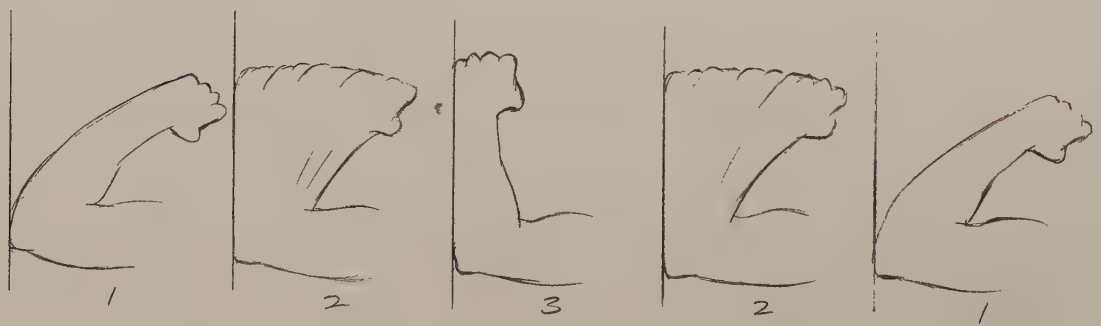
The ELONGATED INBETWEEN

In the 1930s, when animators started studying live action film frame by frame, they were startled by the amount of transparent blurs in the live images. In order to make their movements more convincing, they started using stretched inbetweens. Ken used to call them 'long-headed inbetweens'.

For a zip turn – on ones – although it also works for two frames:



BY DISTENDING the HAND ON A FAST MOVEMENT WE CAN CREATE AN OVERLAP.



EITHER

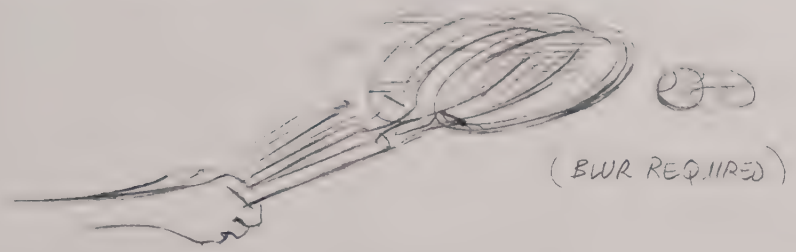
1
2
3
2
1
2
3
2
1
2
3
2
1
2
3

OR:

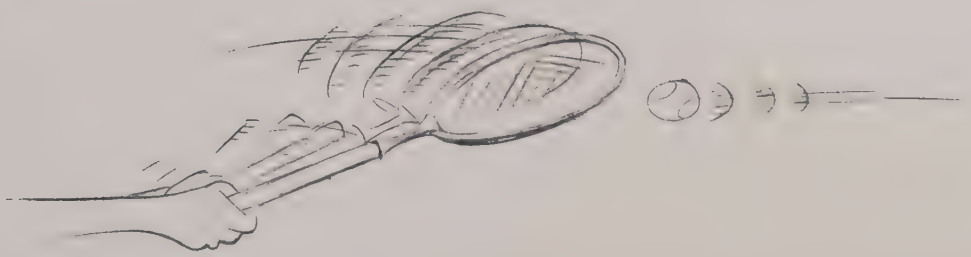
1
2
3
2
1
2
3
2
1
2

Let's take these drawings of pounding a door. Shoot the inbetween (2) on ones. This is one of the very few cases where you can shoot the sequence in reverse. It will work on ones – or with just the inbetween on ones and the extremes – (1) and (3), on twos.

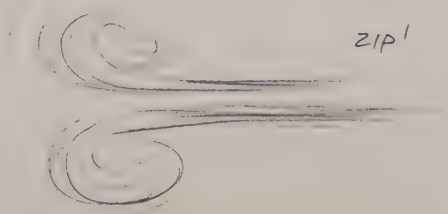
In the late 1930s when tracing and painting the drawings on to cels was all done by hand, many painters became very adept at 'dry brushing' the desired transparent live action blur effect. Animators indicated the blur on their pencil drawings and the 'dry brushers' would cleverly blend the colours together to simulate the transparency in the blur.



After the 1941 animators' strike and World War II, budgets shrank and so did the use of skilled backup painters. But a lot of animators just kept on indicating blurs and it became a cartoon convention to just trace this in heavy black lines – ignoring the fact that the dry brush artists were long gone.

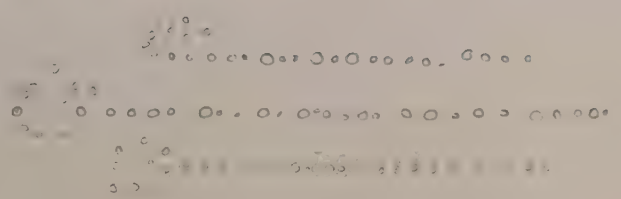


Now it's become a cartoon cliché. A cartoon of a cartoon:

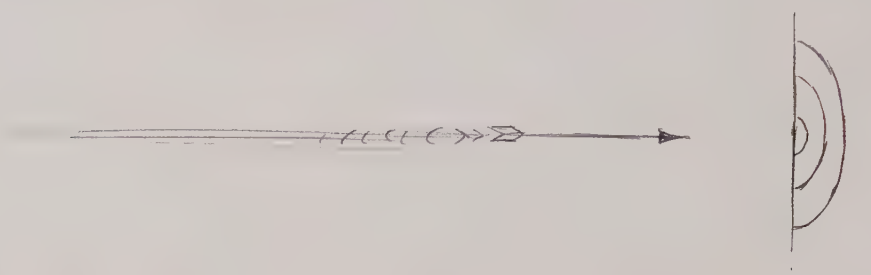


With characters just vanishing from the screen, Ken told me:
'We'd have this witch up in the air laughing and then she's *gone*. Instead of making a blur we just used to leave hairpins where she was.'

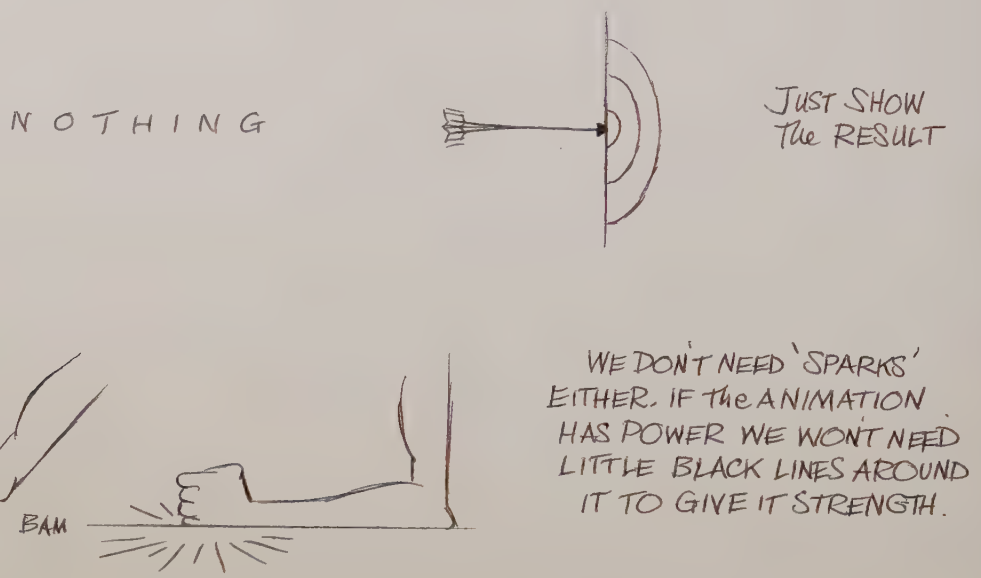
'We learned that from the Disney guys in a fish picture. They'd have these little fish swimming around and something would scare them and they were *gone* – that's all – with just a few bubbles for the path they took.'



In the early days, speed lines were a hangover from old newspaper strips:



Then they were used in animation to help carry your eye. But they're still around now when we don't really need them. You don't even need to show the arrow entering. We have nothing and then it's just there – maybe with the tail vibrating.


NOTHING
JUST SHOW THE RESULT
BAM
WE DON'T NEED 'SPARKS' EITHER. IF THE ANIMATION HAS POWER WE WON'T NEED LITTLE BLACK LINES AROUND IT TO GIVE IT STRENGTH.

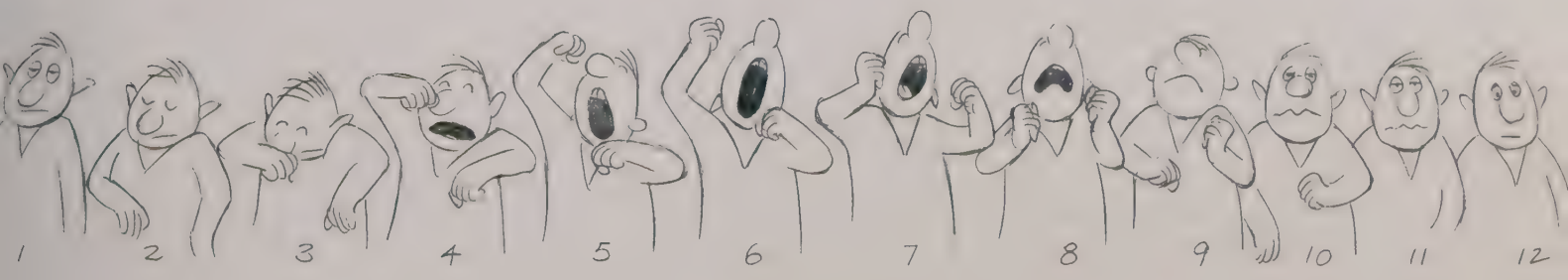
However, I find the elongated or 'long-headed' inbetween is *very* useful – not just for a zippy cartoon effect, but also for use in realistic fast actions:

Again, we're returning to the original purpose – emulating the transparency of broad, live action blur movements. It's especially suitable with 'soft edge' loose drawings – where the outlines aren't sharp and enclosed like colouring book drawings.

The MAJOR BEGINNER'S MISTAKE

Doing too much action in too short a space of time, i.e. too great arm and leg swings in a run. The remedy: go twice as slow. Add in drawings to slow it down – take out drawings to speed it up.

Ken Harris told me that when Ben Washam was starting out at Warner's, he became famous in the industry for 'Benny's Twelve Frame Yawn'. Ben drew well and made twelve elaborate drawings of someone going through the broad positions of a yawn – an action something like this:



Then he shot it on ones. Zip! It flashed through in half a second!

So then he shot it on twos. ZZZip! It went through in one second!

So then he inbetweened it (twenty-four drawings now) and shot it on twos. ZZZZZZ! It went through in two seconds – almost right.

Then Ken showed him how to add some cushioning drawings at the beginning and end – and bingo, Ben's on his way to being a fine animator.

The "RUFF" APPROACH

Some animators want to save themselves a lot of the work so they draw very rough. ('Ruff' – they don't even want to spend the time spelling 'rough'. Too many letters in it to waste our valuable time . . .) And they leave lots and lots of work for the assistants.

I've never understood why some people in animation are so desperate to save work. If you want to save work, what on earth are you doing in animation? It's nothing *but* work!

In the early days at The Disney Studio, when animation was being transformed from its crude beginnings into a sophisticated art form, they used to say, take at least a day to *think* about what you're going to do – *then* do it.

One old animator, writing about the subject forty years later, advises that we should spend *days* thinking about it. He's read up on Freud and Jung and the unconscious mind and he writes seductively about how you should ruminate until the last minute and then explode into a frenzy of flowing creativity.

He told me that in a week's work he'd spend Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday and Thursday thinking about it and planning it in his mind. Then on Friday he'd *do* it. The only problem is that it then takes three weeks for somebody else to make sense of it.

I knew this guy pretty well – and he made it sound so creatively attractive that, though I felt it was artistic b.s., I thought I better try it out. I managed to ruminate, stewing and marinating my juices for about a day and a half and then couldn't stand it any more. I exploded into creative frenzy for a day, drawing into the night like a maniac. The result was pretty interesting, but it really did take three weeks to straighten it all out afterwards. And I don't think it was any better than if I had worked normally – maybe just a bit different.

I think Milt Kahl has the correct approach: 'I do it a lot. I think about it a lot, and I do it a lot.'

Ken Harris worked intensely from 7.30 am till noon, relaxed at lunch, hung around doing bits for a while, went home to watch TV (or play tennis when he was younger) and thought about what he was going to do the next day – then came in early, avoided social contact and did it.

He worked carefully and thought very hard about his stuff. He said he was surprised when he saw some of Ward Kimball's working drawings because they were exactly the same as his – very neat – very carefully done – usually something on every drawing in the shot.

When I first saw Milt's work on his desk I was startled by how much work he did. His drawings were finished, really. There was no 'clean up' – just 'touch up', and completing details and simple inbetweens or parts of them. Ditto Frank Thomas, ditto Ollie Johnston, ditto Art Babbitt. The two exceptions to this were Cliff Nordberg, a marvellous 'action' animator who worked with me for a while, and Grim Natwick. Cliff did work very roughly – so he was awfully dependent on having a good assistant and it always caused him a lot of concern. And Grim was a law unto himself.

There's an animation myth about the assistant always being able to draw better than the animator. (I never met one who did.) The myth is that the animator creates the 'acting' and the fine draftsperson improves the look of everything and nails it all down. Well, there aren't that many fine draftspeople around and if they're good enough to nail all the details down and draw well, they really should be animating – and probably are. (An exception to this is the assistant 'stylist' on commercials where the 'look' of the thing is it's raison d'être. There are a few excellent ones around.)

Rough drawings have lots of seductive vitality, blurs, pressure of line, etc. But when they're polished and tidied up you usually find there wasn't that much there to begin with.

As we go along through this book it'll be apparent how much work we have to do to get a really interesting result. No matter how talented – the best guys are always the ones that work the hardest. But hang the work, it's the unique *result* that we're after. Every time we do a scene, we're doing something unique – something nobody else has ever done. It's a proper craft.

HOW MUCH DO WE LEAVE TO THE ASSISTANT?

Milt Kahl's answer: 'I do enough to have iron clad control over the scene.'

Ken Harris's answer: 'I draw anything which is not a simple inbetween.'

Milt again: 'I don't leave assistants very much. How much can I get away with leaving and still control the scene? If it's fast action, I do every drawing.'

The purpose of the assistant is to free the animator to get through more work by handling the less important bits – but as we have seen, he/she can't be just a brainless drawing machine. The computer produces *perfect* inbetweens, but obviously has to be programmed to put in the eccentric bits that give it the life.

Here's my tip on saving work – my rule of thumb:

TAKE THE LONG SHORT CUT.

The long way turns out to be shorter.

Because: something usually goes wrong with some clever rabbit's idea for a short cut and it turns out to take even longer trying to fix everything when it goes wrong.

I've found it's quicker to just do the work, and certainly more enjoyable because we're on solid ground and not depending on some smart guy's probably half-baked scheme.

And again, if you don't want to do lots of work, what are you doing in animation?

One of the things I *love* about animation is that you have to be specific. If a drawing is out of place it's just *wrong* – clearly wrong – as opposed to 'Art' or 'Fine Art' where everything these days is amorphous and subjective.

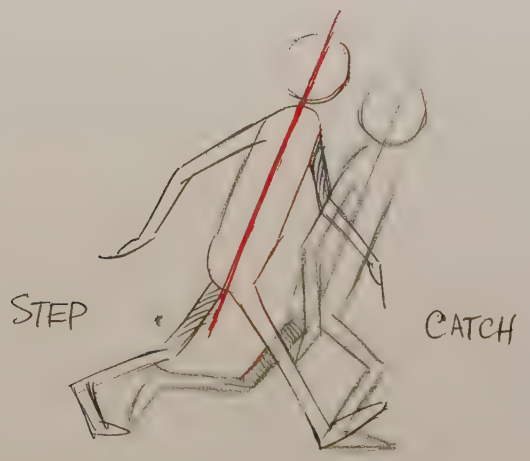
For us, it's obvious whether our animation works or not, whether things have weight, or just jerk about or float around wobbling amorphously.

We can't hide in all that 'unconscious mind' stuff. Of course, we can dress up and *act* like temperamental prima donnas – but we can't kid anybody with the work. It's obvious whether it's good or bad.

And there's nothing more satisfying than getting it right!

WALKS

Advice from Ken Harris:
'A walk is the *first* thing to learn. Learn walks of all kinds, 'cause walks are about the toughest thing to do right.'



THERE'S A TENDENCY TO LEAN IN A WALK.
THE SLOWER IT IS, THE MORE YOU'RE IN BALANCE -
AND THE FASTER - MORE OUT OF BALANCE.

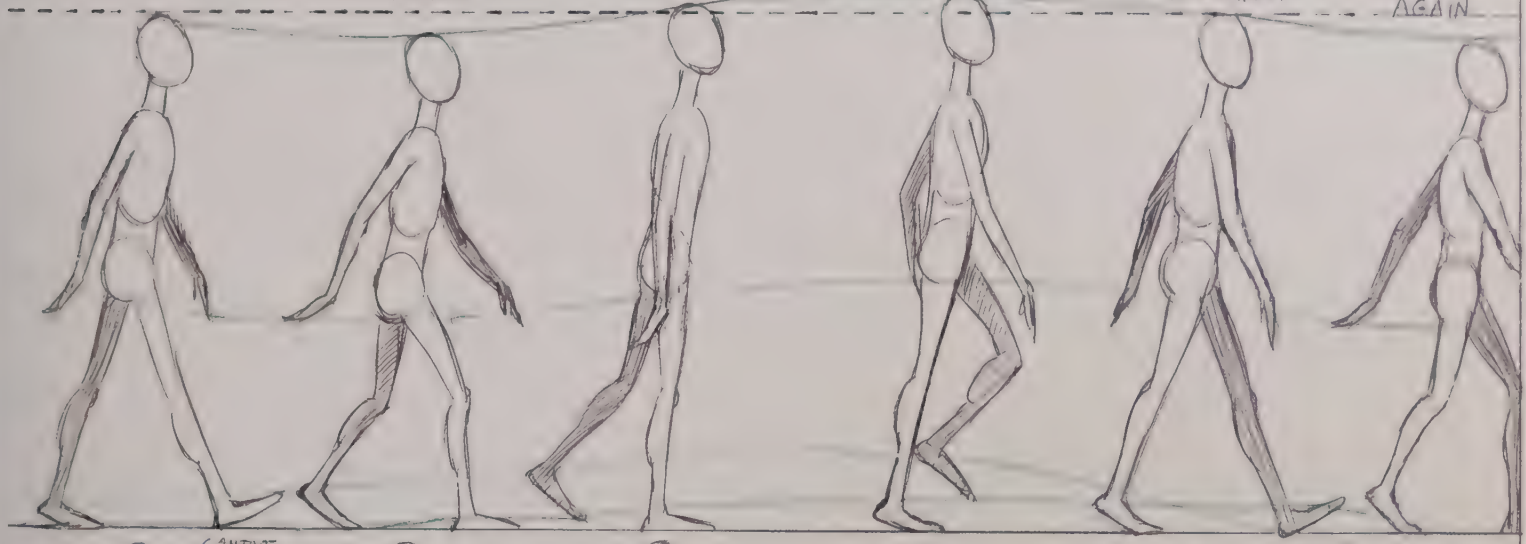
Walking is a process of falling over and catching yourself just in time. We try to keep from falling over as we move forward. If we don't put our foot down, we'll fall flat on our face. We're going through a series of controlled falls.

We lean forward with our upper bodies and throw out a leg just in time to catch ourselves. Step, catch. Step, catch. Step catch.

Normally we lift our feet off the ground just the bare minimum. That's why it's so easy for us to stub our toes and get tipped over. Just a small crack in the pavement can tip us over.

USELESS(?) BUT INTERESTING SCIENTIFIC INFORMATION ON WALKS:

DID YOU KNOW WE PUT A MILLION POUNDS OF WEIGHT ON OUR FEET EACH DAY?



1. EACH ARM MOVES IN COORDINATION WITH the OPPOSITE LEG, GIVING BALANCE and THRUST.

2. AS WE DIP DOWN WE SPEED UP - RELEASING ENERGY. GRAVITY IS DOING SOME OF the WORK.
OUR ARMS ARE AT THEIR WIDEST POINT.

3. WE'RE LESS THAN ONE CENTIMETER AWAY FROM STUBBING OUR TOE EVERY TIME WE TAKE A STEP. WALKING IS NATURALLY ENERGY CONSERVING. WE LIFT OUR FOOT AS LITTLE AS POSSIBLE.

4. AS WE RISE UP WE SLOW DOWN. WE'RE STORING UP POTENTIAL ENERGY

5. OUR FOOT GLIDES DOWN HEEL FIRST FOR A SOFT LANDING

6. OUR CALVES PRODUCE HORSEPOWER. EVERY TIME WE THRUST FORWARD OUR CALF MUSCLE PUTS OUT UP TO ONE HORSEPOWER (760 WATTS).

DOESN'T HELP YOU MUCH WHEN YOU'RE ASKED TO ANIMATE THE WALK OF A SAD BUT HAPPY MAN — OR DOES IT?

BUT

ALL WALKS ARE DIFFERENT.

NO TWO PEOPLE IN THE WORLD WALK THE SAME.

ACTORS TRY TO GET HOLD OF A CHARACTER BY FIGURING OUT HOW HE/SHE/IT WALKS - TRY TO TELL THE WHOLE STORY WITH THE WALK.

Why is it that we recognize our Uncle Charlie even though we haven't seen him for ten years – walking – back view – out of focus – far away? Because everyone's walk is as individual and distinctive as their face. And one tiny detail will alter everything. There is a massive amount of information in a walk and we read it instantly.

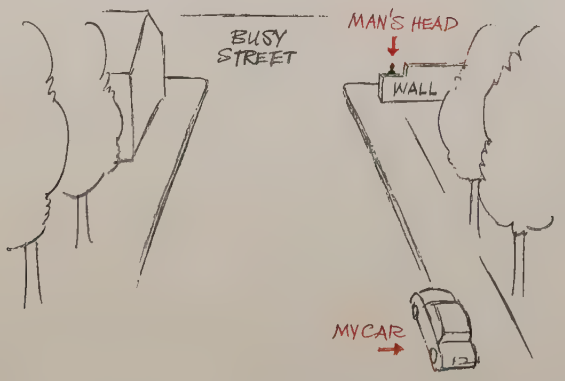
Art Babbitt taught us to look at someone walking in the street from the back view. Follow them along and ask yourself:

- ARE THEY OLD?
- YOUNG?
- WHAT'S THEIR FINANCIAL POSITION?
- STATE OF HEALTH?
- ARE THEY STRICT?
- PERMISSIVE?
- DEPRESSED?
- HOPEFUL?
- SAD?
- HAPPY?
- DRUNK?

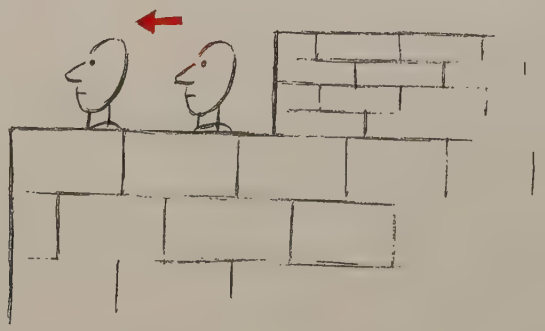
Then run around to see the front and check.

So what do we look for?

The big eye-opener for me happened like this. (Unfortunately it's a little politically incorrect, but it's a great example, so here goes.)

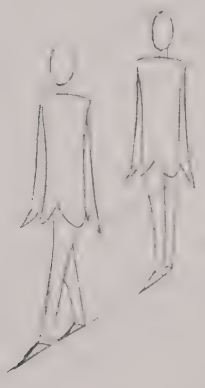


I was in my parked car turning on the ignition, when out of my peripheral vision I semi-consciously noticed a man's head walking behind a wall.

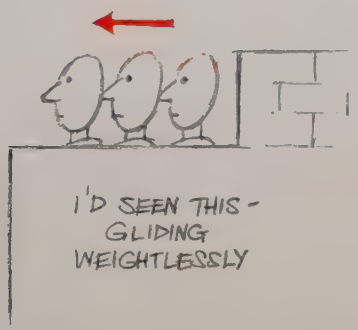


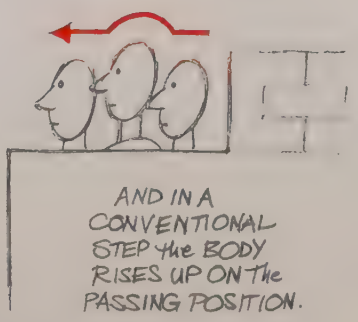
It passed through my mind that he was gay. A gay walk. Now I'm quite short-sighted – my eyes were focused on the ignition key, and it was a busy street with lots of cars and people – and he was about fifty yards away! Wow! How did I know that? This is crazy. All I'd seen was his out-of-focus head moving along behind a wall for a split second!

I started to drive away, then stopped. Wait a minute – I'm supposed to be good at this. I'm supposed to know these things. I have to know *why*! I remembered Art's advice, re-parked, jumped out and ran a block and a half to catch up with the fellow. I walked along behind him, copying him. Sure enough, it was an effeminate walk. Then I got it. He was walking as if on a tightrope and *gliding* along.

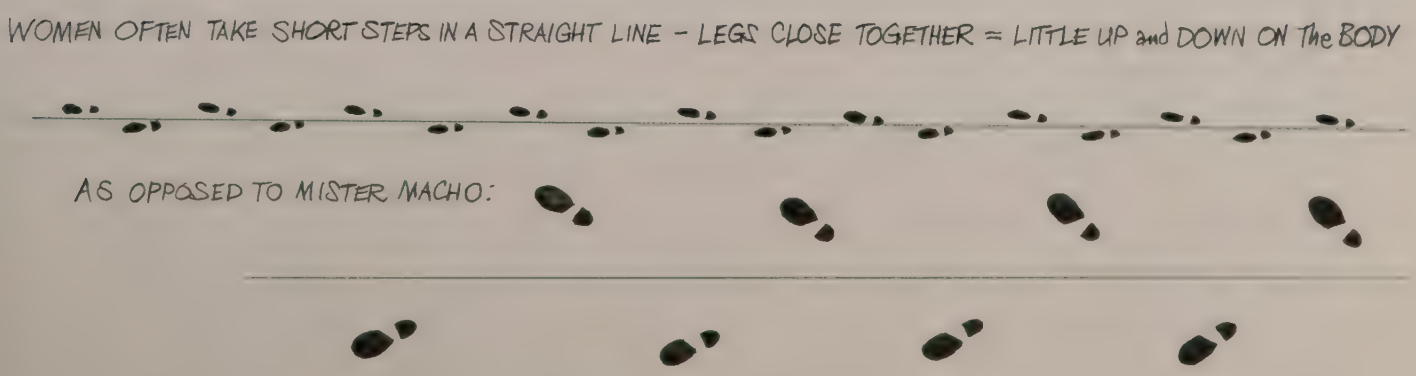


Now how could I have registered this with out-of-focus peripheral vision at fifty yards without even seeing his body? Simple, really. There was *no up and down action on the head*. Try walking on an imaginary tightrope and your head stays level. No ups and downs.



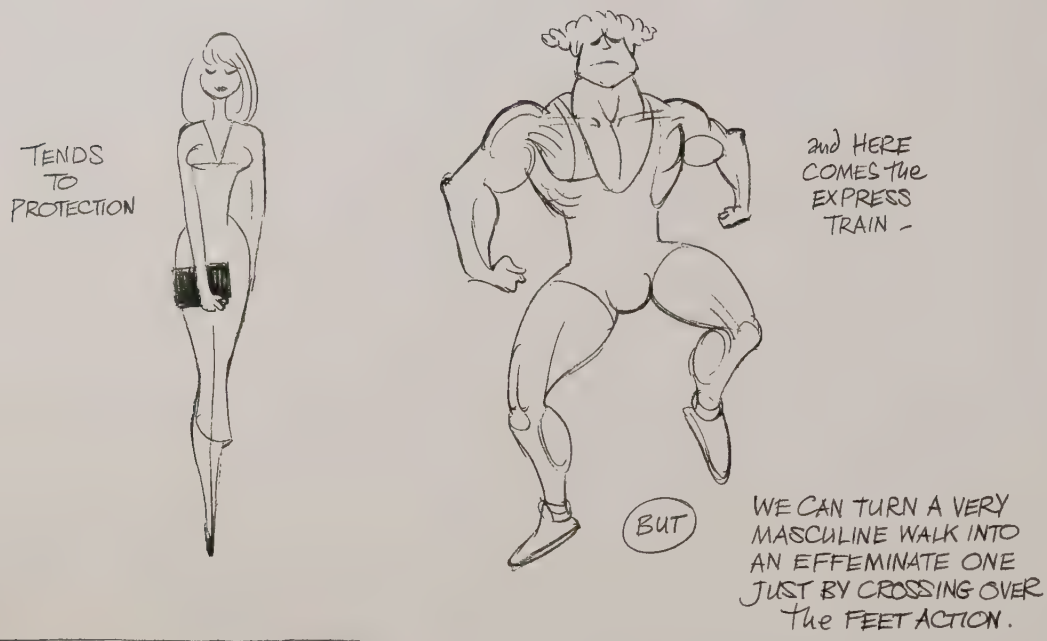


From then on the first thing I always look for is how much up and down action there is on the head. The amount of up and down is the key!


WOMEN OFTEN TAKE SHORT STEPS IN A STRAIGHT LINE - LEGS CLOSE TOGETHER = LITTLE UP and DOWN ON the BODY
AS OPPOSED TO MISTER MACHO:

Women mostly walk with their legs close together, protecting the crotch, resulting in not much up and down action on the head and body. Skirts also restrict their movement.

Mr Macho, however, because of *his* equipment, has his legs well apart so there's lots of up and down head and body action on each stride.

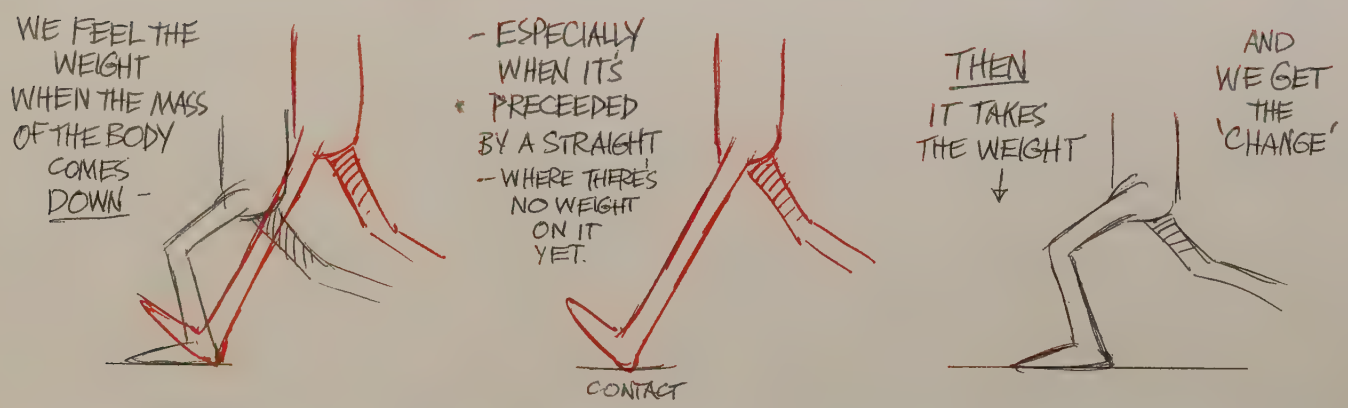

TENDS TO PROTECTION
and HERE COMES the EXPRESS TRAIN -
BUT
WE CAN TURN A VERY MASCULINE WALK INTO AN EFFEMINATE ONE JUST BY CROSSING OVER the FEET ACTION.

GETTING THE WEIGHT

WE DON'T GET WEIGHT BY A SMOOTH LEVEL MOVEMENT.

When we trace off a live action walk (the fancy word is rotoscoping), it doesn't work very well. Obviously, it works in the live action – but when you trace it accurately, it floats. Nobody really knows why. So we increase the ups and the downs – accentuate or exaggerate the ups and downs – and it works.

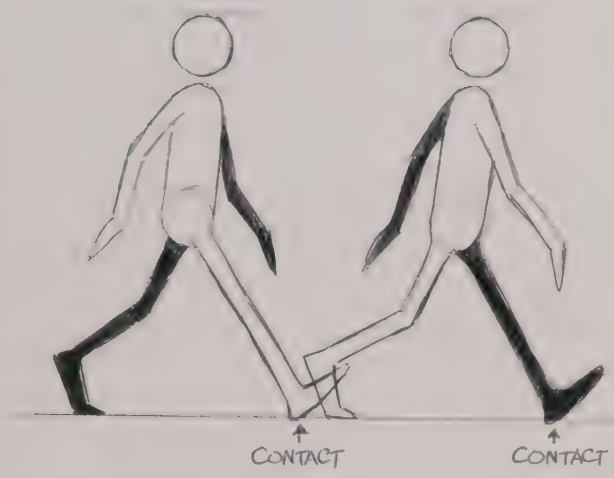
IT'S THE UP AND DOWN POSITION OF YOUR MASSES THAT GIVES YOU THE FEELING OF WEIGHT.


WE FEEL THE WEIGHT WHEN THE MASS OF THE BODY COMES DOWN -
- ESPECIALLY WHEN IT'S PRECEEDED BY A STRAIGHT -- WHERE THERE'S NO WEIGHT ON IT YET.
CONTACT
THEN IT TAKES THE WEIGHT
AND WE GET THE 'CHANGE'

IT'S THE DOWN POSITION WHERE THE LEGS ARE BENT AND THE BODY MASS IS DOWN-- WHERE WE FEEL THE WEIGHT.

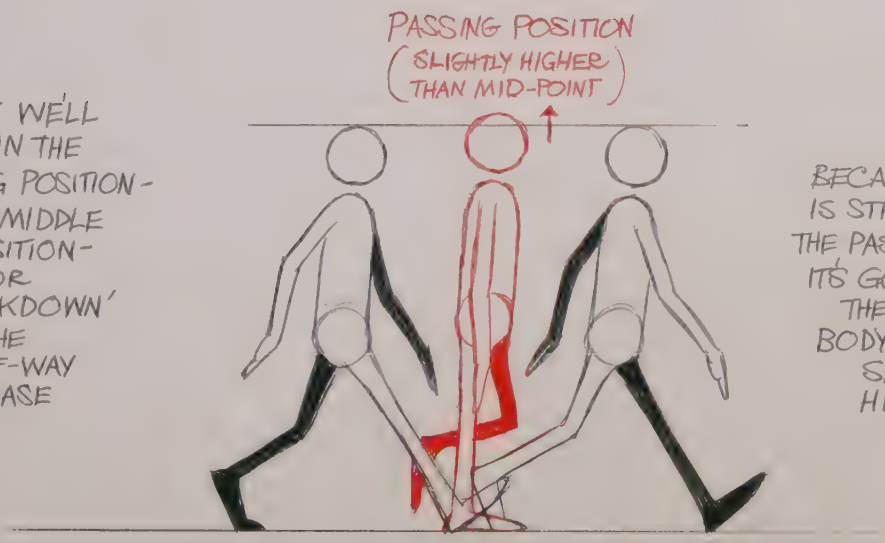
Before we start building walks and 'inventing' walks – here's what happens in a so-called 'normal' walk:

FIRST WE'LL MAKE THE 2 CONTACT POSITIONS –



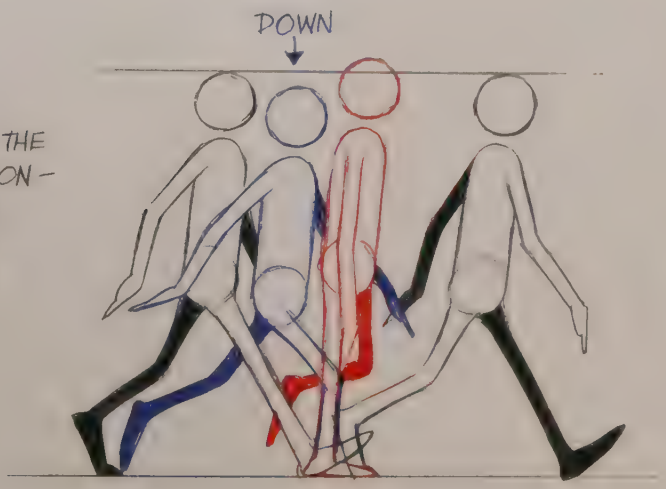
IN A NORMAL, CONVENTIONAL WALK, THE ARMS ARE ALWAYS OPPOSITE TO THE LEGS TO GIVE BALANCE AND THRUST.

NEXT WE'LL PUT IN THE PASSING POSITION – – THE MIDDLE POSITION – OR 'BREAKDOWN' – THE HALF-WAY PHASE



BECAUSE THE LEG IS STRAIGHT UP ON THE PASSING POSITION, IT'S GOING TO LIFT THE PELVIS, BODY and HEAD SLIGHTLY HIGHER.

NEXT COMES THE DOWN POSITION – WHERE THE BENT LEG TAKES THE WEIGHT

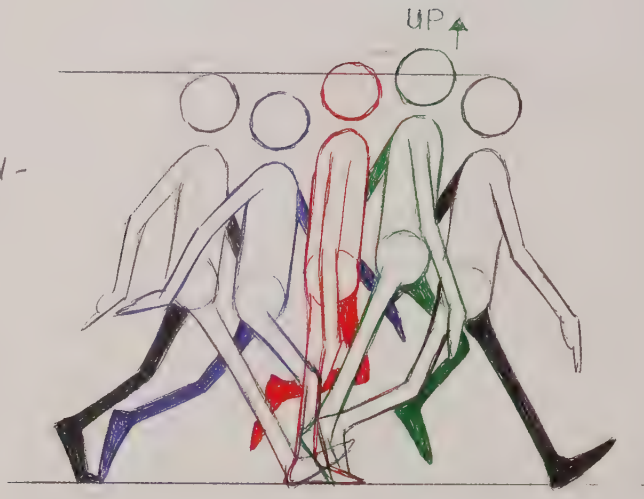


AND JUST TO COMPLICATE LIFE · IN A NORMAL WALK THE ARM SWING IS AT IT'S WIDEST ON THE DOWN POSITION

(AND NOT ON the CONTACT POSITION AS WE'D PREFER.)

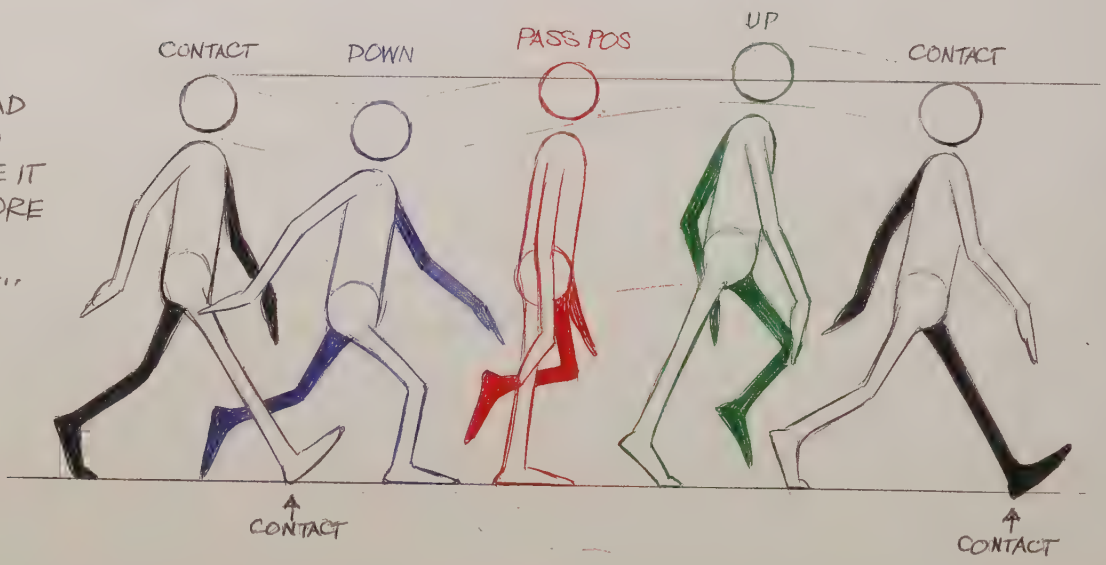
WE CAN IGNORE THIS AS WE PROCEED BUT WE MIGHT AS WELL UNDERSTAND THE NORM BEFORE WE START MESSING AROUND.

NEXT WE PUT IN THE UP POSITION - -THE PUSH-OFF.

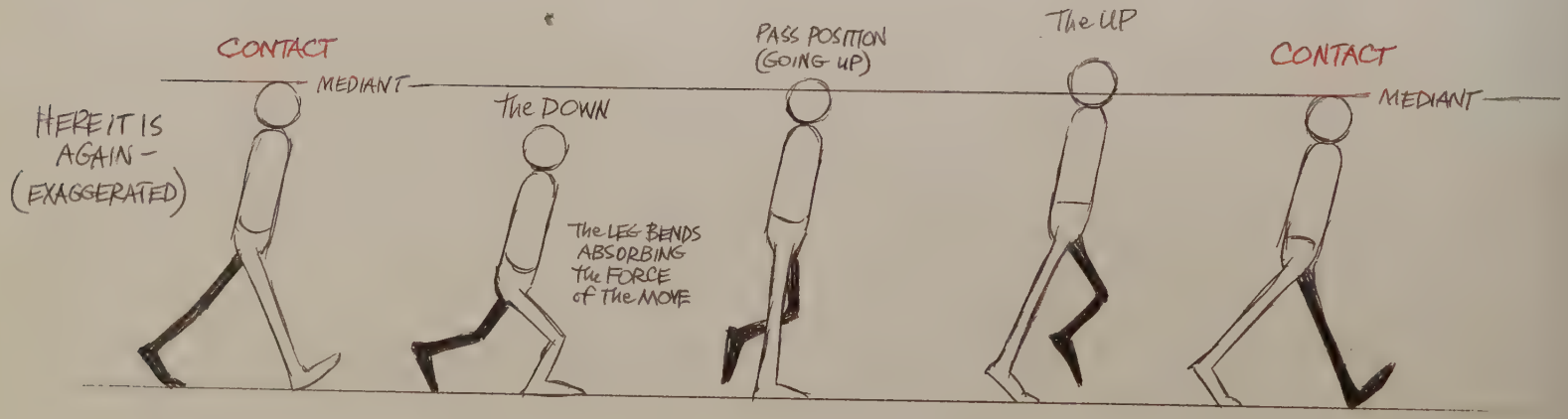


THE FOOT PUSHING OFF LIFTS THE PELVIS, BODY and HEAD UP TO IT'S HIGHEST POSITION - THEN THE LEG IS THROWN OUT TO CATCH US ON THE CONTACT POSITION - SO WE DON'T FALL ON OUR FACE.

LET'S SPREAD IT OUT AND EXAGGERATE IT A LITTLE MORE SO IT'S CLEARER...



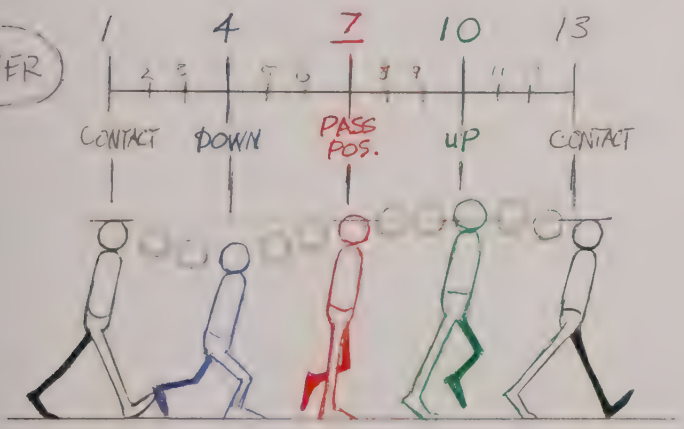
SO, IN A NORMAL 'REALISTIC' WALK
THE WEIGHT GOES (DOWN) JUST AFTER THE STEP - JUST AFTER THE CONTACT.
and THE WEIGHT GOES (UP) JUST AFTER THE PASSING POSITION.



SET THE TEMPO

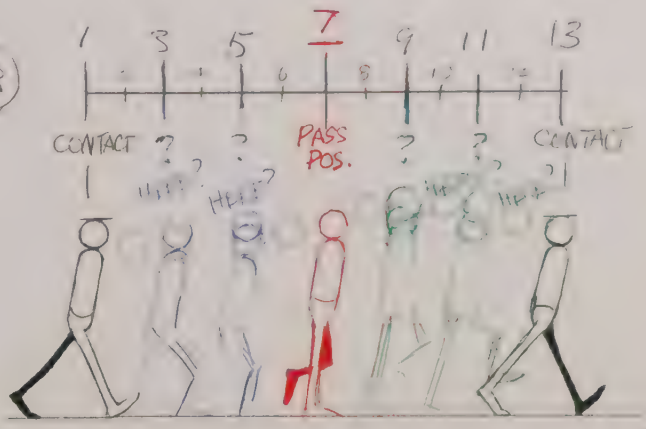
The FIRST THING TO DO IN A WALK IS SET A BEAT.
GENERALLY PEOPLE WALK ON 12's - MARCH TIME (HALF A SECOND PER STEP / TWO STEPS PER SECOND.)
BUT LAZY ANIMATORS DON'T LIKE TO DO IT ON 12's.
IT'S HARD TO DIVIDE UP. YOU HAVE TO USE 'THIRDS' — THINK PARTLY IN THIRDS

EITHER



THE IN BETWEENS ARE GOING TO BE ON THIRDS.

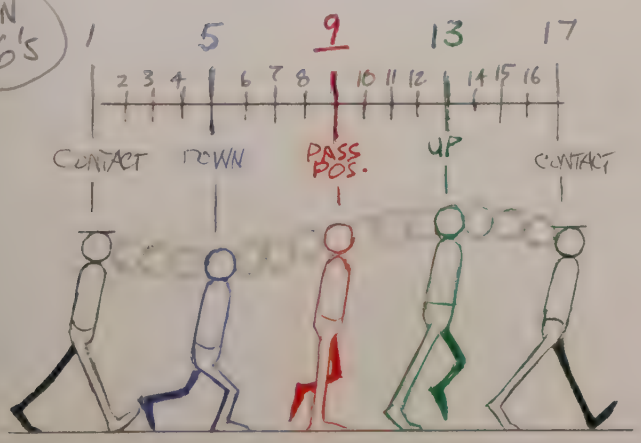
OR



OOPS - NOW WHERE DO WE PUT THE DOWN OR UP?
HEY, THIS IS GETTING HARD - ESPECIALLY WHEN WE GET INTO THE ARMS AND HEAD, AND 'ACTING' AND DRAPERY — MAYBE THERE'S AN EASIER WAY?

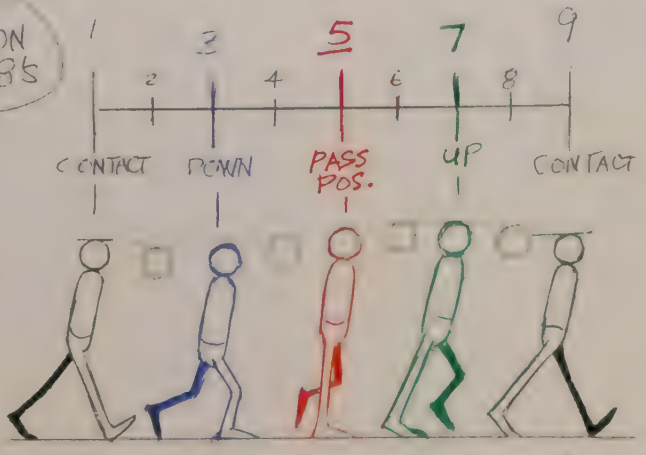
THERE IS AN EASIER WAY - HAVE HIM/HER WALK ON 16's — OR WALK ON 8's
MUCH EASIER TO WALK ON 16's - IT'S EASY TO DIVIDE UP — SAME THING ON 8's.
(EACH STEP = 2/3 SEC) (3 STEPS PER SEC.)

ON 16's



WHEW, THAT MAKES LIFE EASIER.
NICE EVEN DIVISIONS NOW -

ON 8's



(REDUCED UP AND DOWN ACTION - SINCE IT'S TAKING PLACE IN A SHORTER TIME)

THIS IS WHY CARTOON WALKS ARE OFTEN ON 8's.
BUMP, BUMP, BUMP, 3 STEPS A SECOND.

SO, WE SET A BEAT:

4 FRAMES = A VERY FAST RUN (6 STEPS A SECOND)
6 FRAMES = A RUN OR VERY FAST WALK (4 STEPS A SECOND)
8 FRAMES = SLOW RUN OR 'CARTOON' WALK (3 STEPS A SECOND)
12 FRAMES = BRISK, BUSINESS-LIKE WALK – 'NATURAL' WALK (2 STEPS A SECOND)
16 FRAMES = STROLLING WALK – MORE LEISURELY (⅔ OF A SECOND PER STEP)
20 FRAMES = ELDERLY OR TIRED PERSON (ALMOST A SECOND PER STEP)
24 FRAMES = SLOW STEP (ONE STEP PER SECOND)
32 FRAMES = ...'SHOW ME THE WAY....TO GO HOME'...

The best way to time a walk (or anything else) is to act it out and time yourself with a stopwatch. Also, acting it out with a metronome is a great help.

I naturally think in seconds – 'one Mississippi' or 'one little monkey' or 'a thousand and one, a thousand and two' etc.

Ken Harris thought in feet, probably because he was so footage conscious – having to produce thirty feet of animation a week. He'd tap his upside-down pencil *exactly* every two thirds of a second as we'd act things out.

Milt Kahl told me that on his first week at Disney's he bought a stopwatch and went downtown in the lunch break and timed people walking – normal walks, people just going somewhere. He said they were *invariably* on twelve exposures – right on the nose. March time.

As a result, he used to beat off twelve exposures as his reference point. Anything he timed was just so much more or so much less than that twelve exposures. He said he used to say 'Well, it's about 8s.' He said it made it easy for him – or *easier* anyway.

Chuck Jones said the *Roadrunner* films had a musical tempo built into them. He'd time the whole film out, hitting things on a set beat so they had a musical, rhythmic integrity already built in. Then the musician could hit the beat, ignore it or run the music against it.

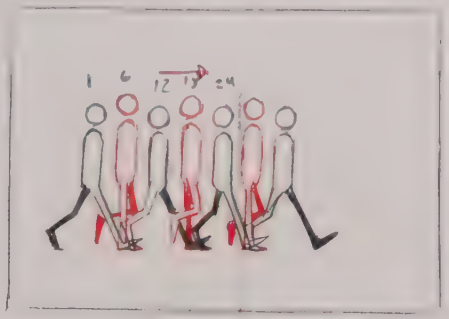
Chuck told me that they used to have exposure sheets with a coloured line printed right across the page for every sixteen frames and another one marking every twelve frames. He called them '16 sheets' or '12 sheets' I guess '8 sheets' would be the normal sheets.

I mentioned once to Art Babbitt that I liked the timing on the *Tom and Jerrys*. 'Oh yeah,' he said dismissively, 'All on 8s.'

That kind of tightly synchronized musical timing is rare today. They call it 'Mickey Mousing' where you accent everything – it's a derogatory term nowadays and considered corny. But it can be extremely effective.

In trying out walks, it's best to keep the figure simple. It's quick to do and easy to fix – easy to make changes.

ALSO, IN DOING THESE WALKS - TAKE A FEW STEPS ACROSS the PAGE OR SCREEN..



DON'T TRY TO WORK OUT A CYCLE WALKING IN PLACE WITH the FEET SLIDING BACK, ETC. THAT ALL BECOMES TOO TECHNICAL. WE WANT OUR BRAIN FREE TO CONCENTRATE ON AN INTERESTING WALK PROGRESSING FORWARD.

WE CAN WORK OUT A CYCLE FOR the WALK LATER... PERHAPS JUST FOR the FEET and BODY. BUT THEN HAVE the ARMS and the HEAD PERFORMING SEPARATELY.

CYCLES ARE MECHANICAL and LOOK JUST LIKE WHAT THEY ARE - CYCLES.

CHUCK JONES TELLS OF HIS TINY 3 YEAR OLD GRANDDAUGHTER SAYING, "GRANDAD, WHY DOES the SAME WAVE KEEP LAPPING ON the ISLAND?"

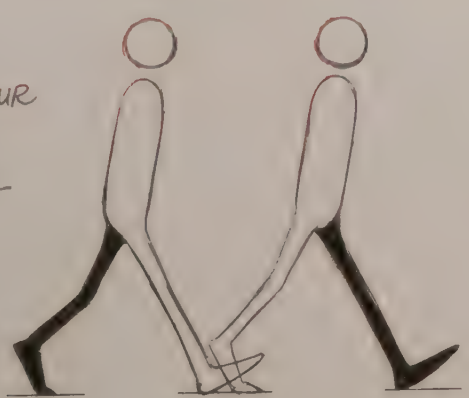
Incidentally, if you are using colours as I am here, it works just fine when you film them. I often have a lot of colours going at first, and you still see the action clearly.

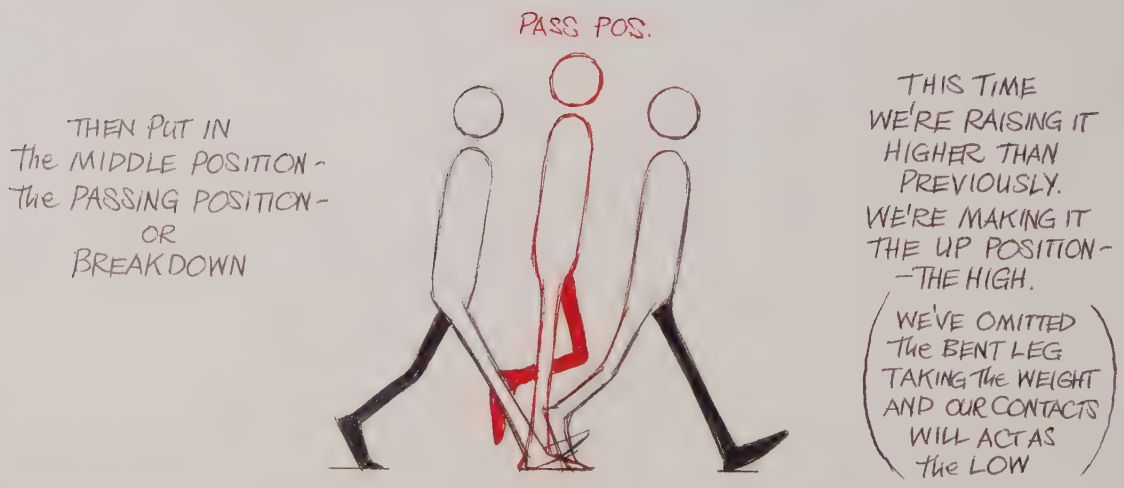
Now we're going to start taking things out of the normal:

the PASSING POSITION OR BREAKDOWN

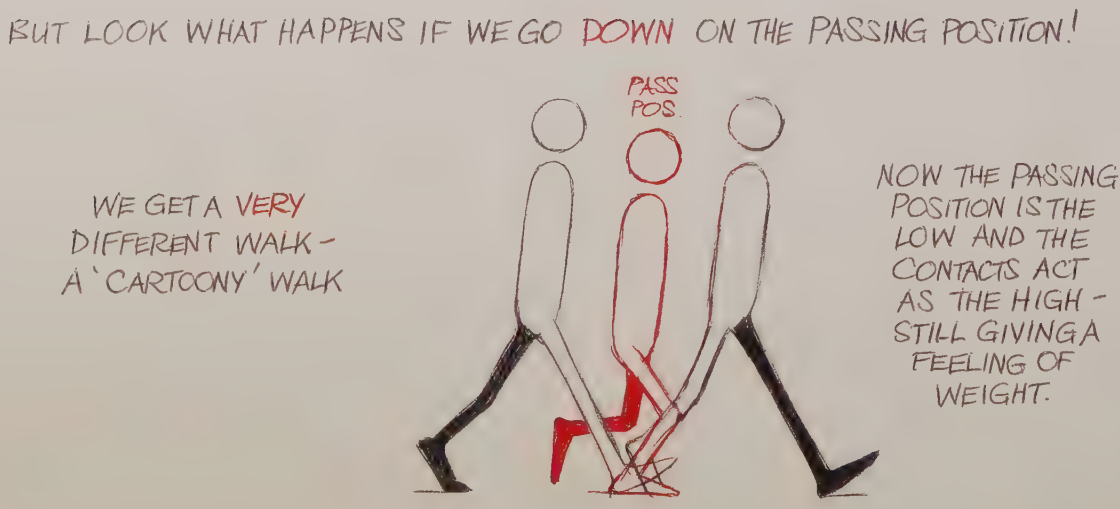
THERE'S A VERY SIMPLE WAY TO BUILD A WALK. START WITH JUST 3 DRAWINGS -

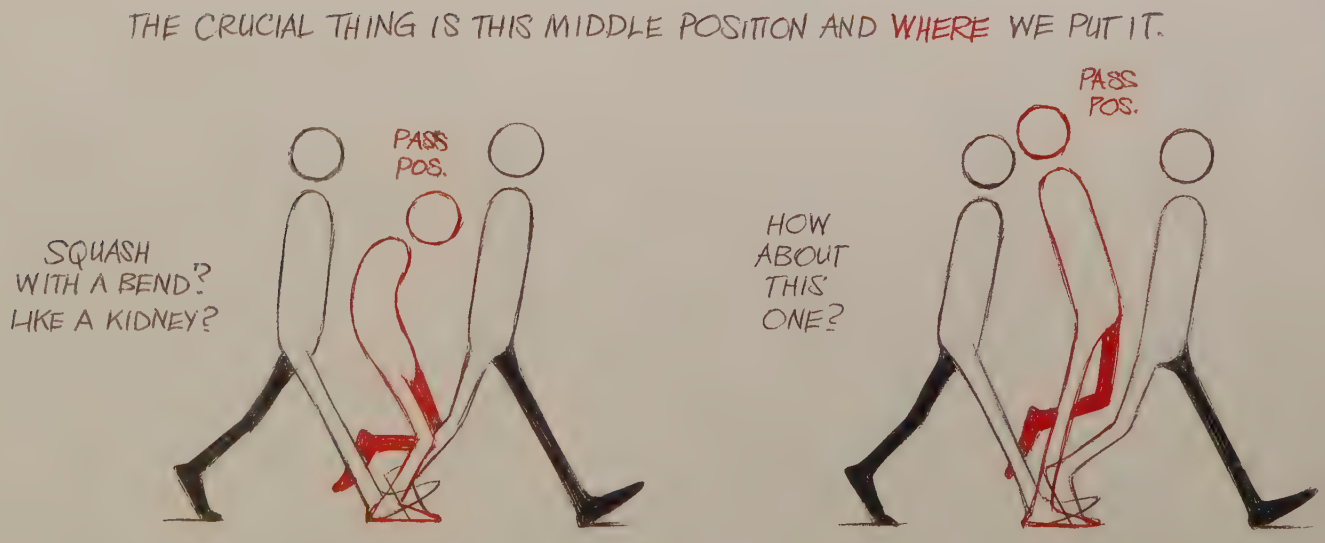
FIRST WE MAKE OUR TWO CONTACT POSITIONS -




PASS POS.
THEN PUT IN THE MIDDLE POSITION - THE PASSING POSITION - OR BREAKDOWN
THIS TIME WE'RE RAISING IT HIGHER THAN PREVIOUSLY. WE'RE MAKING IT THE UP POSITION - -THE HIGH.
WE'VE OMITTED THE BENT LEG TAKING THE WEIGHT AND OUR CONTACTS WILL ACT AS THE LOW

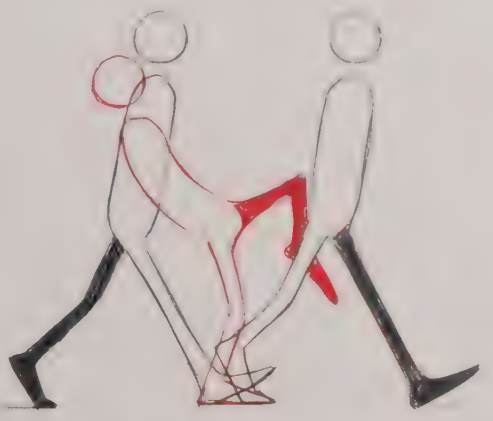
When we join these up with connecting drawings, the walk will still have a feeling of weight because of the up and down. We can make tremendous use of this simple three drawing device.


BUT LOOK WHAT HAPPENS IF WE GO DOWN ON THE PASSING POSITION!
PASS POS.
WE GET A VERY DIFFERENT WALK - A 'CARTOONY' WALK
NOW THE PASSING POSITION IS THE LOW AND THE CONTACTS ACT AS THE HIGH - STILL GIVING A FEELING OF WEIGHT.


THE CRUCIAL THING IS THIS MIDDLE POSITION AND WHERE WE PUT IT.
PASS POS.
SQUASH WITH A BEND? LIKE A KIDNEY?
PASS POS.
HOW ABOUT THIS ONE?

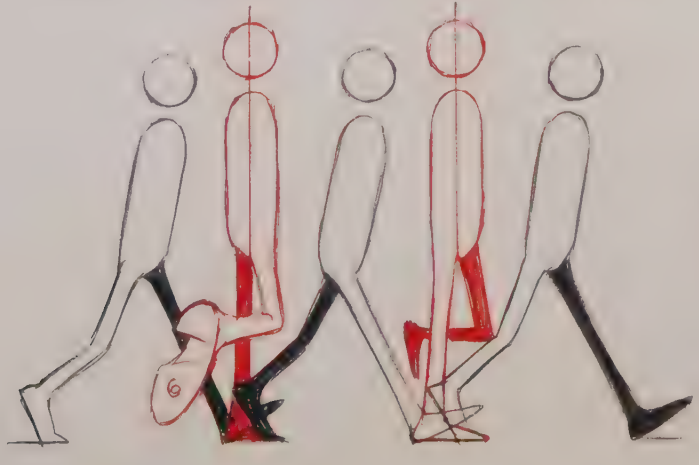
THESE CONTACTS ARE ALL THE SAME BUT THE MIDDLE POSITION UTTERLY CHANGES THE FEELING

(OBVIOUSLY WE'LL NEED THE TIME TO ACCOMODATE BROAD MOVES LIKE THIS)



IN A SLOW STEP WE MIGHT GO AS FAR AS THIS - ALMOST A SNEAK.

WHAT IF THE FEET SWING OUT SIDEWAYS ON THE PASSING POSITIONS?



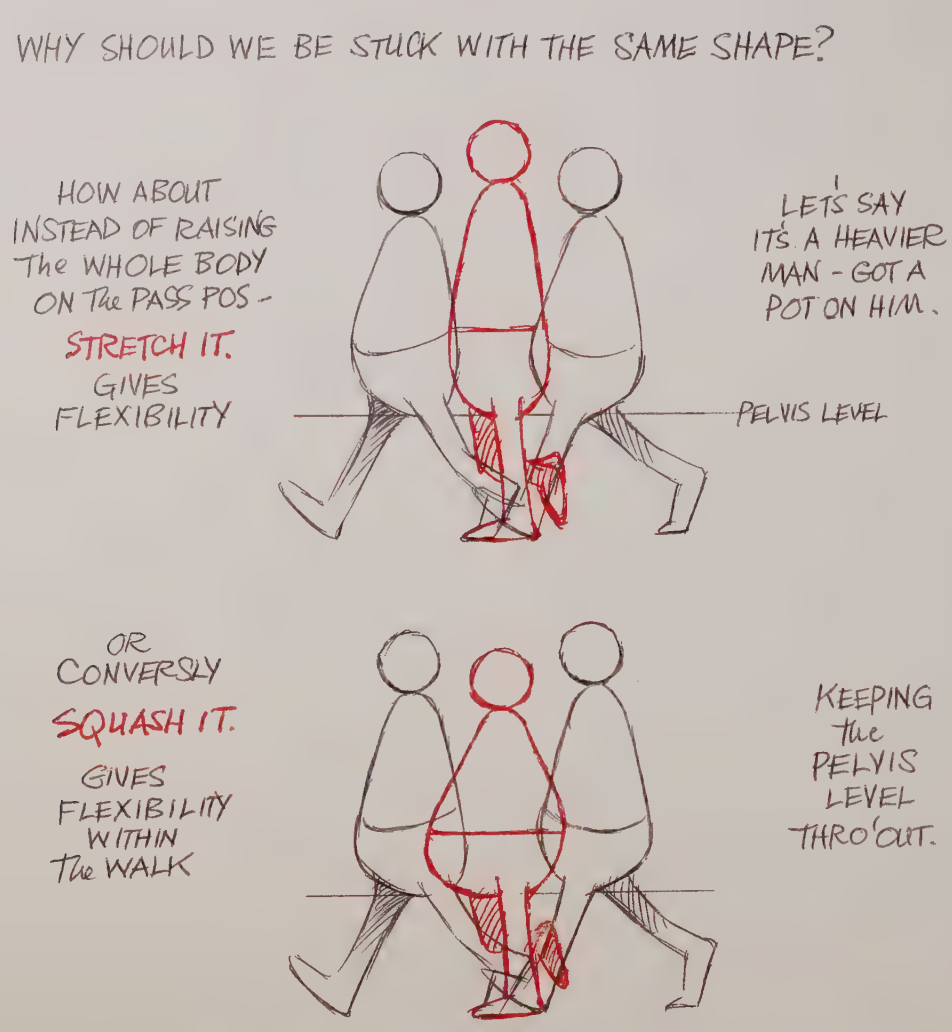
AND MAYBE STRAIGHTEN THE BODY ON THE PASS POSITIONS?

OR JUST TILT THE HEAD AND SHOULDERS SIDEWAYS ON THE PASS POSITIONS -

THE KEY THING IS WHERE DO WE WANT TO PUT THE MIDDLE POSITION -

NOT TO MENTION WHAT WE CAN DO WITH THE HEAD, HANDS, ARMS OR FEET -

THE VARIATIONS ARE ENDLESS -


AND WHY SHOULD WE BE STUCK WITH THE SAME SHAPE?
HOW ABOUT INSTEAD OF RAISING THE WHOLE BODY ON THE PASS POS - STRETCH IT. GIVES FLEXIBILITY
LETS SAY IT'S A HEAVIER MAN - GOT A POT ON HIM.
PELVIS LEVEL
OR CONVERSLY SQUASH IT. GIVES FLEXIBILITY WITHIN THE WALK
KEEPING THE PELVIS LEVEL THRO'OUT.

To my knowledge, I think Art Babbitt may have been the first one to depart from the normal walk or the cliché cartoon walks. Certainly he was a great exponent of the 'invented' walk. He became famous for the eccentric walks he gave Goofy – which made Goofy into a star. He even put the feet on backwards! He made it look perfectly acceptable and people didn't realize they were backwards!

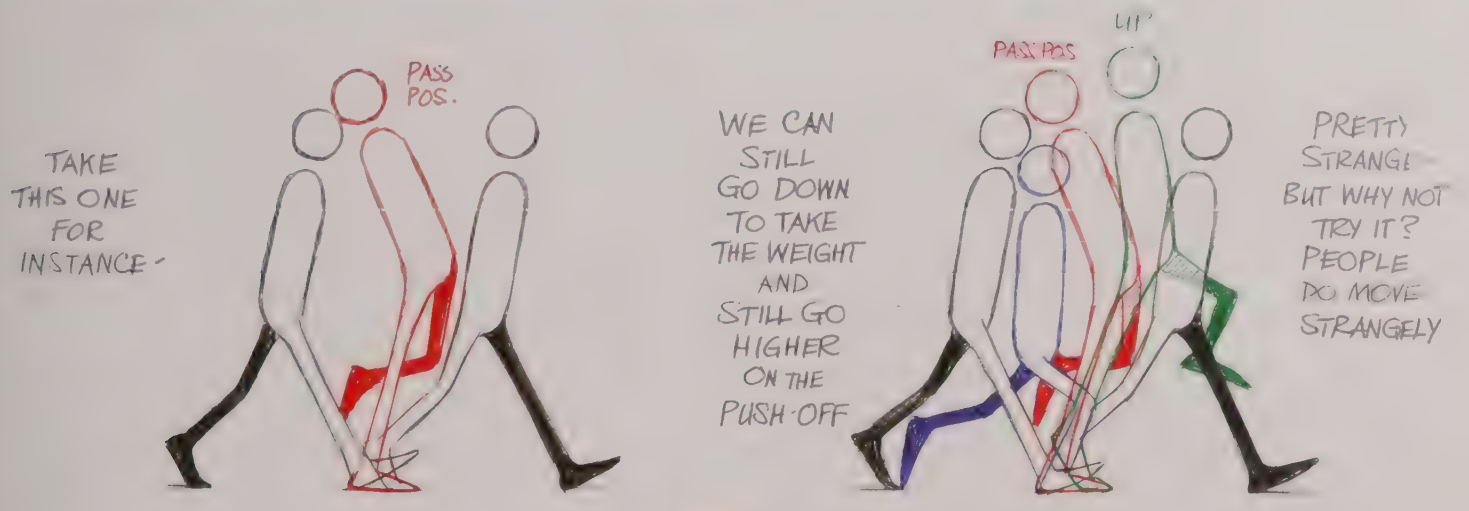
Art's whole credo was: 'Invent! Every rule in animation is there to be broken – if you have the inventiveness and curiosity to look beyond what exists.' In other words, 'Learn the rules and then learn how to break them.'

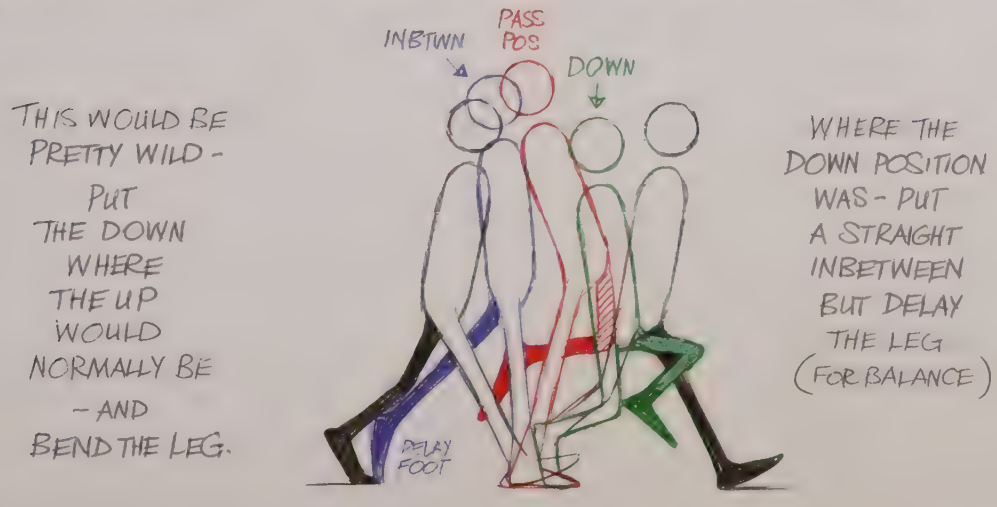
This opened up a whole Pandora's box of invention.

Art always said, 'The animation medium is very unusual. We can accomplish actions no human could possibly do. *And* make it look convincing!'

This eccentric passing position idea is a terrifically useful device. We can put it anywhere and where we put it has a huge effect on the action. And who says we can't put it anywhere we want? There's nothing to stop us.

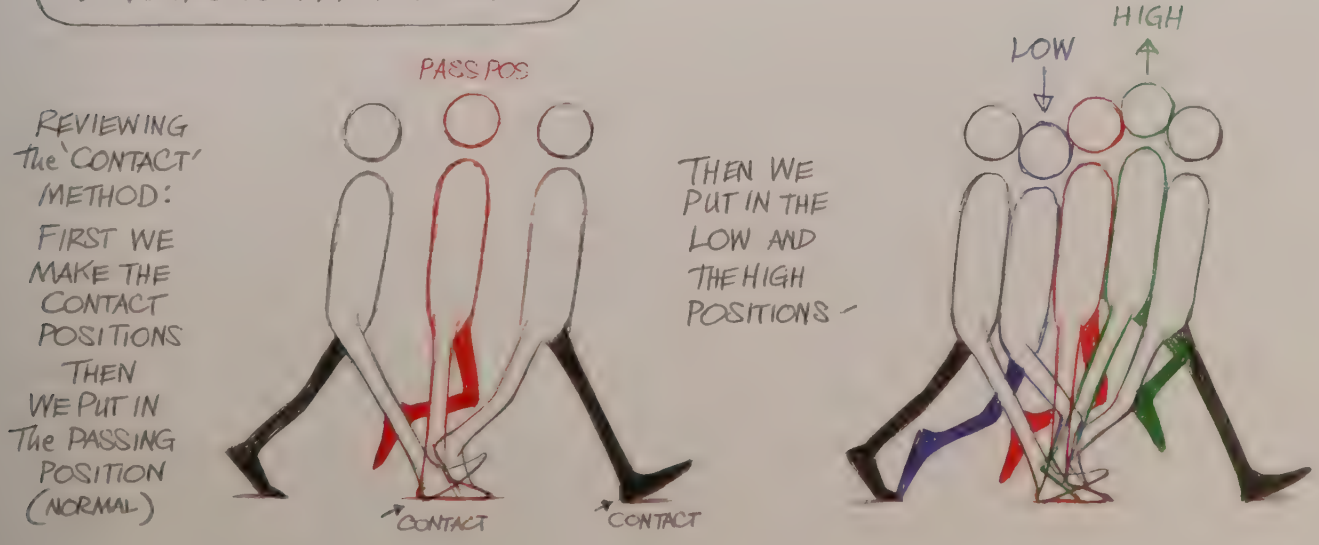
For that matter, we can *keep on* breaking things down into weird places – provided we allow enough screen time to accommodate the movement.


TAKE THIS ONE FOR INSTANCE -
PASS POS.
WE CAN STILL GO DOWN TO TAKE THE WEIGHT AND STILL GO HIGHER ON THE PUSH-OFF
PASS POS
UP
PRETTY STRANGE - BUT WHY NOT TRY IT? PEOPLE DO MOVE STRANGELY


THIS WOULD BE PRETTY WILD - PUT THE DOWN WHERE THE UP WOULD NORMALLY BE - AND BEND THE LEG.
INBTWN
PASS POS
DOWN
DELAY FOOT
WHERE THE DOWN POSITION WAS - PUT A STRAIGHT INBETWEEN BUT DELAY THE LEG (FOR BALANCE)

Anyway, back to the normal:

2 WAYS TO PLAN A WALK


REVIEWING THE 'CONTACT' METHOD: FIRST WE MAKE THE CONTACT POSITIONS THEN WE PUT IN THE PASSING POSITION (NORMAL)
PASS POS
CONTACT
CONTACT
THEN WE PUT IN THE LOW AND THE HIGH POSITIONS -
LOW
HIGH

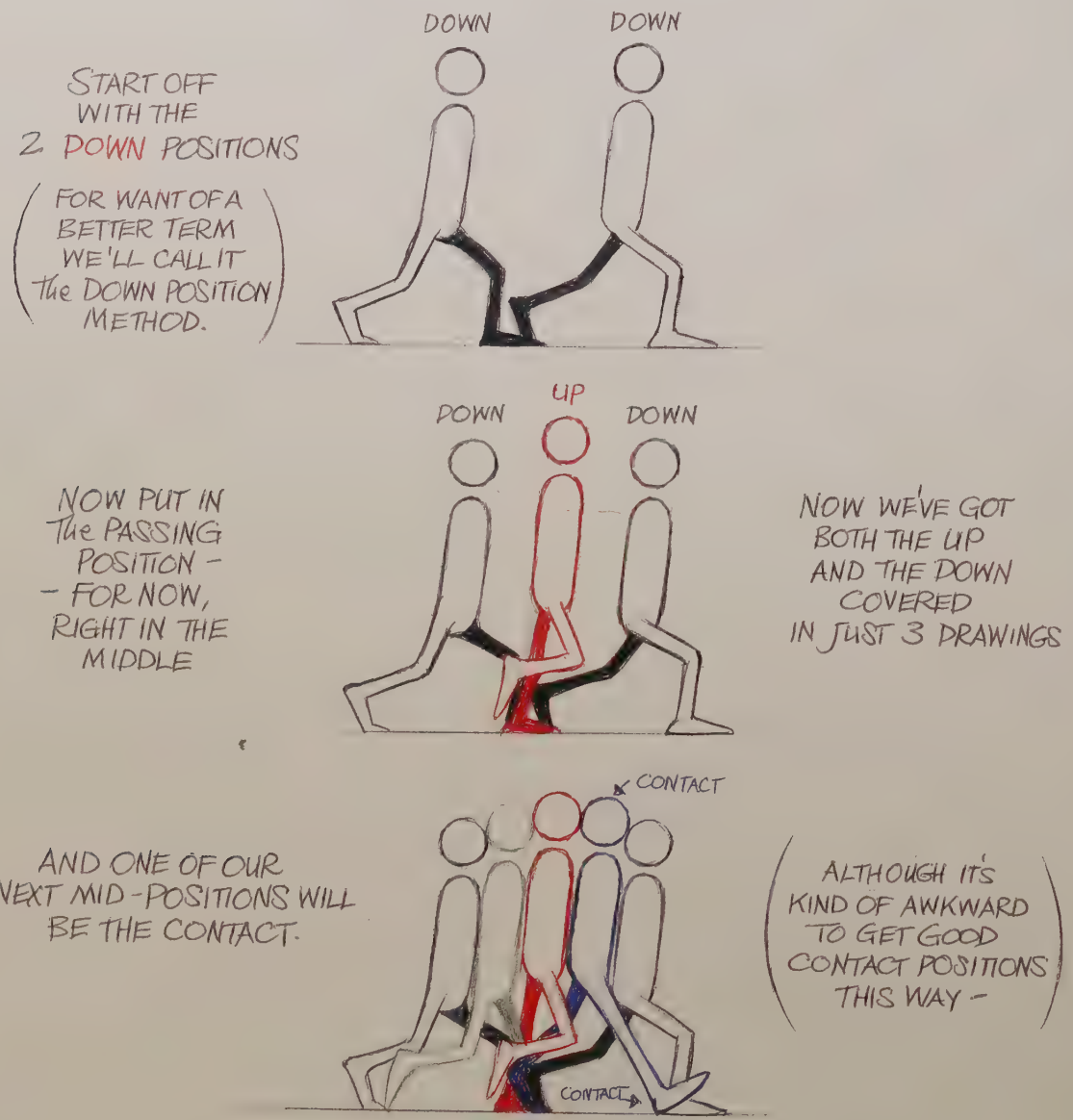
I've found that this contact method is *the one that gets you through – takes you home*. It's especially suitable for natural actions – which is what we mostly have to do. I've found it to be the best way to do most things.

Milt Kahl worked this way. 'In a walk, or anything, I make the contact positions first – where the feet contact the ground with no weight on them yet. It's kind of a middle position for the head and body parts – neither an up or down. I know where the highs and lows are and then I break it down. Another reason I do it is because it makes a scene easy to plan.'

'I always start off with that contact because it's a dynamic, moving thing. And it's much better than starting with the weight already on the foot, which would be a very static pose!'*

* WHICH IS EXACTLY WHAT THE SECOND SYSTEM DOES.

THIS IS THE WAY ART BABBITT OFTEN PLANNED A WALK – AND IT HAS A VERY CUNNING THING TO IT:


DOWN
DOWN
START OFF WITH THE 2 DOWN POSITIONS
(FOR WANT OF A BETTER TERM WE'LL CALL IT THE DOWN POSITION METHOD.)
UP
DOWN
DOWN
NOW PUT IN THE PASSING POSITION – – FOR NOW, RIGHT IN THE MIDDLE
NOW WE'VE GOT BOTH THE UP AND THE DOWN COVERED IN JUST 3 DRAWINGS
CONTACT
AND ONE OF OUR NEXT MID-POSITIONS WILL BE THE CONTACT.
(ALTHOUGH IT'S KIND OF AWKWARD TO GET GOOD CONTACT POSITIONS THIS WAY –)
CONTACT

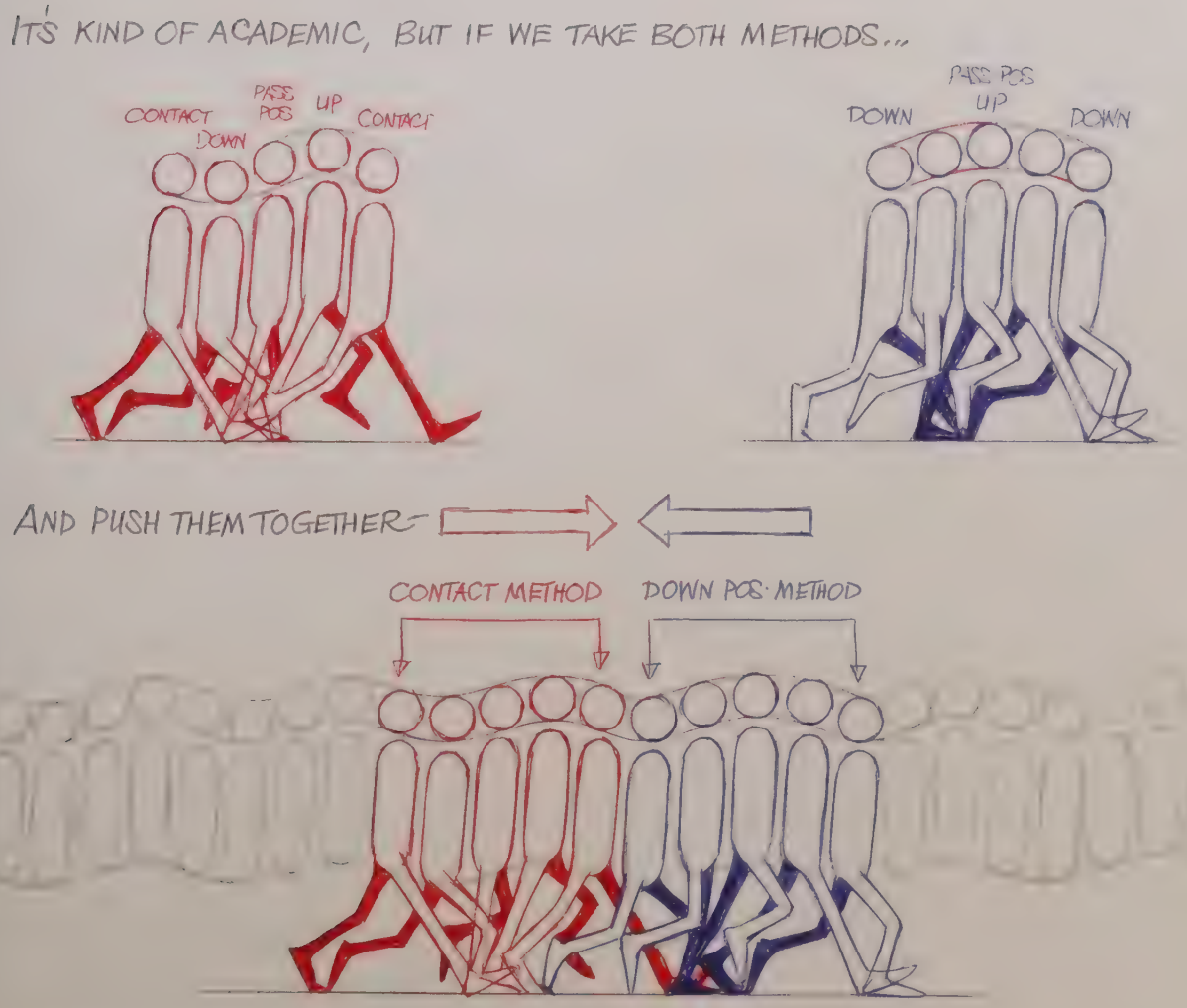
The cleverness of this approach is that we've already taken care of the up and down in the first three drawings. Of course, we can put the passing position up, down or sideways – anywhere we want. But having the downs already set helps us invent; it gives us a simple grid on which to get complicated, if we want.

We know it'll already have weight and so we're free to mess around and invent eccentric actions, or actions that couldn't happen in the real world.

Again, we're not stuck with one method or the other. Why not have both? Not only but also . . .

I highly recommend the contact approach for general use, but starting with the down position is very useful for unconventional invention.

From now on we'll use both approaches.



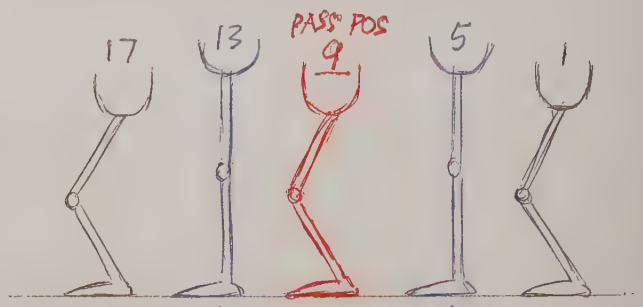
The DOUBLE BOUNCE

'Truckin' on down.' The double bounce walk shows energetic optimism – the North American 'can do' attitude. They used this walk like mad in the early 1930s – lots of characters (bugs and things) all trucking around doing jazzy double bounces.

THE IDEA IS 2 BOUNCES PER STEP. YOU BOUNCE TWICE.
YOU GO DOWN (OR UP) TWICE INSTEAD OF ONCE TO THE STEP.

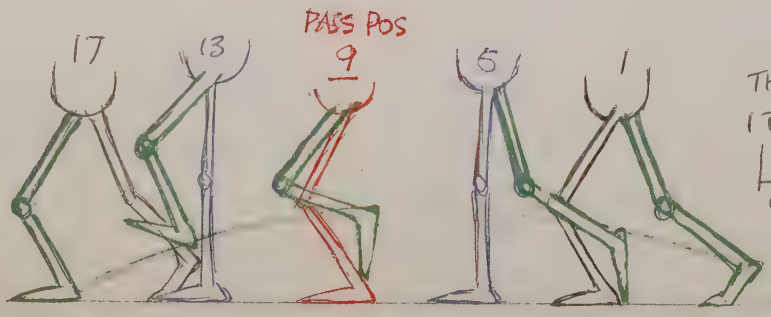
SAY IT'S A 16 FRAME STEP (ON ONES BECAUSE THERE'S A LOT GOING ON.)
WE'LL START WITH THE BENT LEG DOWN – SPREAD THE LEGS APART FOR CLARITY:

PUT THE PASS POS IN THE MIDDLE BUT ALSO DOWN

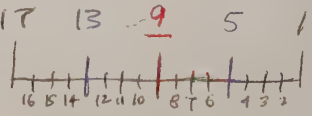


ADD IN THE NEXT TWO MID-POSITIONS UP – AS THE HIGHS.

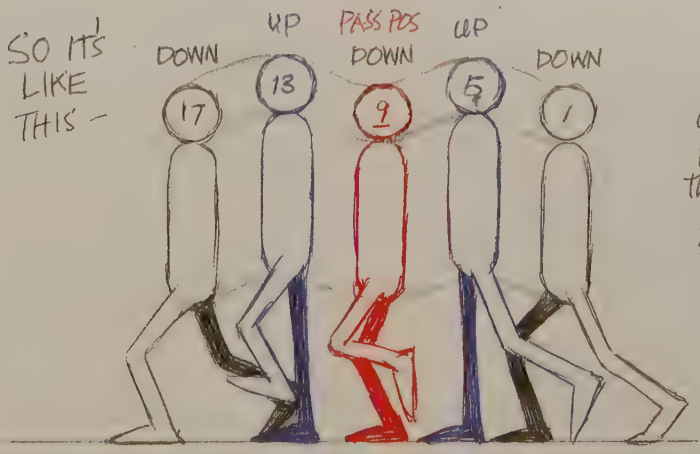
ADD IN THE STEPPING FOOT –



THE CHART IS LIKE THIS:

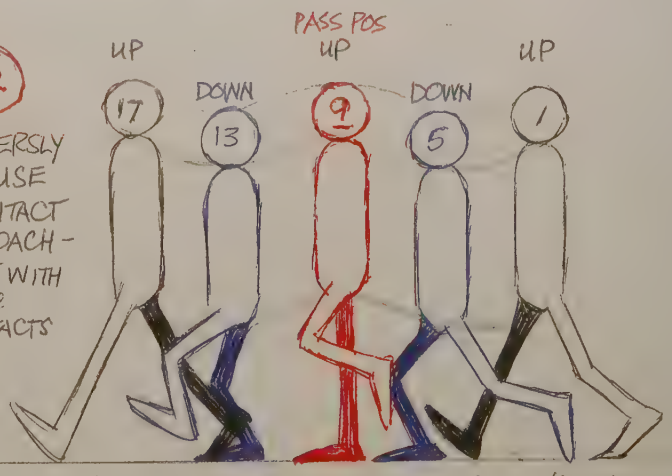


SO IT'S LIKE THIS –



OR

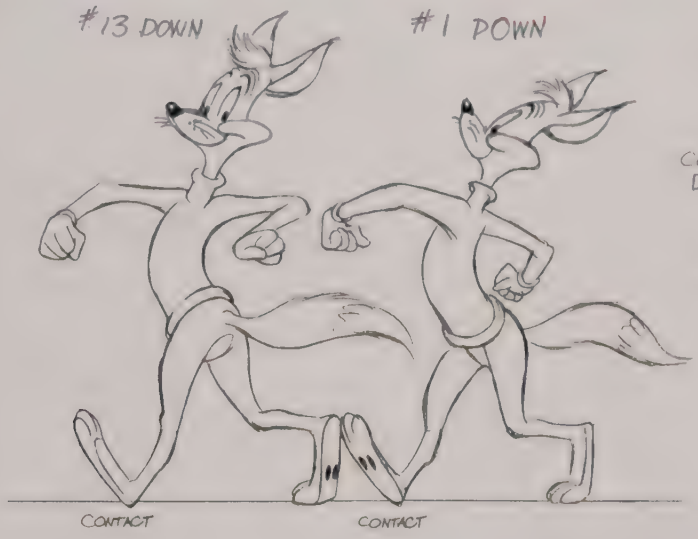
CONVERSLY LET'S USE THE CONTACT APPROACH – START WITH THE CONTACTS

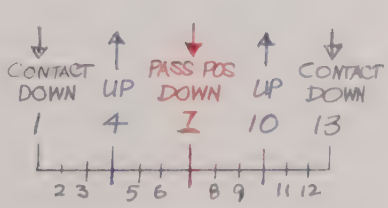


CONTACTS + PASS POS ARE THE HIGHS AND MID POSITIONS ARE THE LOWS

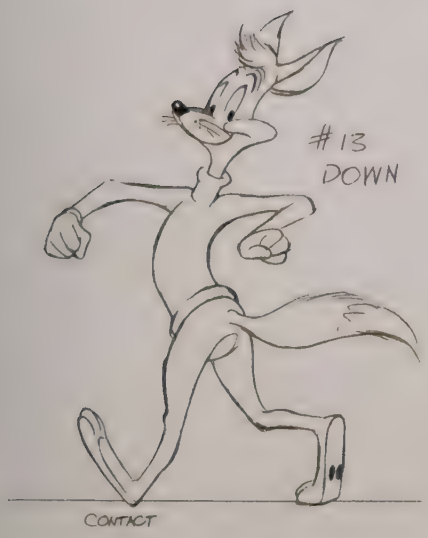
I MADE THIS DOUBLE BOUNCE WALK BY COMBINING the TWO APPROACHES.
I DID the STRAIGHT LEG CONTACTS FIRST, BUT ALSO MADE THEM THE LOW - the DOWN.

THIS IS ON ONES - TAKING ONE STEP OF A WALK ON 12's





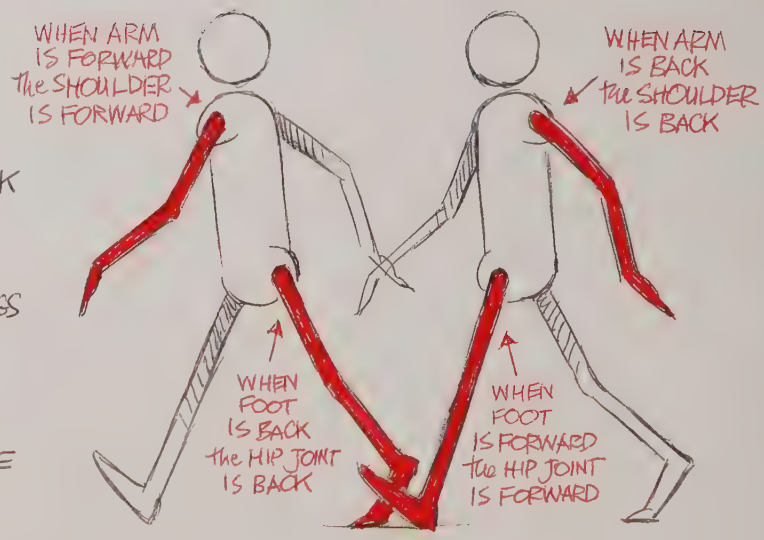
The INBETWEENS ARE ON THIRDS - UNFORTUNATELY.



LOOSENING IT UP

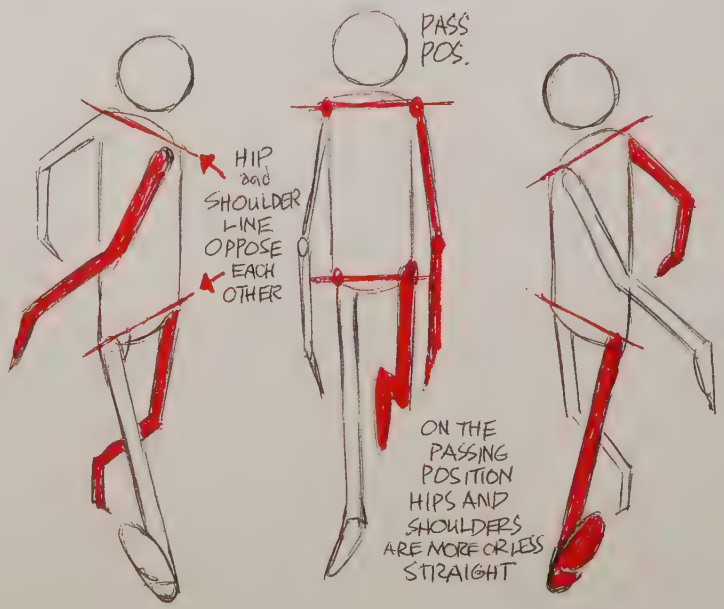
WE'LL START OUT WITH THIS SIMPLE CLICHÉ WALK – NOTHING FANCY YET.

THE ARMS NORMALLY WILL MOVE OPPOSITE TO THE LEGS – BUT SIMPLY BY HAVING **THE SHOULDERS OPPOSING THE LEGS** WILL GIVE IT MORE LIFE


WHEN ARM IS FORWARD the SHOULDER IS FORWARD
WHEN ARM IS BACK the SHOULDER IS BACK
WHEN FOOT IS BACK the HIP JOINT IS BACK
WHEN FOOT IS FORWARD the HIP JOINT IS FORWARD

(FRONT VIEW PULLING IT APART FOR CLARITY)

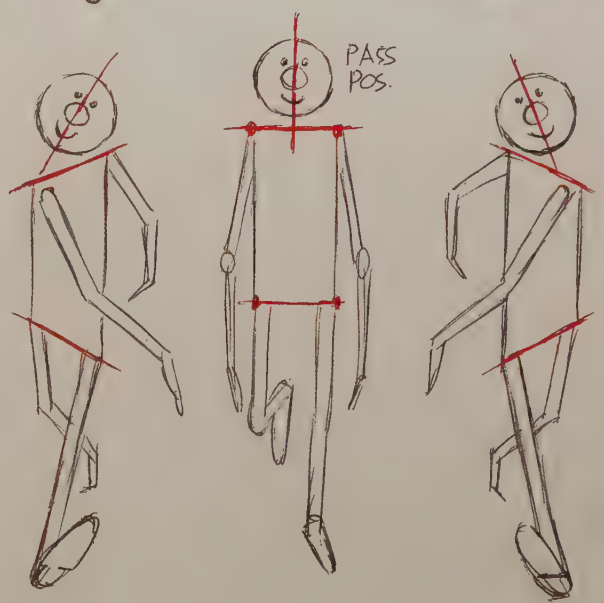
NOW LET'S **TILT THE SHOULDERS** FOR SOME VITALITY –



WE'RE TAKING OUR BASIC PLAN NOW AND ADDING IN THINGS TO BUILD ON THE SYSTEM.

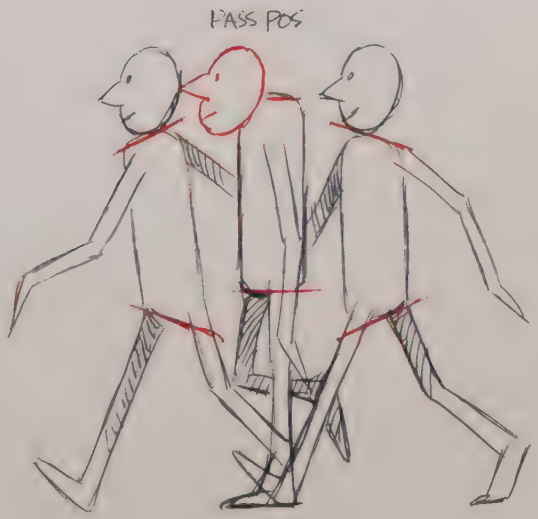
NOW LET'S DO SOMETHING WITH THE HEAD TO MAKE THIS SIMPLE FORMULA WALK MORE INTERESTING –

LET'S **TILT THE HEAD:**



HOW ABOUT THIS?
LETS DELAY
THE TILT OF THE HEAD
ON THE
PASSING POSITION

LET'S DO
SOMETHING ELSE
WITH THE HEAD -
STICK THE HEAD OUT
ON THE
PASSING POSITION
(GIVES A SLIGHT
PIGEON EFFECT)

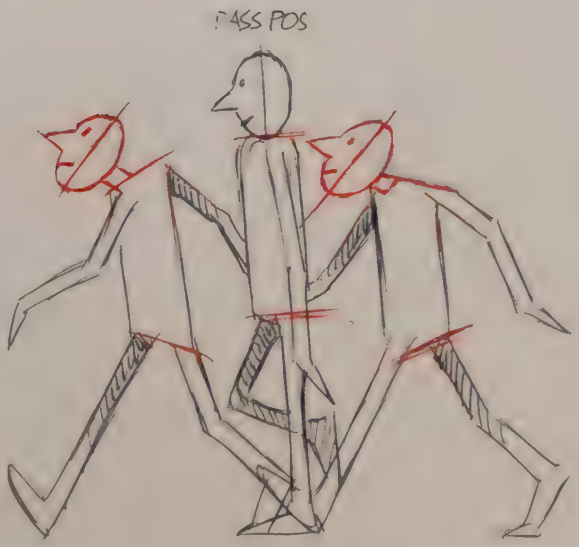


ONE SMALL
DETAIL THATS
DIFFERENT
WILL GIVE A
WHOLE DIFFERENT
FEELING TO
THE FORMULA

OR

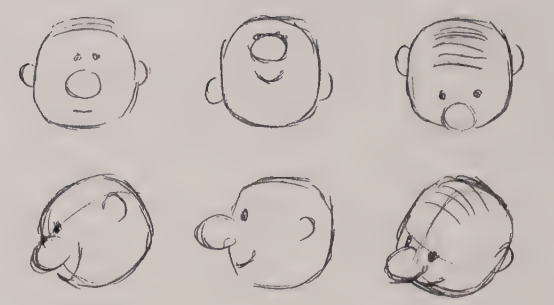
THE HEAD
GOES FORWARD
AND CONTINUES
AT THE
END OF THE STEP

HEAD TILTS
AS IT
GOES OUT

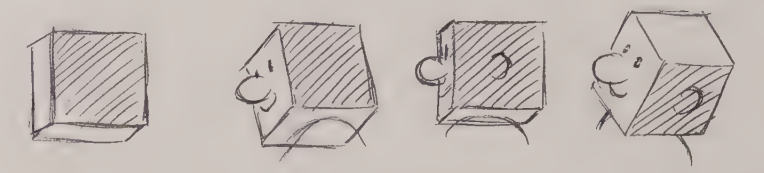


BACK VIEW

ANY SMALL DETAIL ALTERS A WALK-
LIKE MOVING THE HEAD UP OR DOWN -
OR TILTING IT FROM SIDE TO SIDE -
OR MOVING IT
BACK AND FORTH -
OR A COMBINATION
OF ANY OF THIS.



CAN THINK
OF IT
AS A CUBE.

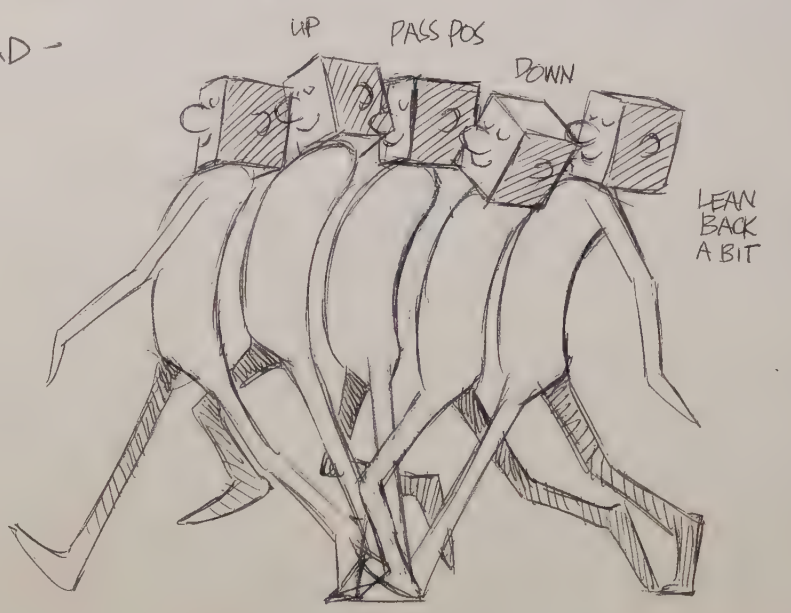


THE EGOTIST'S WOBBLE HEAD -

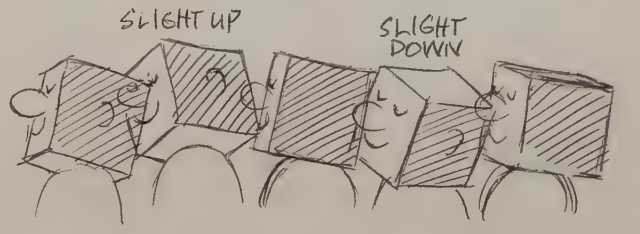
YOU SEE THIS A LOT WITH
POLITICIANS, ACTORS OR PEOPLE
WHO IMAGINE
THE CAMERA IS ON THEM
ALL THE TIME.

SOME COMEDIANS DO IT
WHEN THEY GET A BIG
AUDIENCE RESPONSE.

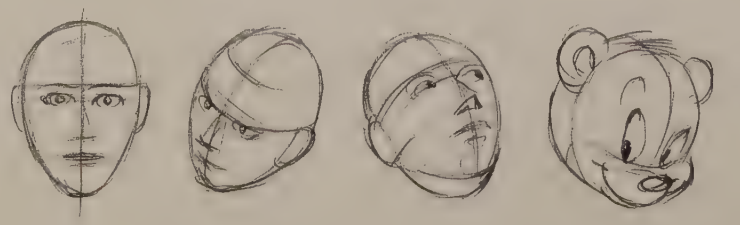
IN HOLLYWOOD
I'VE EVEN SEEN
THE MAILMAN
DOING IT.



FLOATING ALONG
IN LOVE WITH ITSELF
'ITS WONDERFUL,
TO BE WONDERFUL'
WILL WORK NICELY
WITH
NOT MUCH UP and DOWN



WHEN I WAS A KID
I ALWAYS WONDERED
WHY ANIMATORS DREW
HEADS LIKE THIS -
WITH CONSTRUCTION
LINES ON THEM.



NOW I KNOW
WHY -
THEY'RE TURNING
MASSES
ALL THE TIME.

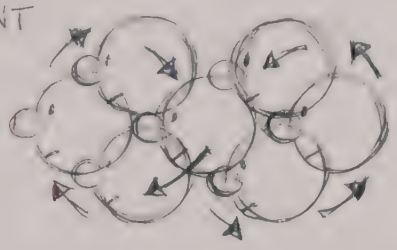
BUT A CAUTIONARY NOTE FROM KEN HARRIS:

FOR WALKS, DON'T MAKE CYCLES OF BODY AND HEAD ACTION IN CIRCLES OR FIGURE 8's –

IF YOU DO IT WILL LOOK LIKE A BIRD OR PIGEON WALK (UNLESS YOU WANT THAT.)

DON'T

DON'T



DO

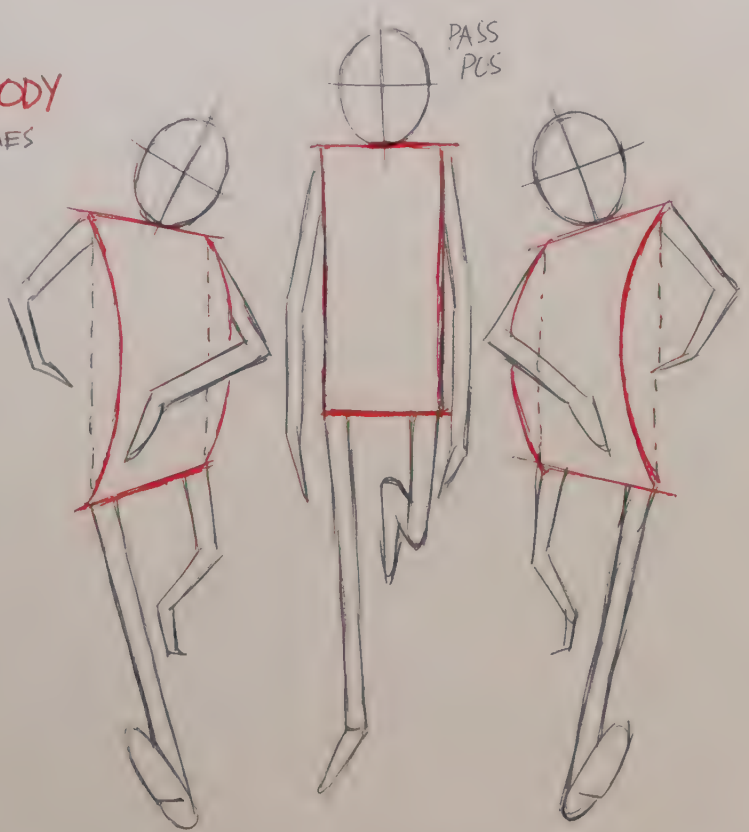
FOR SAFETY KEEP THE MASS MOSTLY STRAIGHT UP AND DOWN.

BUT BEARING THIS IN MIND WE SHOULD STILL BE BRAVE AND TRY THINGS...

BUILDING ON OUR BASIC PLAN, WE'VE ALREADY ADDED IN MORE ACTION IN THE HEAD, SHOULDERS, ARMS, HIPS AND FEET:

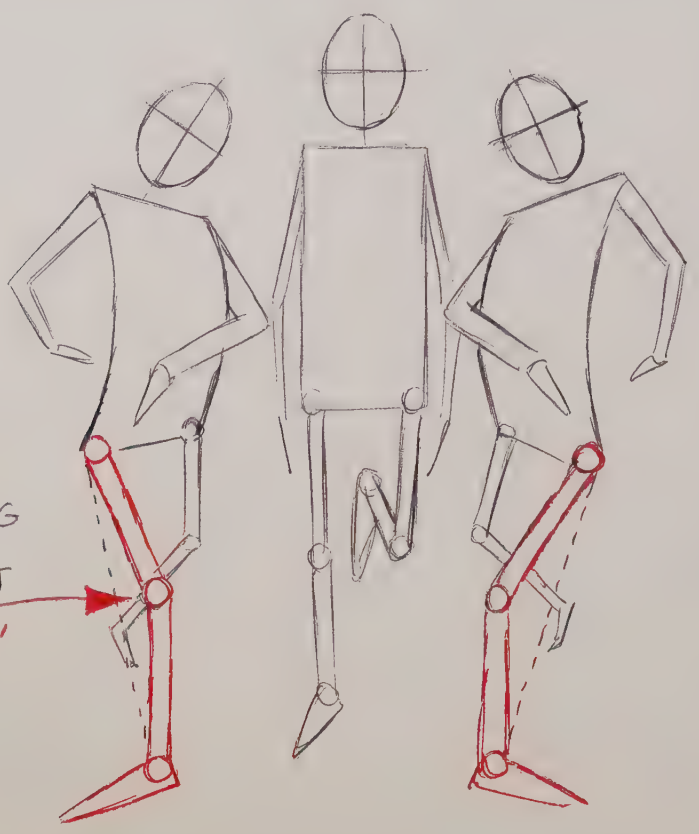
NOW LET'S BEND THE BODY ON THE EXTREMES

KEEP STRAIGHT ON THE PASSING POSITION

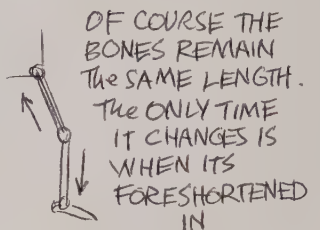


AND NOW WE'RE GOING TO DO THINGS TO THE LEGS and ARMS THAT LOOKS WEIRD...

WE'RE GOING TO 'BREAK' THE LEG.
WE'RE GOING TO BEND IT WHETHER IT WOULD BEND THAT WAY OR NOT.

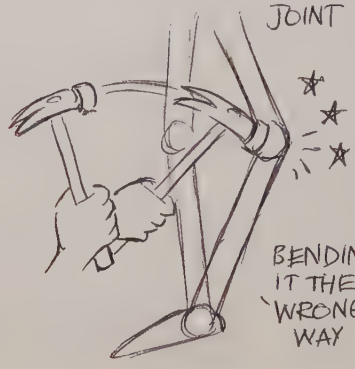


WE'RE DOING WHAT ART BABBITT CALLS 'BREAKING' THE JOINT



OF COURSE THE BONES REMAIN THE SAME LENGTH. THE ONLY TIME IT CHANGES IS WHEN ITS FORESHORTENED IN PERSPECTIVE

WE'VE TAKEN A HAMMER AND 'BROKEN' THE JOINT



BENDING IT THE 'WRONG' WAY

IT LOOKS WEIRD ENOUGH, BUT IF WE DRAW A BALLET DANCER ON TOP OF IT, IT LOOKS JUST FINE.

WE'RE GOING TO HAVE A LOT MORE OF THIS LATER

SO WE CAN TAKE INCREDIBLE LIBERTIES WITH THE UNDERLYING STRUCTURE (IF WE WANT TO) AND IT WILL BE PERFECTLY ACCEPTABLE - ESPECIALLY IN MOTION!

WHY ARE WE DOING THIS?

EVERYTHING WE'RE DOING IS TO GET MORE CHANGE, MORE ACTION WITHIN THE ACTION.

TO LIMBER THINGS UP – GET MORE LIFE INTO IT.

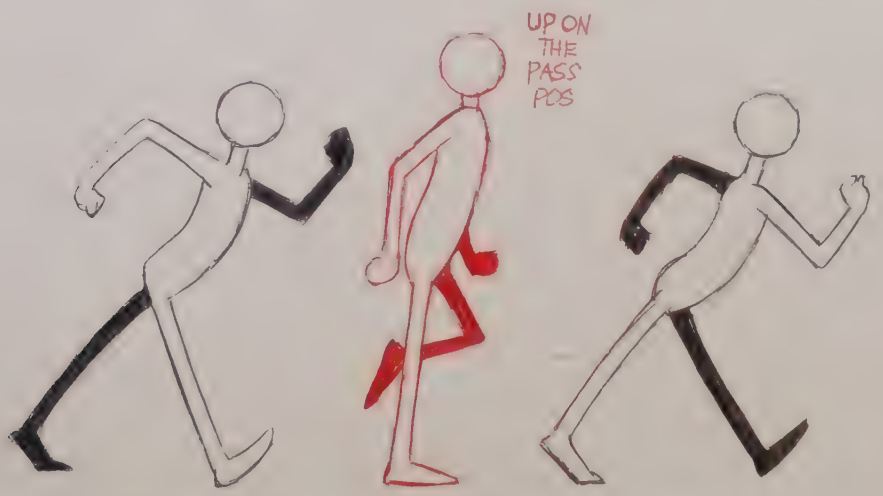
Grim Natwick said:
'We used to bet ten dollars against ten cents that you could take any character and walk it across the room and get a laugh out of it.

'We used to have about twenty-four different walks. We'd have a certain action on the body, a certain motion on the head, a certain kind of patter walk, a big step or the "Goofy" walk that Art Babbitt developed.

'While the opposite arm naturally moves with the opposite leg, we'd break the rules eight or ten different ways to make the walk interesting.'

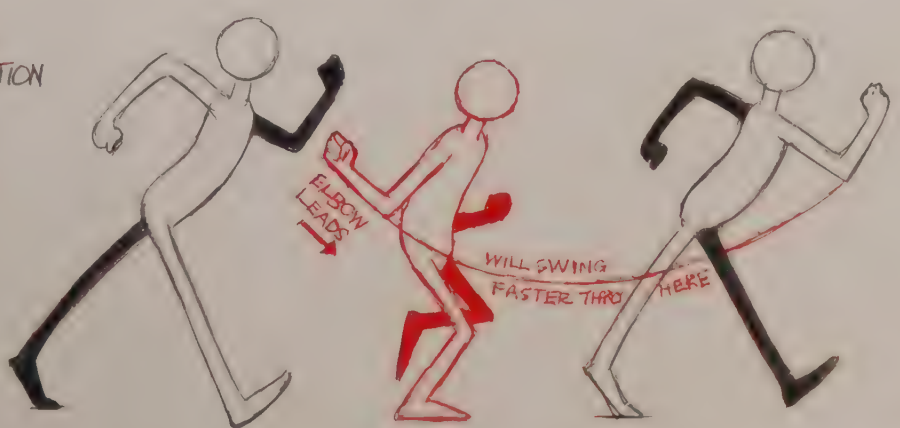
WE'RE TAKING OUR BASIC PLAN NOW AND ADDING IN THINGS TO BUILD UPON THE SYSTEM.

SAY WE HAVE A KIND OF ANGRY WALK – WE'D NORMALLY DO THIS:



BUT LOOK WHAT HAPPENS WHEN WE DO JUST 2 THINGS –

PUT HIM **DOWN** ON THE PASSING POSITION MAKING HIS BACK CONVEX – AND DO THIS WITH THE ARM 'BREAKING' THE ELBOW.

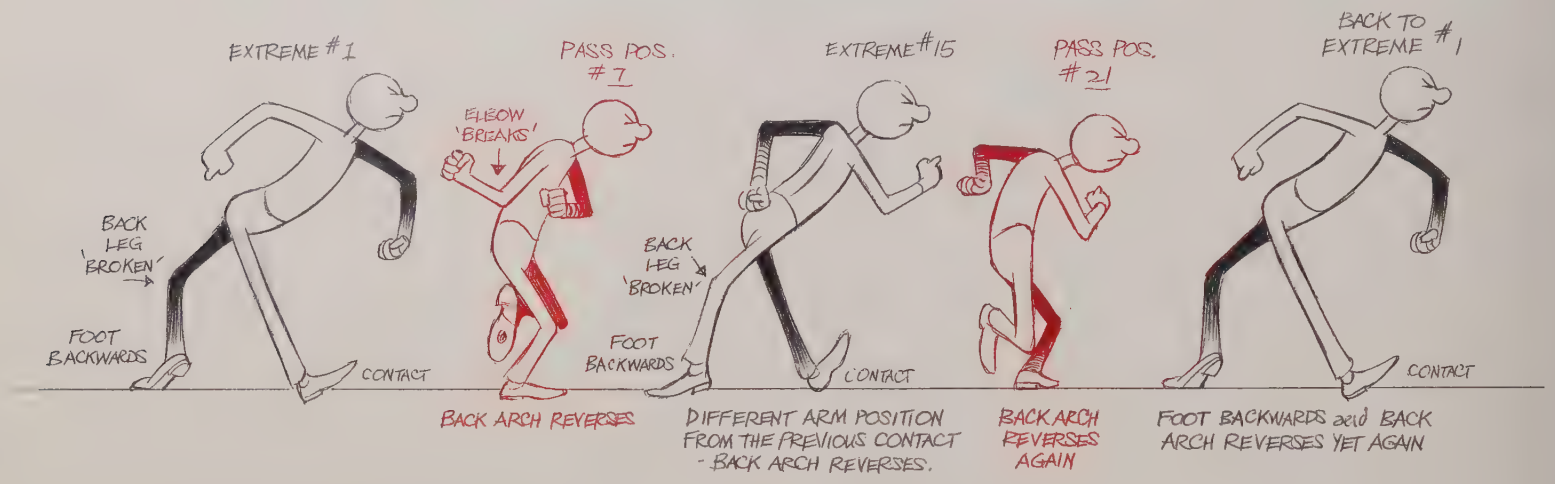


LET'S TAKE THIS ANGRY WALK MUCH FURTHER -

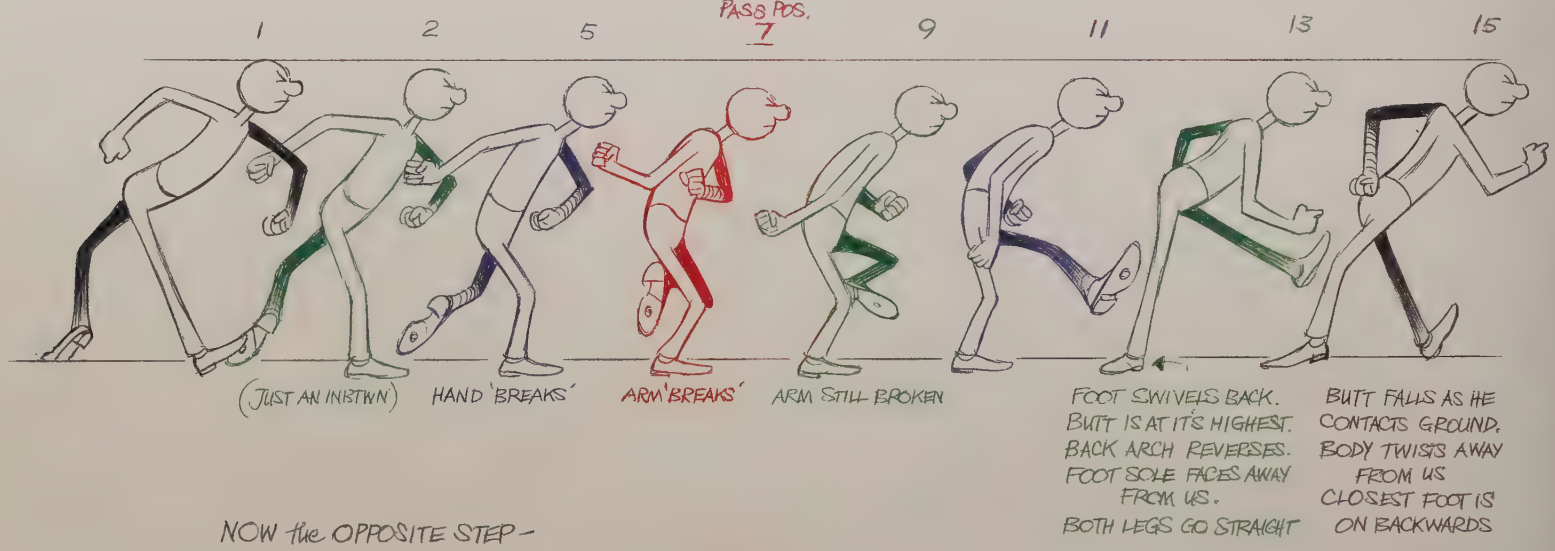
THIS IS THE KIND OF THING ART BABBITT DID ALL HIS LIFE - MAKING IMPOSSIBLE MOVES LOOK CONVINCING and BELIEVABLE. HE'D SAY, "BE A LITTLE BIT TRUTHFUL"..

SO IT DOESN'T JUST LOOK LIKE ONE STEP REPEATING WE SLIGHTLY CHANGE the SILHOUETTE ON the 2ND CONTACT (#15) SO THE COUNTER ARM POSITIONS ARE DIFFERENT FROM CONTACT #1. ON the CONTACTS the BACK LEG IS 'BROKEN' AND the FOOT SWIVELLED BACKWARDS.

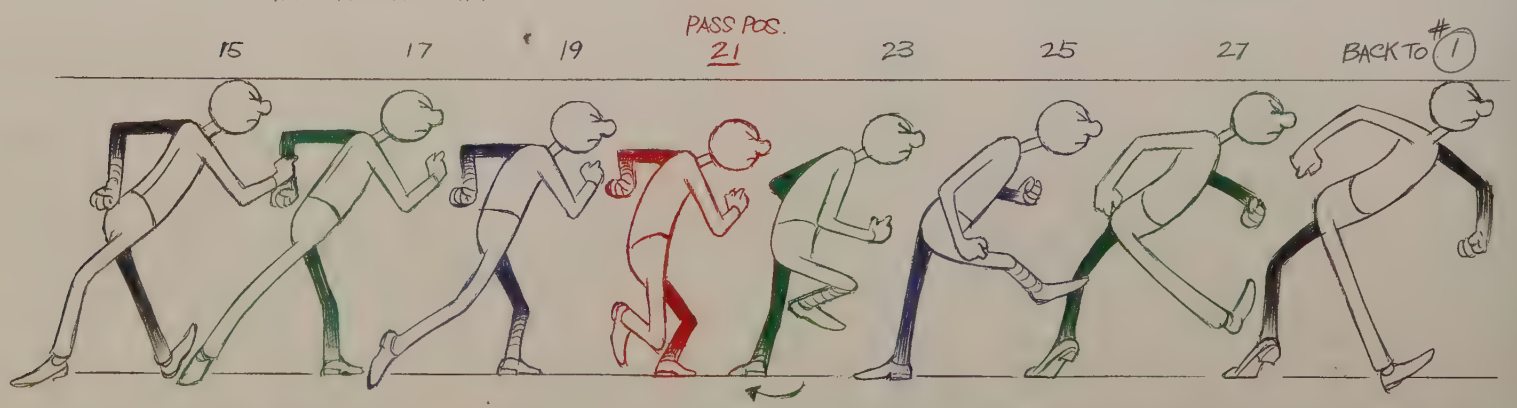
HE'S ON TWOS - EACH STEP TAKING 14 FRAMES.



BREAKING the FIRST STEP DOWN FURTHER -

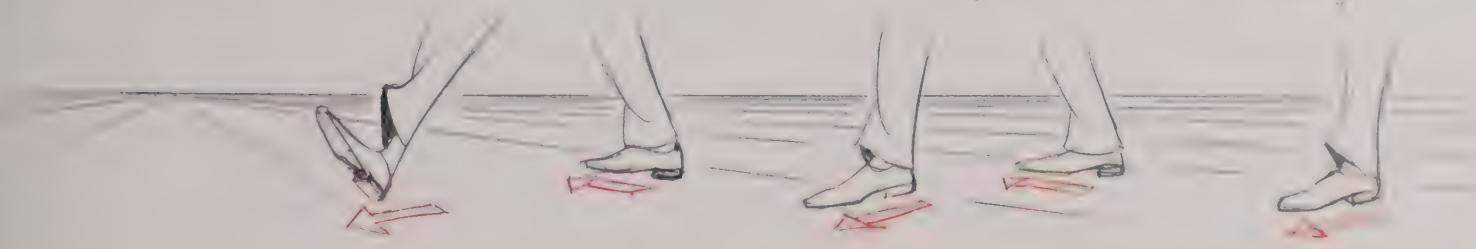

1
2
5
PASS POS. 7
9
11
13
15
(JUST AN INBTWN)
HAND 'BREAKS'
ARM 'BREAKS'
ARM STILL BROKEN
FOOT SWIVELS BACK. BUTT IS AT IT'S HIGHEST. BACK ARCH REVERSES. FOOT SOLE FACES AWAY FROM US. BOTH LEGS GO STRAIGHT
BUTT FALLS AS HE CONTACTS GROUND. BODY TWISTS AWAY FROM US CLOSEST FOOT IS ON BACKWARDS

NOW the OPPOSITE STEP -



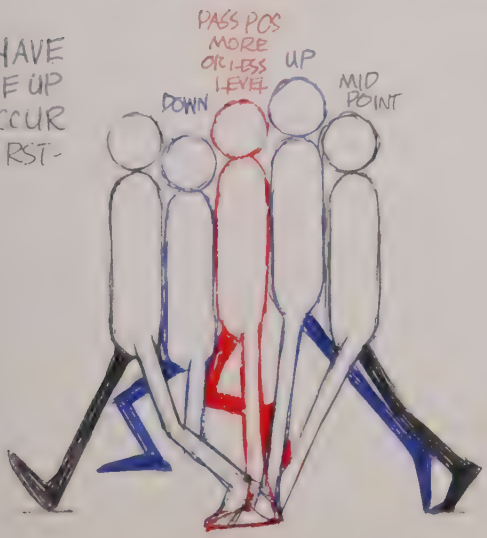
The ARM SWING DOESN'T 'BREAK' - AND the FOOT SWIVELS BACK EARLIER - THE REST OF the PATTERN IS the SAME.

INCIDENTALLY, ON A PROFILE WALK IT HELPS TO HAVE ONE FOOT A LITTLE IN FRONT - AND ANGLED SIDEWAYS A BIT. (I'VE BEEN KEEPING THINGS VERY DIAGRAMMATIC TILL NOW)

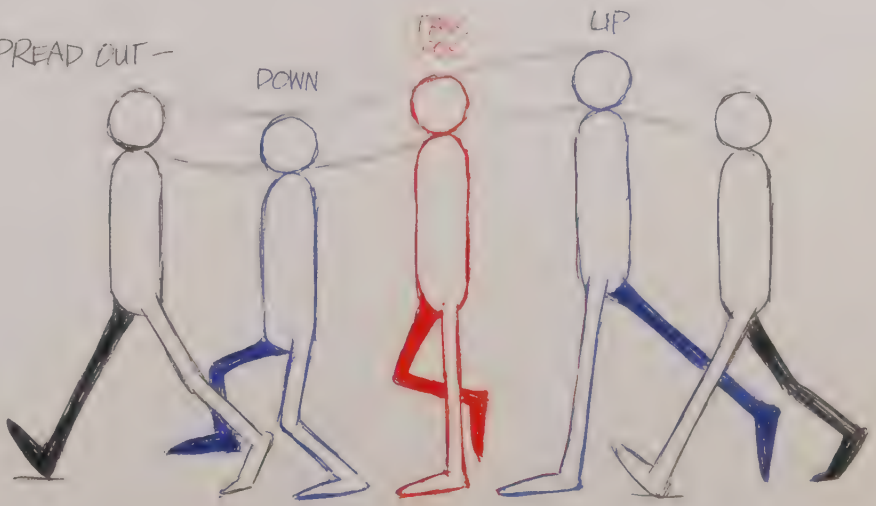


LET'S KEEP TAKING THINGS OUT OF THE ORDINARY -
WHY NOT A SIMPLE REVERSAL OF THE UP AND DOWN OF A NORMAL WALK?

HAVE THE UP OCCUR FIRST-

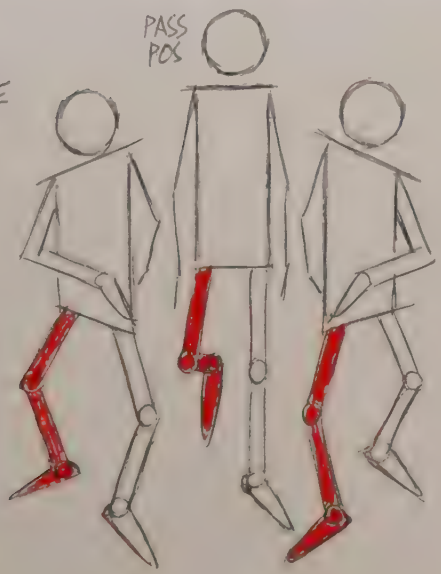


SPREAD OUT -

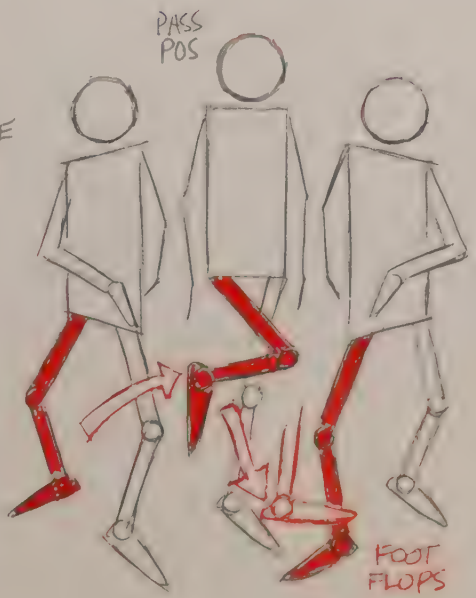


STILL KEEPING TO OUR 3 MAIN POSITIONS -

THIS IS FINE BUT A BIT ORDINARY

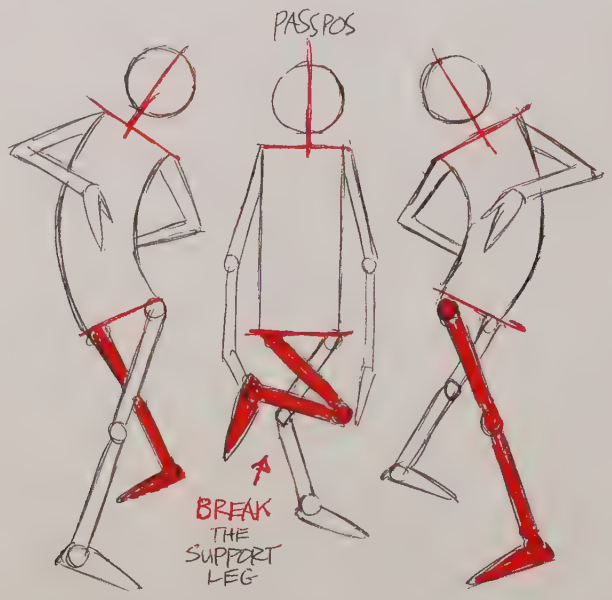


SO LET'S TRY SWINGING THE KNEE IN ON THE PASSING POSITION -



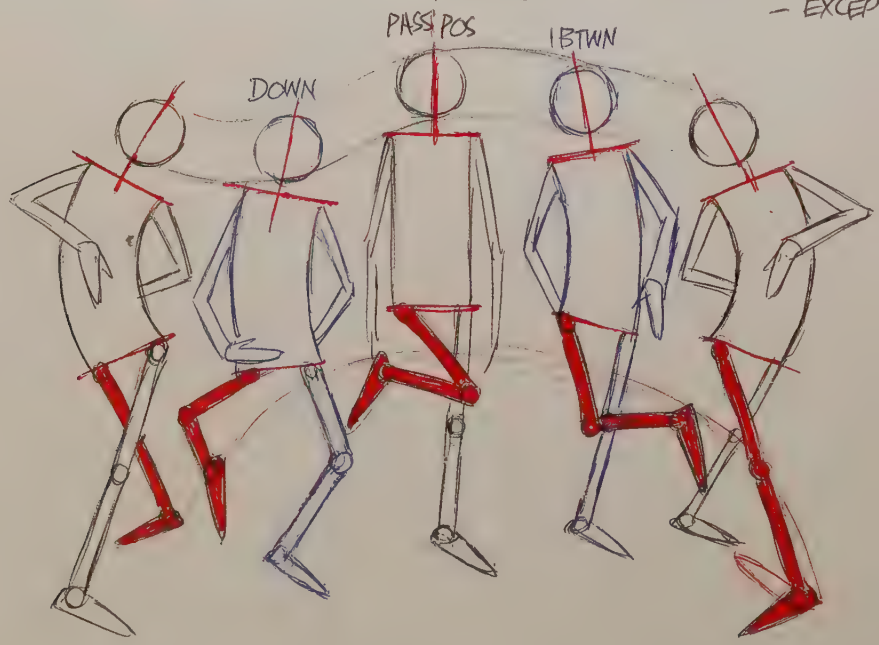
DIGGING DEEPER INTO WALKS

HERE'S A KIND OF STRUT.
LET'S BEND THE BODIES **OUTWARDS** ON THE EXTREMES - HEADS, SHOULDERS, HIPS TILTED.
PUT THE PASSING POSITION **DOWN** AND SWING THE **LEG INWARDS** AND **'BREAK'** THE SUPPORT LEG - KIND OF KNOCK-KNEED - THIS'LL GIVE AN INTERESTING RESULT.



NOW LET'S TAKE THE SAME EXTREMES AND PUT THE PASSING POSITION **UP** AND WE'LL **STRAIGHTEN** THE SUPPORT LEG TO LIFT HIM UP AND SWING THE PASSING LEG **INWARDS** AS PREVIOUSLY.

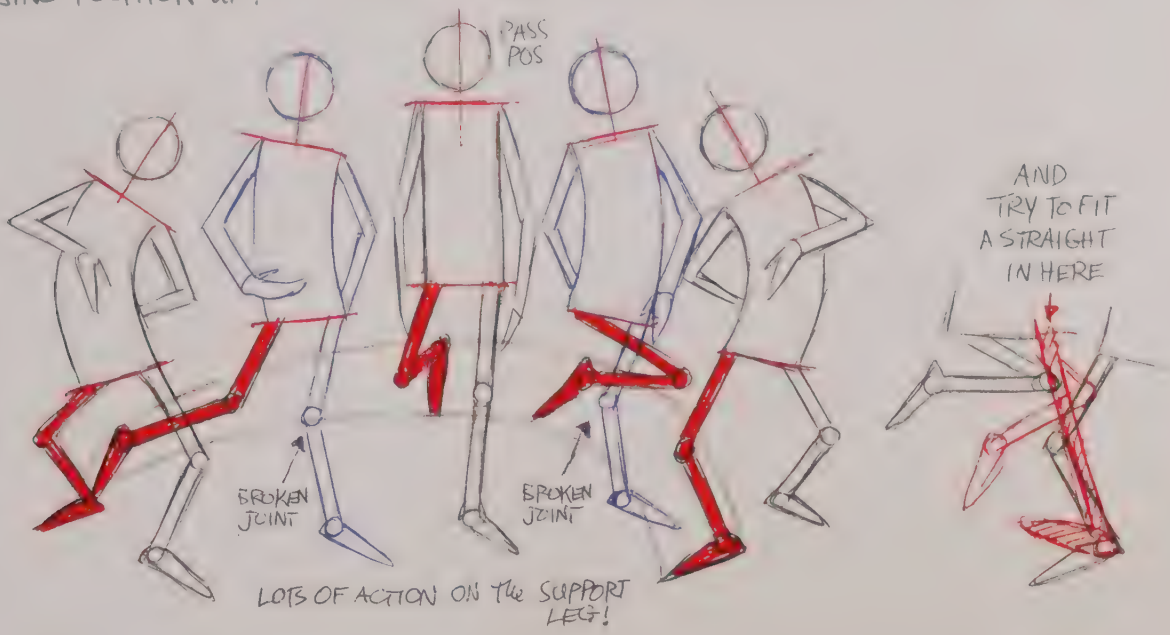
BUT MAKE THE **NEXT** BREAKDOWN **DOWN** (AS NORMAL) WITH THE LEG ANGLING OUTWARDS AND THE OTHER BREAKDOWN JUST COMING FORWARDS (THE BODY JUST INBETWEEN - EXCEPT FOR THE LEG)



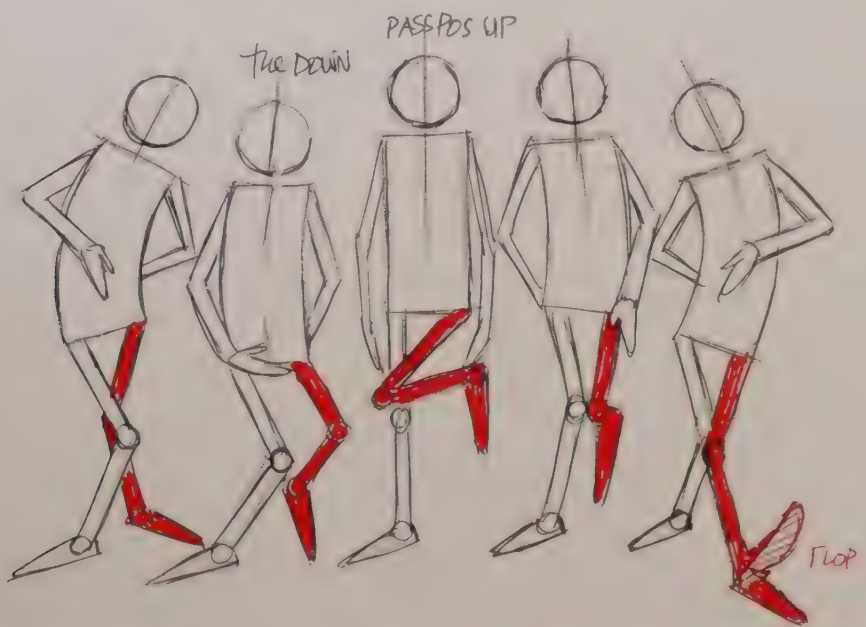
GIVES A VERY DIFFERENT RESULT

WE CAN GO ON FOREVER THIS WAY, ALTERING BITS AND SWITCHING THINGS AROUND ON OUR BASIC 3 DRAWING PLAN.

HOW ABOUT THIS? KEEP THE SAME 2 STARTING EXTREMES BUT USE THE BENT LEG POSITION PUT THE PASSING POSITION UP.

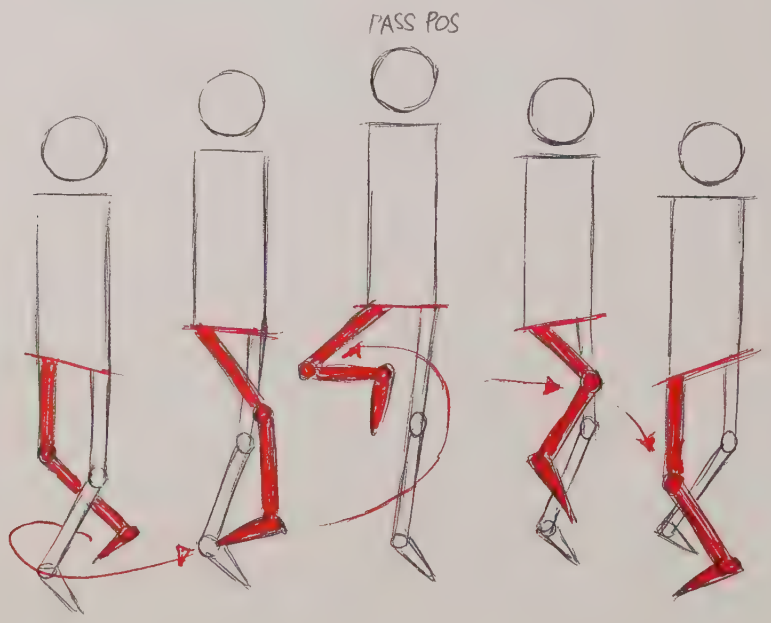


HOW ABOUT ONE LIKE THIS?
START WITH KNOCK KNEES - ('BROKEN' JOINTED LEGS)

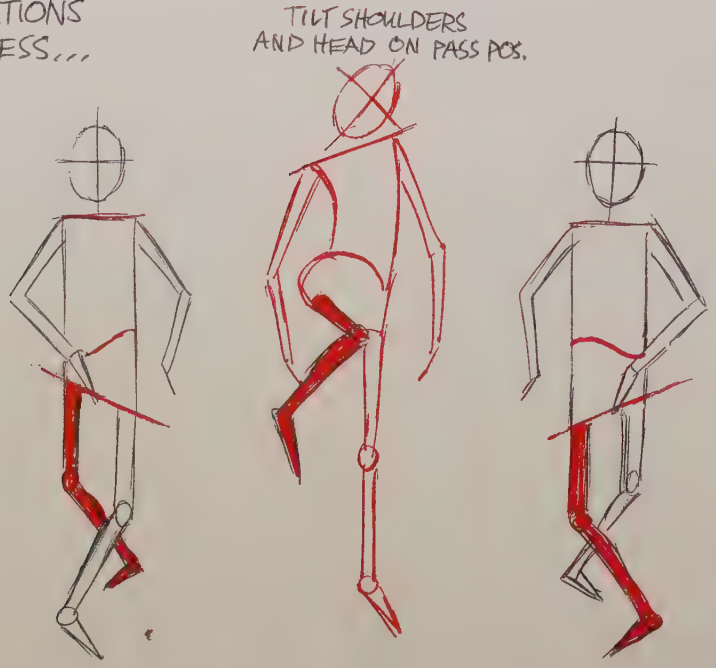


WHAT WE'RE TRYING TO PUT OVER HERE IS A WAY OF THINKING ABOUT IT. A SIMPLE GRID ON WHICH TO BUILD QUITE NORMAL WALKS - OR WILDLY ECCENTRIC ONES - AND ALL THAT LIES BETWEEN.

HERE'S A KIND OF FEMININE WALK ON THE SAME BASIC FIGURE-



THE VARIATIONS ARE ENDLESS...



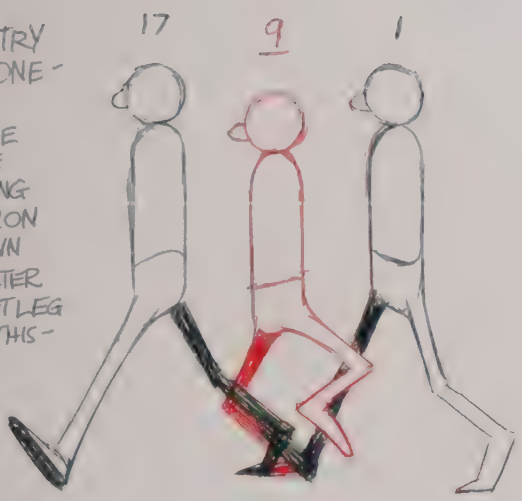
AND IMAGINE WHAT WE CAN GET UP TO WHEN WE STOP TREATING THE BODY LIKE A BLOCK. WE START TWISTING THINGS -

EVEN IF THE ACTIONS ARE IMPOSSIBLE (BROKEN JOINTS, ETC.) TO DO - ITS A GOOD IDEA TO ACT OUT ALL THE BUSINESS TO SEE WHETHER IT WILL FIT INTO THE TIME ALLOTTED. DISCARD ALL MODESTY AND ACT IT OUT.

WHEN I ASKED MILT KAHL ABOUT A MARVELLOUS FEMALE WALK HE'D ANIMATED, HE SAID, "I CLOSED THE DOOR, BUT IF YOU'D SEEN ME DOING IT YOU'D HAVE WANTED TO KISS ME!"

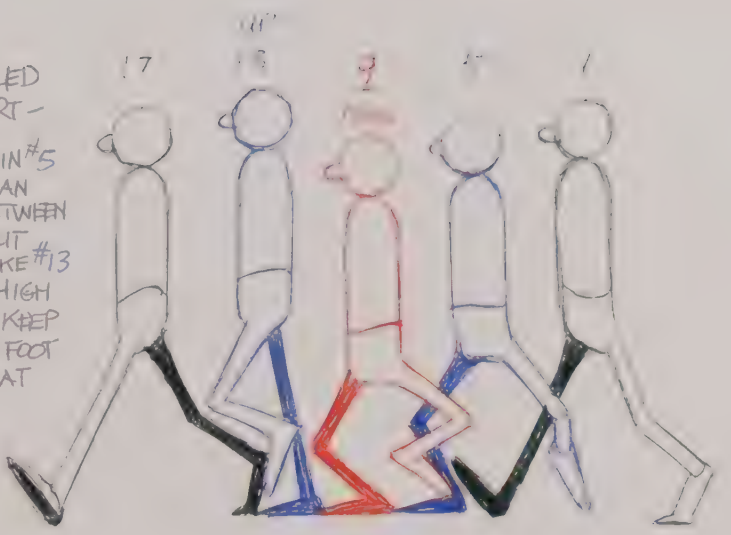
LETS TRY THIS ONE -

MAKE THE PASSING POSITION DOWN BUT ALTER THE LEFT LEG LIKE THIS -

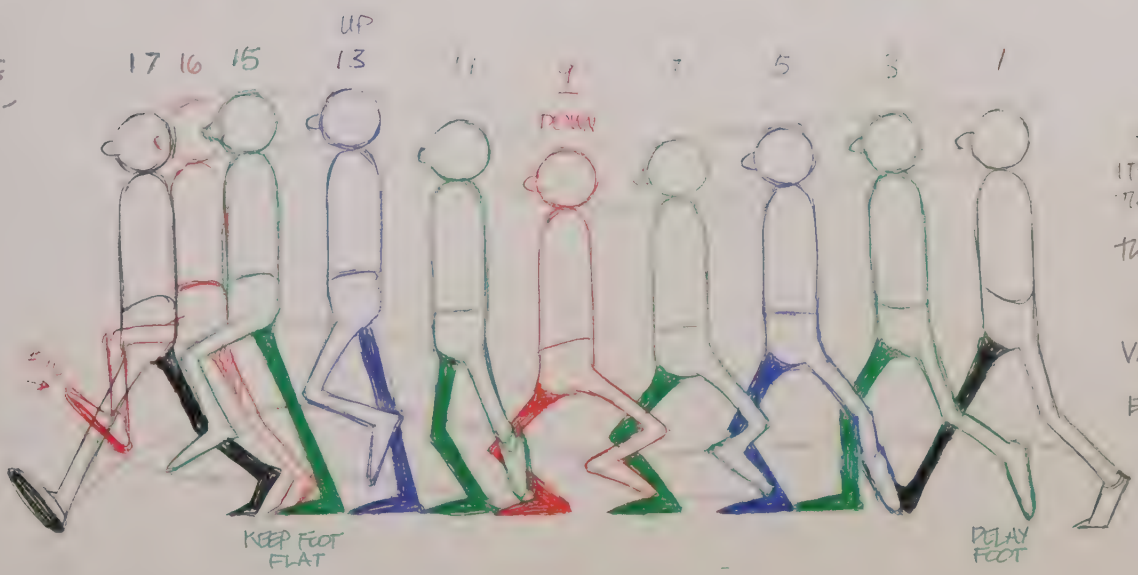


PULLED APART -

ADD IN #5 AS AN IN BETWEEN BUT MAKE #13 THE HIGH and KEEP IT'S FOOT FLAT



WE'D GET SOMETHING LIKE THIS -

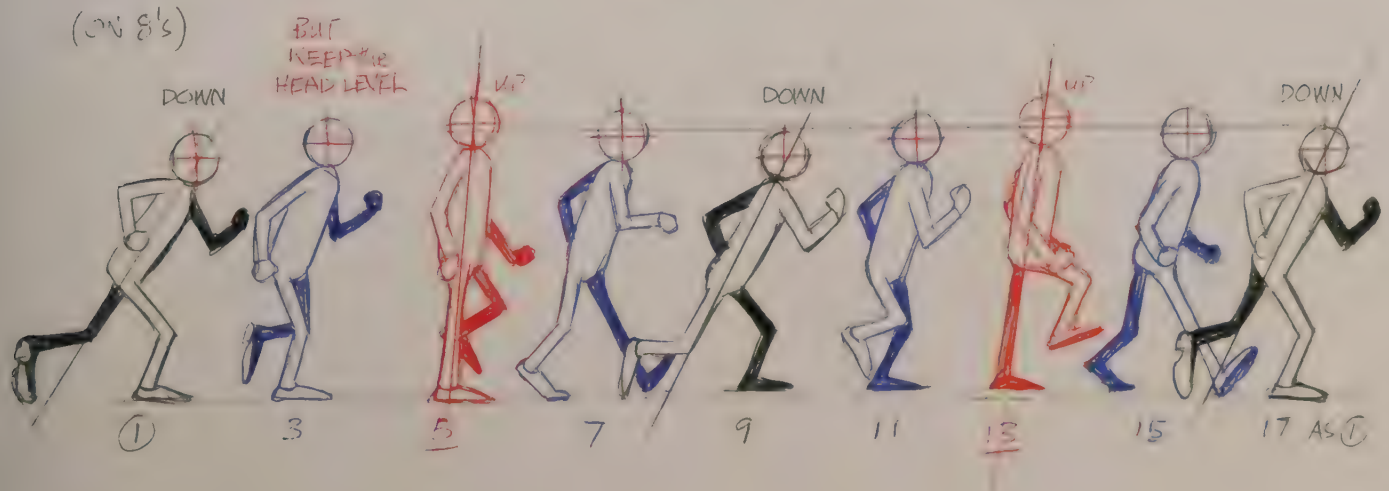


AGAIN, ITS ALL IN THE TIMING AND IN THE SPACING

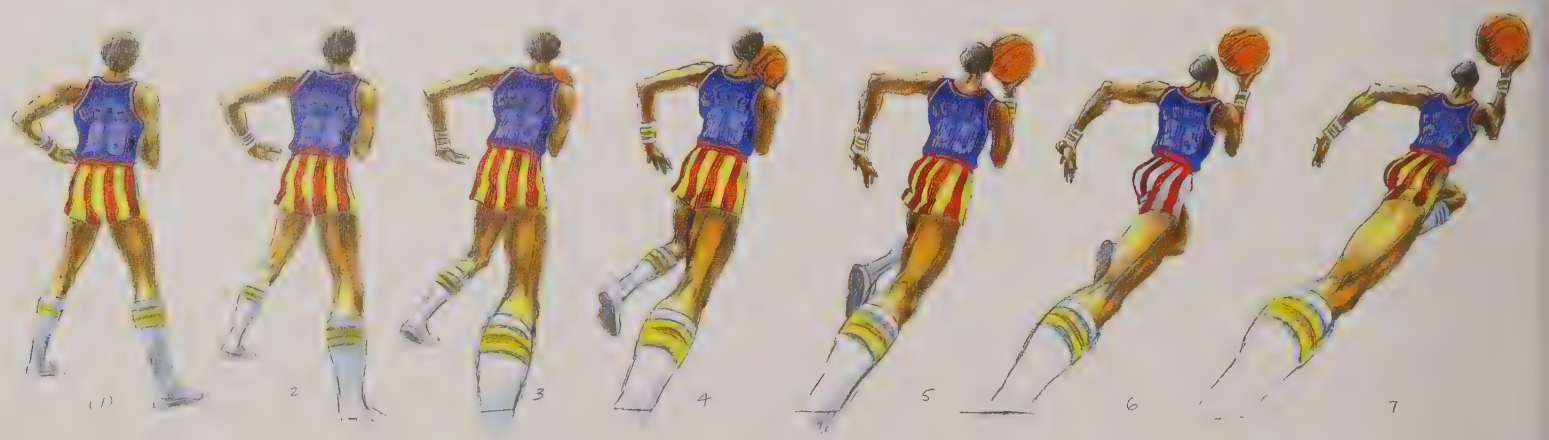
AND THE VARIATIONS ARE ENDLESS.

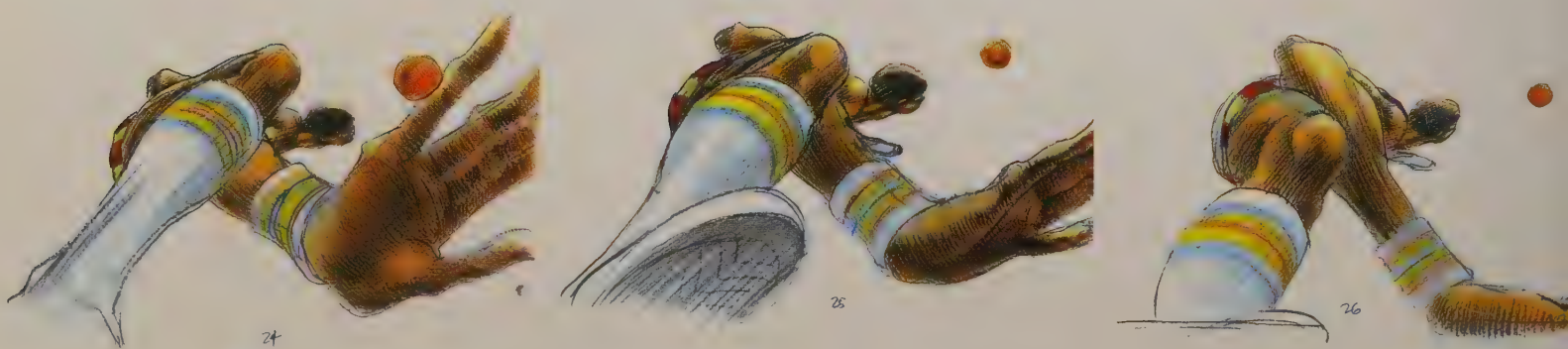
LETS SIMPLY CHANGE the TILT OF the BODY ON the PASSING POSITION -

(ON 8's)



AND WE SHOULDN'T BE AFRAID TO TAKE LIBERTIES AND DISTORT THINGS- ESPECIALLY FOR FAST ACTION.
(ON ONES)





I'm INCLUDING THIS BASKETBALL FIGURE I ANIMATED - JUST TO SHOW HOW FAR WE CAN GO

CONCLUSION:

WE CAN TAKE GREAT LIBERTIES WITH FAST ACTIONS - EVEN WITH REALISTIC FIGURES. IT'S OBVIOUS THAT FOR REALLY FAST ACTIONS YOU HAVE TO MAKE EVERY DRAWING - AN ASSISTANT (FOR THIS) MIGHT BE A HELP SHADING MUSCLES OR STRIPES BUT NOT MUCH ELSE.

MILT KAHL.

'IF IT'S FAST ACTION I MAKE EVERY DRAWING'

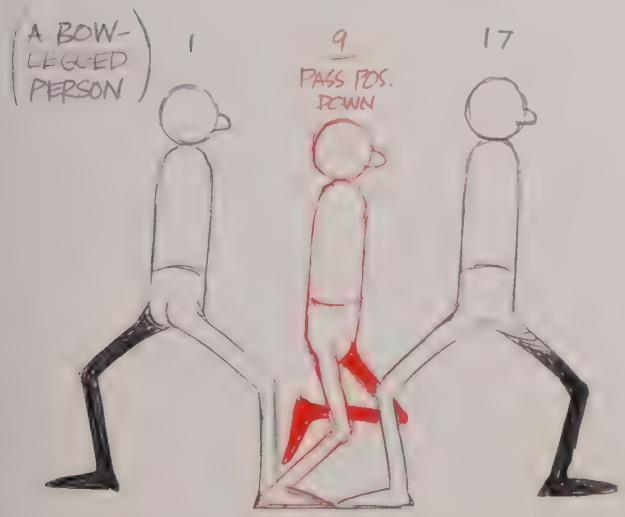
THERE'S NOTHING LIKE TRYING IT

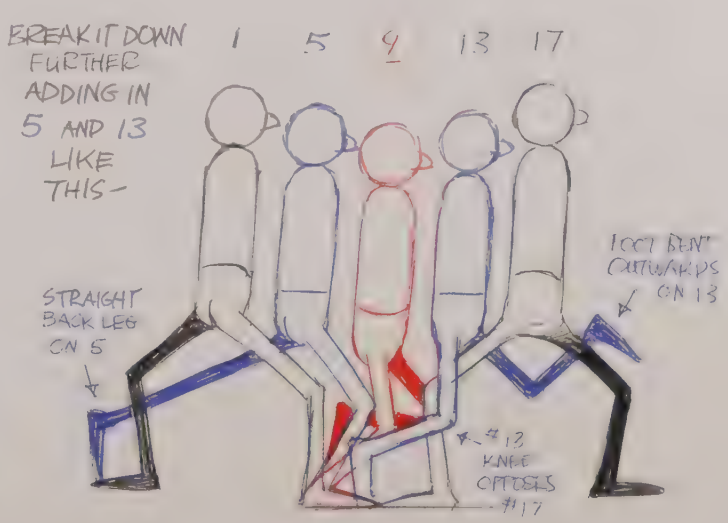
INNUMERABLE POSSIBILITIES EXIST.

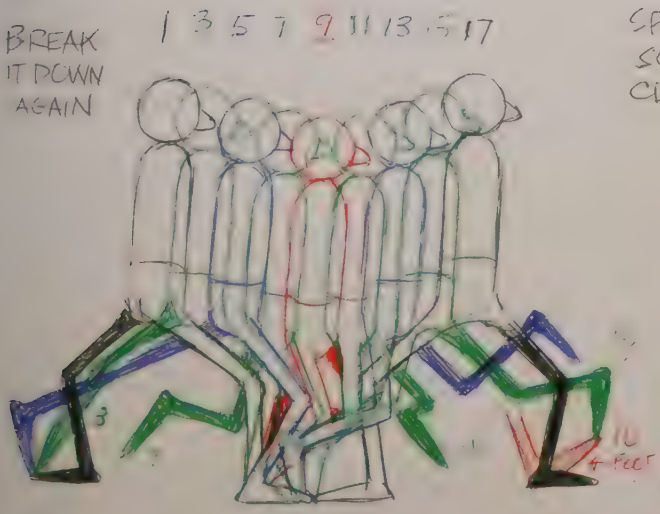
WE'RE NOT COPYING LIFE, WE'RE MAKING A COMMENT ON IT

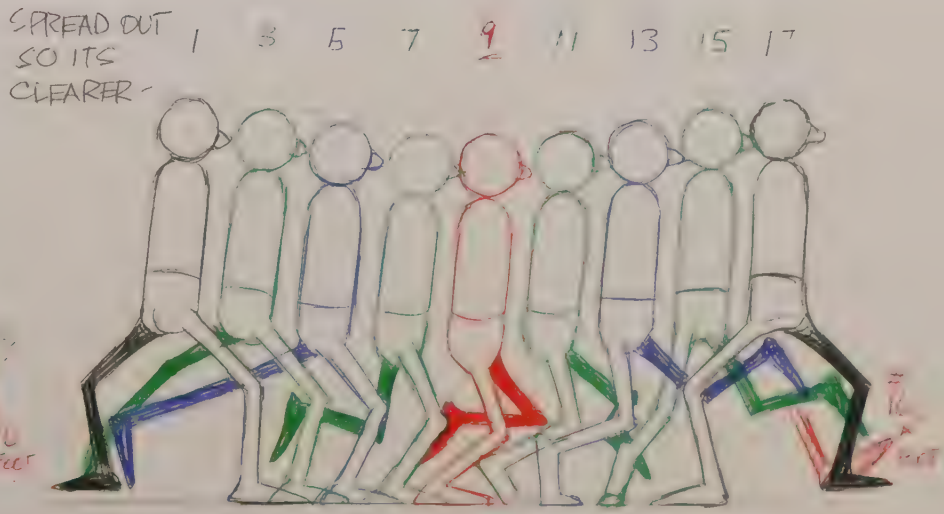
AND IF WE MAKE A MISTAKE, WHO CARES? IT'S JUST A TEST. MAKE THE CORRECTIONS AND TEST AGAIN. HALF THE TIME WE'LL FALL ON OUR FACES - BUT THE OTHER HALF OF THE TIME IT'LL WORK AND BE NEW.

HERE'S A RULE BREAKER -









AND WE HAVEN'T DONE ANYTHING WITH THE HEAD OR ARMS. MAYBE WITH SUCH ACTION ON THE FEET WE SHOULD KEEP THE ARMS AND HEAD VERY CONSERVATIVE - MAYBE, MAYBE NOT. THIS WILL WORK ON TWOS - BUT BE BETTER WITH ONES ADDED BECAUSE OF THE BROAD SPACING.

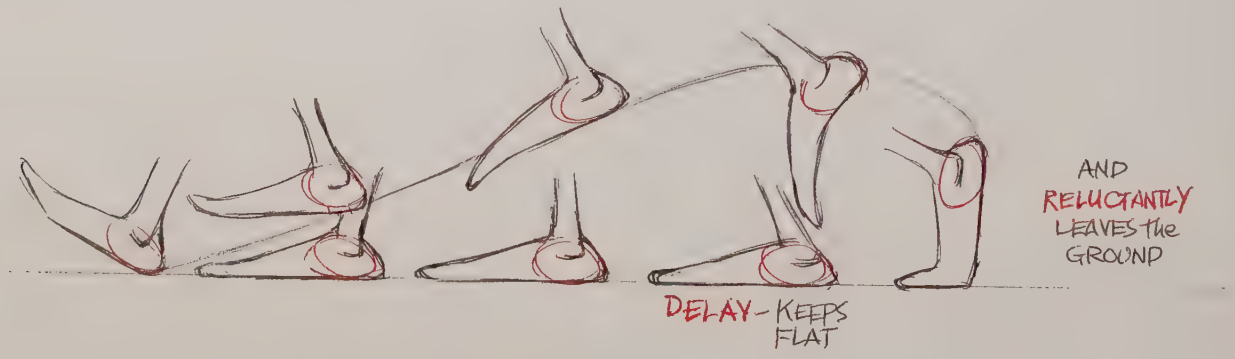
BACK TO NORMALCY FOR A BIT-

THE HEEL

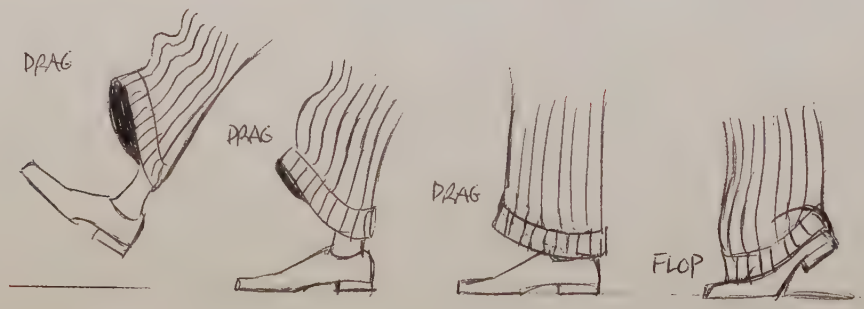
The **HEEL** IS THE **LEAD** PART.
The FOOT IS SECONDARY and FOLLOWS ALONG.
The HEEL LEADS and the ACTUAL FOOT DRAGS BEHIND and FLOPS FORWARD - BUT the HEEL CONTROLS IT.

FOR WALKS and RUNS -

LOCK the HEEL **FLAT** ON the GROUND FOR the FEELING OF WEIGHT.
KEEP the FOOT **BACK** TILL the LAST POSSIBLE MOMENT.

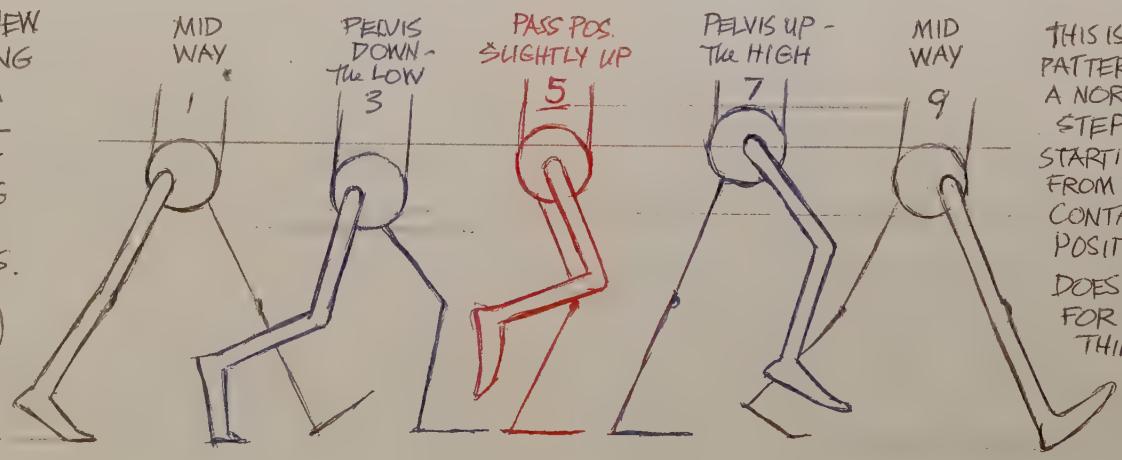


AND DRAPERY IS **ALWAYS** LATE -



FOOT ACTION

LET'S REVIEW the PASSING LEG IN A NORMAL WALK - STARTING WITH THE CONTACTS.
(SAY IT'S ON 8's)
SPREAD OUT -

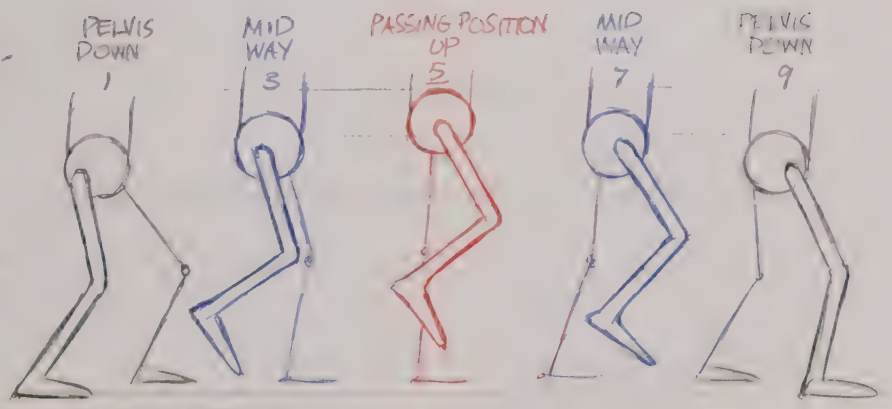


THIS IS the PATTERN OF A NORMAL STEP STARTING FROM the CONTACT POSITION - DOES the JOB FOR MOST THINGS.

BUT LET'S START WITH THE 2 DOWNS -

AS MILT SAYS, IT'S KIND OF A STATIC POSITION -

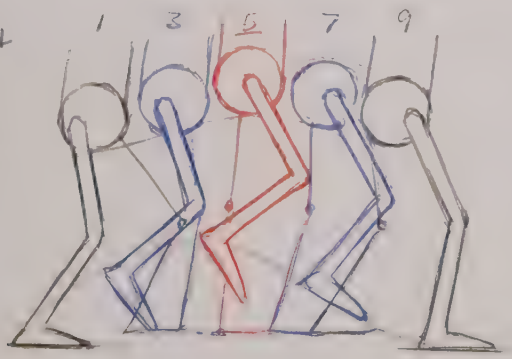
BUT WITH THE PASSING POSITION UP WE'VE TAKEN CARE OF OUR UPS AND DOWNS.



THIS TIME MAKE BOTH FEET FLAT

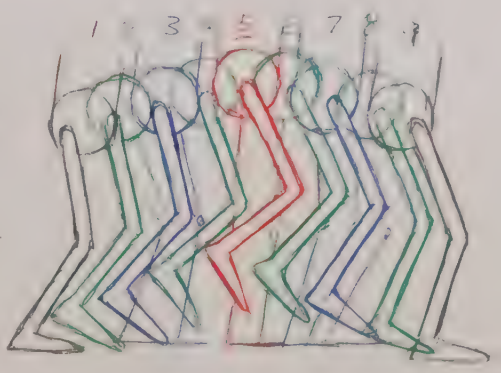
NOW WE DONT HAVE TO THINK ABOUT THE UPS and DOWNS AND WE CAN CONCENTRATE ON DOING THINGS WITH THE FEET.

PUSH IT ALL TOGETHER AS IT WOULD BE TO TAKE A NORMAL STEP -

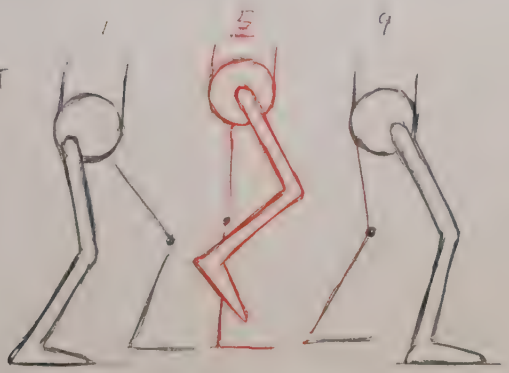


THEN ADD IN STRAIGHT IN BETWEENS AND WE GET A PATHETIC APPROACH TO A WALK -

WEAK, BORING...

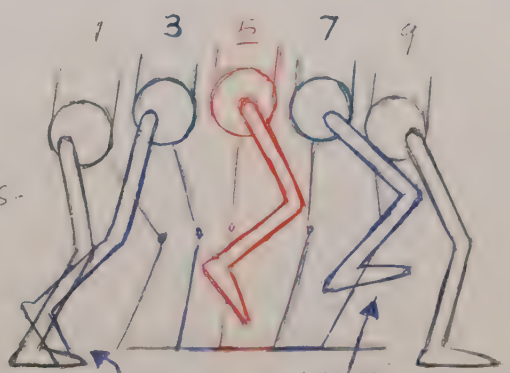


NOW START WITH THE EXACT SAME THING -



BUT ALTER THE NEXT TWO BREAKDOWNS - 3 AND 7

- MORE CHANGE, MORE VITALITY

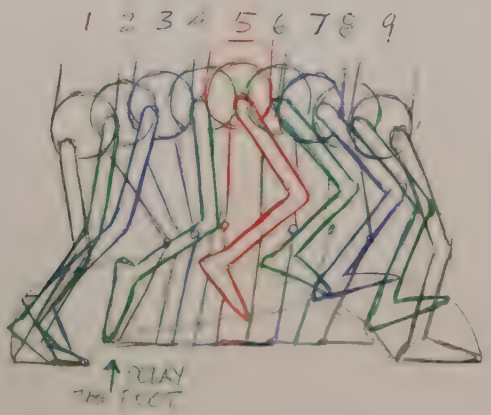


DELAY THE TOE LEAVING THE GROUND

LIFT THIS FOOT HIGHER WITH A DIFFERENT FOOT ANGLE

ADD IN STRAIGHT IN BETWEENS

(BEARING IN MIND THAT THE HEEL LEADS AND THE FOOT FOLLOWS AND WATCH THE ARCS!)

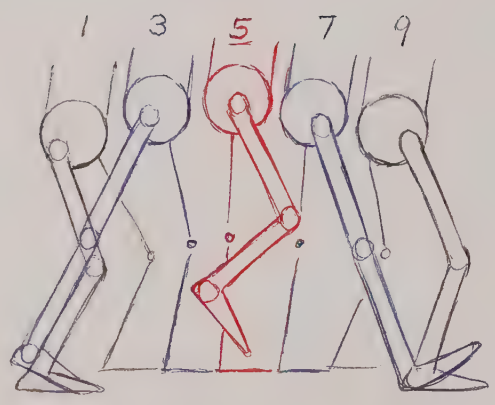


IT'S OBVIOUS WE'VE GOT MORE LIFE IN IT NOW.

NOW LETS MAKE IT MORE SPRIGHTLY.

MAKE #3 STRAIGHT AS IT PUSHES OFF

and MAKE #7 STRAIGHT AS IT CONTACTS the GROUND.



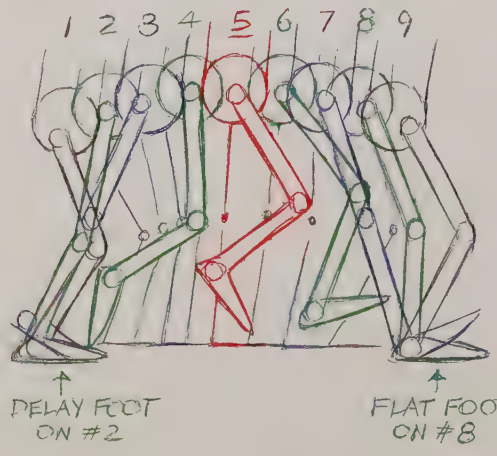
NOW WE'VE GOT SOME CHANGES!

BENT TO STRAIGHT
- TO BENT
- TO STRAIGHT
- TO BENT.

(ALTHOUGH SO FAR THIS ISNT REALLY VERY DIFFERENT THAN WE'D END UP WITH IF WE'D STARTED FROM OUR CONTACT METHOD.)

ANYWAY - ADD IN STRAIGHT IN BETWEENS

EXCEPT KEEP the FOOT SOLE FLAT ON #2 AND HAVE THE FOOT ON #8 FLAT LIKE #9



WE'VE GOT CHANGE AND VITALITY -

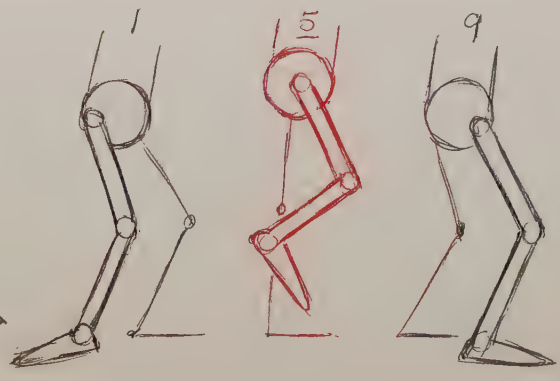
the LEG AND FOOT PASS FAST THROUGH the MIDDLE AND CLUSTER AT the BEGINNING and END of the STEP.

NOW WE'LL FIND METHOD IN THE MADNESS -

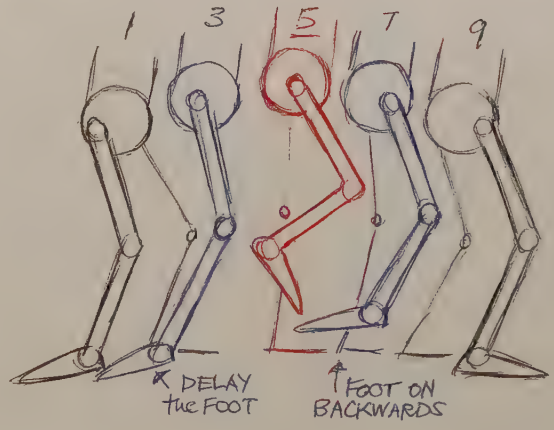
HERES WHAT ART BABBITT MIGHT DO -

START WITH the SAME 3 BASIC POSITIONS

BUT PUT #1's FOOT ON BACKWARDS →

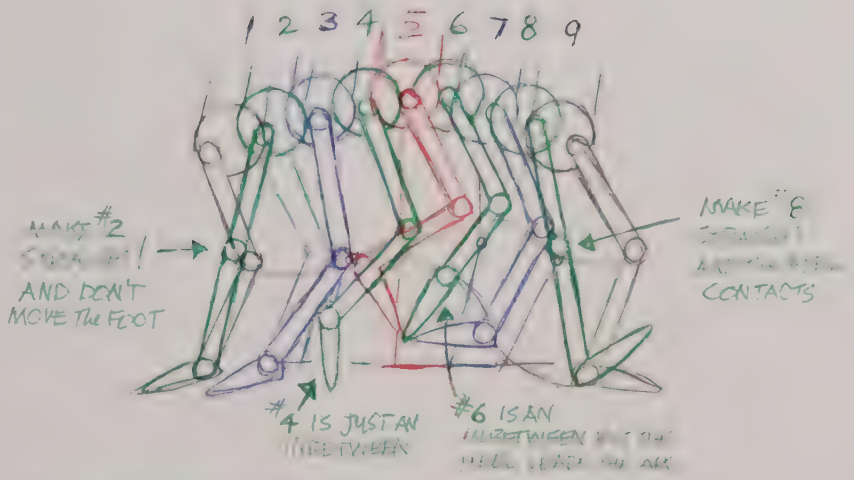


LEAVE the PASSING POSITION AS IS, BUT DELAY the FOOT ON #3 and MAKE the FOOT ON #7 BACKWARDS AGAIN.



NOW ADD IN
2, 4, 6 and 8

2 AND 8
ARE ALSO
ECCENTRIC



THIS WAY OF WORKING AND THINKING IS THE BASIS OF THE KIND OF THING ART DID WITH HIS 'GOOFY' WALKS. IT HAD A TERRIFIC INFLUENCE ON ANIMATORS.

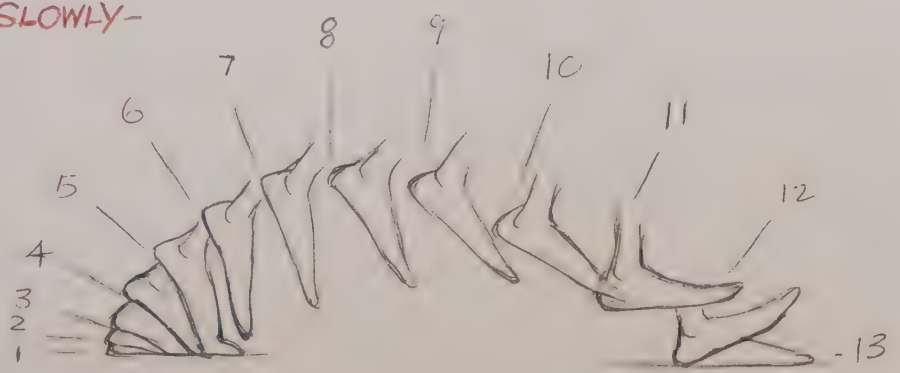
ART ALWAYS SAID,

'WHEN WE'VE GOT AN OPPORTUNITY TO INVENT - CERTAINLY WE'VE GOT THE RIGHT MEDIUM FOR IT.
THAT'S WHAT SEPARATES US FROM LIVE ACTION - WE CAN INVENT.'

NORMALLY A FOOT PICKS UP SLOWLY -

THEN TRAVELS QUICKLY
THROUGH THE MIDDLE

AND PUTS DOWN FAST.

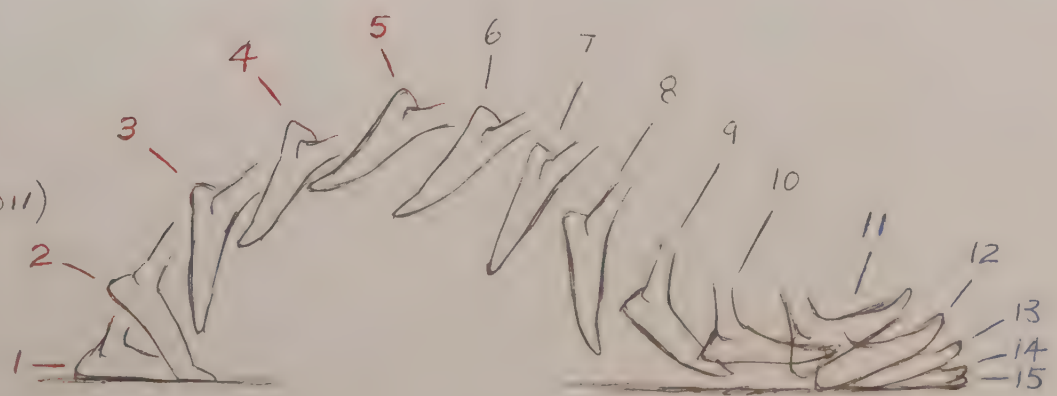


WHY NOT REVERSE IT?

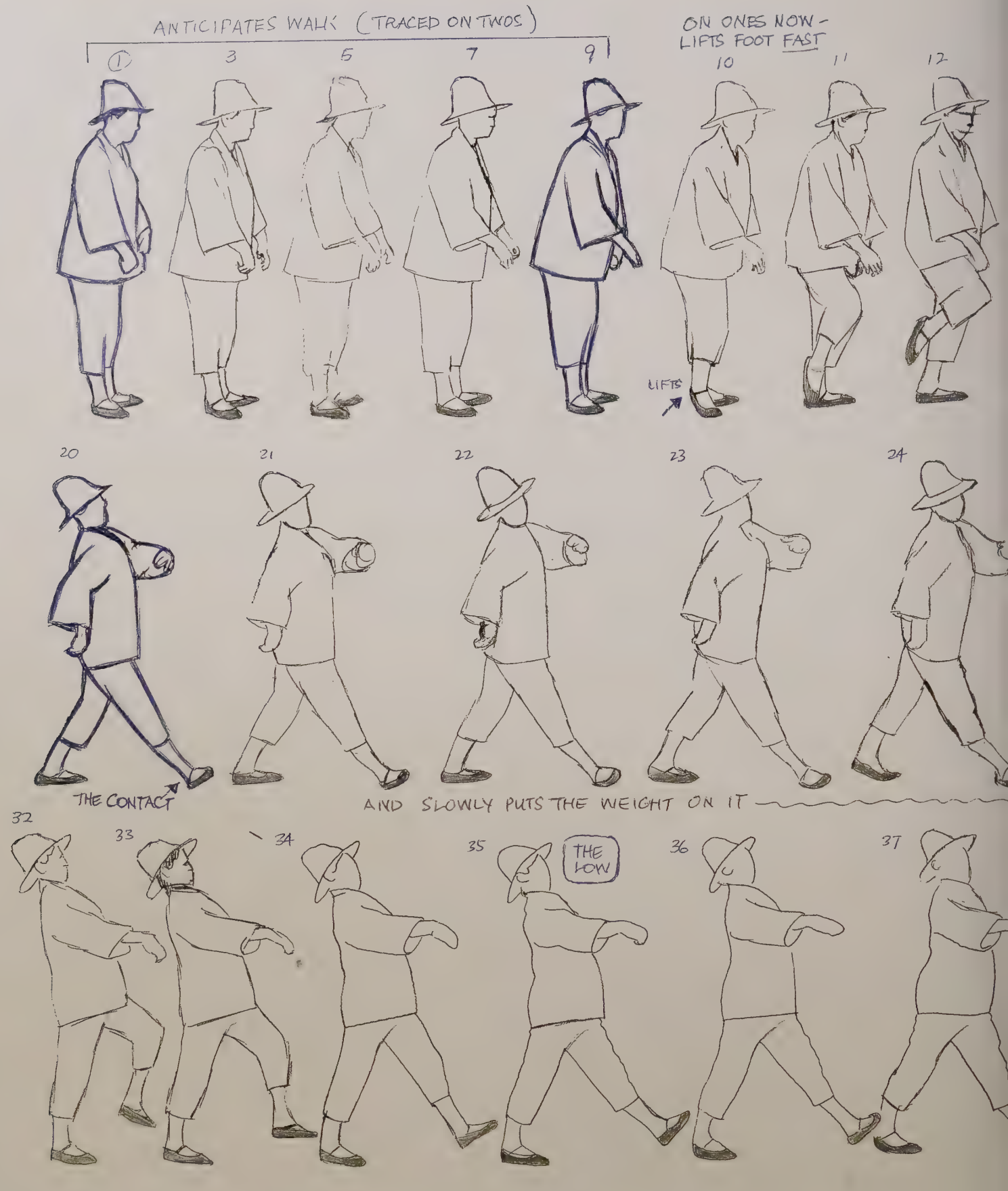
HAVE THE FOOT
PICK UP FAST (1 TO 5)

PASS THROUGH THE
MIDDLE NORMALLY (5 TO 11)

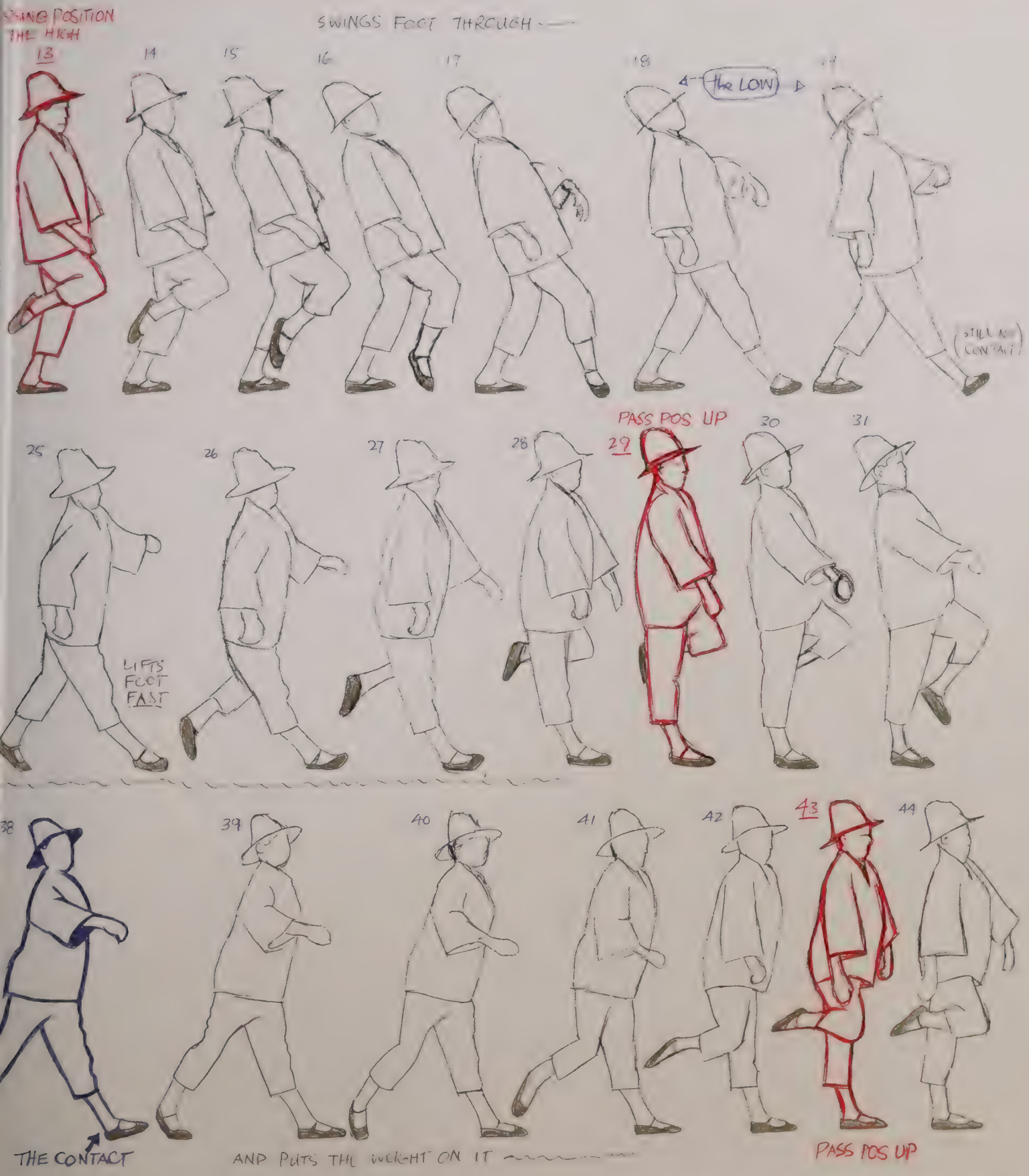
AND HAVE A SLOW
PUT DOWN (11 TO 15)



AND THIS IS EXACTLY WHAT THE LIVE ACTION MIME ON THE NEXT 2 PAGES IS DOING -



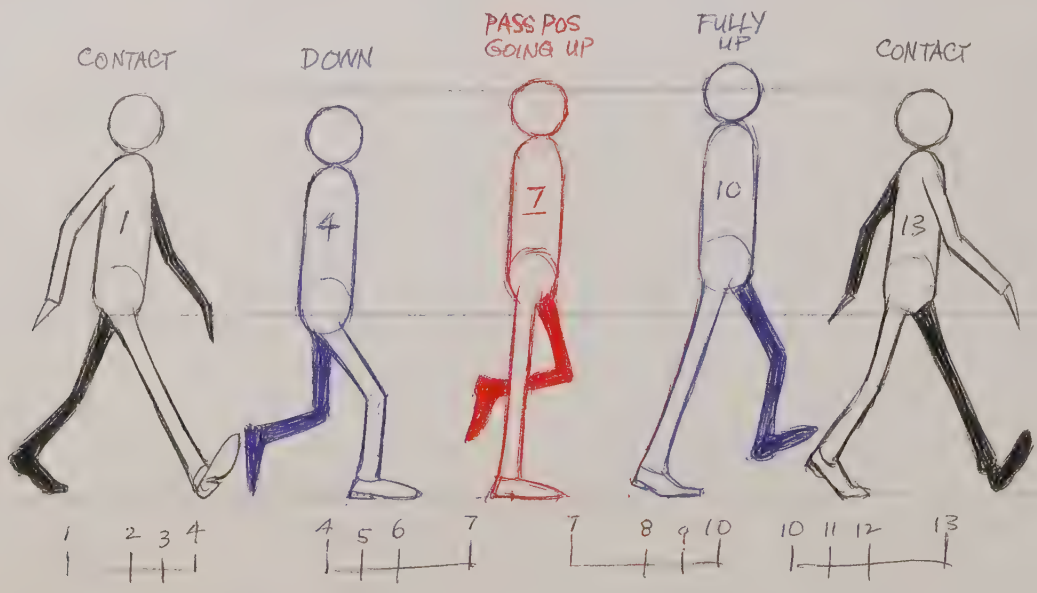
(HER STARTING STEP TAKES 12 FRAMES — HER FOLLOWING STEP TAKES 19 FRAMES)



AND IF SHE CAN DO ALL THIS "LIVE" HOW MUCH FURTHER SHOULD WE BE ABLE TO GO IN ANIMATION!

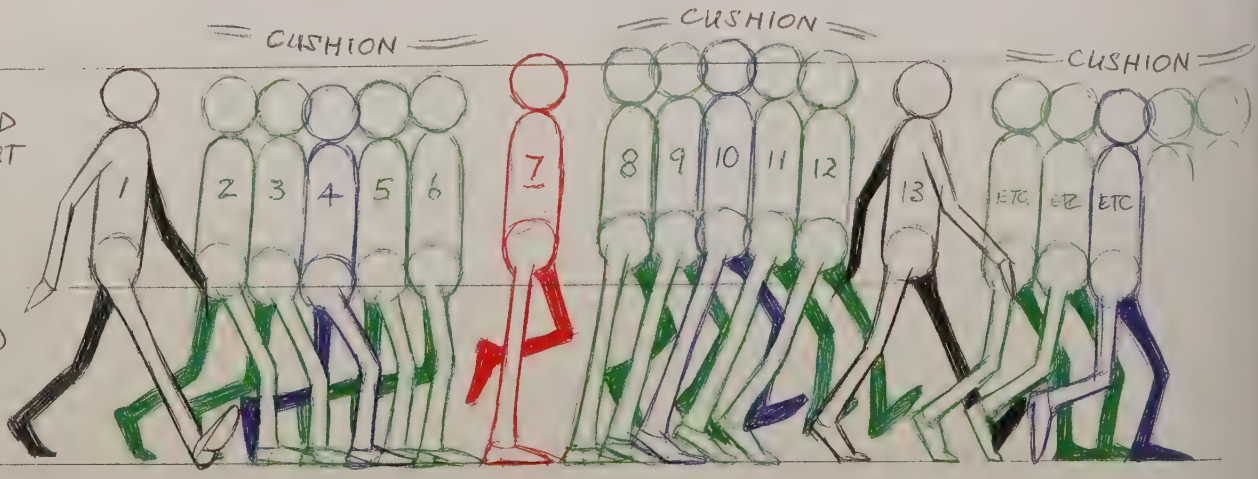
NORMAL WALK SPACING

WE HAVEN'T YET QUITE SHOWN THE SPACING AND CUSHIONING ON A NORMAL WALK. HERE'S A FORMULA SPACING FOR THE 'CONVENTIONAL' WALK ON 12'S. (SPREAD APART)



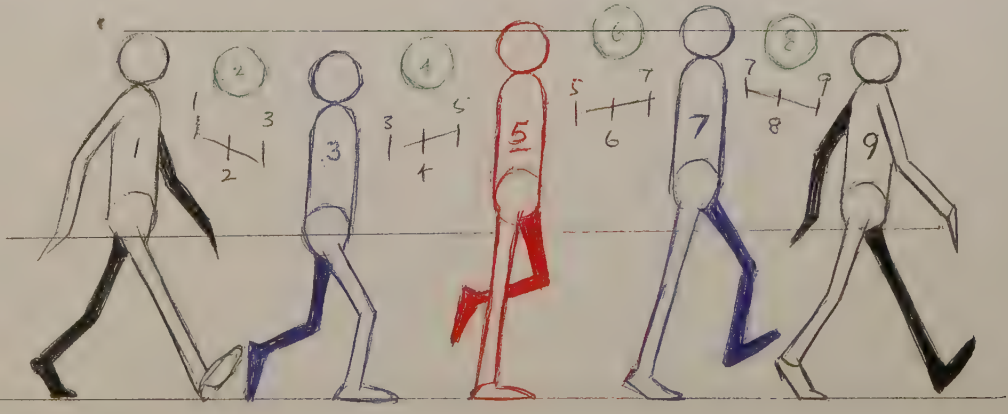
WE SPEED THRU THE CONTACT and CUSHION INTO the DOWN #4 EASE OUT OF the DOWN and SPEED THRU the PASS POS. #7 and CUSHION INTO And OUT OF the HIGH #10

IT LOOKS A BIT ODD SPREAD OUT LIKE THIS BUT IT WORKS FINE WHEN COMPRESSED AS IT WOULD BE -



AN 8 FRAME WALK USES EXACTLY the SAME DRAWINGS -

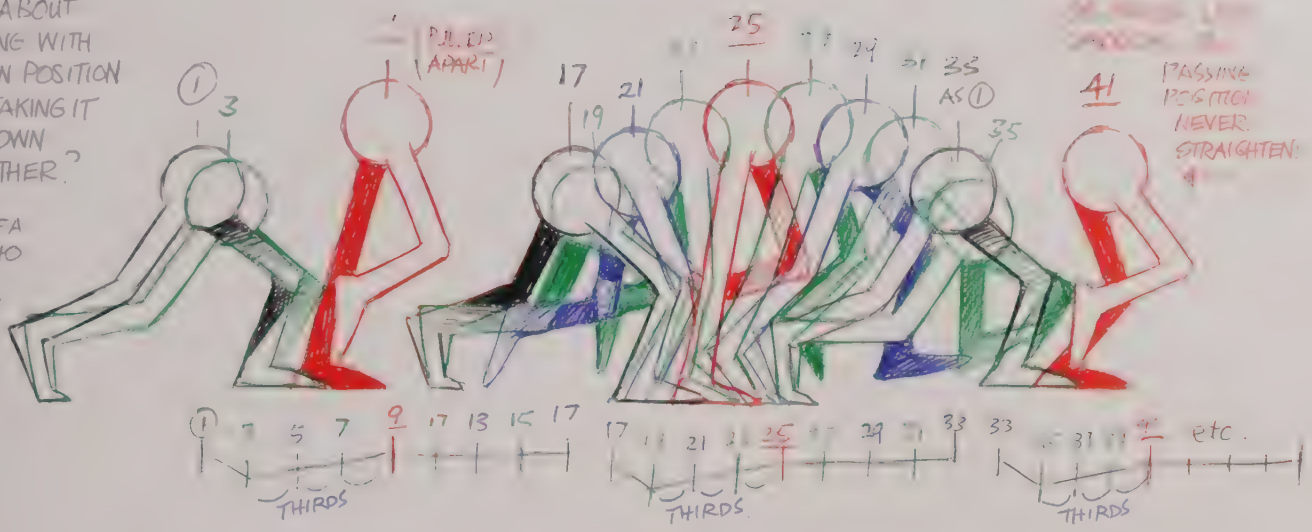
WITH JUST SINGLE IN BETWEENS



BACK TO INVENTION -

WHAT ABOUT STARTING WITH THE DOWN POSITION AND TAKING IT DOWN FURTHER?

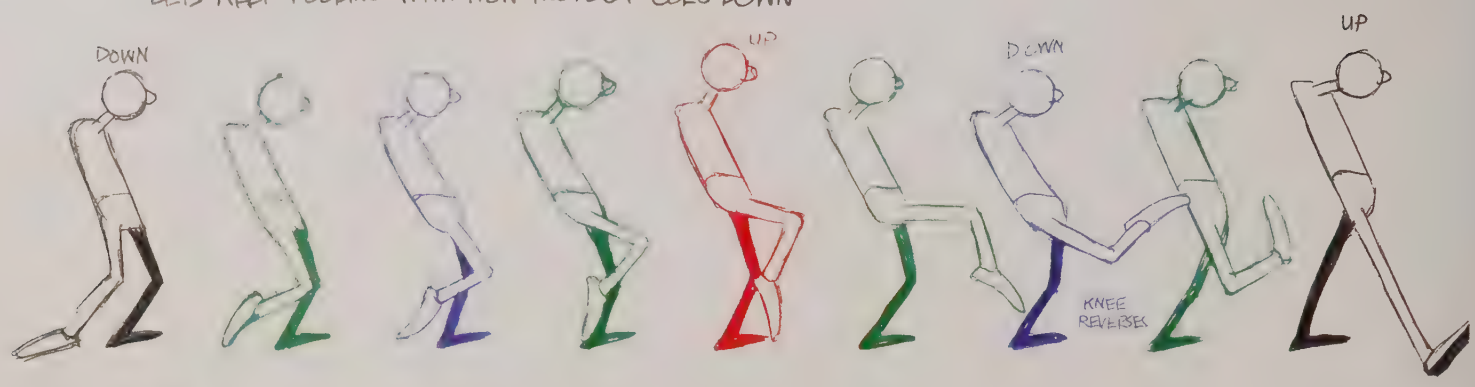
KIND OF A GROUCHO MARX WALK -



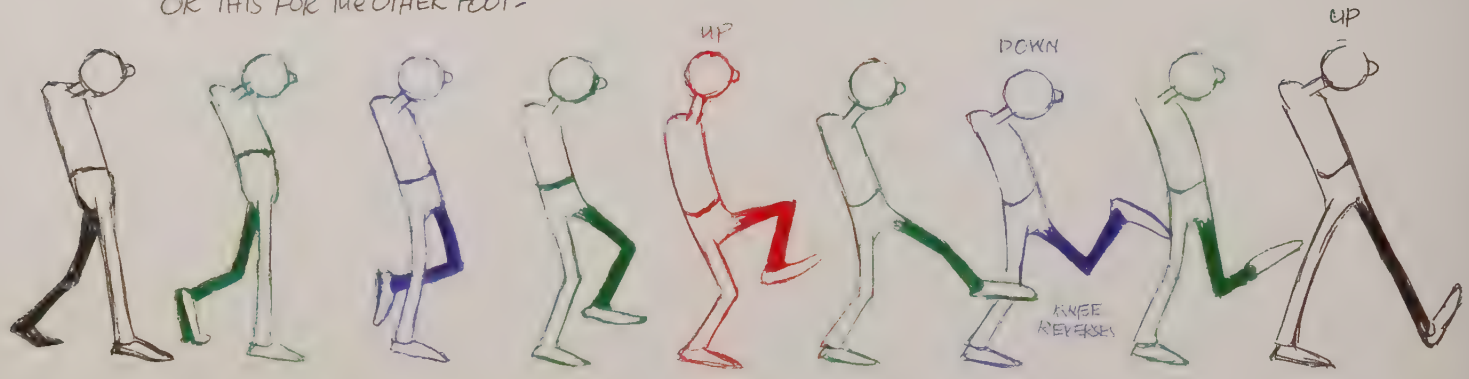
NOW LETS START TO TWIST THINGS -

VARIATION ON THE SAME SORT OF THING -

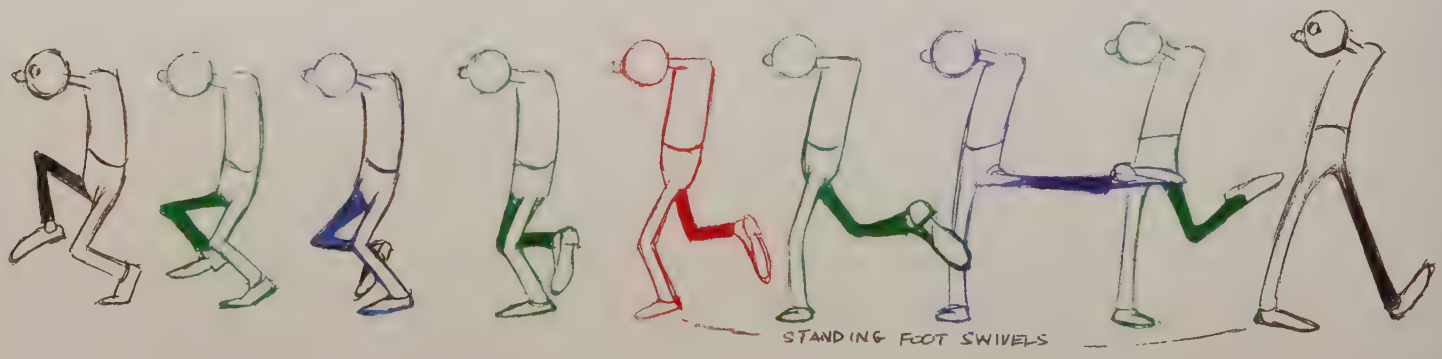
LET'S KEEP FOOLING WITH HOW THE FOOT GOES DOWN -



OR THIS FOR THE OTHER FOOT -



WALKING BACKWARDS WITH THE FEET ON BACKWARDS -

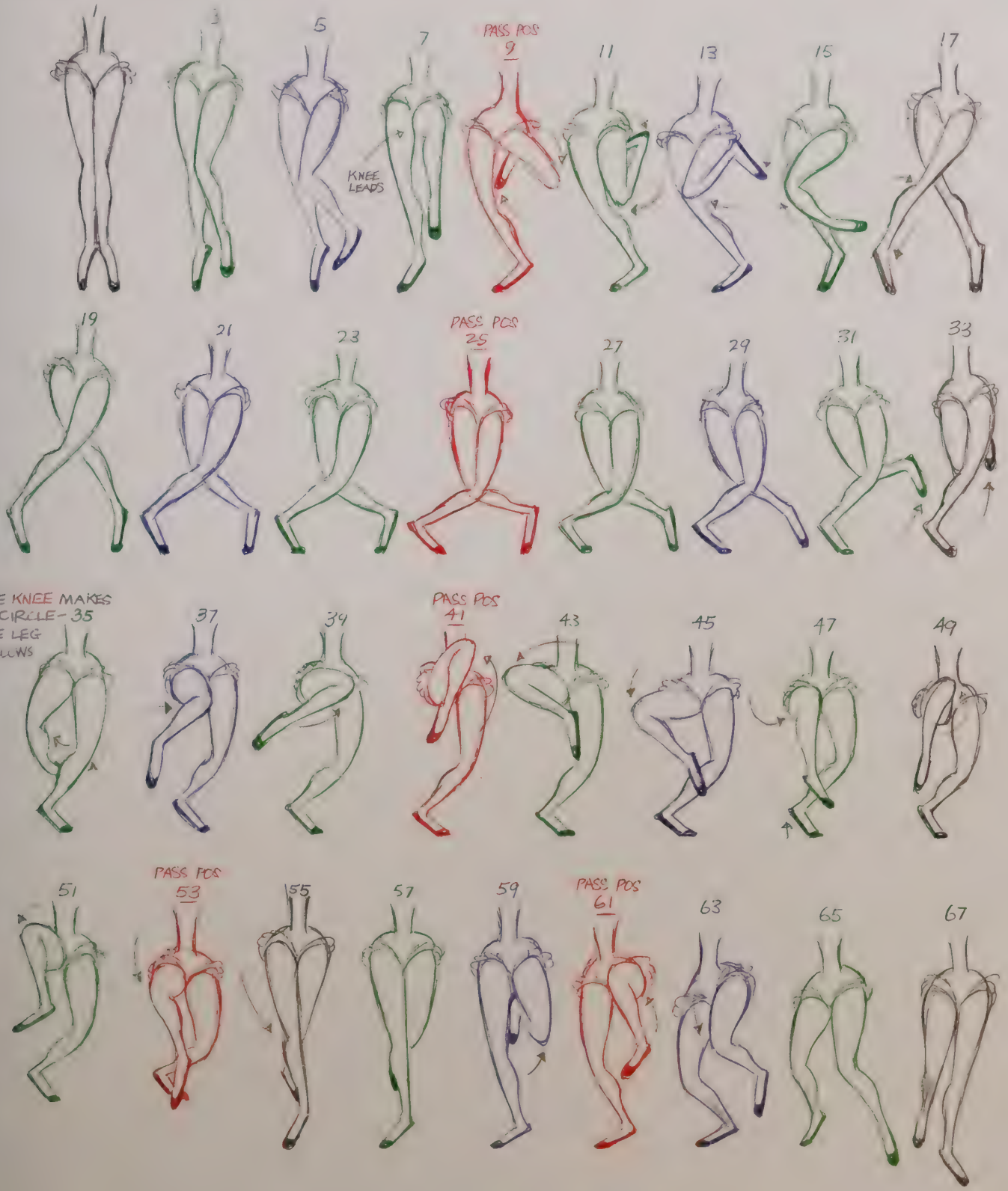


NO HUMAN COULD DO IT BUT IT WORKS CONVINCINGLY -

AGAIN, WE CAN INVENT WHAT DOESN'T TAKE PLACE IN THE REAL WORLD.

ART BABBITT SAID, "A GOOD DANCER INVENTS ITS NOT NATURAL FOR A PERSON TO LEAP INTO THE AIR - DO SCISSORS WITH THEIR FEET AND THEN LAND ON THEIR TOES. WE CAN DO ANYTHING WE WANT AS LONG AS WE MAKE IT 'WORK' - MAKE IT LOOK BELIEVABLE.

LET'S WALK A DANCER 'ON POINT' - ON TWOS

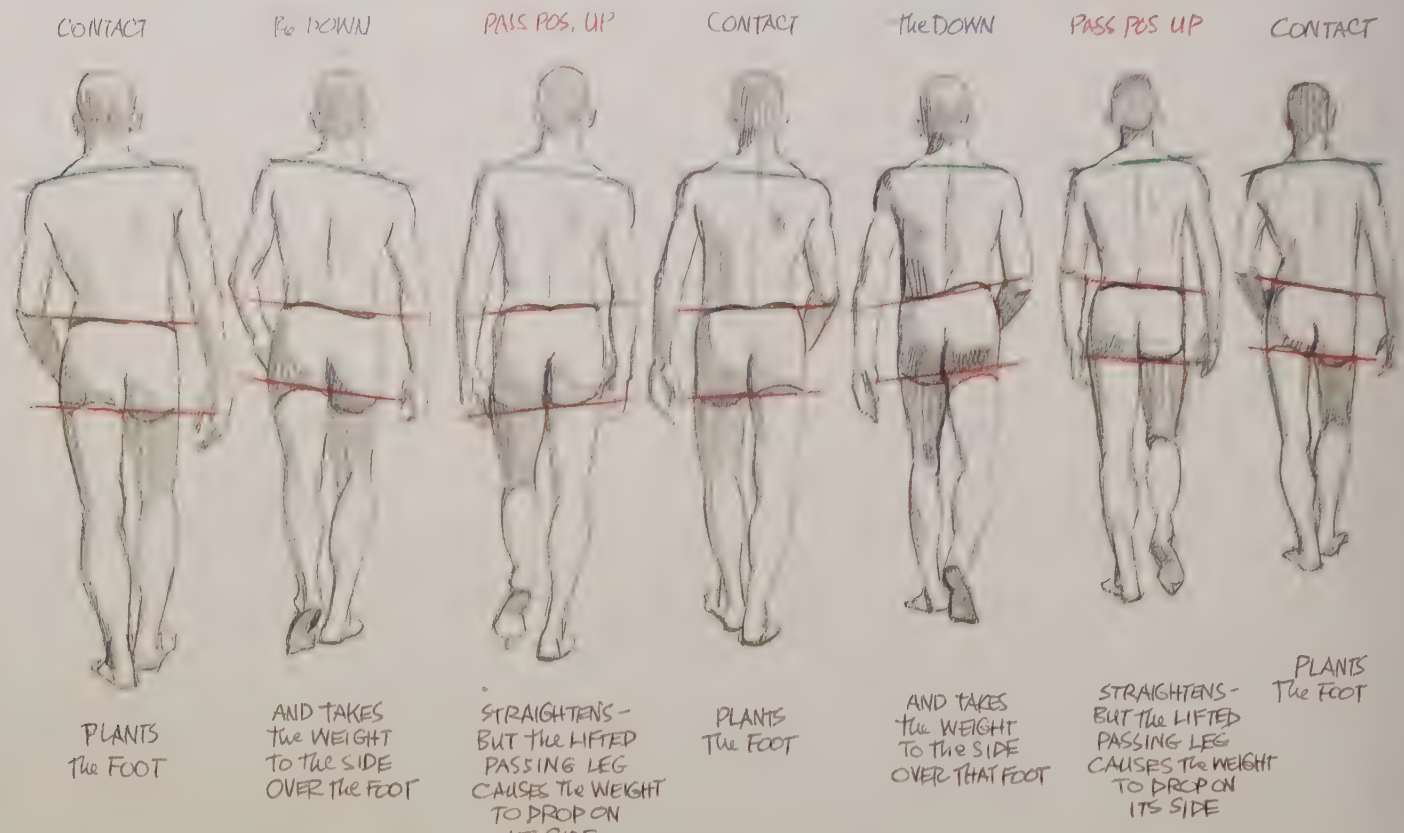


(WEIGHT SHIFT)

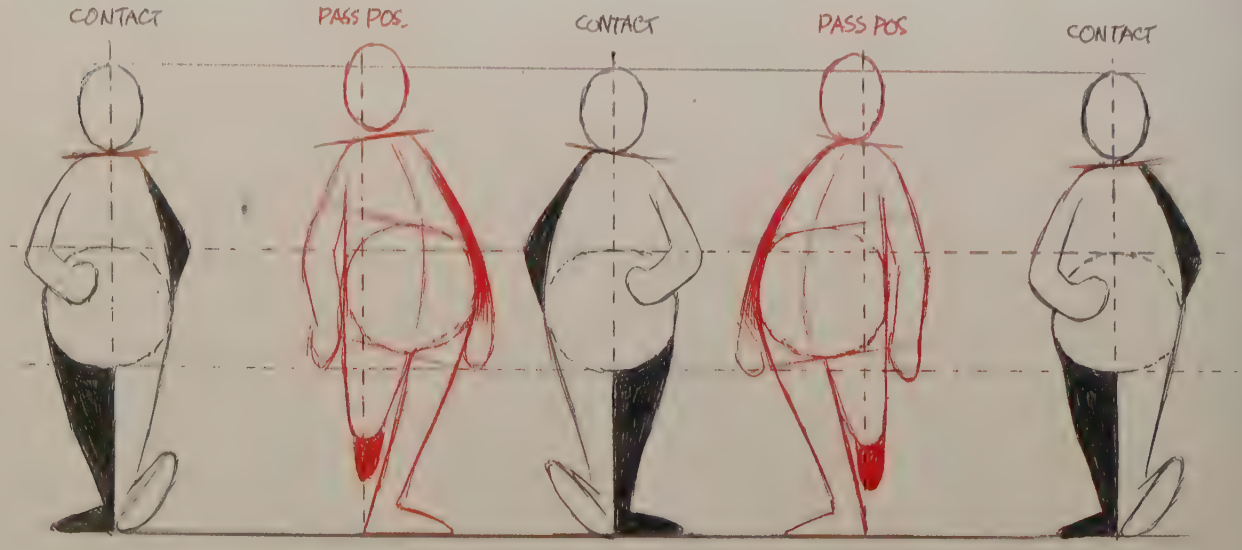
THE WEIGHT SHIFTS FROM ONE FOOT TO ANOTHER IN A NORMAL STRIDE.

EACH TIME WE RAISE A FOOT IT THRUSTS THE WEIGHT OF OUR BODY FORWARD AND TO THE SIDE OVER THE OTHER FOOT.

AND the SHOULDERS MOSTLY OPPOSE the HIPS and BUTTOCKS.


CONTACT
Re DOWN
PASS POS, UP
CONTACT
the DOWN
PASS POS UP
CONTACT
PLANTS the FOOT
AND TAKES the WEIGHT TO the SIDE OVER the FOOT
STRAIGHTENS - BUT the LIFTED PASSING LEG CAUSES the WEIGHT TO DROP ON ITS SIDE
PLANTS the FOOT
AND TAKES the WEIGHT TO the SIDE OVER THAT FOOT
STRAIGHTENS - BUT the LIFTED PASSING LEG CAUSES the WEIGHT TO DROP ON ITS SIDE
PLANTS the FOOT

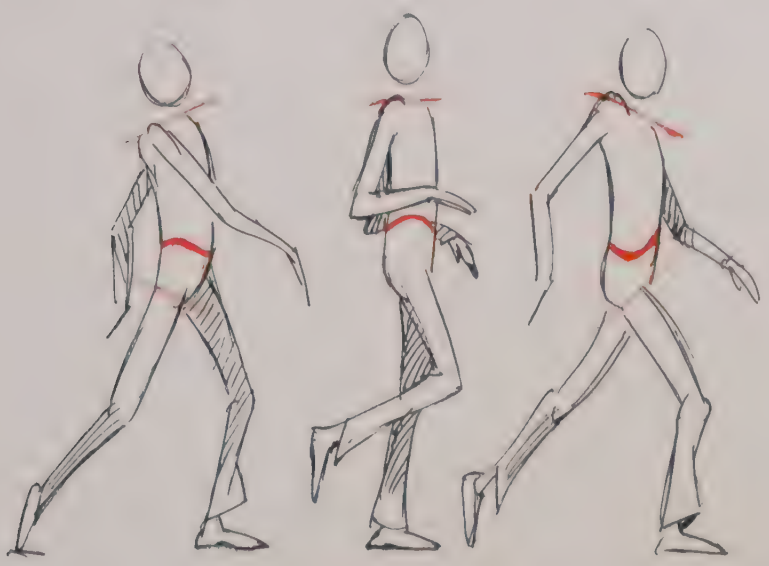
HERE'S AN EXAGGERATED WEIGHT SHIFT FORMULA -



(NOT SO MUCH SHIFT FOR RUNS)

THE BELT LINE

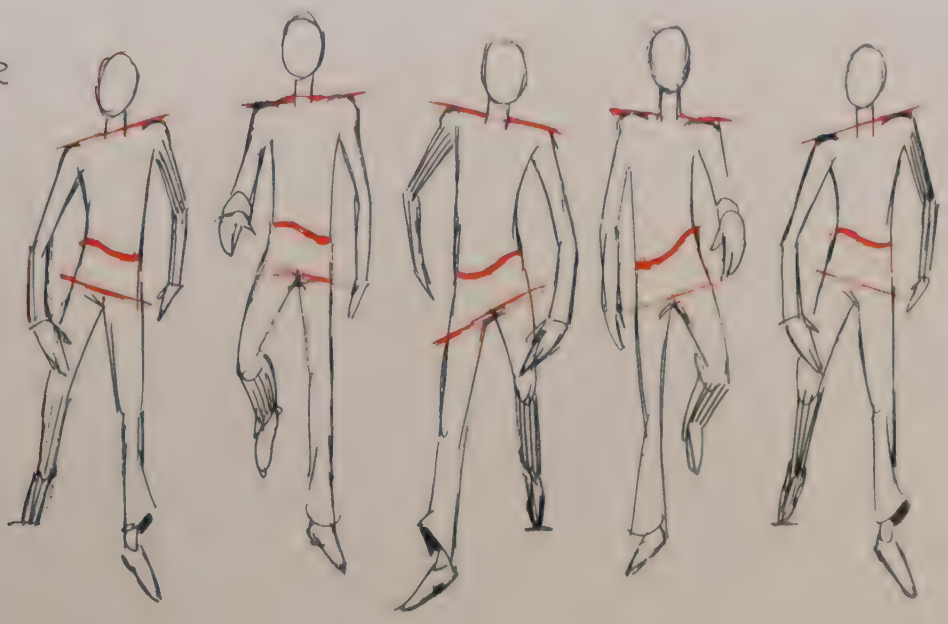
TILT the BELT LINE BACK AND FORTH FAVOURING the LEG THAT IS LOWEST.



NORMALLY the BELT LINE IS DOWN WITH THE FOOT THAT IS DOWN AND UP WITH THE FOOT THAT IS UP.

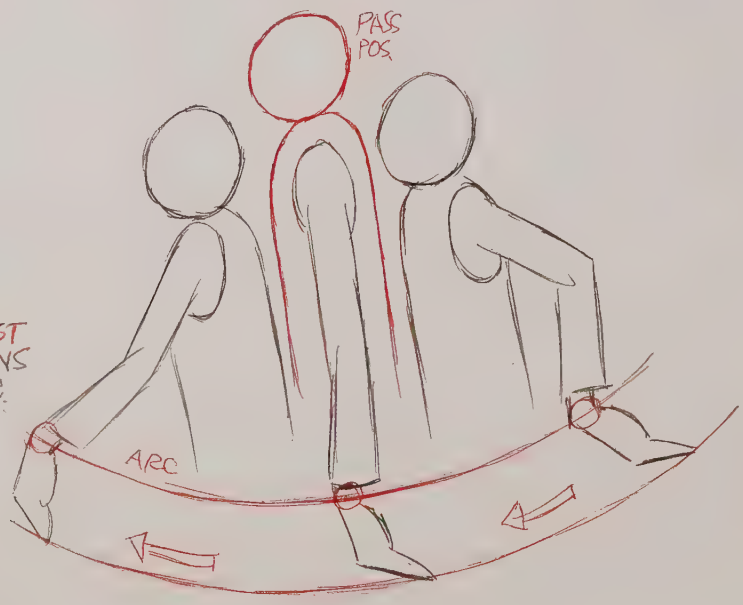
AND NORMALLY the SHOULDER OPPOSES the PELVIS

(BUT WE CAN DO WHAT WE LIKE)



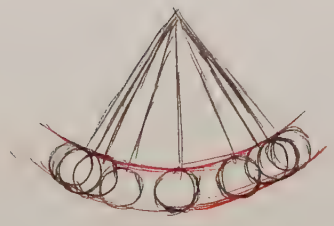
ARM MOVEMENTS

WHILE the SHOULDER RISES UP
IN the PASSING POSITION
the HAND IS AT the LOWEST PART of the ARC



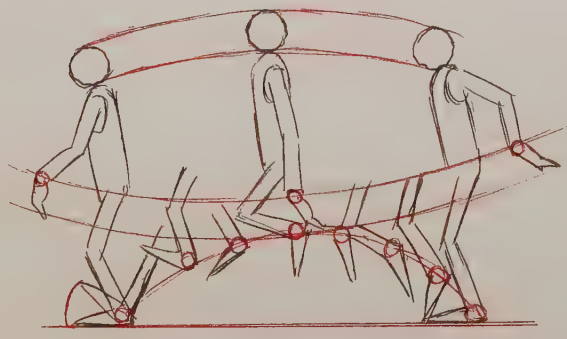
The WRIST MAINTAINS the ARC.

MOST ACTIONS FOLLOW ARCS - GENERALLY AN ACTION IS IN AN ARC



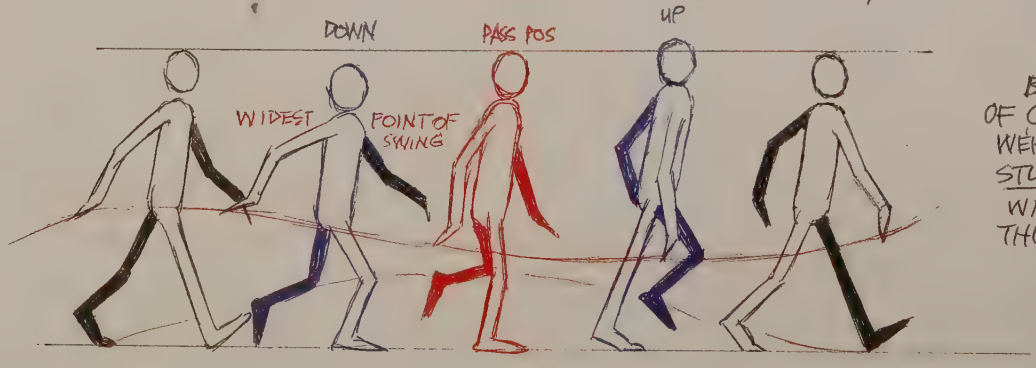
AS THEY SWING TO BALANCE the THRUST OF THE WALK - the ARMS WILL TEND TO BE IN A WAVELIKE PENDULUM - LIKE MOVEMENT.

MOST of the TIME the PATH OF ACTION IS EITHER AN ARC OR A SORT OF FIGURE 8 - BUT SOMETIMES ANGULAR OR STRAIGHT



WITH the LEG the HEEL MAINTAINS the ARC

AND JUST TO MAKE LIFE DIFFICULT, WE SHOULD REMEMBER THAT 'NORMAL' - the GOVERNMENT - ISSUE WALK - the ARM SWING IS AT ITS WIDEST ON the DOWN POSITION, NOT ON the CONTACT POSITION.



BUT OF COURSE WE'RE NOT STUCK WITH THIS -

ARM MOVEMENTS CAN BE BROAD OR PRACTICALLY NON-EXISTANT -

TO GET MORE FLEXIBILITY BRING THIS HAND ALL THE WAY ROUND

AND THIS HAND ALL THE WAY BACK

TAKE the FEET OFF the PARALLEL -

TWIST the FEET and TWIST the HANDS -

NOT IN PROFILE

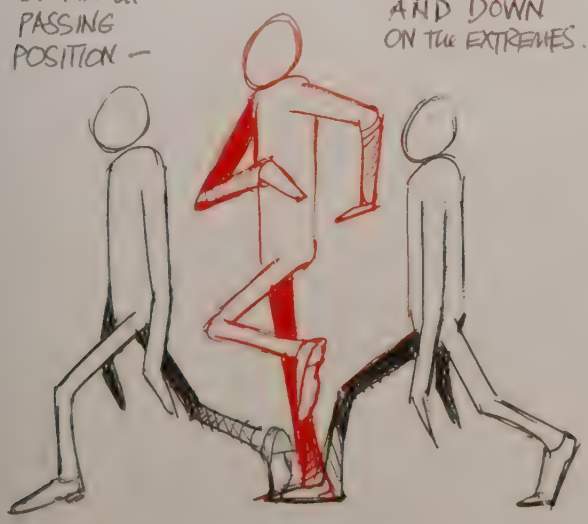
OR

DON'T MOVE the HANDS MUCH

MAYBE JUST FROM HERE TO HERE

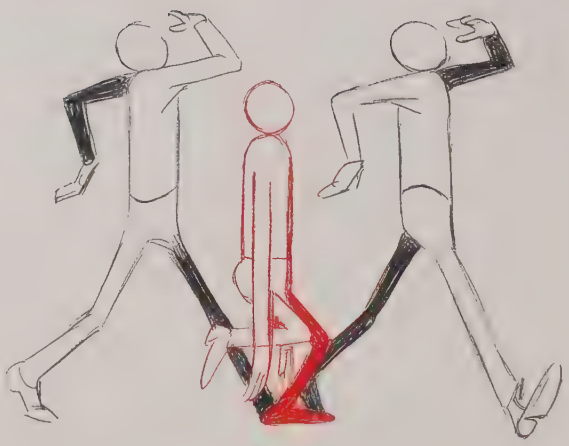
HOW ABOUT the ARMS UP LIKE THIS ON AN UP PASSING POSITION -

AND DOWN ON the EXTREMES.



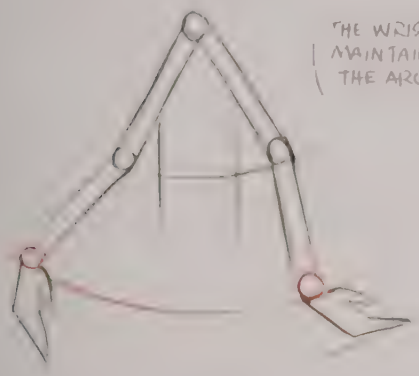
OR SAME THING WITH A DOWN PASSING POSITION -

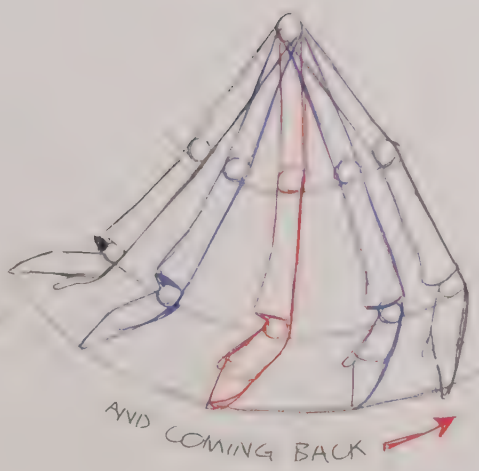
HOW ABOUT HAVING
THE ARMS RIGHT UP
ON THE EXTREMES
AND THE
ARMS RIGHT DOWN
ON THE
PASSING
POSITION
(WHICH IS
ALSO DOWN)



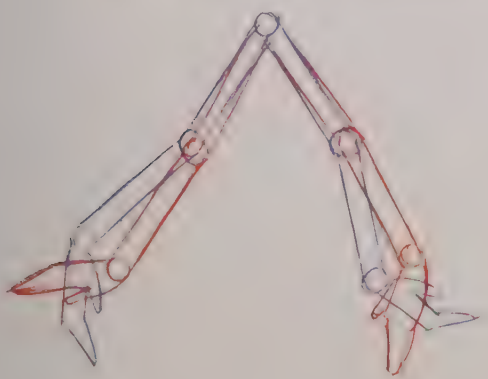
HERE'S A JAUNTY WALK
DOING JUST THAT - AND A LOT OF THE THINGS WE'VE BEEN TALKING ABOUT: BELT LINE, SHOULDERS OPPOSE HIPS - TILTING AND DELAYING HEAD, TWISTING FEET - REVERSING BODY.

TO GET SOME FLEXIBILITY IN AN ARM SWING WE'D DRAG THE HAND -

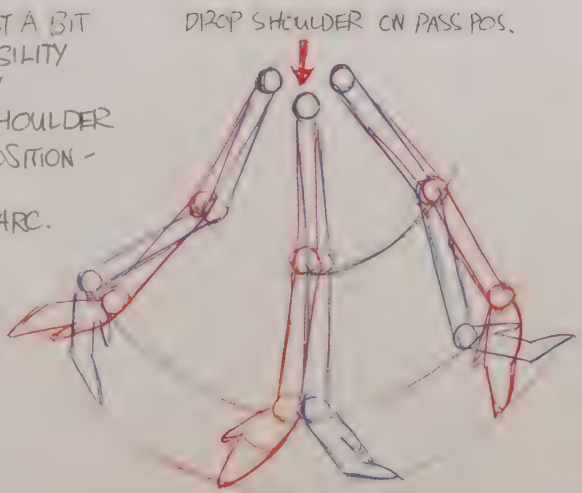




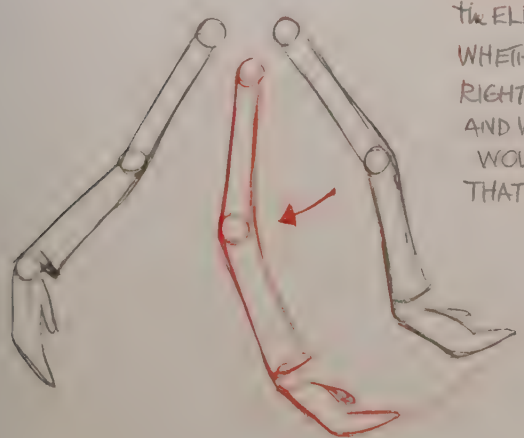
AND THIS WILL GIVE US A NICE LITTLE OVERLAP OF THE HANDS AT EACH END OF THE SWING



AND WE CAN GET A BIT MORE FLEXIBILITY INTO IT BY DROPPING the SHOULDER ON the PASS POSITION - MAKING A DEEPER ARC.

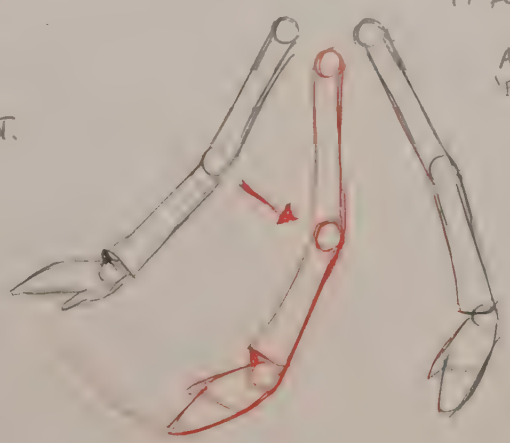


BUT HERE'S THE SECRET -

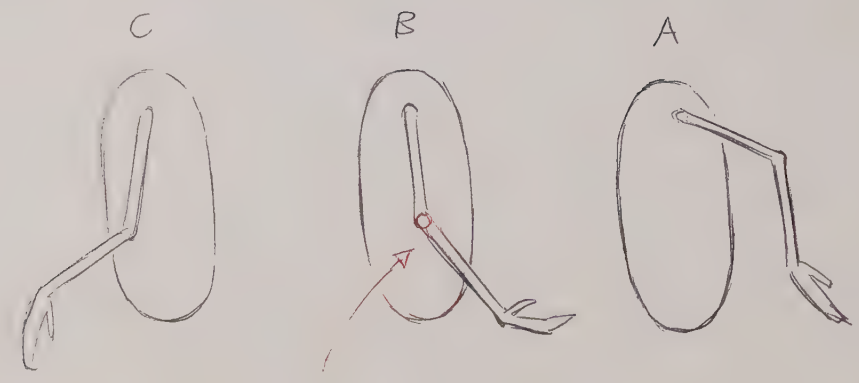


WHEN WE GO FORWARD WE'LL 'BREAK' (BEND) the ELBOW JOINT WHETHER IT LOOKS RIGHT OR WRONG AND WHETHER IT WOULD BEND THAT WAY OR NOT.

AND WHEN WE COME BACK, WE'LL 'BREAK' (BEND) IT AGAIN - ALTHOUGH GOING THIS WAY IT LOOKS QUITE NORMAL - A NATURAL 'BREAK' OR BEND.



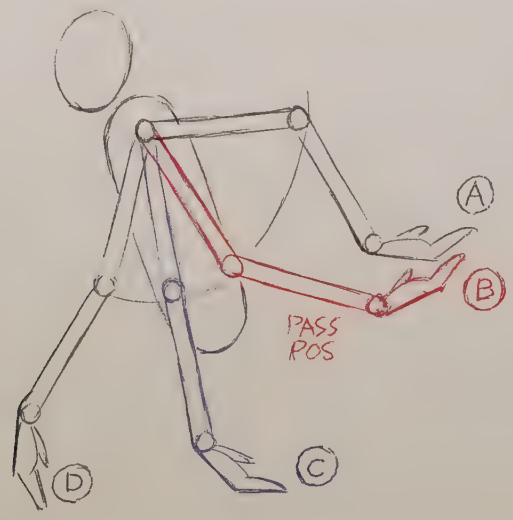
SO, FOR GREATER FLEXIBILITY-

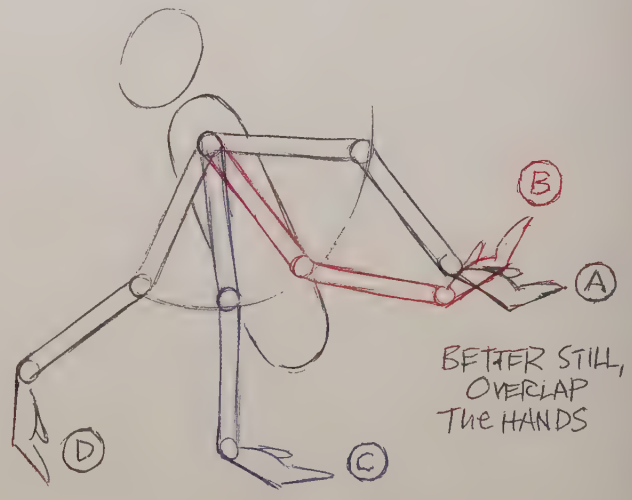


BY BREAKING THE JOINT

WE CAN GET LIMBER MOVEMENT FROM STRAIGHT LINES.
WE WON'T HAVE TO DRAW IN A RUBBERY CARTOONY WAY TO BE LIMBER.

LETS MAKE THIS REALLY CLEAR - AS WE'RE GOING TO HAVE A LOT OF THIS...



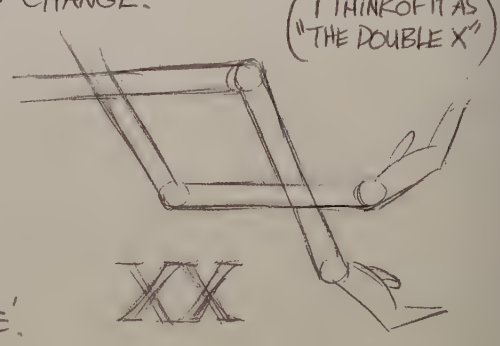


BUT WONT IT LOOK STRANGE? NOT ON THE SCREEN. WHEN INBETWEENED ITS PROBABLY GOING TO BE FOR 4 FRAMES OR SO, 1/6 OF A SECOND. TOO QUICK TO 'READ.' BUT WE'LL 'FEEL' IT - WE'LL FEEL THE INCREASED FLEXIBILITY - INCREASED 'CHANGE'.

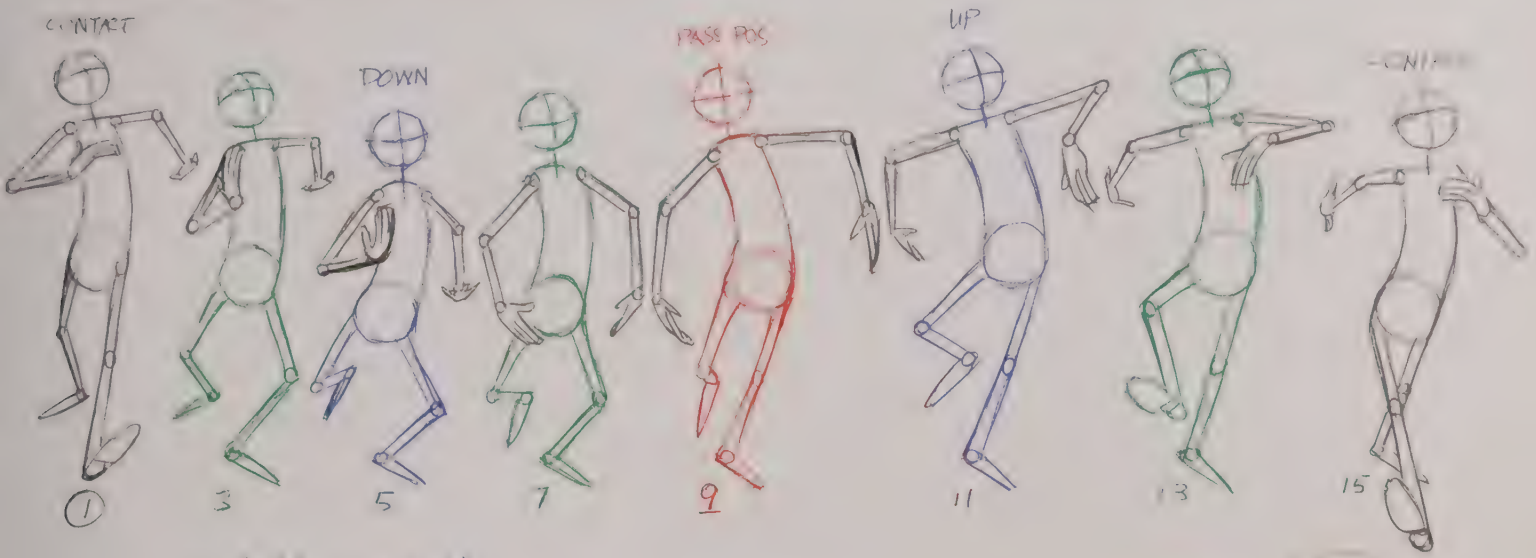
SOMEONE ASKED FRED ASTAIRE HOW ON EARTH HE COULD DANCE AND MOVE LIKE THAT - AND HE SAID, 'OH, I JUST START BY PUTTING BOTH FEET IN the AIR.'

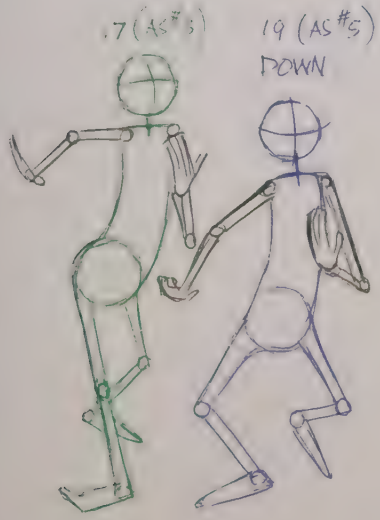
BUT IF YOU ANALYSE FRED ASTAIRE FRAME BY FRAME YOU'LL SEE THAT HE'S BREAKING JOINTS ALL THE TIME ALL OVER THE PLACE.

SENSING THIS, THEY PERCEPTIVELY CALLED HIM 'The HUMAN MICKEY MOUSE'.

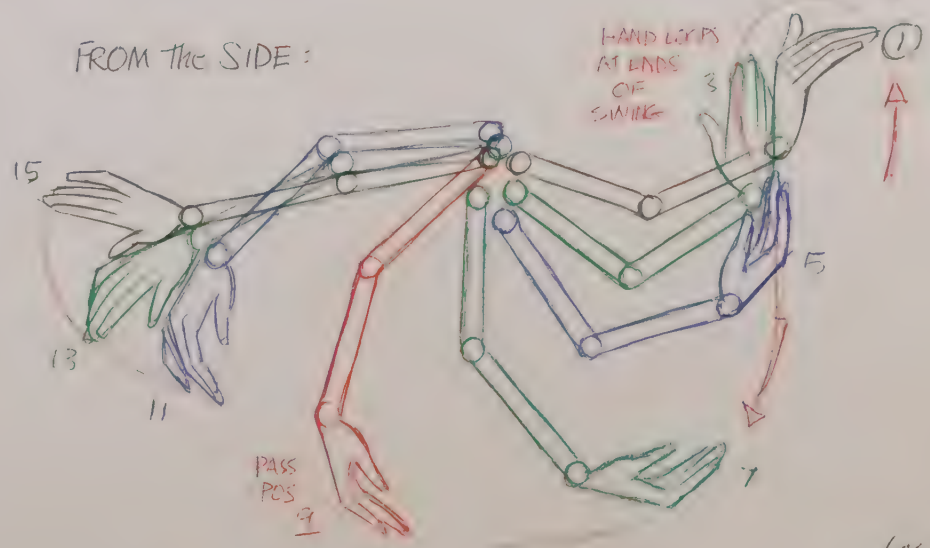


HERE'S AN ADAPTATION OF A SUPERBLY ANIMATED FLAMBOYANT ARM SWING BREAKING THE JOINTS LIKE MAD -

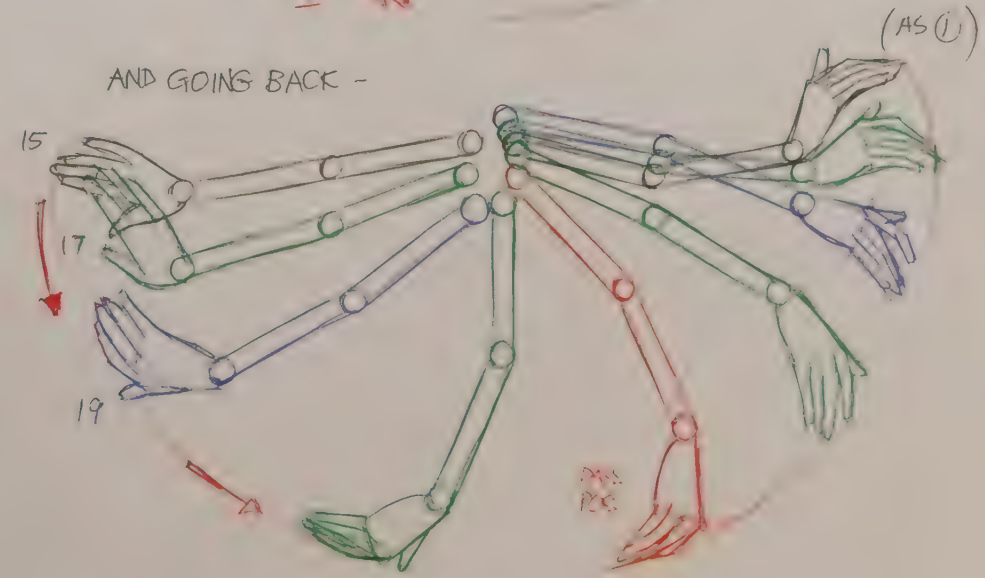




FROM THE SIDE :



AND GOING BACK -



BREAKING THE JOINTS (OR WHATEVER YOU WANT TO CALL IT) IS SECOND NATURE TO THE EXPERTS.

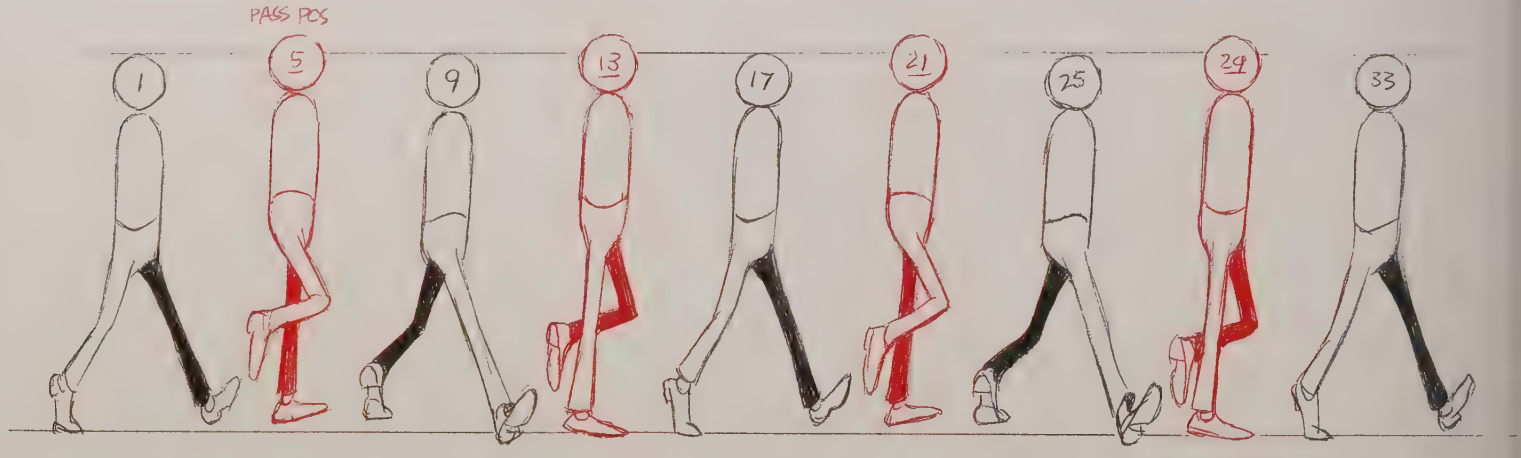
"OH, YOU HAVE TO DO THAT! EVERYBODY KNOWS THAT."

KEEPING TO STICK FIGURES

I FIND THAT ONCE THE DRAWINGS ARE EVEN REMOTELY INTERESTING - IT'S HARDER TO SEE PAST ANY CHARM OR STYLE AND SEE THE STRUCTURE OF THE UNDERLYING MOVEMENT CLEARLY. EVEN ADDING AN EYEBALL SEEMS TO CREATE CHARACTER AND THROW ONE OFF THE CHASE FOR THE STRUCTURE. AND ITS THE STRUCTURE WE'RE AFTER HERE, ACTING and PRETTY DRAWINGS OR DESIGNS CAN COME LATER.

WE CAN ALTER THE TIMING OF AN ARM SWING -
SAY WE MAKE THE ARMS SWING SLOWER THAN THE FEET...

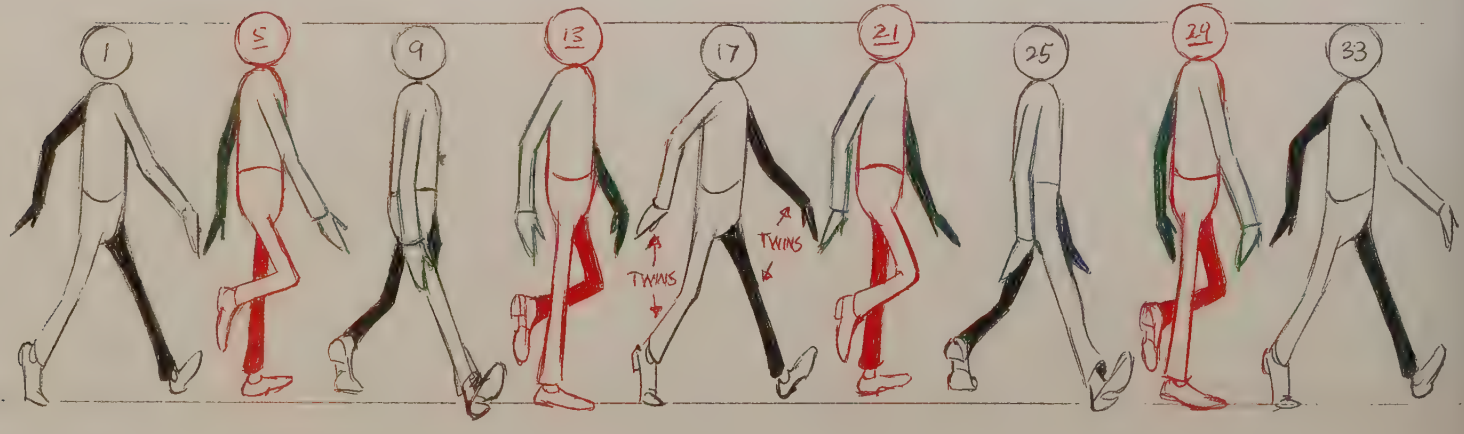
WE ANIMATE THE WALK ON 8's - TAKING 4 STEPS (PULLED APART)



NOW WE'LL ADD THE ARMS BUT WE'LL PUT THEM ON 16's -

SO WITH THE FEET ON 8's AND THE ARMS ON 16's, THE ARM SWING TAKES TWICE AS LONG AS THE FEET.

THE ARM EXTREMES ARE ON THE SAME DRAWINGS AS THE FEET BUT ON #17, THE ARMS 'TWIN' UNNATURALLY ON THE SAME SIDE AS THE FEET



THIS SORT OF THING IS VERY EFFECTIVE ON A RUN!

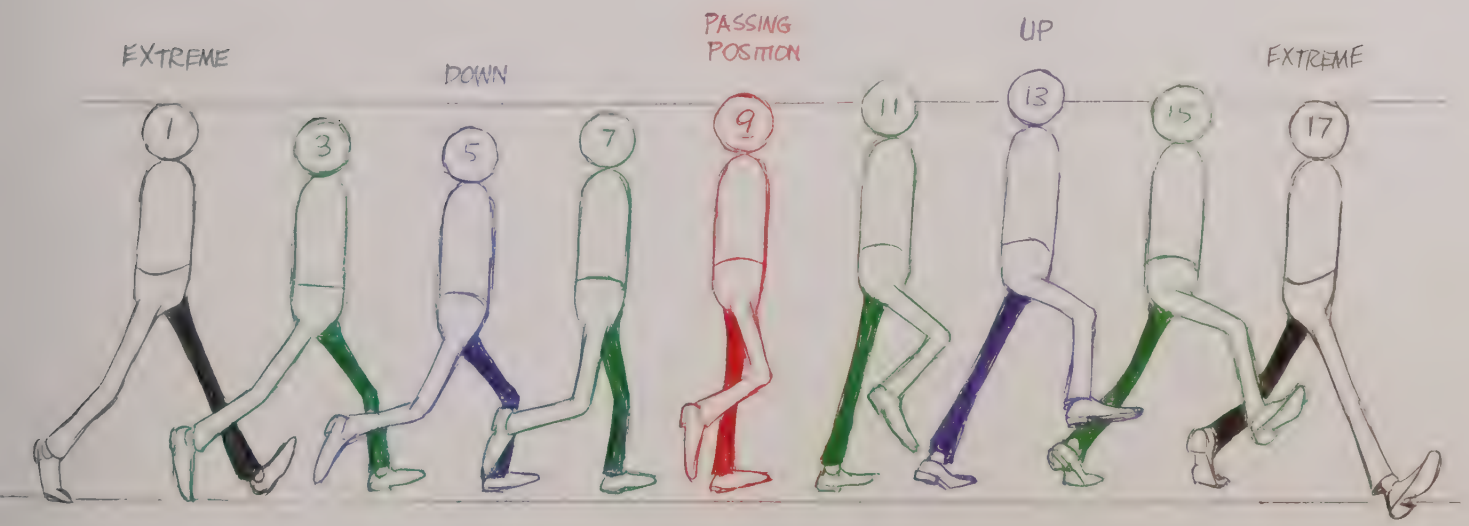
NOW LETS DO THE CONVERSE -

WE'LL HAVE THE ARMS PUMPING AWAY TWICE AS FAST AS THE LEGS.

WE'LL MAKE THE WALK ON 16's AND WORK THE ARMS ON 8's.

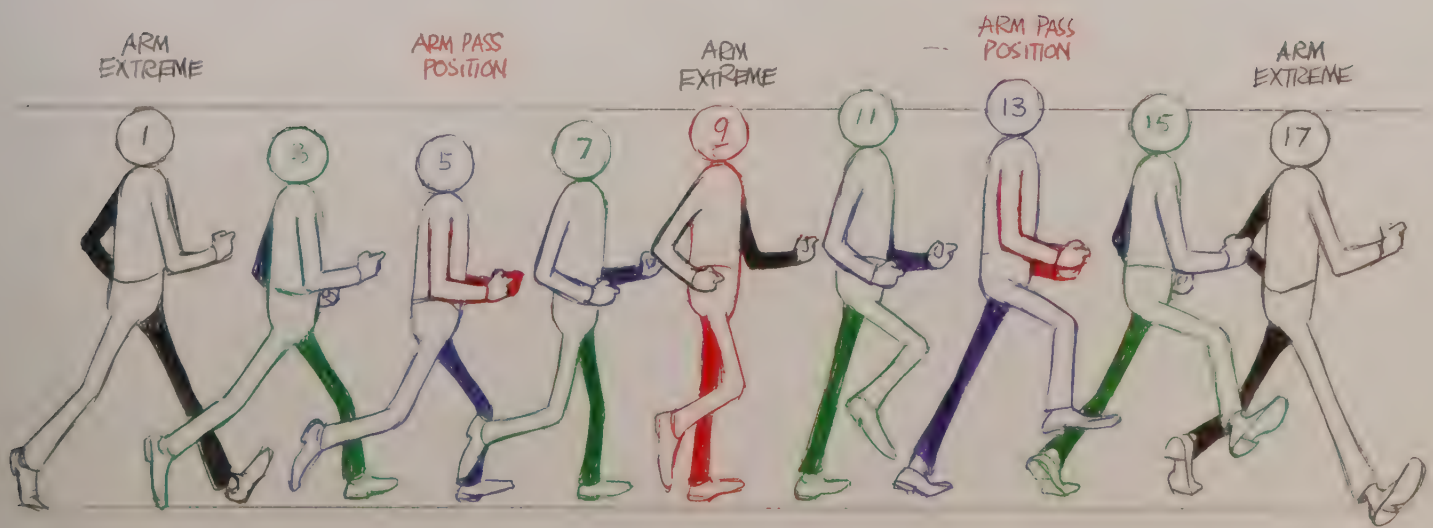
TAKE ONE STEP - (SPREAD FAR APART FOR CLARITY)

WE'LL NEED MORE INBETWEENS TO SHOW THIS.



NOW ADD THE ARMS -

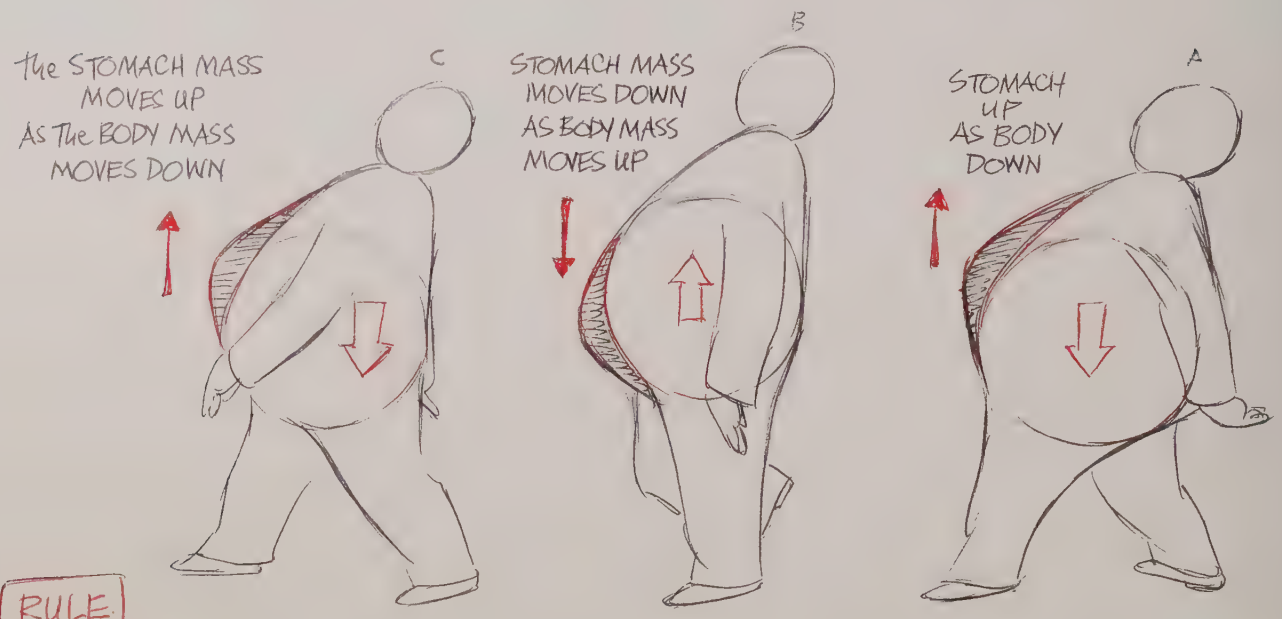
THE EXTREME POSITIONS ARE ON 1, 9, and 17.



THIS NEEDS SINGLE INBETWEENS - MUST BE ON ONES BECAUSE OF SO MUCH ARM ACTION IN A SHORT SPACE OF TIME (THIS WON'T WORK ON A RUN, FOR THE SAME REASON)

COUNTERACTION

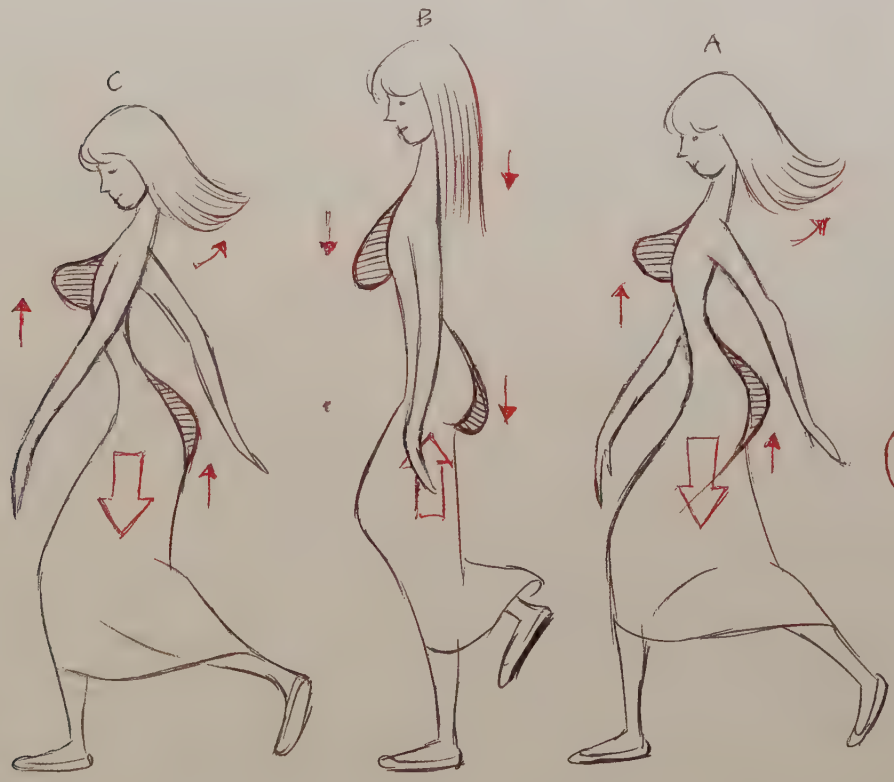
EXAGGERATED COUNTERACTION - AS IN A FAT MAN'S WALK

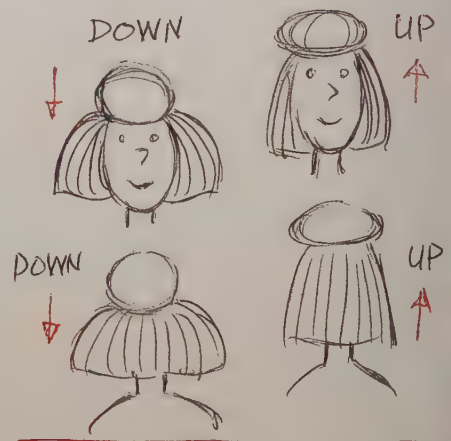

The STOMACH MASS MOVES UP As The BODY MASS MOVES DOWN
C
STOMACH MASS MOVES DOWN AS BODY MASS MOVES UP
B
STOMACH UP AS BODY DOWN
A

RULE

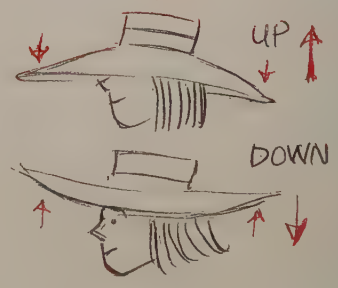
WHEN THE CHARACTER GOES UP - THE DRAPERY OR HAIR OR SOFT BITS GO DOWN.

AGAIN, EXAGGERATING - BUTTOCKS AND BREASTS AND HAIR COUNTER The BODY UPS AND DOWNS -





BUT RESTRAIN THESE ACTIONS JUST GIVE SOME MOVEMENT.



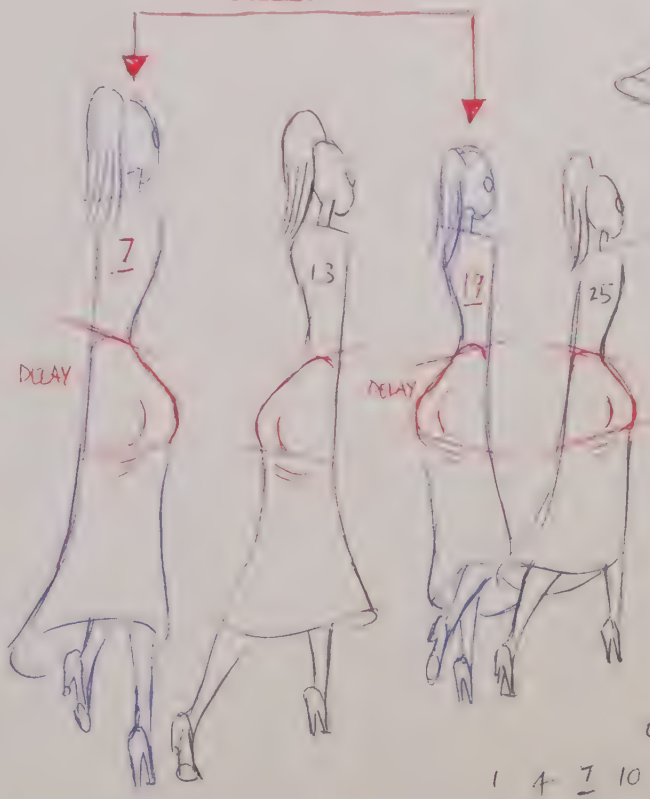
AS WE NEAR THE END OF THESE WALKS LETS LOOK AT WHAT THE END IS DOING...

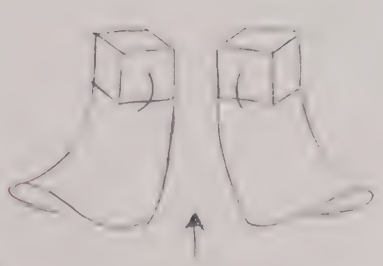
TAKE A WOMAN WALKING -

THE BUTTOCKS MOVE IN THE DIRECTION OF THE FORWARD FOOT -

(SPREAD APART)

SKIRT BILLOWS LATER -





The MOVEMENT OF the DRAPERY MOMENTARILY OPPOSES The HIPS.

WHEN The HIPS MOVE - The DRAPERY MOVES the OTHER WAY.

(DO THE HAIR LATER OR LAST)

ON 12'S

1 4 7 10 13 13 16 19 22 25

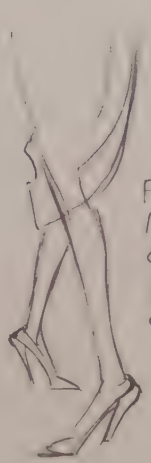
AGAIN, WE'RE SHOWING THESE THINGS IN EXAGGERATED FORM. IT'S ACCORDING TO TASTE HOW BROADLY OR HOW SUBTLY WE USE THESE DEVICES...

AND REMEMBERING THAT WOMEN TEND TO WALK ON A STRAIGHT LINE - 'TIGHTROPE WALKING.'

WHEN FOOT CROSSES OVER = MORE FEMININE WALK

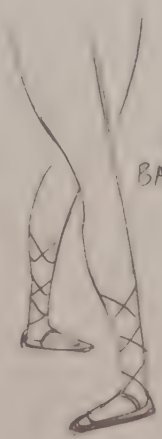
'NORMALLY'

FASHION MODELS CROSS RIGHT OVER

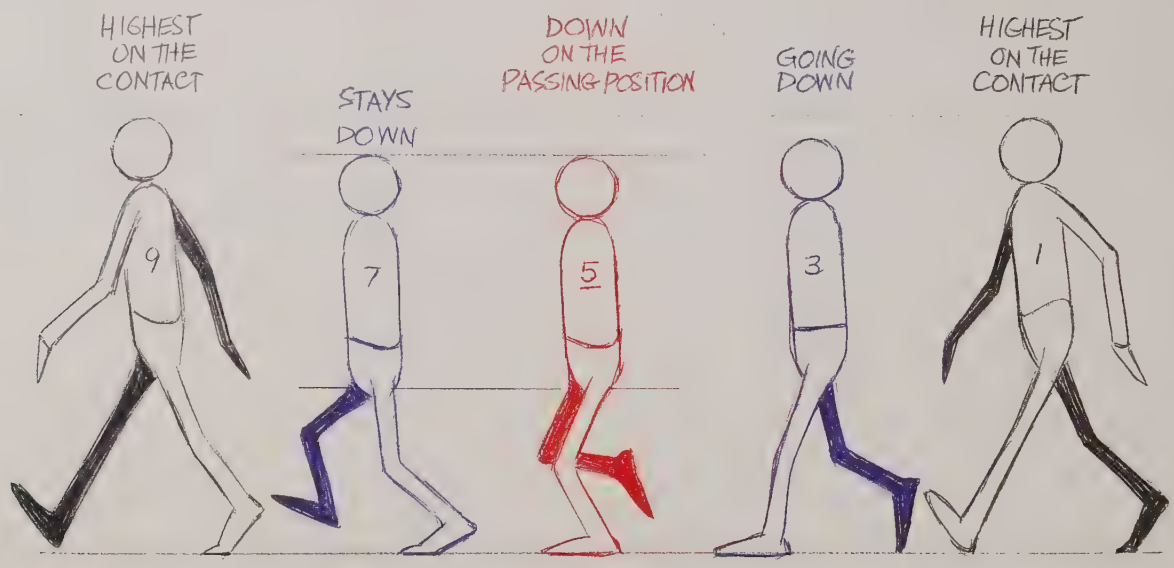


AS DO STRIPPERS

AND BALLERINAS

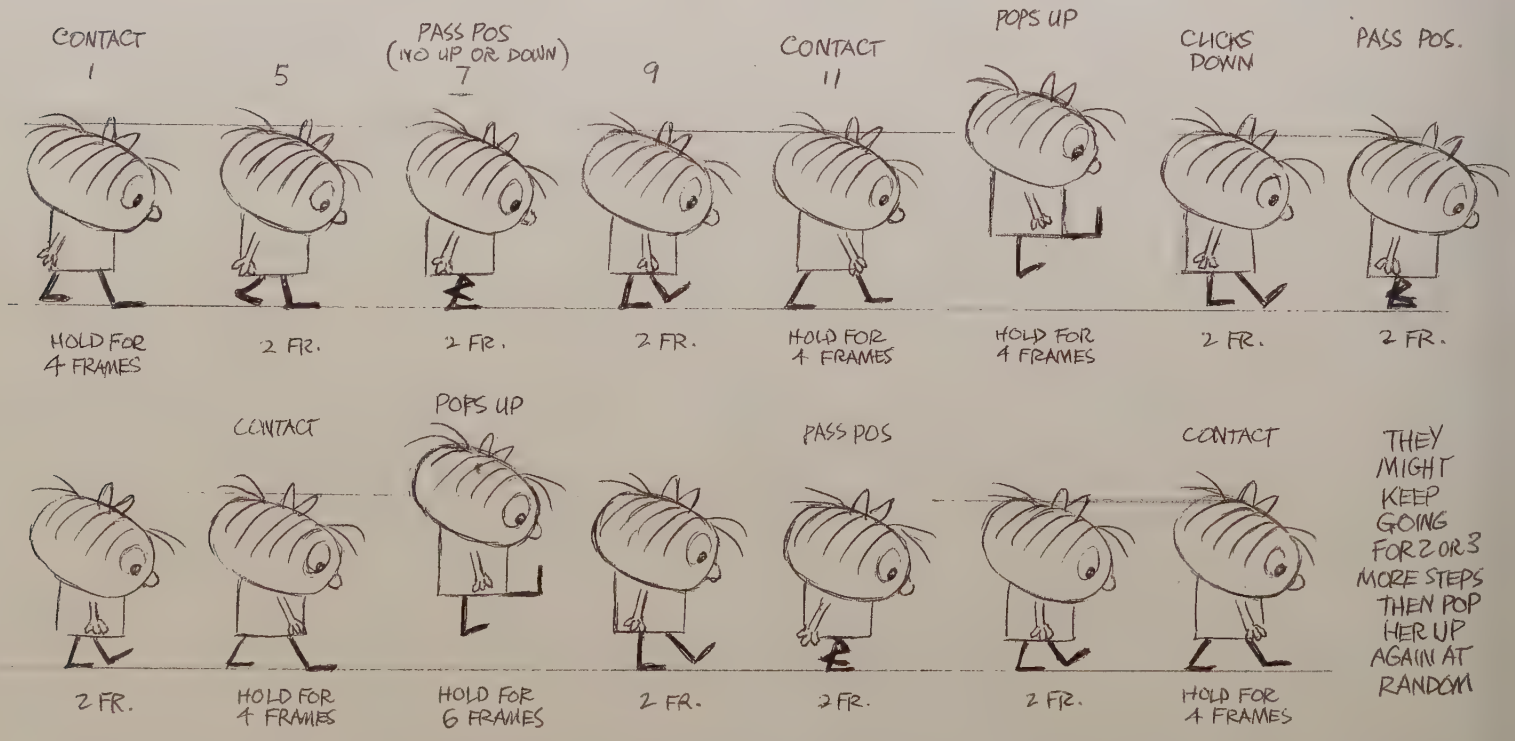


HERE'S A FORMULA FOR A BOUNCY WALK - ON 8's



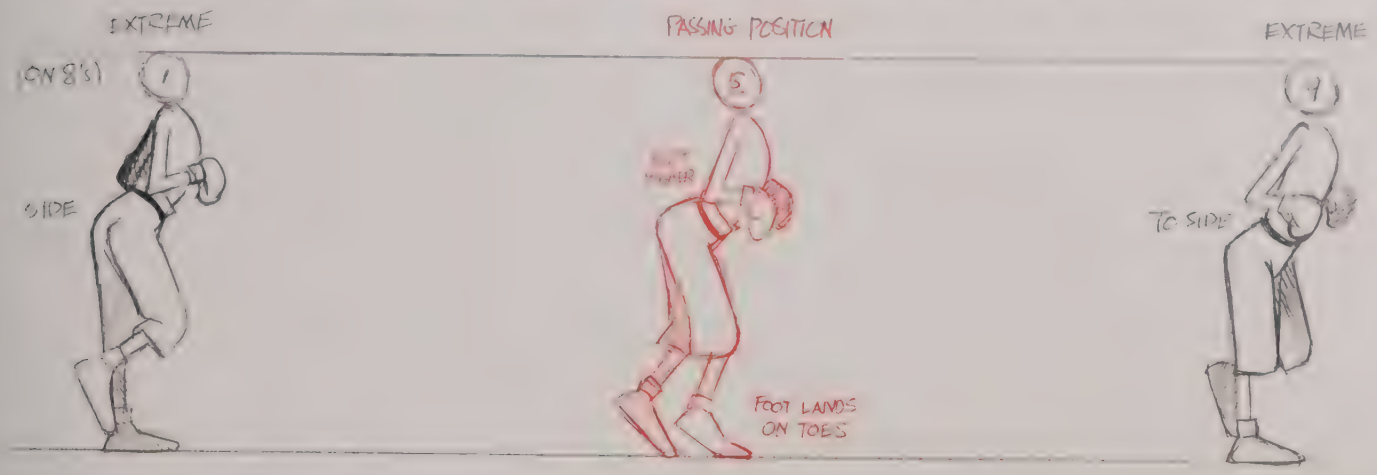
THE REST ARE STRAIGHT INBETWEENS

IN the 50's WHEN THEY SWUNG RIGHT AWAY FROM 'NATURALISM' THEY INVENTED SOME CHARMING WALKS - ESPECIALLY WITH CHILDREN. THEY OFTEN DID THIS - THE CHARACTER WOULD TAKE A STEP - THEN POP UP IN THE AIR FOR 4 TO 6 FRAMES OR SO, THEN CLICK DOWN AGAIN and TAKE ANOTHER STEP.



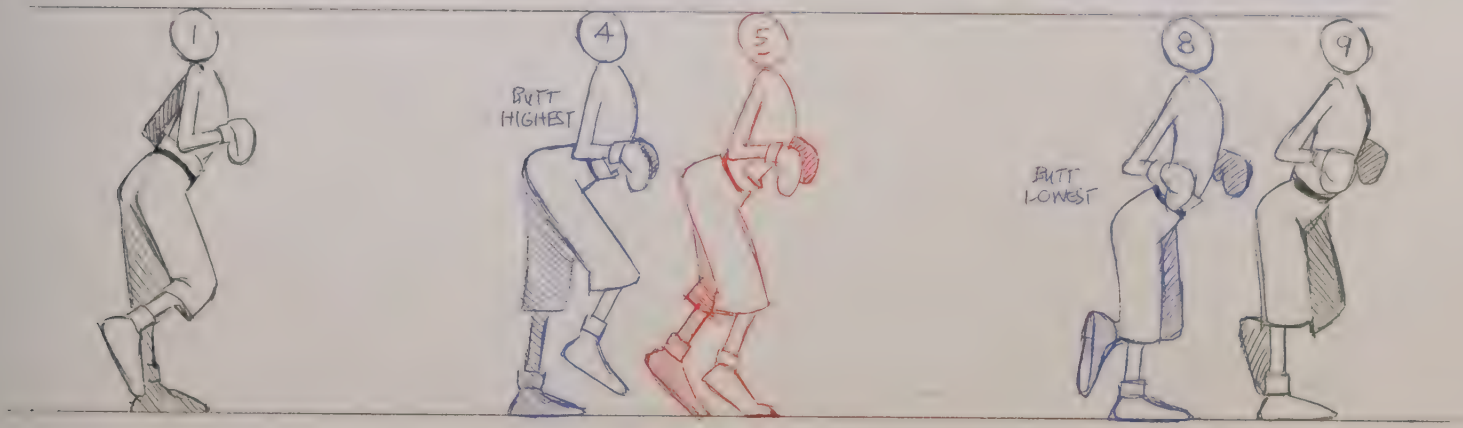
THE CHARM OF THIS IS IT'S 'STYLISED STIFFNESS'. INVENTIVE THOUGH IT IS, IT'S HARD TO EXTEND ON THIS APPROACH. IF WE DON'T STRETCH AND OVERLAP AND DELAY PARTS, THINGS JUST LOOK LIKE A PIECE OF PASTEBOARD OR A PAPER CUT-OUT MOVING AROUND.

HERE'S A BOXER'S WALK WITH the HEAD FLOATING LEVEL and the BUTT and PELVIS ACTIVELY MOVING UP and DOWN and FROM SIDE TO SIDE AS the MAIN FEATURE. The BUTT ACTION GIVES IT the WEIGHT. BUT JUST TO COMPLICATE THINGS WE'VE MADE the EXTREMES WITH WHAT WOULD NORMALLY BE OUR PASSING POSITION — and the 'CONTACT' IS NOW the PASSING POSITION. OF COURSE THERE ARE NO RULES. WE CAN BUILD FROM ANY POINT.

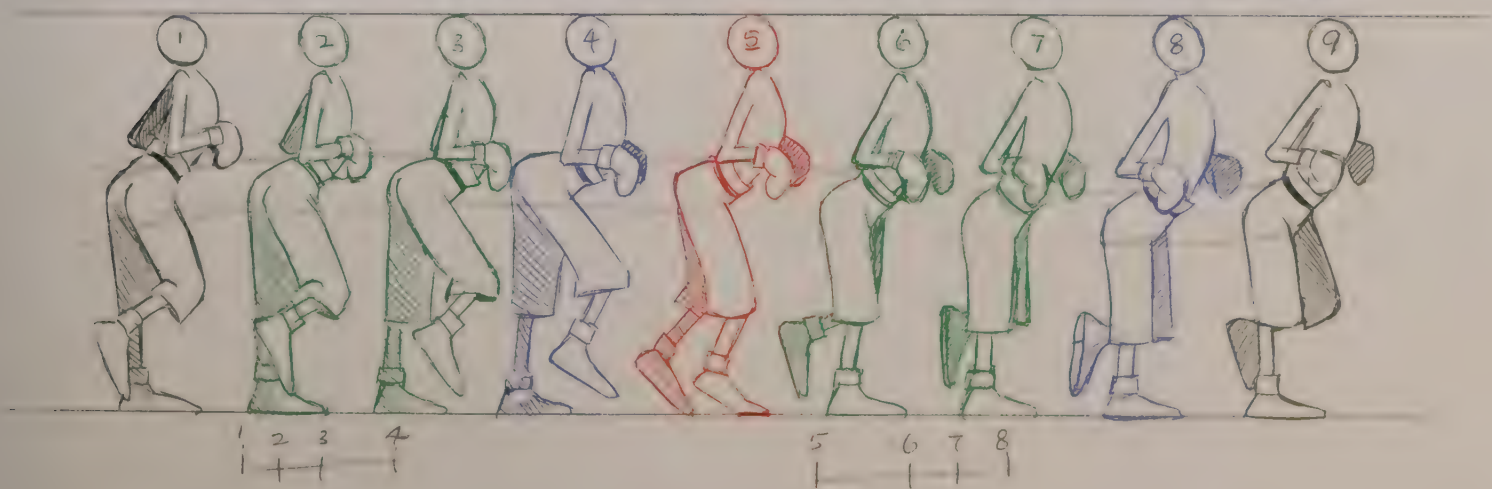


NOW WE MAKE ANOTHER EXTREME HERE WITH THE BUTT AT ITS HIGHEST.

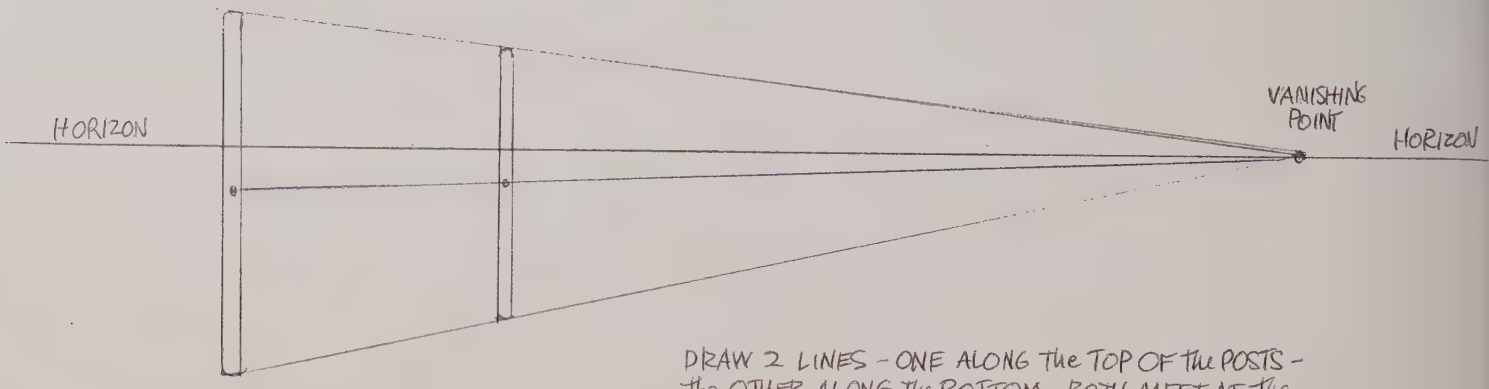
THEN WE MAKE ANOTHER EXTREME HERE WITH THE BUTT AT ITS LOWEST AND THE ARMS AT THEIR WIDEST.



NOW THAT WE HAVE the HIGHS and LOWS WE JOIN IT ALL UP and EFFICIENTLY GET the RESULT WE WANT.

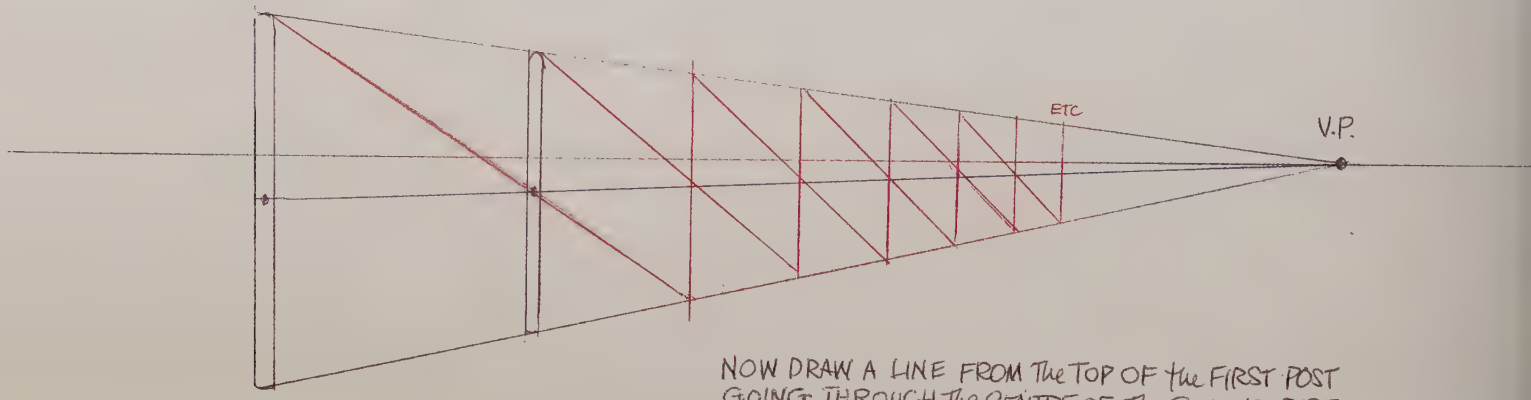


HERE'S A TECHNICAL AID FOR PLANNING A WALK IN PERSPECTIVE (IF WE WANT TO BE TECHNICAL ABOUT IT)



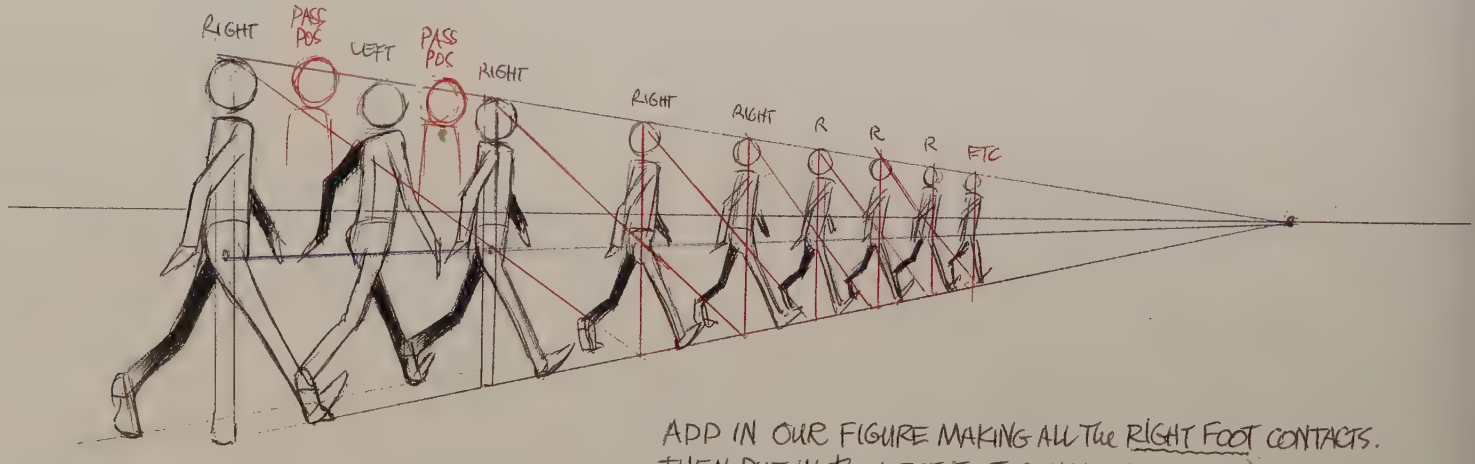
DRAW 2 LINES - ONE ALONG THE TOP OF THE POSTS - THE OTHER ALONG THE BOTTOM. BOTH MEET AT THE VANISHING POINT.

THEN DRAW ANOTHER LINE (BLUE) HALF-WAY BETWEEN



NOW DRAW A LINE FROM THE TOP OF THE FIRST POST GOING THROUGH THE CENTRE OF THE SECOND POST TO THE LOWER LINE.

NOW WE KNOW WHERE TO PUT THE THIRD POST — AND ALL THE REST.



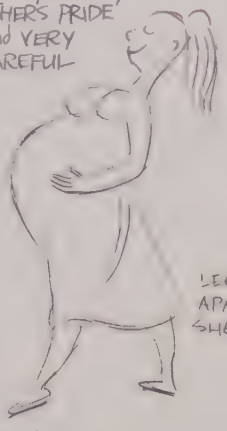
APP IN OUR FIGURE MAKING ALL THE RIGHT FOOT CONTACTS.
THEN PUT IN THE LEFT FOOT CONTACTS.
THEN ADD PASSING POSITIONS etc. THE USUAL ROUTINE...

HAVING GONE THROUGH ALL THIS WALK BUILDING and FORMULAS etc WE END UP AT the MAIN ISSUE = NO TWO CHARACTERS WALK the SAME. ALL WE CAN DO IS GENERALISE

A SPRITELY GIRL WALKS LIKE THIS.

AND AN OLDER WOMAN MAYBE LIKE THIS -

IF PREGNANT, LIKE THIS - 'MOTHER'S PRIDE' and VERY CAREFUL



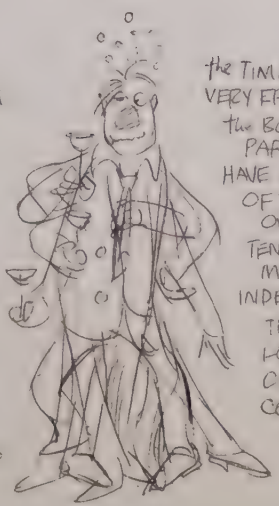
LEGS APART SLIGHTLY

A FAT MAN LEANS BACK SIMILARLY GLIDES DELICATELY LIKE A DANCER.

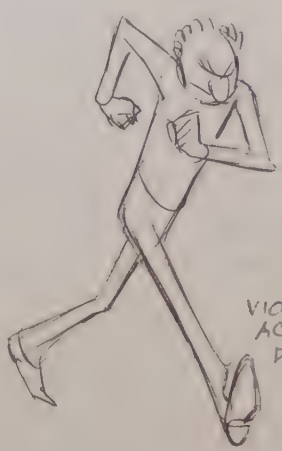
BECAUSE OF the FAT ON INSIDE OF the LEGS - HAS TO KEEP LEGS APART

SHE'S BALANCING the WEIGHT - SO'S HE. THE WEIGHT HAS TO BALANCE - EXCEPT FOR the BRIEF INSTANT WHEN WE STOP OURSELVES FALLING OVER - WE REGAIN OUR BALANCE.

A DRUNK HAS A PROBLEM KEEPING IN BALANCE - the HEAD IS USUALLY STATIONARY IT'S TRYING TO CONVINCE US IT ISN'T DRUNK. NEVER STANDS STILL - ALWAYS MOVING A LITTLE BIT.



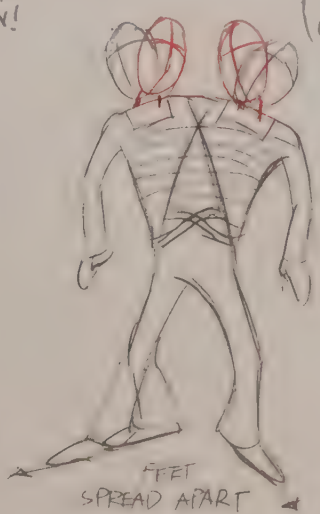
the TIMING IS VERY ERRATIC the BODY PARTS HAVE LIVES OF THEIR OWN and TEND TO MOVE INDEPENDENTLY. THEY'VE LOST the CENTRAL CONTROL.



ANGRY WALK - ALWAYS HIT FOOT THROUGH and DOWN FAST!

VIOLENT ACCENT DOWN!

SAILORS WALK WHOLE BODY ROCKS SIDE TO SIDE - (NICE TO DELAY HEAD)



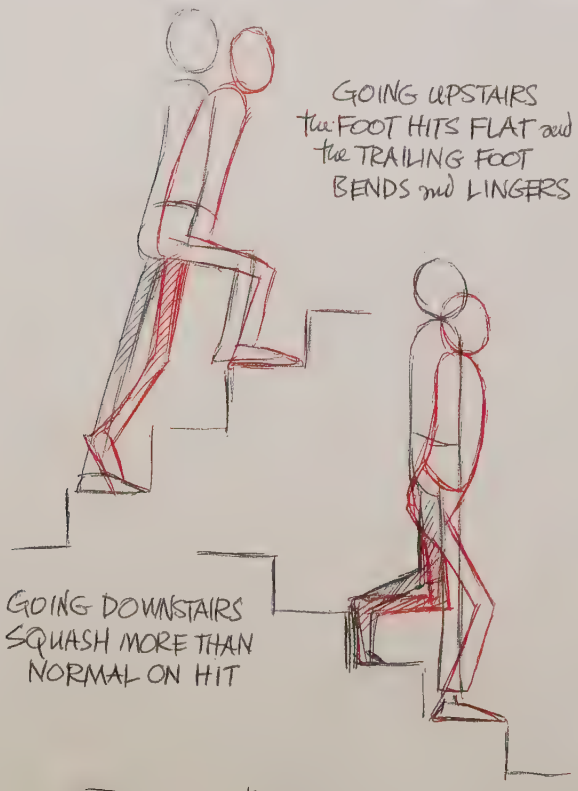
FEET SPREAD APART

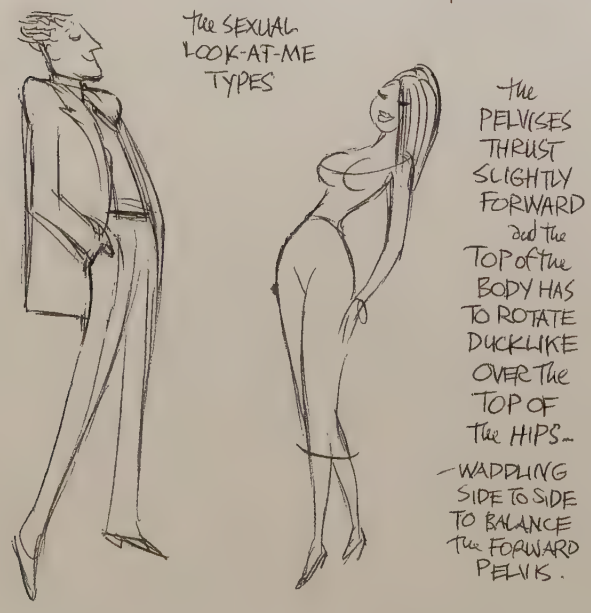
CHILDRENS WALK -

OVEREXAGGERATED FOOT ACTION - LIFT LEGS HIGHER THAN ADULTS

BABIES ARE CONSTANTLY OFF BALANCE

TIMING IS SO IMPORTANT IN WALKS
KEN HARRIS SAID, "BASE WALKS ON 12's -
(AS DID MILT KAHL) THEN EVERYTHING IS JUST
SO MUCH FASTER OR IS
SO MUCH SLOWER THAN 12."


GOING UPSTAIRS
the FOOT HITS FLAT and the TRAILING FOOT BENDS and LINGERS
GOING DOWNSTAIRS SQUASH MORE THAN NORMAL ON HIT


the SEXUAL LOOK-AT-ME TYPES
the PELVISES THRUST SLIGHTLY FORWARD and the TOP of the BODY HAS TO ROTATE DUCKLIKE OVER the TOP OF the HIPS.
- WADDLING SIDE TO SIDE TO BALANCE the FORWARD PELVIS.

AGAIN, IT'S NOT JUST HOW THEY LOOK -
ITS HOW IS the PERSON FEELING?

SAD
LONELY
HAPPY
THOUGHTFUL
DRUNK
SPRIGHTLY
OLD
YOUNG
ADDLED
SURPRISED
HOPEFUL
CONFIDENT
EMPATHETIC
CONCEITED
NERVOUS
ILL
ANGRY
LAME
INHIBITED
MILITARISTIC
DEPRESSED
JOYOUS
SHY?

TAKE A DRUNK FOR EXAMPLE -
THERE ARE SO MANY DIFFERENT KINDS -

the SILLY DRUNK
the LASCIVIOUS DRUNK
the SELF-PITYING DRUNK
the EXPANSIVE, HAPPY DRUNK
the OUT-OF-CONTROL ATHLETIC DRUNK
the OVERLY GRACIOUS POLITE DRUNK
the VERY DIGNIFIED DRUNK
the VICAR (I SAW A VICAR WALK INTO A WALL)
the INHIBITED SOCIETY MATRON
the FIGHTING DRUNK
the SENTIMENTALIST
the FIRST TIME DRUNK
etc. etc.

TO SUM UP:

WAYS TO GET VITALITY IN A WALK

The RECIPE

1 LEAN the BODY

2 USE STRAIGHT LEGS ON CONTACTS and PUSH OFF POSITIONS (GOING FROM STRAIGHT TO BENT OR BENT TO STRAIGHT)

3 TWIST the BODY — TILT the SHOULDERS and HIPS
HAVE the SHOULDERS OPPOSE the HIPS
SWIVEL the HIPS

4 FLOP the KNEE IN OR OUT

5 TILT the BELT LINE FAVOURING the LEG THAT'S LOWEST

6 FLOP the FEET

7 DELAY the FEET AND TOE LEAVING the GROUND UNTIL the VERY LAST INSTANT

8 TIP The HEAD OR MAKE IT GO BACK and FORTH

9 DELAY PARTS DON'T HAVE EVERYTHING WORKING TOGETHER AT the SAME TIME.

10 USE COUNTERACTION - FAT, BUTTOCKS, BREASTS, DELAYED CLOTHES, PANT LEGS, HAIR etc.

11 BREAK the JOINTS

12 MORE UPS and DOWNS (FOR WEIGHT)

13 USE DIFFERENT TIMINGS ON LEGS VERSUS ARMS VERSUS HEAD VERSUS BODY Etc.

14 TWIST the FEET - TAKE THEM OFF the PARALLEL.

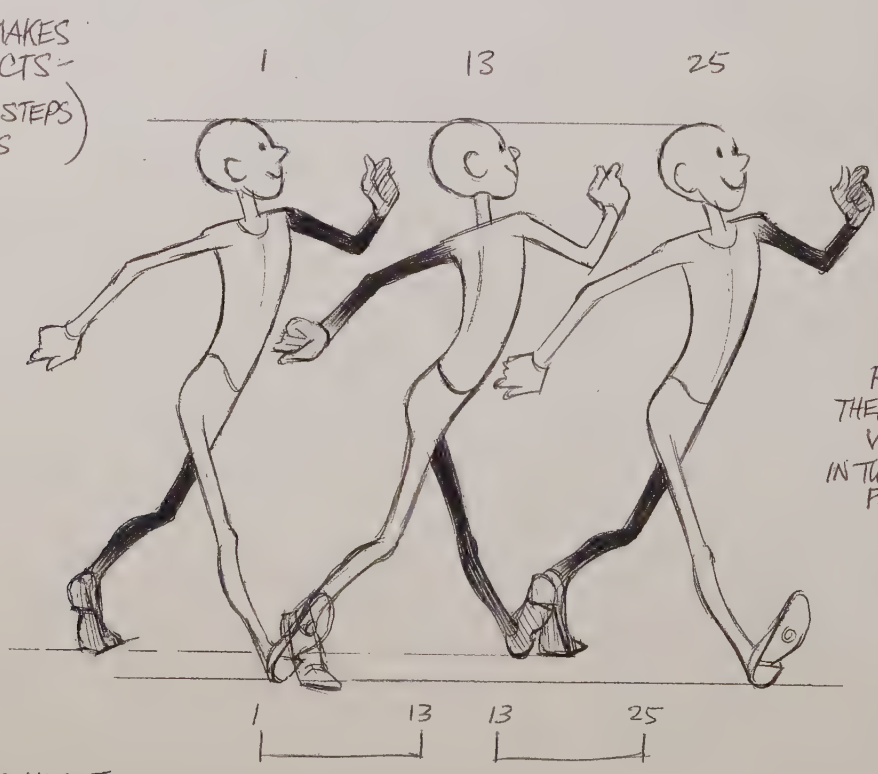
15 IF WE TAKE A NORMAL CLICHÉD ACTION and ALTER ONLY ONE TINY PART - WE GET SOMETHING DIFFERENT!

I WANT TO CLOSE OFF ON WALKS WITH THIS EXAMPLE OF A 'MILT KAHL TYPE' STRUT.

IN HIS CAREER HE ANIMATED MANY ENERGETIC SUPEROPTIMISTIC 'CAN DO' WALKS. I'VE ADAPTED and COMBINED SEVERAL OF THESE INTO A COMPOSITE ONE (USING A GENERIC FIGURE - NOT A CHARACTER) - A 'MAQUETTE' TO SHOW the WORK PROCESS OF A MASTER. IT'S CERTAINLY NOT TO PROVIDE YET ANOTHER FORMULA, BUT AS AN INSIGHT INTO HOW A MASTER WORKS and THINKS - HOW HE STARTS ON A SIMPLE BASIS WITH the CONTACTS and LOADS IT WITH DEPTH and INTEREST AS HE BUILDS.

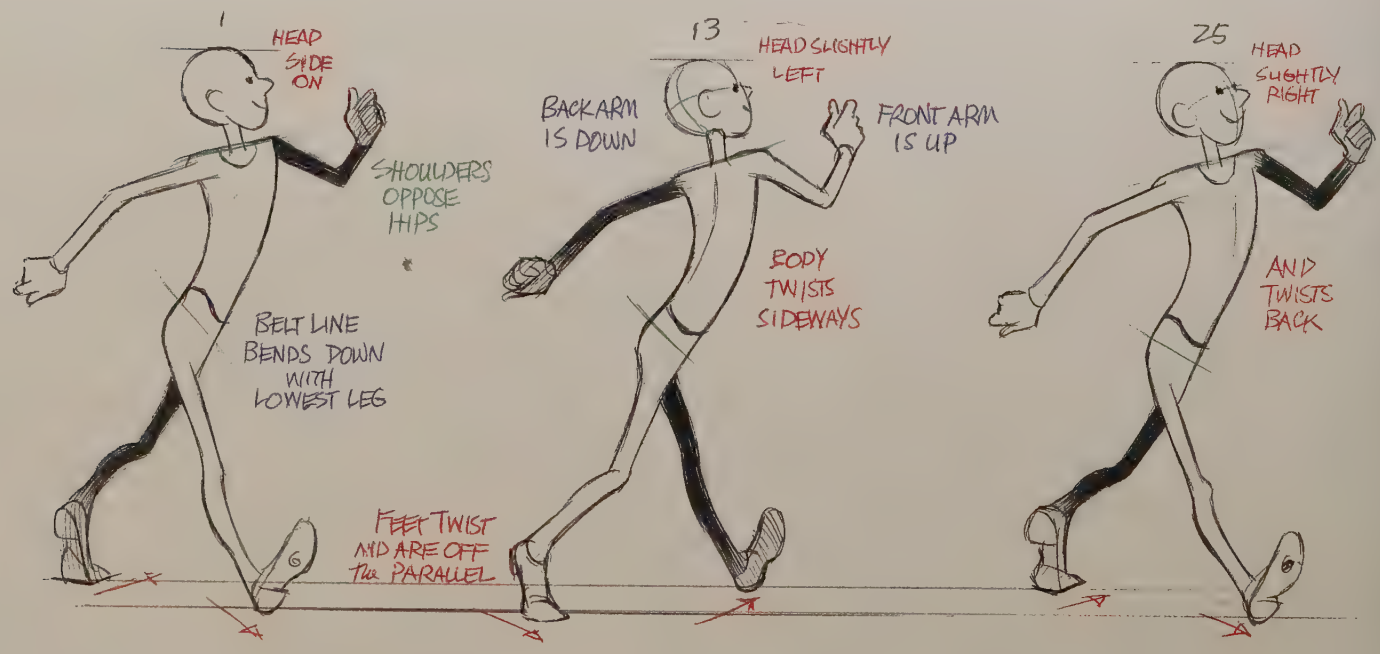
AND IT'S FULL OF the STUFF WE'VE BEEN TALKING ABOUT.

FIRST HE MAKES The CONTACTS - (WE'LL TAKE 2 STEPS - ON 12'S)

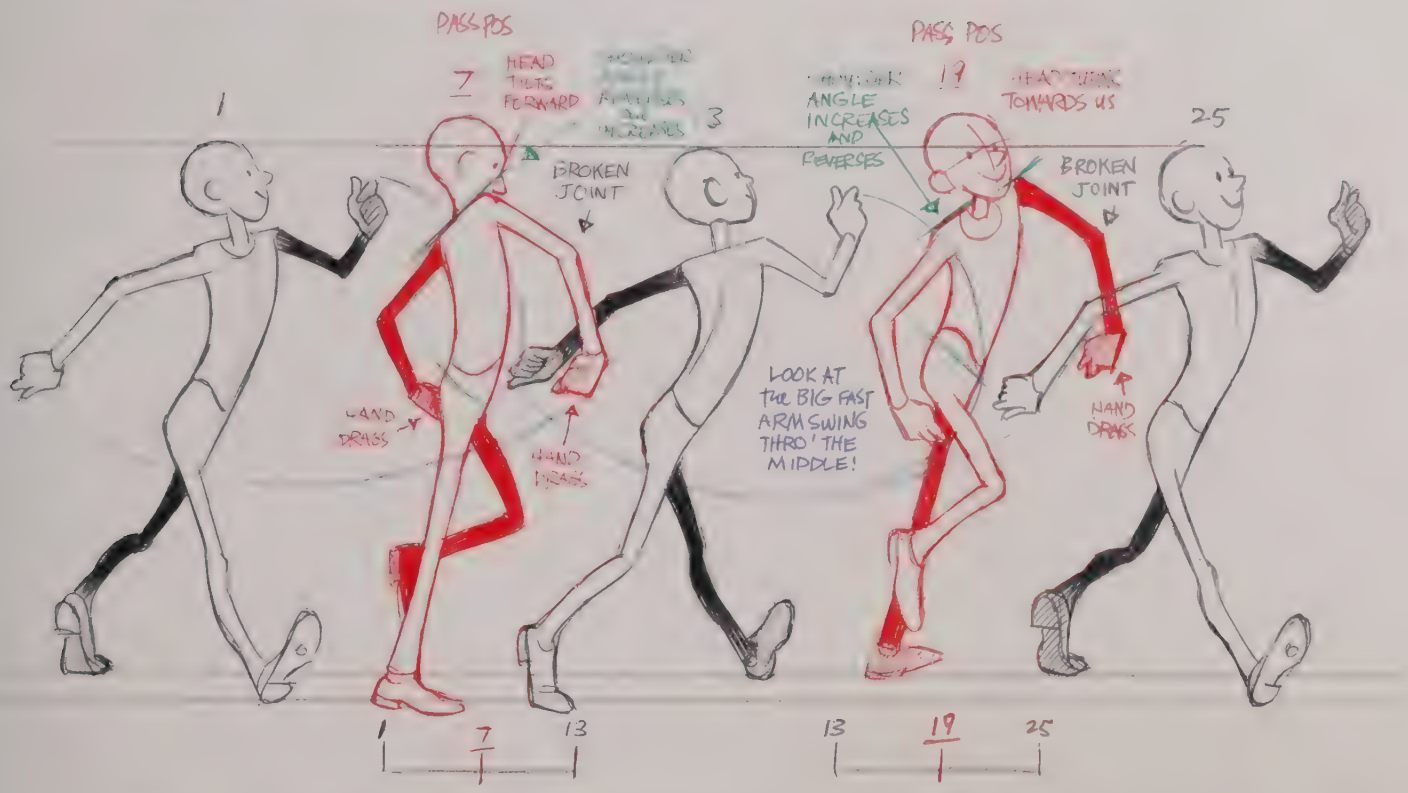


RIGHT AWAY THERE'S LOTS OF VITALITY IN the CONTACT POSITIONS

LET'S SPREAD IT OUT SO IT'S NICE and CLEAR -

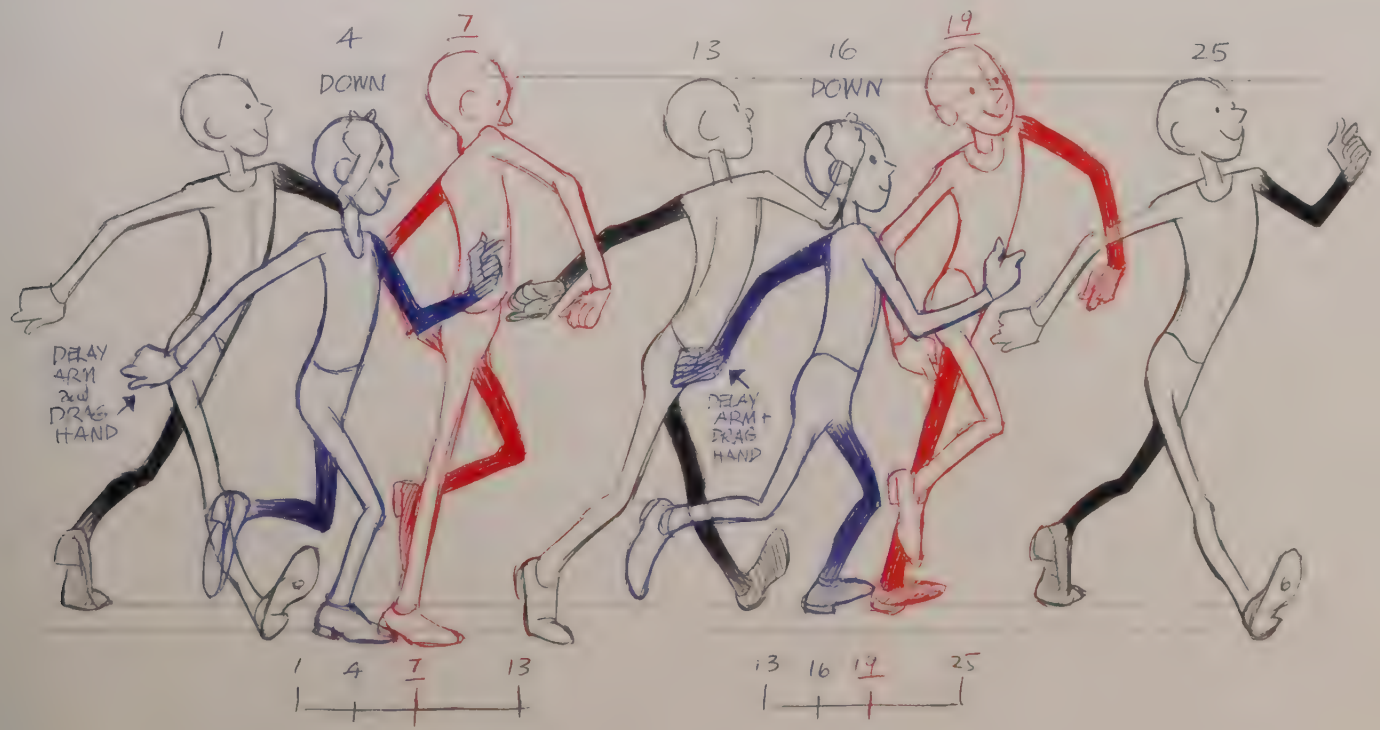


THE PASSING POSITIONS GO IN NEXT -

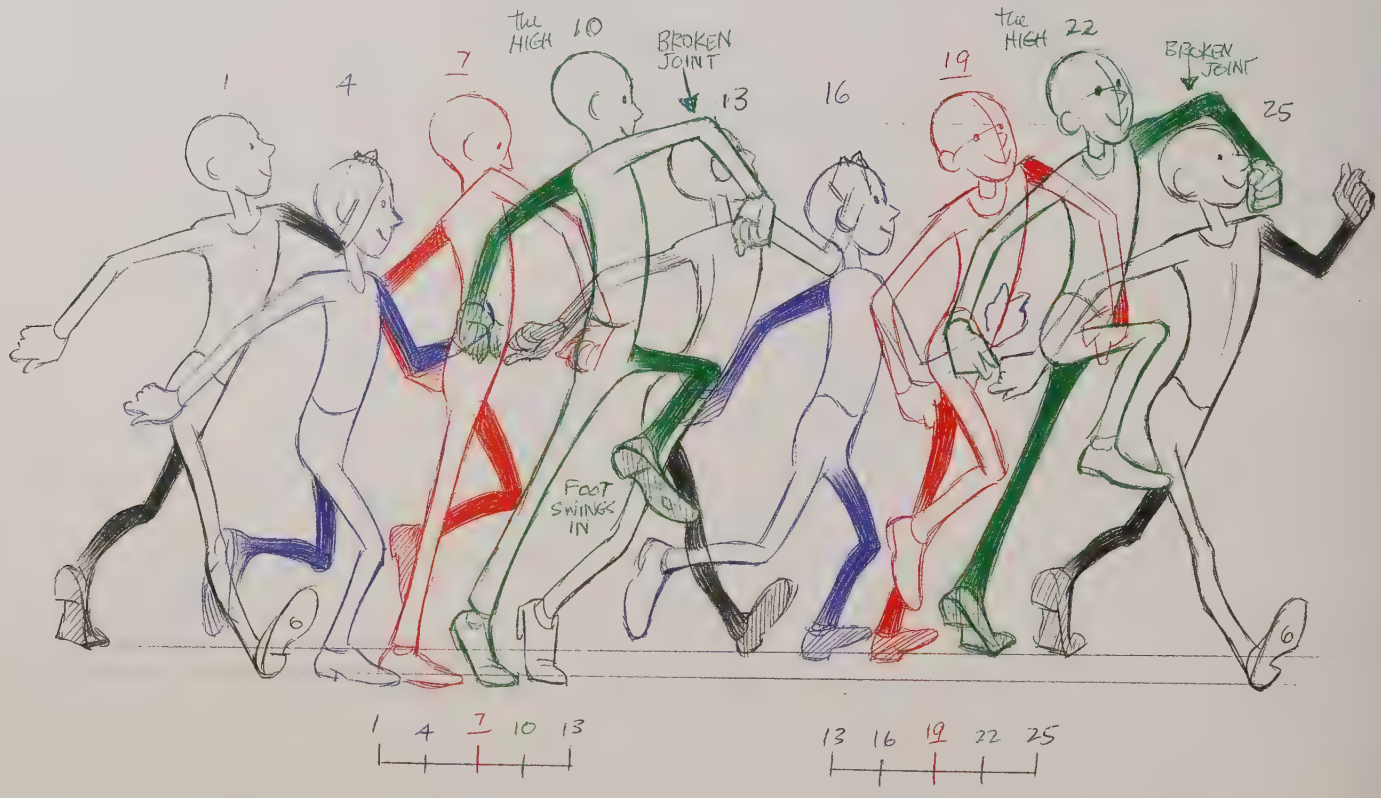


(THIS WOULD ALREADY MAKE A GREAT WALK AS IT IS - WITHOUT EVEN ADDING IN MORE HIGHS OR LOWS!)

NOW WE'LL ADD IN the LOWS - The DOWN POSITIONS.



NOW WE'LL PUT IN THE UP POSITIONS -



THEN ADD IN THE INBETWEENS (ON THIRDS)

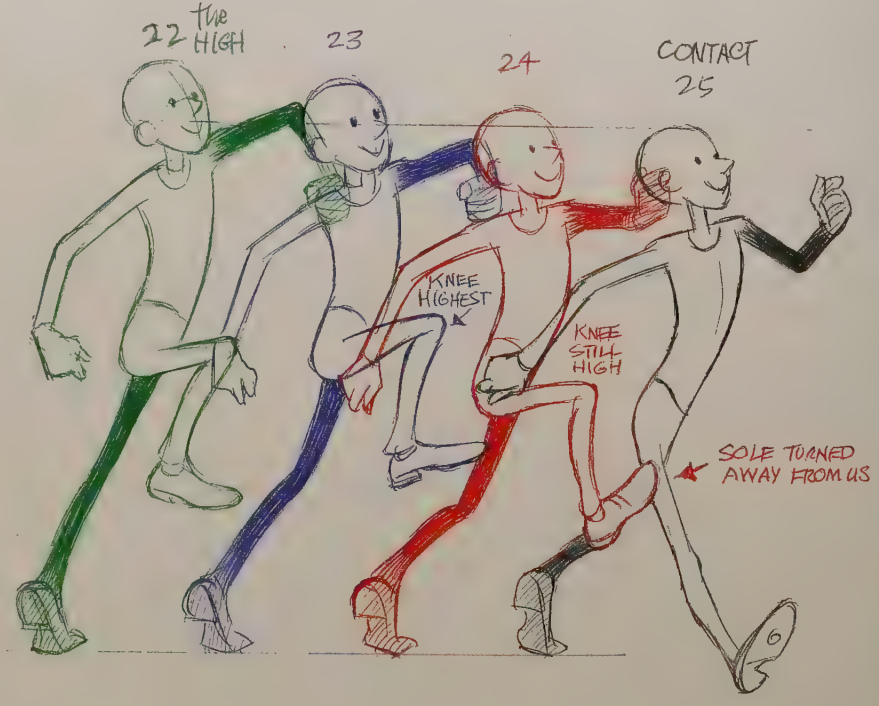
AND YOU CAN BET THEY'RE GOING TO BE THOUGHTFUL INBETWEENS - NOT MECHANICAL ONES.

EXAMPLE:

WITH THE LAST 2 INBTWNS THE RIGHT LEG IS NOT JUST INBETWEENED. THE REST IS.

NOW THE WHOLE THING IS PACKED WITH VITALITY and 'CHANGE!

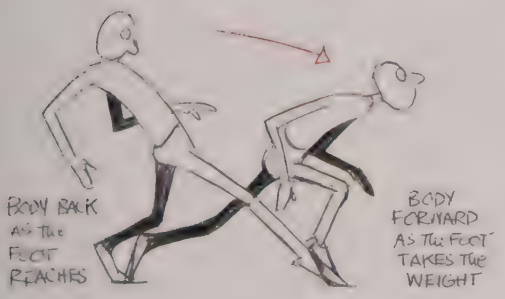
"SOPHISTICATED USE OF THE BASICS."



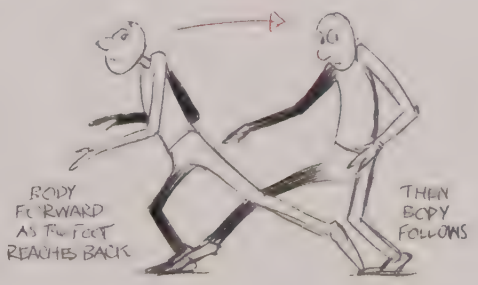
SNEAKS

THERE ARE 3 DEFINITE CATEGORIES OF SNEAKS:

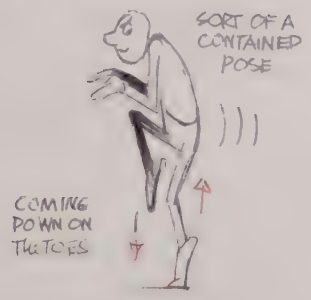
(1) The TRADITIONAL SNEAK (2) The BACKWARDS SNEAK (3) The TIP TOE SNEAK



AVERAGE VERSION 24 FRAMES for EACH STEP.
FAST VERSION 16 FRAMES PER STEP
SLOW VERSON 32 FRAMES FOR EACH STEP.



EXPRESSES FEAR OR MISCHIEF
- MORE OR LESS OPPOSITE
TO A FORWARDS SNEAK.



ON TOES and PLAYFUL-
SURE OF HIM/HERSELF
10 FRAMES 12, 13, 14 FRAMES.
WHATEVER WE WANT
REALLY FAST ONES ON 3's OR 4's

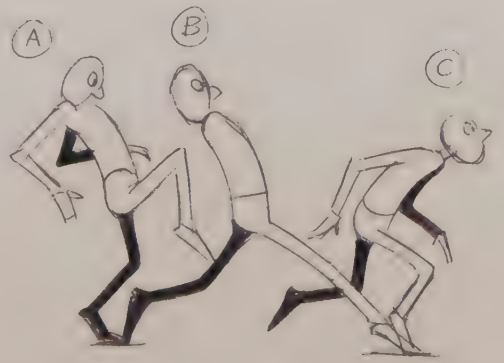
A TRADITIONAL SNEAK HAS A VERY INTERESTING CONSTRUCTION.

THE MAIN THINGS ARE -

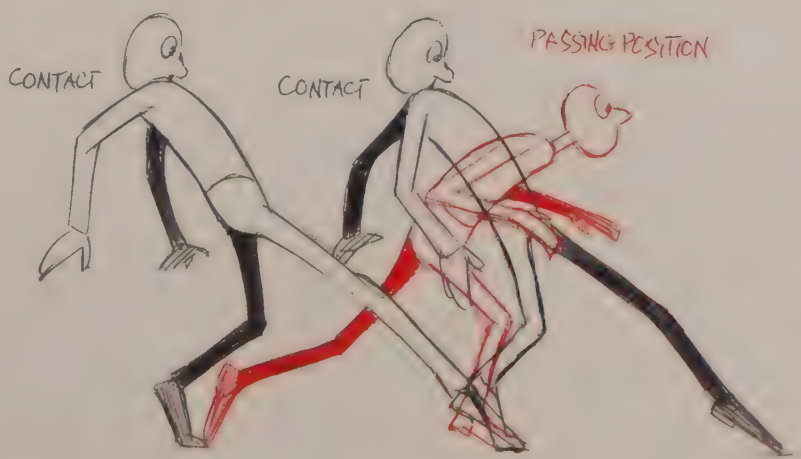
(A) The BODY GOES BACK and FORTH.
The BODY GOES BACK WHEN The FOOT GOES UP. The ARMS ARE USED FOR BALANCE.

(B) WHEN The FOOT REACHES and CONTACTS The GROUND, The BODY IS STILL BACK and the HEAD IS HELD BACK, DELAYED JUST A LITTLE BIT.

(C) AFTER The FOOT CONTACTS The GROUND The BODY FOLLOWS - GOING FORWARD AS The FOOT TAKES The WEIGHT.
NEXT The BODY WILL GO BACK (as (A)) AS The OTHER FOOT GOES FORWARD.

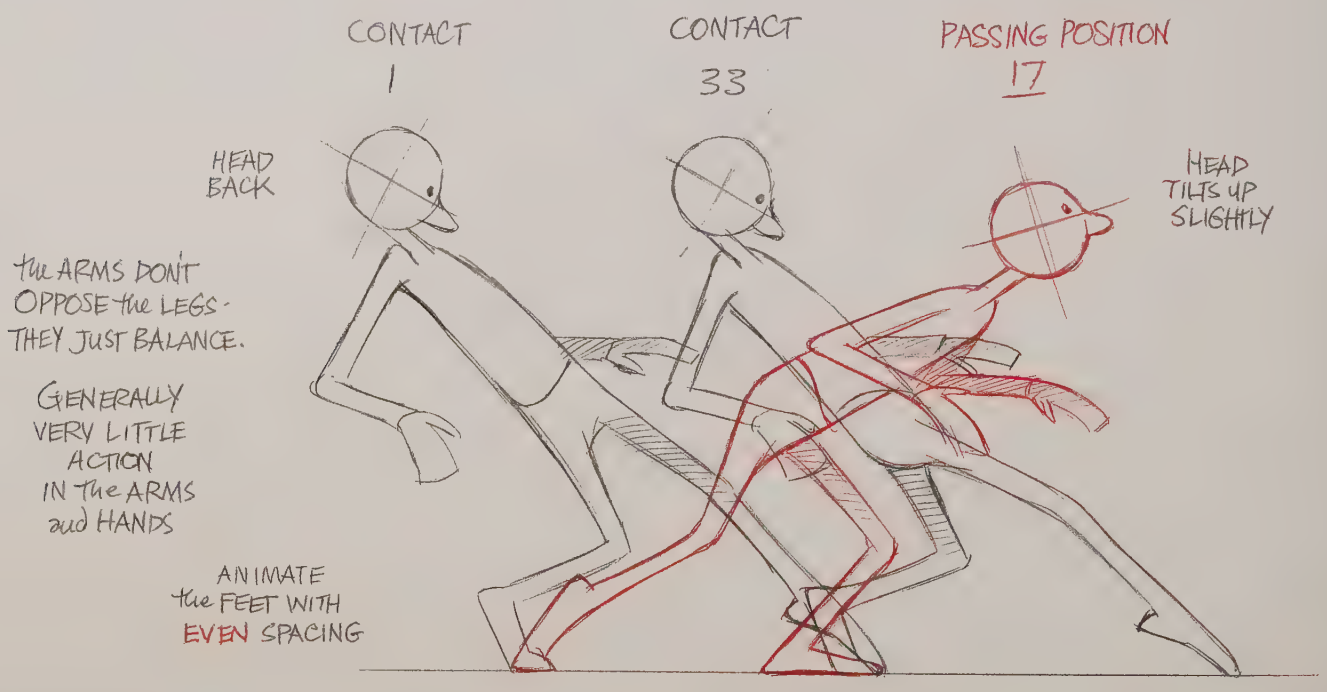


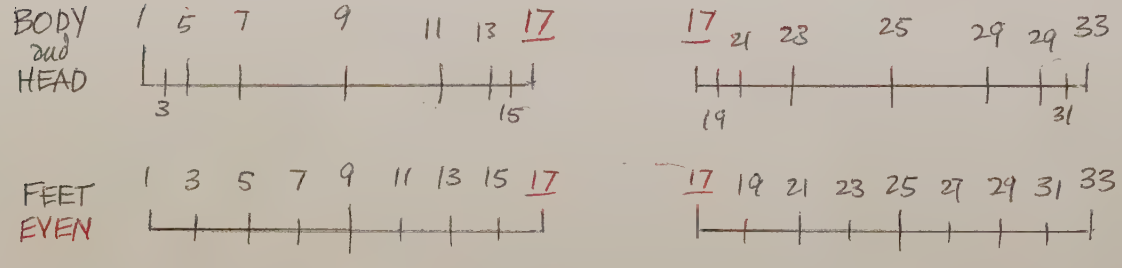
AS WITH A WALK THERE ARE
3 IMPORTANT DRAWINGS -
The 2 CONTACTS
AND A VERY INTERESTING
PASSING POSITION.



KEN HARRIS SHOWED US THIS FORMULA FOR A SLOW SNEAK:

IT TAKES 2 FEET = 32 FRAMES = 1⅓ SECONDS FOR EACH STEP.
ON TWO'S – (BUT OF COURSE IT'LL BE EVEN BETTER ADDING INBETWEENS ON ONES)





IT'S A GOOD EXAMPLE OF COUNTERACTION –
AS HE MOVES ALONG, the HEAD GOES FORWARD and the HANDS GO BACK.

THIS IS the BASIS. IT WILL WORK NICELY JUST INBETWEENING the 3 POSITIONS AS IS – and NOT ADDING ANY FANCY BITS OF INNER ACTION.

IF the HANDS WERE OPEN IT WOULD LOOK FRIGHTENED.

OF COURSE WE CAN ADD ANYTHING WE WANT WITHIN – BUT THIS DOES the JOB WITH JUST 3 DRAWINGS and the CHARTS.

WE COULD USE ARCS OR JUST STRAIGHT MECHANICAL INBETWEENS. IT'LL WORK WELL.

BUT OF COURSE, WE COULD DELAY PARTS -

CROSSOVER HEAD
BACK and LOOKING DOWN

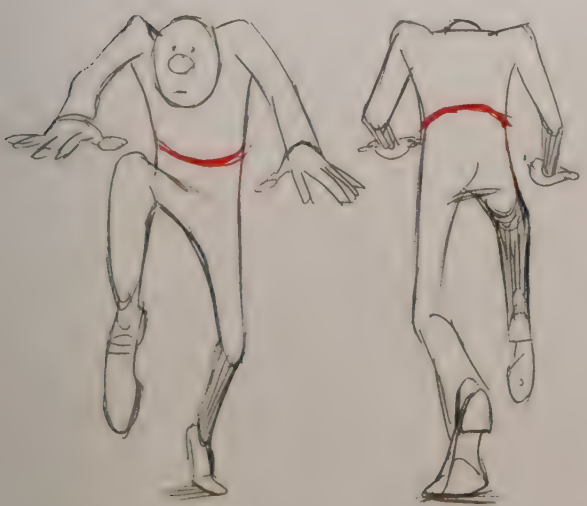
HEAD IS STILL GOING BACK ON START POSITION

HEAD CONTINUES FORWARD

COULD STAY FULLY ON the TOES ALL the TIME TO ENHANCE the FEELING OF CAUTION -

TRY IT ON FRONT VIEW -

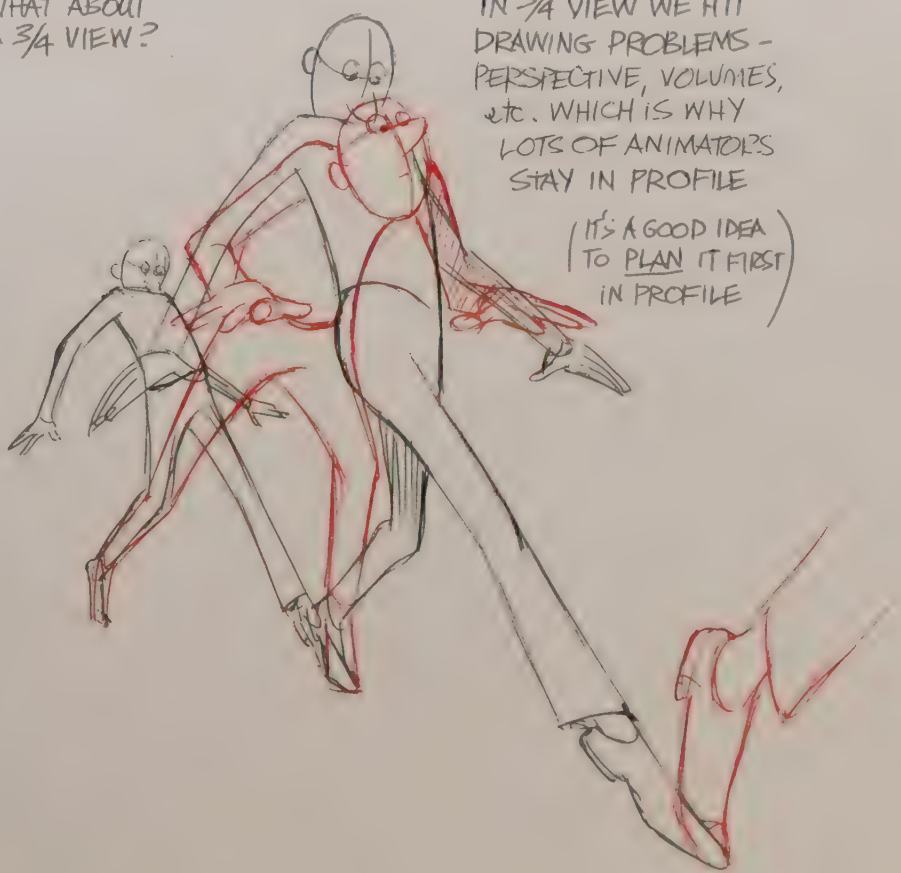
WAISTLINE SHOWS WHAT'S HAPPENING -



WHAT ABOUT A 3/4 VIEW?

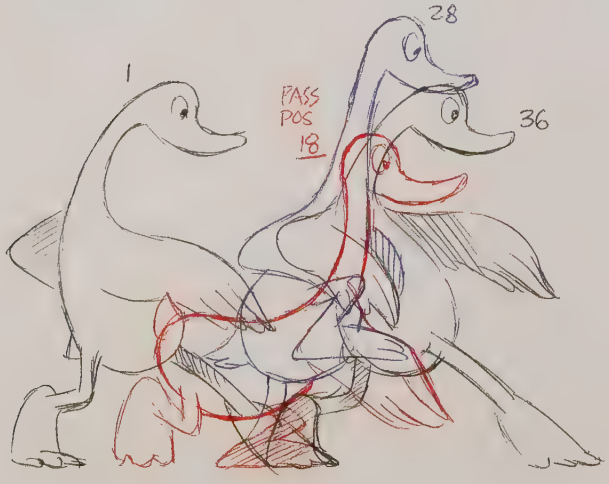
IN 3/4 VIEW WE HIT DRAWING PROBLEMS - PERSPECTIVE, VOLUMES, etc. WHICH IS WHY LOTS OF ANIMATORS STAY IN PROFILE

(IT'S A GOOD IDEA TO PLAN IT FIRST IN PROFILE)



HERE'S AN ADAPTATION OF A BILL TYTLA SNEAK -

THERE ARE 4 PLANNING DRAWINGS. IT'S ON 36 FRAMES = 1½ SECONDS PER STEP.



FUNNY, SOON AS WE GIVE IT AN EYE, IT SOMEHOW CREATES PERSONALITY — BECOMES ENTERTAINING OR ATTRACTIVE and WE STOP PAYING ATTENTION TO the 'ANATOMY' OF WHAT'S HAPPENING.

CHARLIE CHAPLIN SAYS 'PERSONALITY TRANSCENDS EVERYTHING ELSE.'

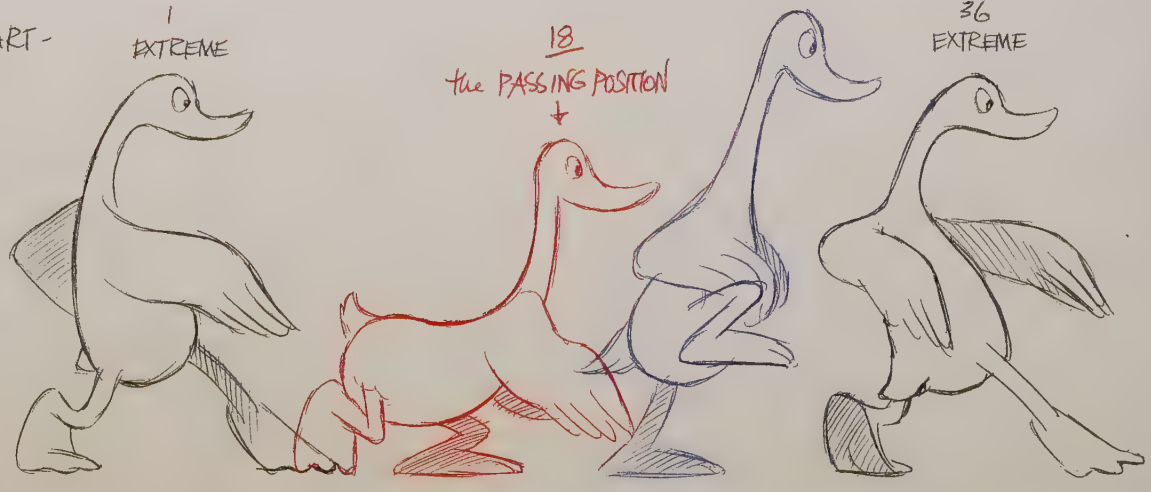
28
the NEXT BREAKDOWN OR PASSING POSITION

SPREAD APART -

1
EXTREME

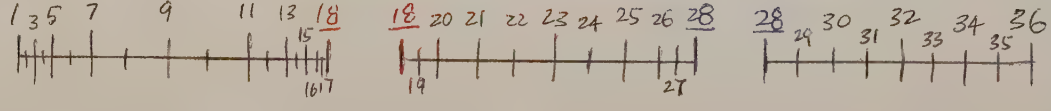
18
the PASSING POSITION

36
EXTREME



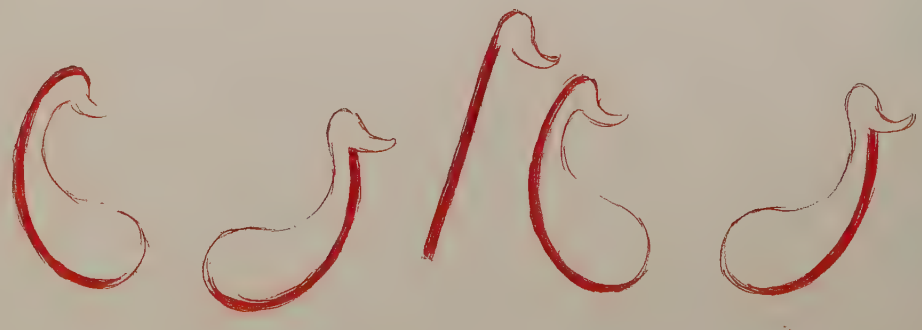
AS IN A WALK - the ARMS - WINGS DO COUNTER the FEET HERE

THESE ARE the NUMBERS HE HAD ON the 4 DRAWINGS SO I'M MAKING A GUESS AT WHAT HIS CHARTS WERE -



AND/OR AS WITH KEN'S - the FEET COULD BE TREATED EVENLY

BUT LOOK HOW CLEVER THIS MAN IS! LOOK AT HIS CHANGES OF SHAPE! - the AMOUNT OF CHANGE! THIS IS WHAT HE'S REALLY DOING -



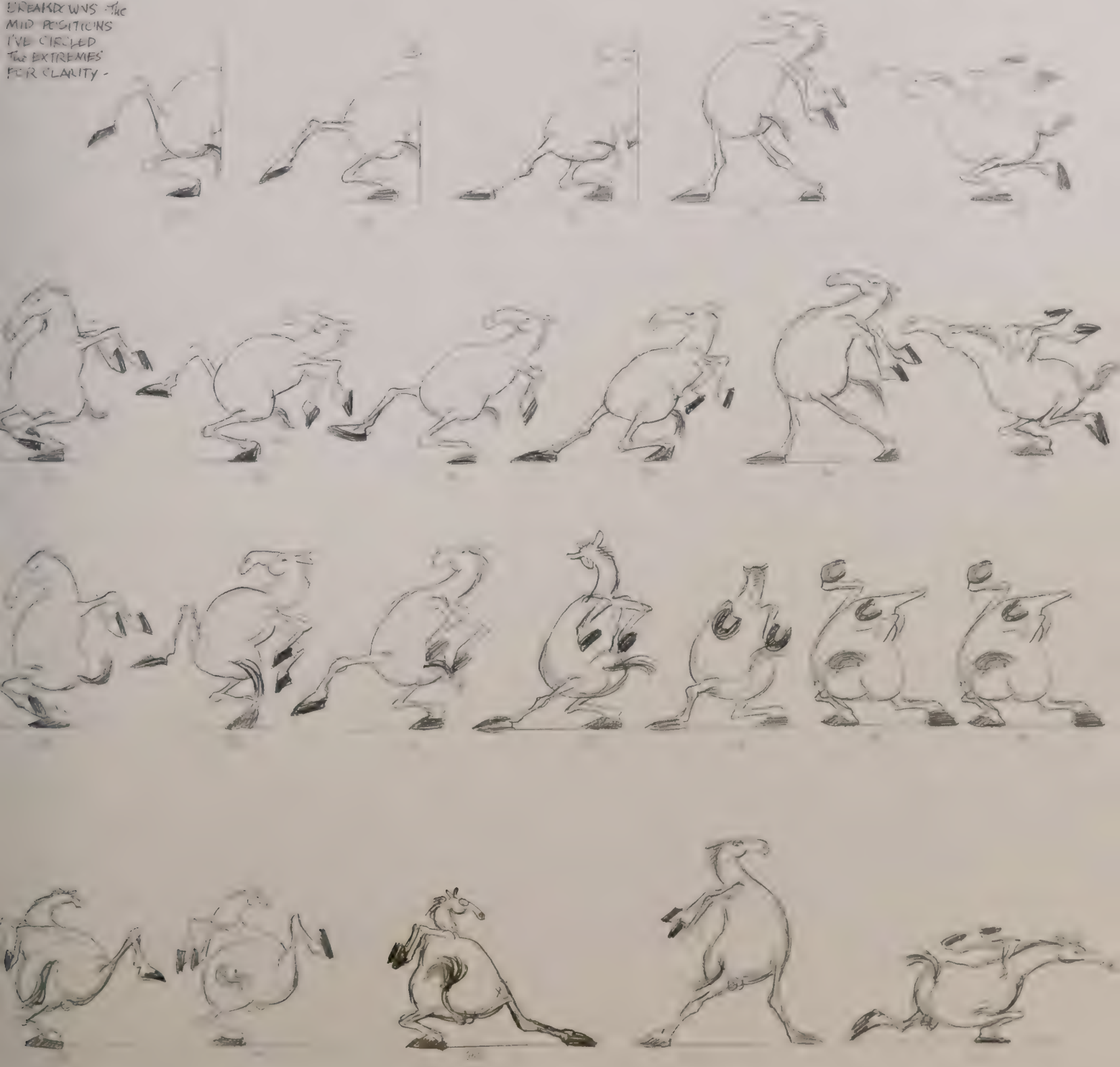
- GOING FROM CURVE TO OPPOSITE CURVE TO STRAIGHT TO CURVED TO OPPOSITE etc.

AFTER ART BABBITT FINISHED HIS FIRST MONTH OF INTENSIVE TRAINING AT MY LONDON STUDIO FOUR OF US SAT UP ALL NIGHT and ANIMATED A QUICK SATIRE FOR HIM OF HIS SEMINARS

I DID THIS HORSE SNEAK AS AN EXERCISE IN "OVER"-ANIMATION - WHICH CAME OUT KIND OF FUNNY – SHOWS HOW FAR WE CAN GO – SITTING RIGHT ON the BASICS. (ON TWO's)

SNEAKING ON 12's and 4's

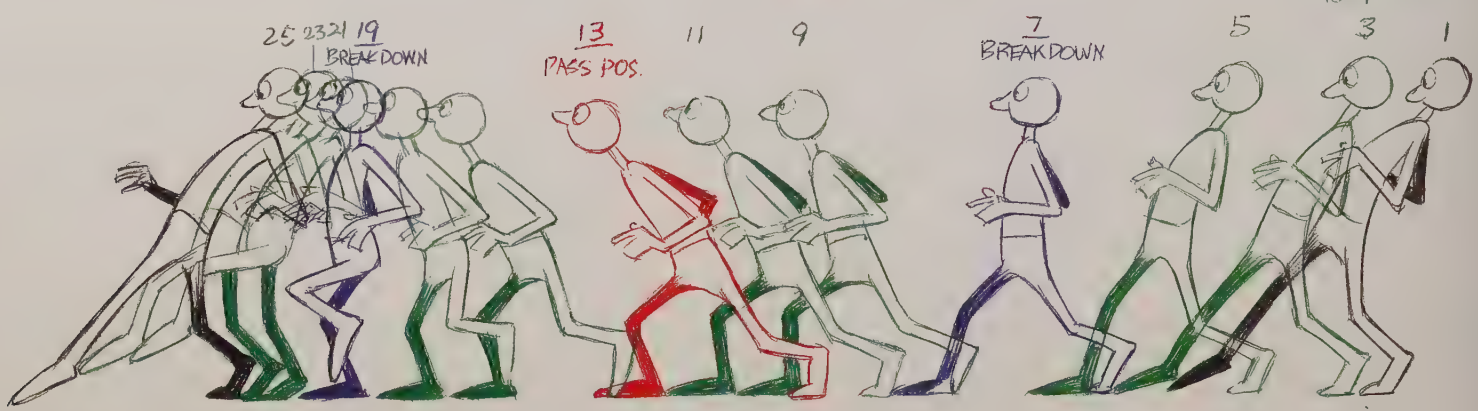
HERE ARE JUST the EXTREMES and the BREAKDOWNS the MID POSITIONS I'VE CIRCLED the EXTREMES FOR CLARITY -



HERE'S A MORE CONSERVATIVE SNEAK ON 24's - 1 SEC FOR EACH STEP (KEN HARRIS MADE THIS ONE) IT'S TYPICAL OF KEN - NOT A LOT OF FANCY STUFF BUT DOES THE JOB PERFECTLY.

AND SPREAD APART -

#3 HEAD AND BODY CLOSER TO #1



NOTE THE FOOT SWINGS FAST THROUGH THE MIDDLE AND PUTS DOWN GINGERLY

MOSTLY 1 5 7 9 13 (3 11)

AND MOSTLY 13 17 19 21 25 (15 23)

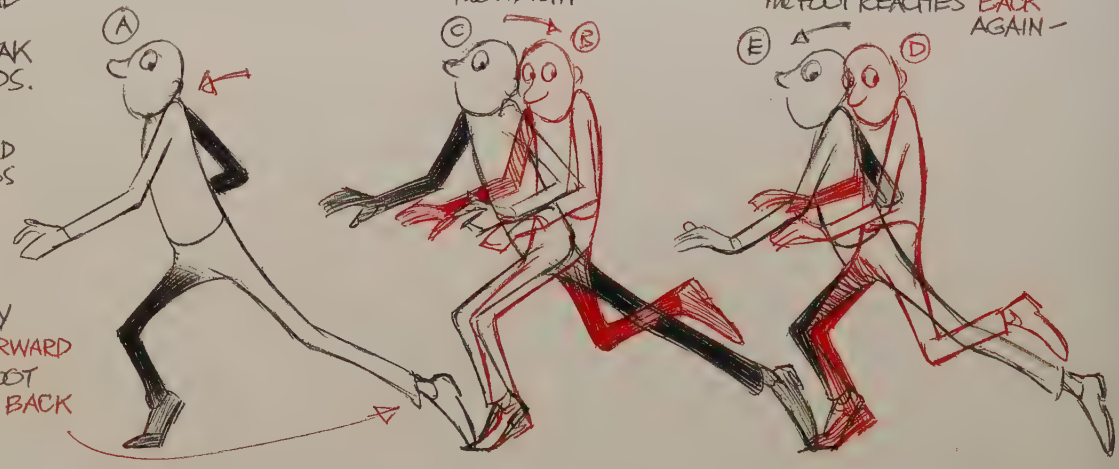
THE BIG MOVE THROUGH THE MIDDLE INDICATES THAT THIS SHOULD HAVE SINGLE INBETWEENS and BE ON ONES

BACKWARDS SNEAK

ROUGHLY the SAME PATTERN AS A FORWARDS SNEAK - BUT BACKWARDS.

THE ARMS COULD OPPOSE THE LEGS AS IN A WALK

THE BODY GOES FORWARD AS THE FOOT REACHES BACK

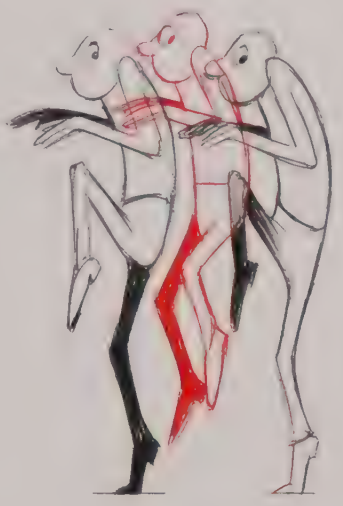


The TIP TOE SNEAK

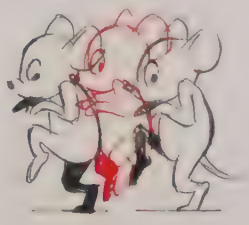
IT'S SOMETHING BETWEEN A WALK and A RUN and A SNEAK

The FEET WORK UP and DOWN LIKE PISTONS – HAS TO BE ON ONES.

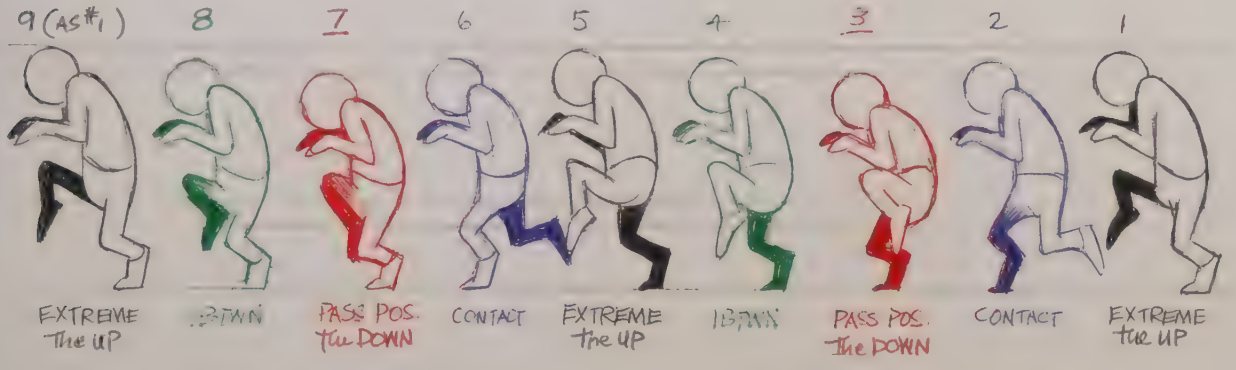
CAN BE AS QUICK AS 4's = 6 STEPS PER SEC. OR ON 6's, 8's 10's 12's, 14's, WHATEVER. BUT ITS MORE SUITABLE FOR FAST TIMING –



IT'S NOT MUCH OF A PROBLEM WITH A SMALL OR SHORT CREATURE WITH SHORT LEGS –



HERE'S The WELL-KNOWN FORMULA FOR The SHORT-LEGGED CREATURE (ON 4's)



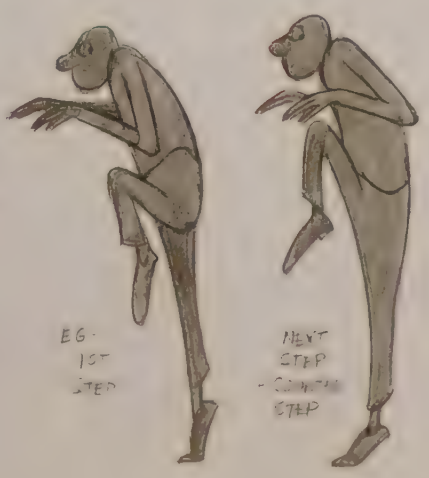
BUT WITH A TALLER FIGURE WITH LONG LEGS WE'VE GOT The FAMILIAR PROBLEM OF TOO MUCH ACTION IN TOO SHORT A SPACE OF TIME.

The FEET TEND TO 'FLICK' DOWN WITH The TOP LEG JUST LOOKING LIKE IT'S HANGING THERE –

SO, TO GET AROUND THIS WE TAKE A BIT LONGER FOR The ACTION.

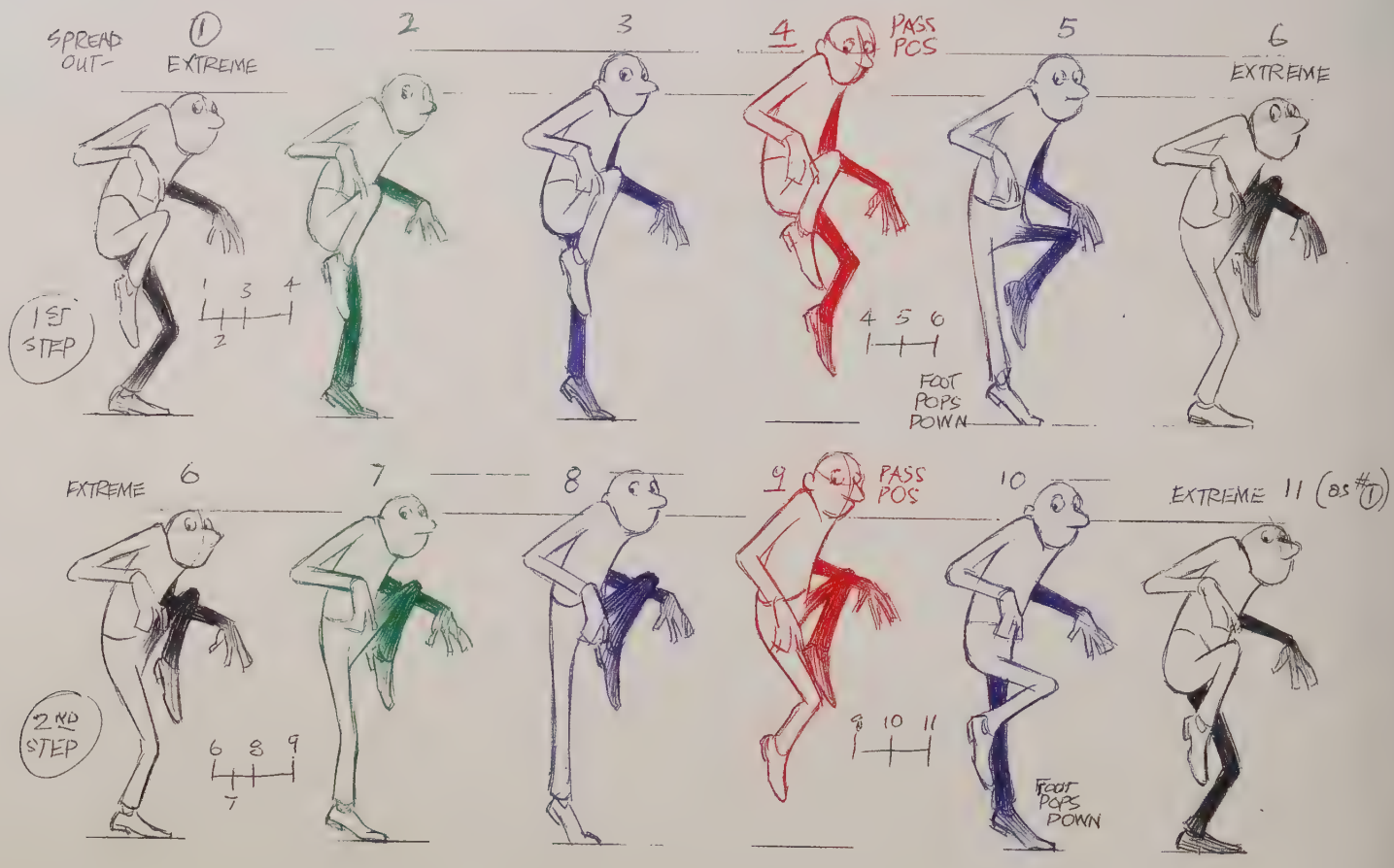
– PLUS WE CAN TWIST The PELVIS
– PLUS WE CAN VARY The CYCLE POSITIONS.

WE CAN CHANGE The SILHOUETTES SLIGHTLY ON ALL PHASES OF EACH STEP – LOWER The KNEE ETC.



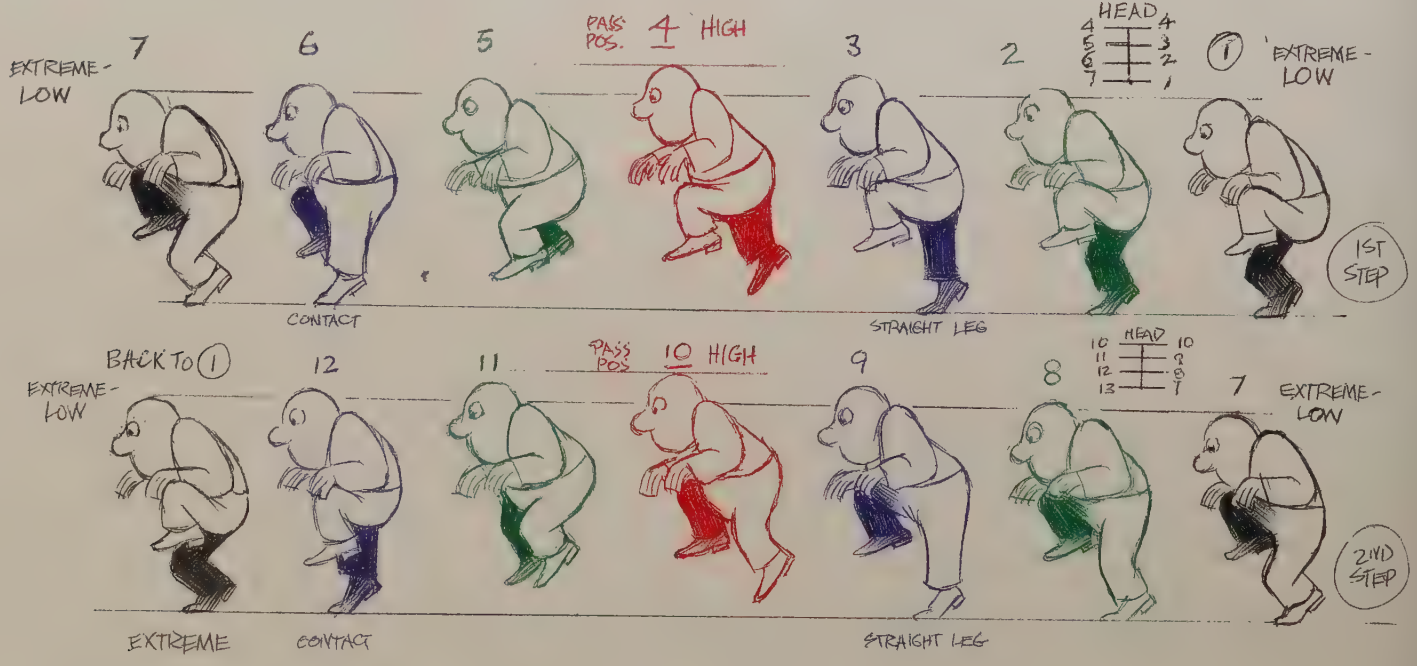
HERE'S ONE THAT WORKS - (ON 5's = 5 STEPS PER SEC.)

HE'S UP IN THE AIR FOR JUST ONE DRAWING

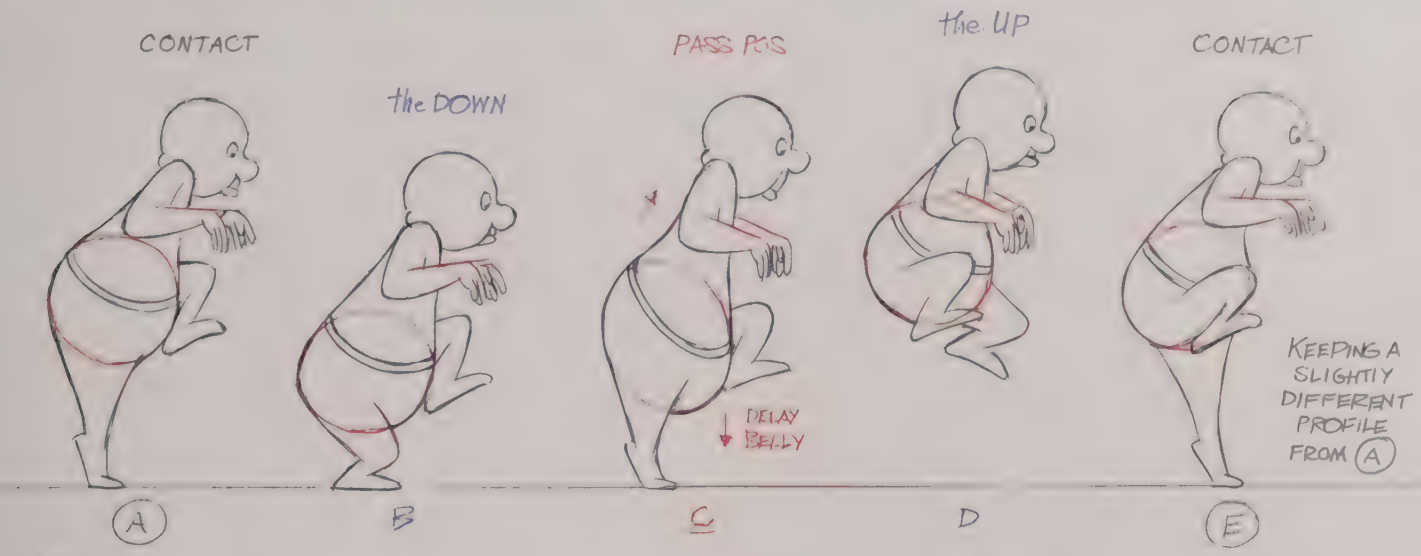


HERE'S ANOTHER VERSION THAT WORKS- (ON 6's = 4 STEPS PER SEC.)

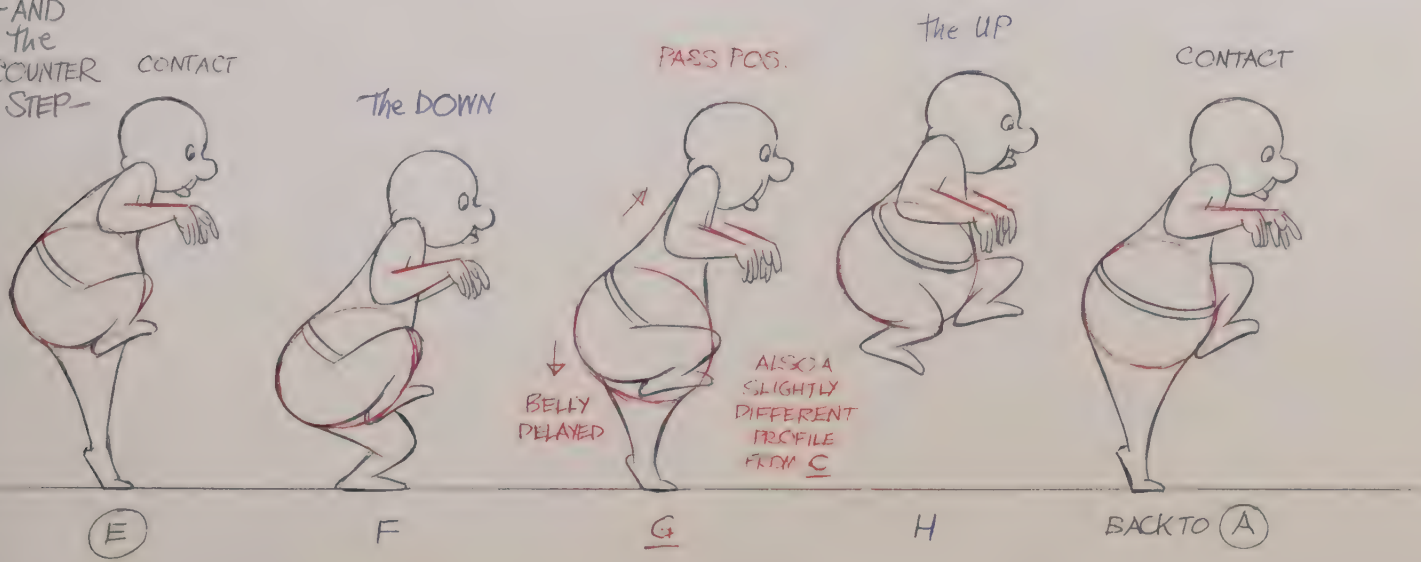
HE'S UP IN THE AIR FOR TWO DRAWINGS



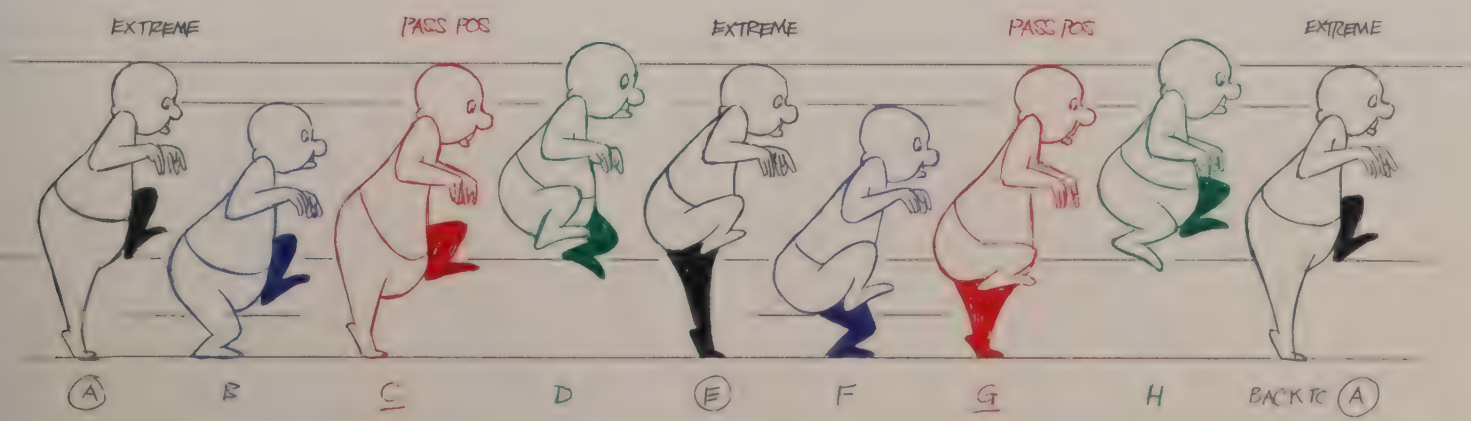
WE CAN GET SOME COUNTERACTION GOING ON A FAST SNEAK (THIS IS EXAGGERATED)



-AND the COUNTER STEP-



BOTH STEPS



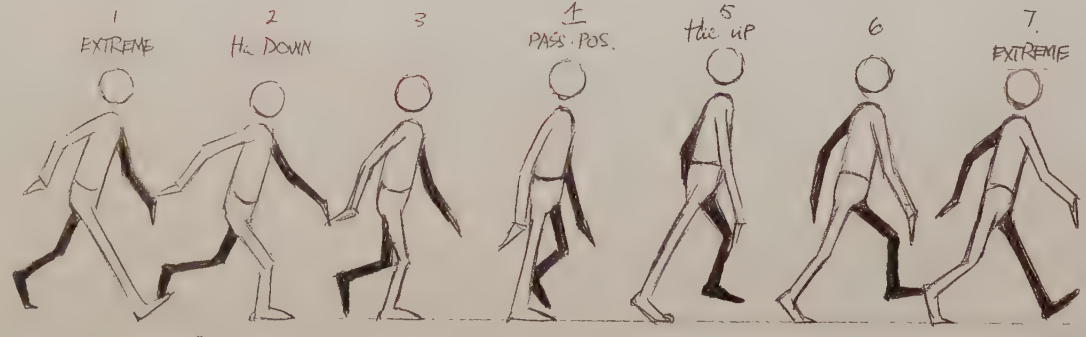
(ANYWAY, THIS IS the IDEA - WHICH CAN APPLY IN A REDUCED WAY TO A LESS CARTOONY ACTION and FIGURE.)

RUNS AND JUMPS AND SKIPS

IN A WALK ALWAYS ONE FOOT IS ON the GROUND. ONLY ONE FOOT LEAVES the GROUND AT A TIME.

IN A RUN BOTH FEET ARE OFF the GROUND AT SOME POINT FOR 1, 2 OR 3 POSITIONS.

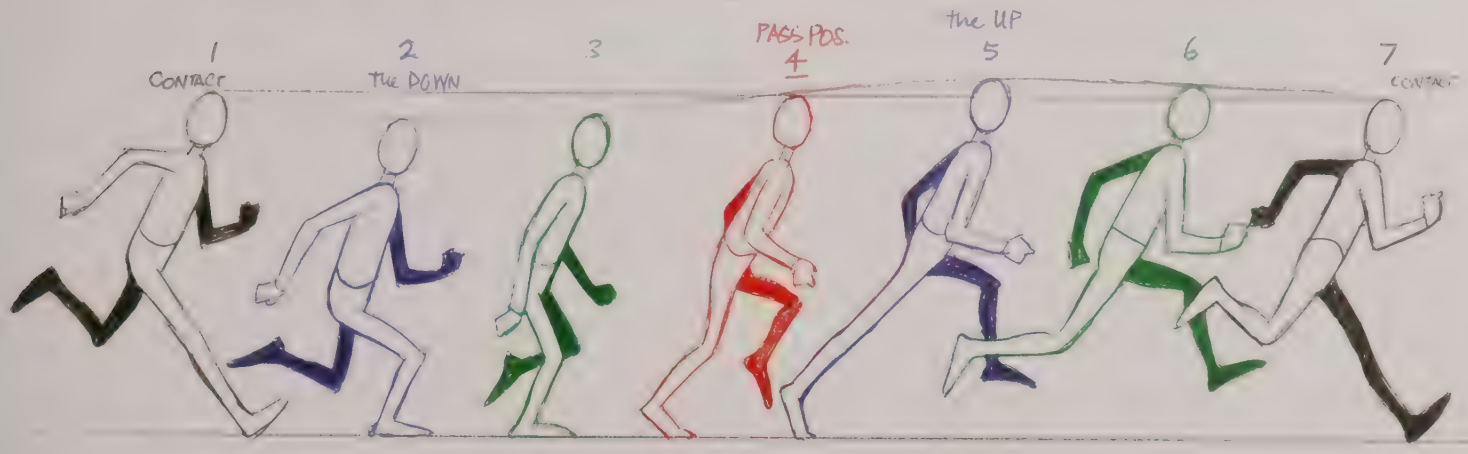
TAKE A QUICK WALK ON 6's -- IF ONE FOOT IS ON THE GROUND ALL THE TIME WE DONT HAVE A RUN — WE HAVE A VERY FAST WALK. (4 STEPS PER SEC)



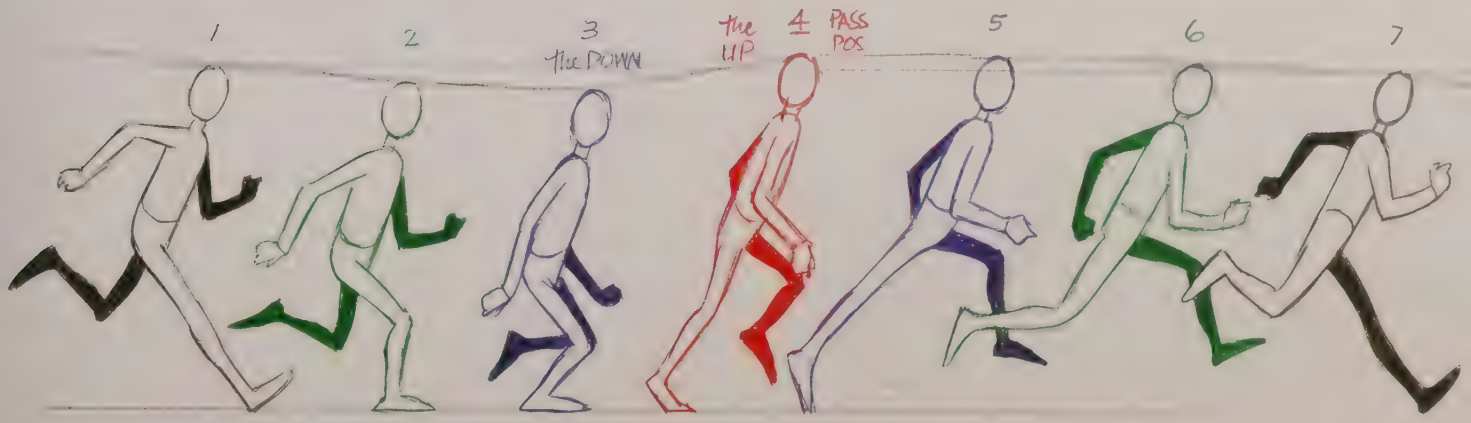
BUT JUST TAKE #6 OFF THE GROUND AND WE GET A RUN.

IT DOESNT HAVE TO BE THAT WAY, BUT THAT WOULD BE the DISTINGUISHING CHARACTERISTIC BETWEEN A RUN and A WALK.

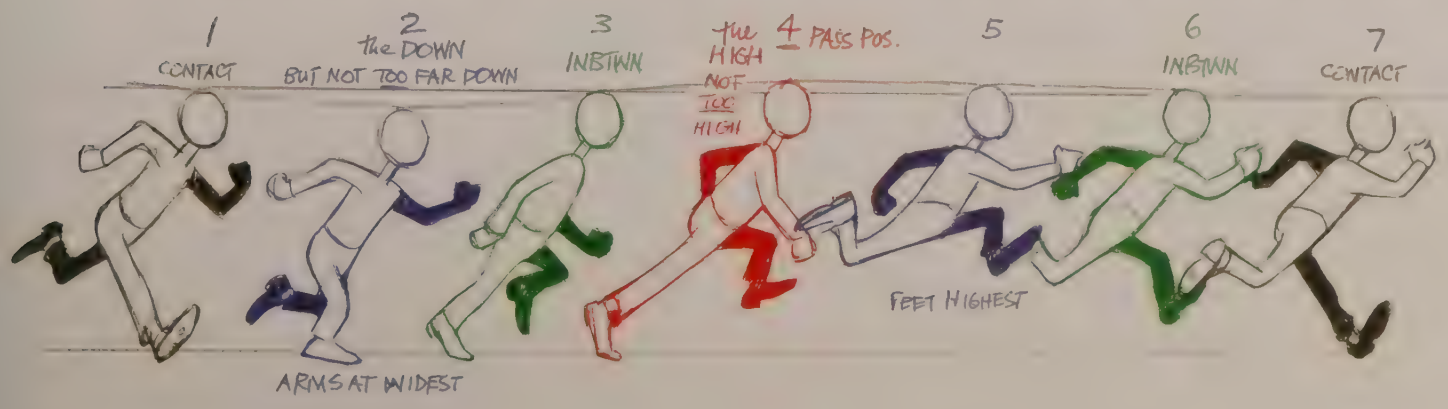
HERE'S THE SAME THING WITH A BIT MORE VITALITY - MORE LEAN - BIGGER ARM SWING
BUT STILL JUST WITH THE FEET OF THE GROUND FOR ONE FRAME.
A 'NORMAL' RUN ON 6's (4 STEPS PER SEC)



WE COULD TAKE THE SAME THING and PUT THE DOWN POSITION ON #3 and THE UP RIGHT NEXT TO IT ON #4



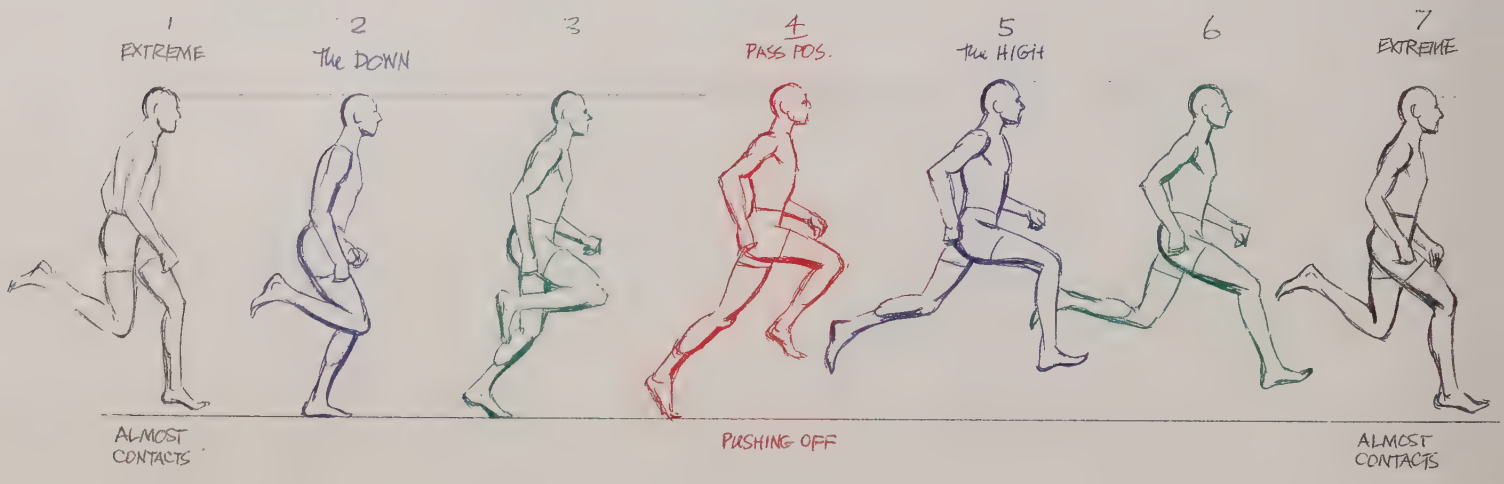
HERE'S A SIMILAR THING WITH MORE 'CARTOON' PROPORTIONS -
A CARTOON RUN ON 6's - BUT WITH THE FEET OFF THE GROUND FOR 2 POSITIONS - PLUS VIOLENT ARM SWING.



ANOTHER RUN ON 6's -

HERE'S the 'REAL' VERSION OF The SAME THING -

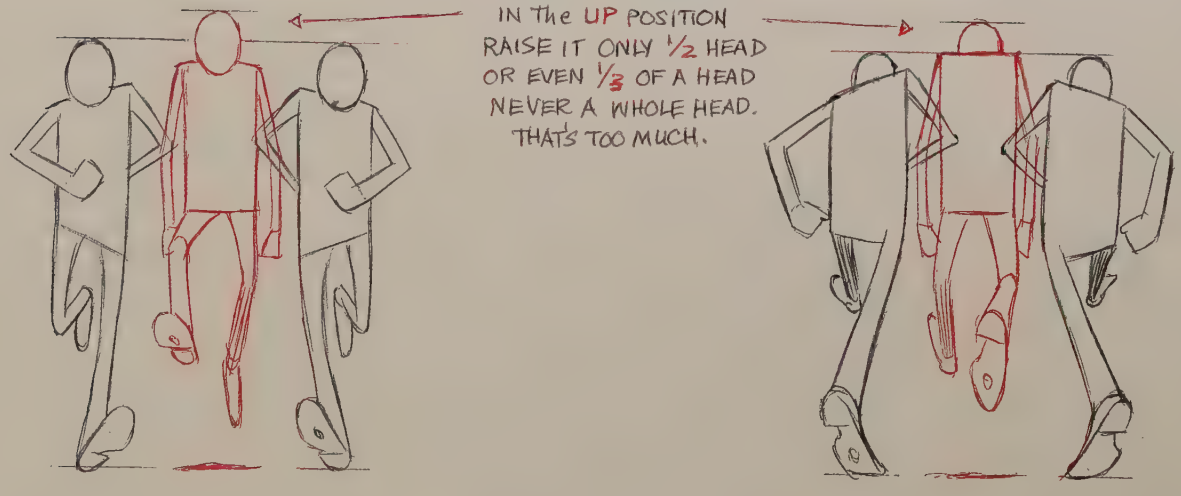
NOTE The REDUCED ARM ACTION - WITH HARDLY ANY UP and DOWN ON The BODY - PLUS BOTH FEET ARE OFF The GROUND FOR 2 FRAMES.



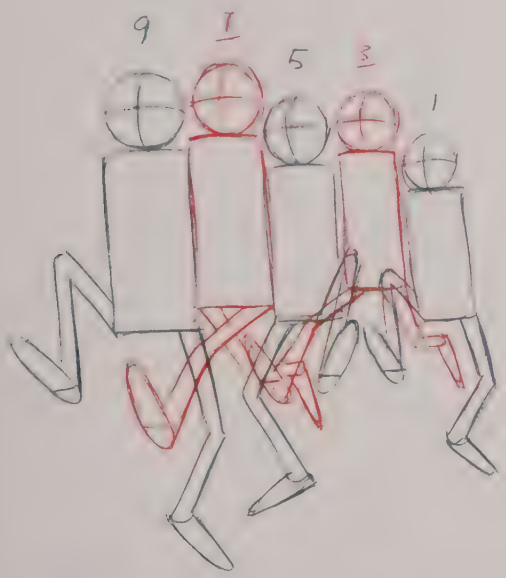
WITH RUNS WE CAN DO ALL The THINGS WE DID WITH WALKS.

The HEAD CAN GO UP and DOWN, SIDE TO SIDE, BACK and FORTH. The BODY CAN BEND and TWIST IN OPPOSITE DIRECTIONS, the FEET FLOP IN and OUT etc.

BUT WE CAN'T DO AS MUCH BECAUSE WE DON'T HAVE SO MANY POSITIONS TO DO IT IN BECAUSE The RUN IS FASTER (A WALKER ON 12's MIGHT RUN ON 6's).

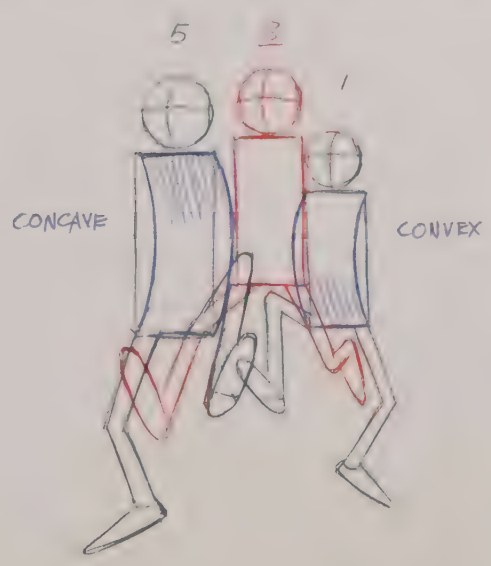

RULE OF THUMB ON A RUN - WHEN WE RAISE the BODY IN the UP POSITION RAISE IT ONLY ½ HEAD OR EVEN ⅓ OF A HEAD NEVER A WHOLE HEAD. THAT'S TOO MUCH.

OF COURSE,
RUNS HAVE TO BE ON ONES BECAUSE OF SO MUCH ACTION IN A SHORT SPACE OF TIME.



HEAD SLIGHTLY UP ON THE PASSING POSITION -

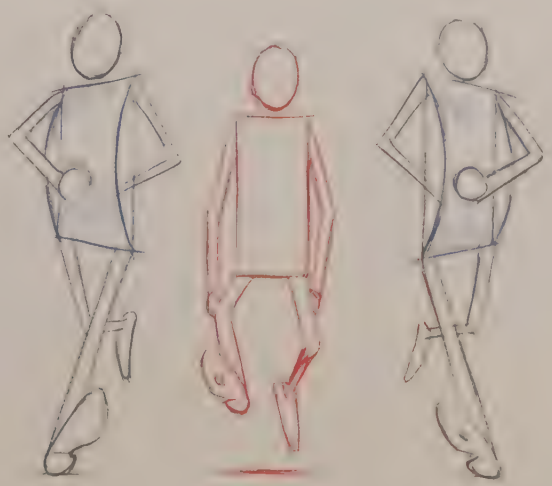
AS WITH WALKS,
WE CAN CURVE THE BODY
REVERSE IT ON THE OPPOSITE STEP
and KEEP IT STRAIGHT ON THE PASS. POSITION.



(OR) WE CAN TWIST THE BODY SIDEWAYS ON THE EXTREMES TO GET A FUNNY EFFECT -

AND SHOULDERS OPPOSE HIPS

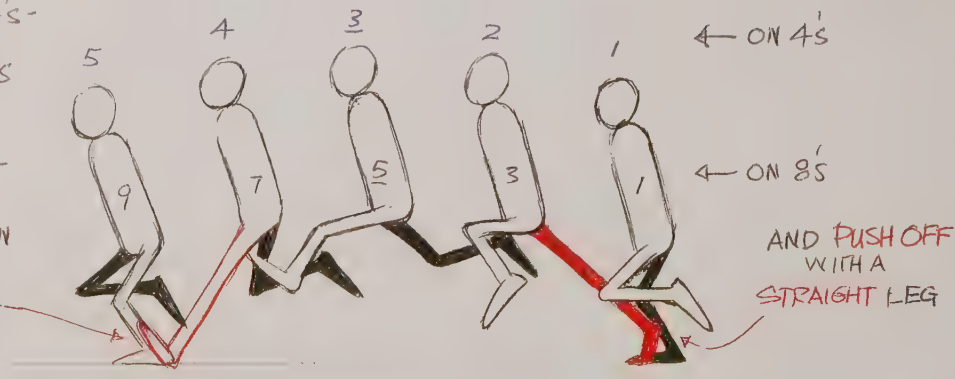
(OR) AS WITH A WALK-
WE CAN VARY IT BY HAVING THE BODY GO DOWN ON THE INTERMEDIATE POSITION BUT STILL TREAT THE FEET THE SAME WAY.



LETS TAKE A TRADITIONAL CARTOON RUN - (SPREAD APART)

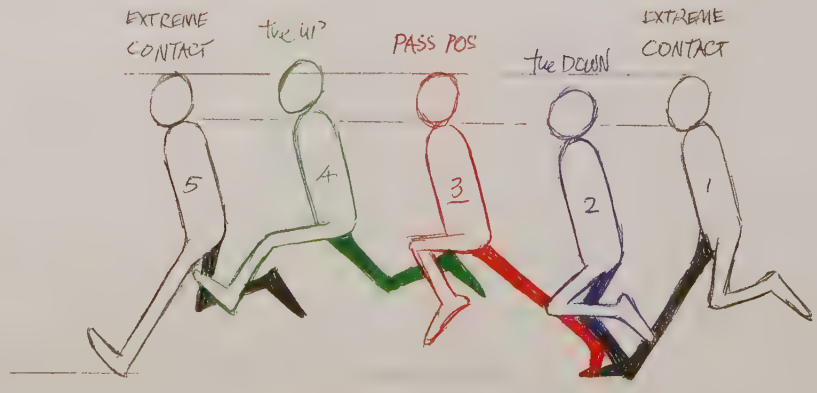
COULD BE ON 4's - OR ON 8's WITH INBETWEENS

AS WITH A WALK - FOR VITALITY and MORE ACTION REACH WITH A STRAIGHT LEG



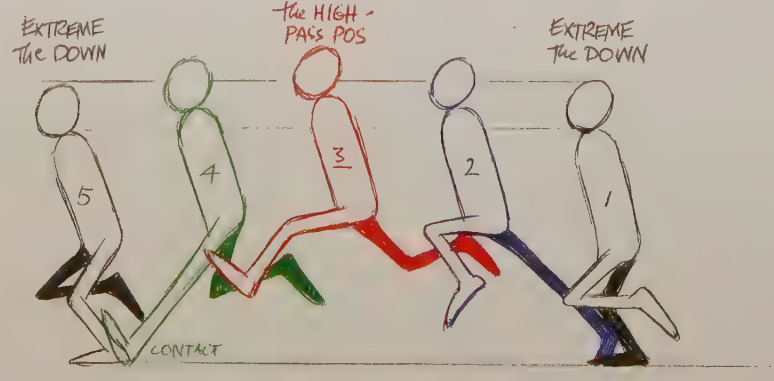
WE CAN PLAN A RUN FROM ANY POSITION IN THE RUN -

START WITH THE CONTACTS - AS THE EXTREMES



(OR)

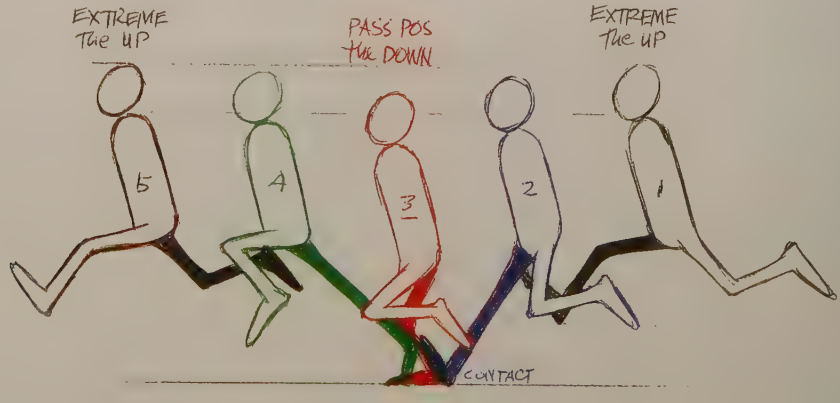
START FROM THE DOWN POSITIONS - AS THE EXTREMES



(OR)

START FROM THE UP POSITIONS - THE FEET SPREAD IN THE AIR POSITIONS AS THE EXTREMES

(OR START WITH THE PUSH-OFFS)



IN A FAST RUN (SAY ON 4's) #5 SHOULD NOT BE EXACTLY the SAME SILHOUETTE AS IT'S COUNTER - #1 VARY IT SOMEHOW - MAKE IT HIGHER OR LOWER.

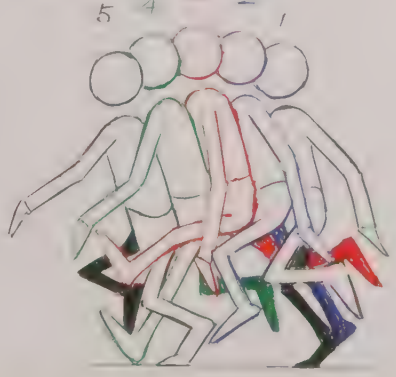
AND IN A FAST RUN the POSITION SHOULD OVERLAP SLIGHTLY TO HELP CARRY the EYE

(SPREAD OUT) 5 4 3 2 1

IN A 'NORMAL' RUN the ARMS (AS IN A WALK) COUNTER EACH OTHER.

(OVERLAPPING - AS IT WOULD BE)

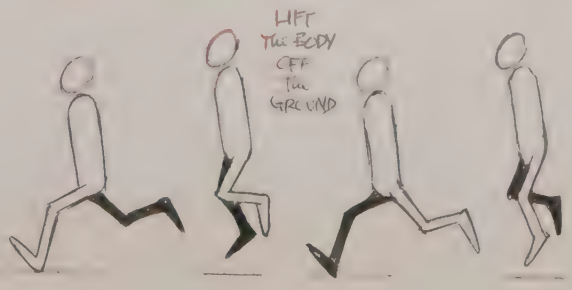
5 4 3 2 1



WE CAN HAVE SOME FOOT SLIPPAGE ON A RUN - BUT NOT ON A WALK FAST

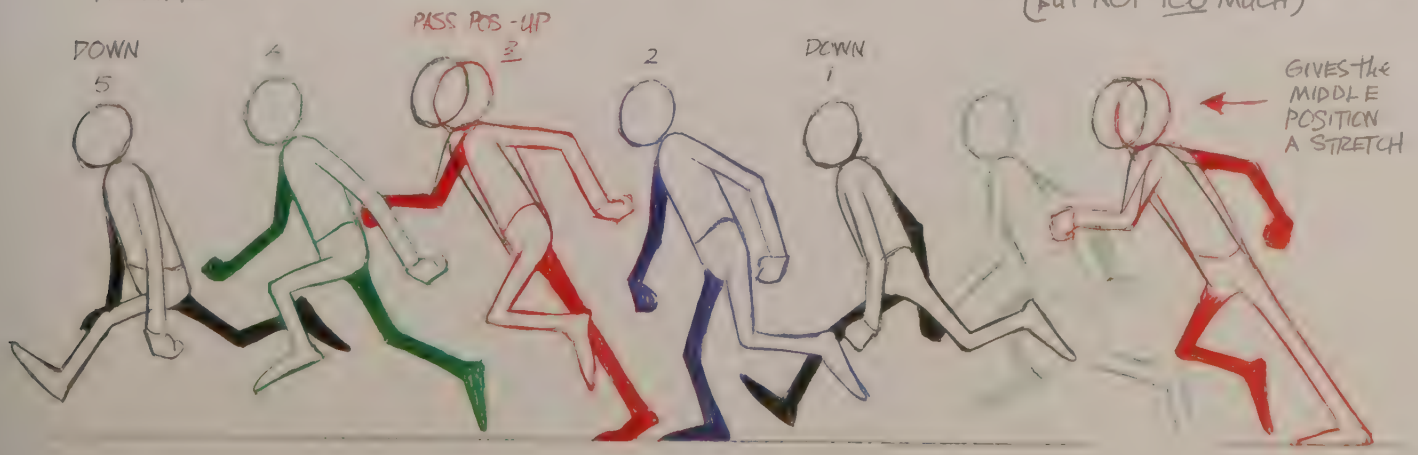
HERE'S the CLICHE' (CLICHÉS GIVE US A LEG TO STAND ON)

BUT TO VARY IT - WHAT ABOUT HAVING the LEGS EXACTLY OPPOSITE TO the STANDARD RUN?



HERE'S A 4 DRAWING RUN WHERE the NORMAL PASSING POSITION IS USED AS the DOWN - INCLUDING the ARMS.

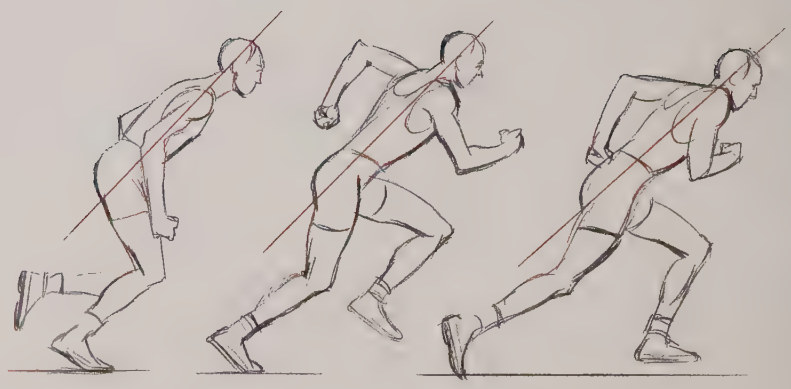
AND ON the MIDDLE POSITION PUSH the HEAD and BODY MORE FORWARD (BUT NOT TOO MUCH)



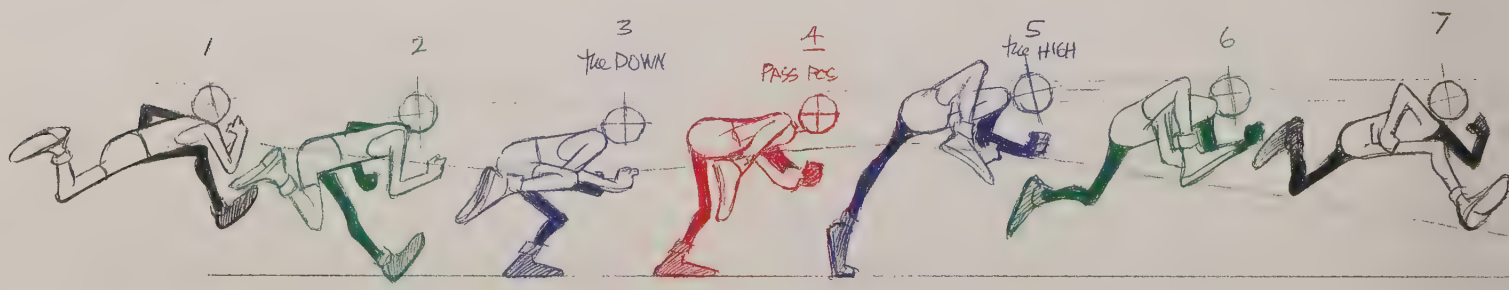
THERE CAN BE A
HUGE FORWARD LEAN -

IN 'REALITY'
The FASTER the FIGURE RUNS
The MORE IT LEANS FORWARD.

(AND IT DOESN'T HAVE TO BE
IN BALANCE ALL the TIME)

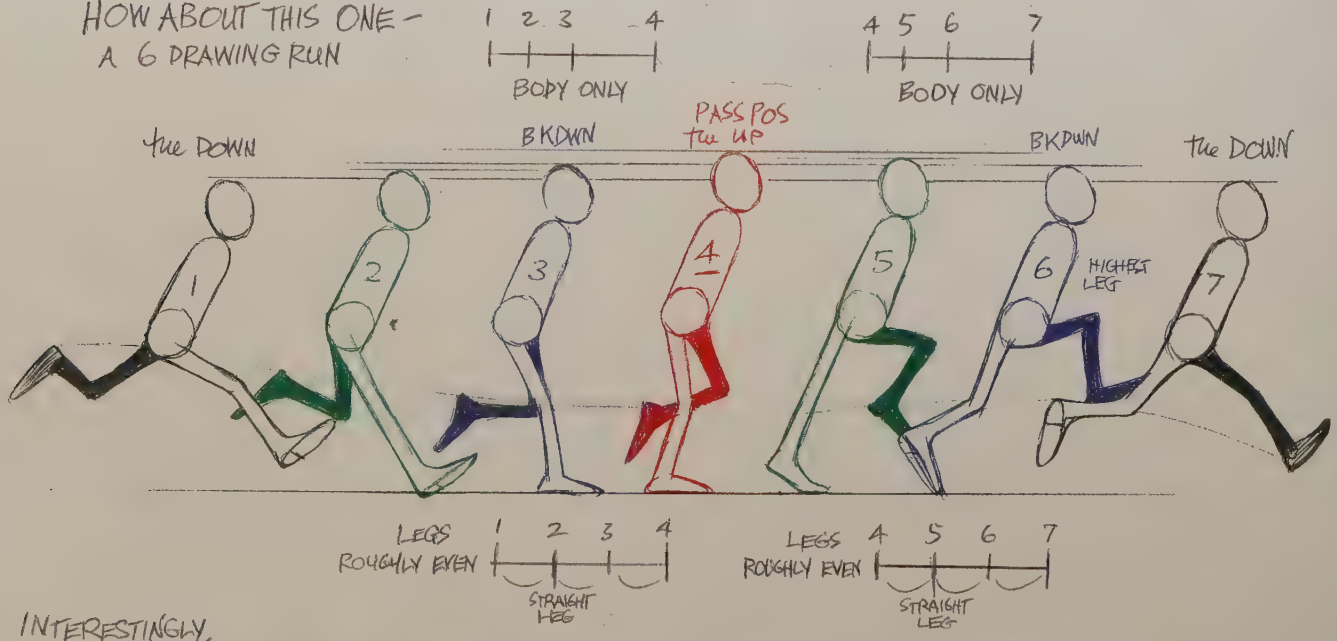


OBVIOUSLY,
WE CAN TAKE THINGS MUCH FURTHER -
HERE'S A RUN ON 6's (PLANNED FROM the SPREAD FOOT POSITIONS)



BECAUSE OF the LONG LEGS IT NEEDS AT LEAST 6 POSITIONS TO MAKE IT WORK -
GOT TO KEEP the HEEL MOVING IN AN ARC. THE HEEL LEADS - the TOE FOLLOWS.

HOW ABOUT THIS ONE -
A 6 DRAWING RUN

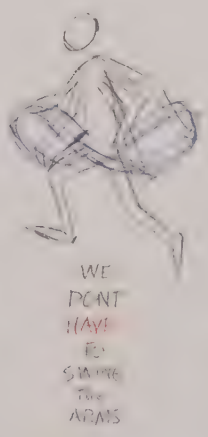


INTERESTINGLY,
ART BABBITT FELT THAT 6 FRAMES IS REALLY A NICER RUN THAN A 4 OR 5 DRAWING RUN.
AND KEN HARRIS, A TOP EXPONENT OF 'WARNER' FAST ACTION ALWAYS PREFERRED TO DO RUNS ON 6's and 8's.

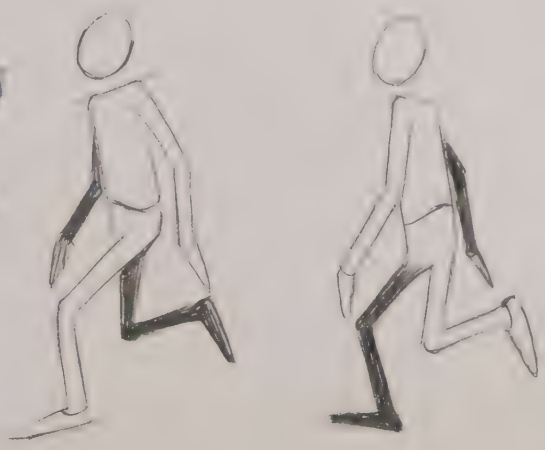
WHAT ABOUT THE ARMS?

DO THEY PUMP BACK and FORTH? SWING VIGOROUSLY? SWING ACROSS?
DO THEY SWING FROM SIDE TO SIDE? DO THEY HARDLY MOVE AT ALL.

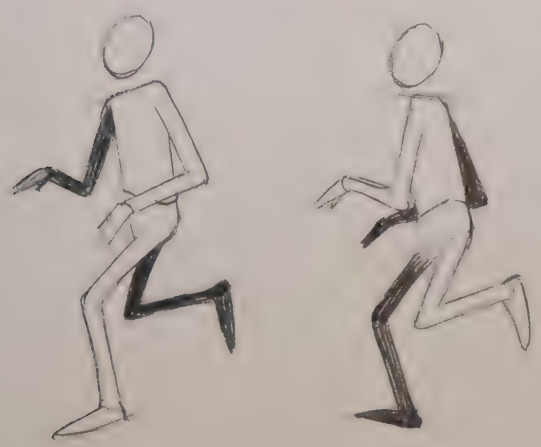
IN A CLICHÉ OR STANDARD RUN
THE ARMS (AS IN A WALK)
ARE OPPOSITE TO THE LEGS.



LET'S TRY A RESTRICTED ARM MOTION.
THE ARM STILL OPPOSES THE LEG
BUT MOVEMENT IS RESTRICTED



ARMS BENT AT ELBOW - VERY RESTRICTED.

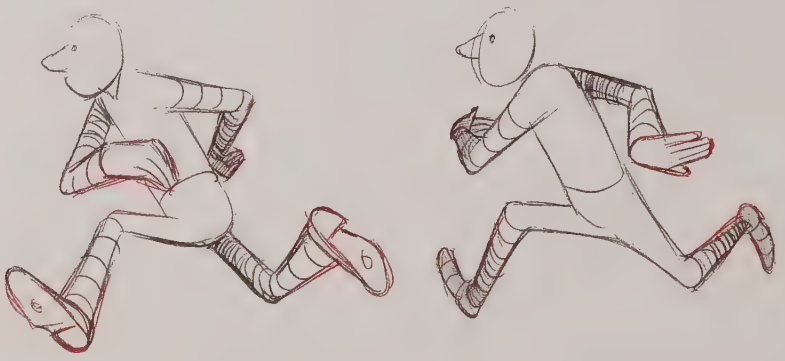


RESTRICTED IN A WOMAN'S RUN -

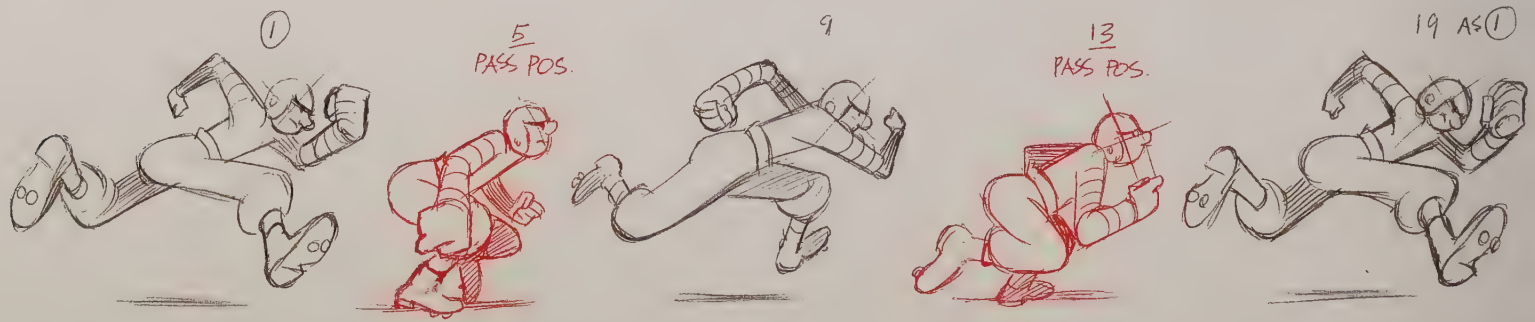
ON A VERY FAST RUN
THERE'S A DANGER OF TOO MUCH
ARM MOVEMENT.

IT CAN BE TOO FAST and CONFUSING.
THE LEG ACTION SHOULD PREDOMINATE.

HOW ABOUT the ARMS SWINGING FROM SIDE TO SIDE - AND FORCE the PERSPECTIVE.



HERE'S AN ANGRY RUN ON 8's (3 STEPS PER SEC.) NEEDS THE TIME TO ACCOMODATE the WILD ARM and LEG ACTION



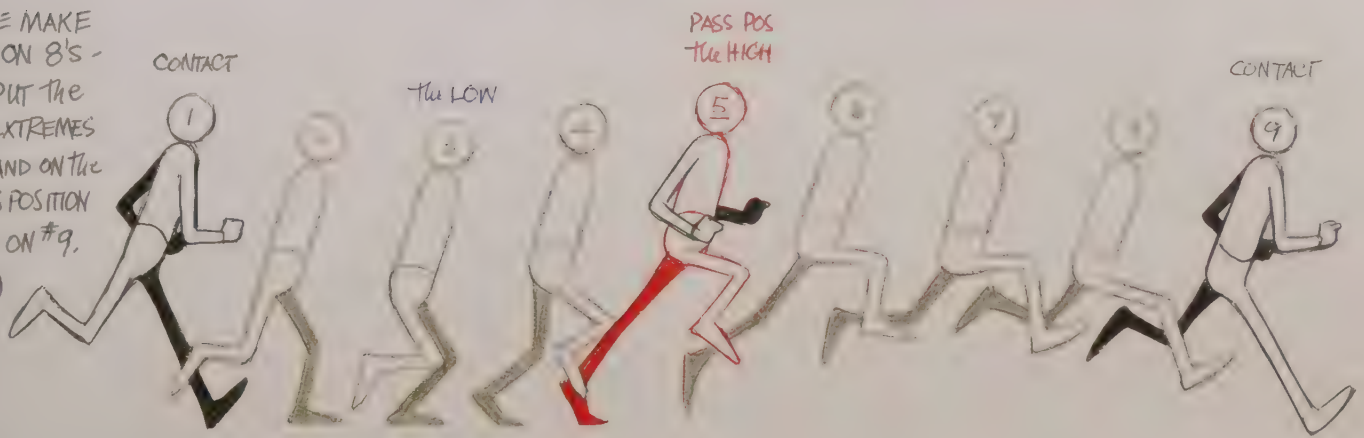
WHAT ABOUT VARYING EVERY OTHER PASSING POSITION AS THE RUN PROGRESSES?

HAVE EVERY OTHER PASSING POSITION GO DOWN - - EVEN THOUGH BOTH FEET ARE OFF THE GROUND

OR

AS WE DID WITH A WALK - LET'S HAVE the ARMS PUMPING AWAY TWICE AS FAST AS the FEET -

SAY WE MAKE A RUN ON 8's - THEN PUT the ARM EXTREMES ON #1 AND ON the PASSING POSITION #5 and ON #9. (ON 4's)

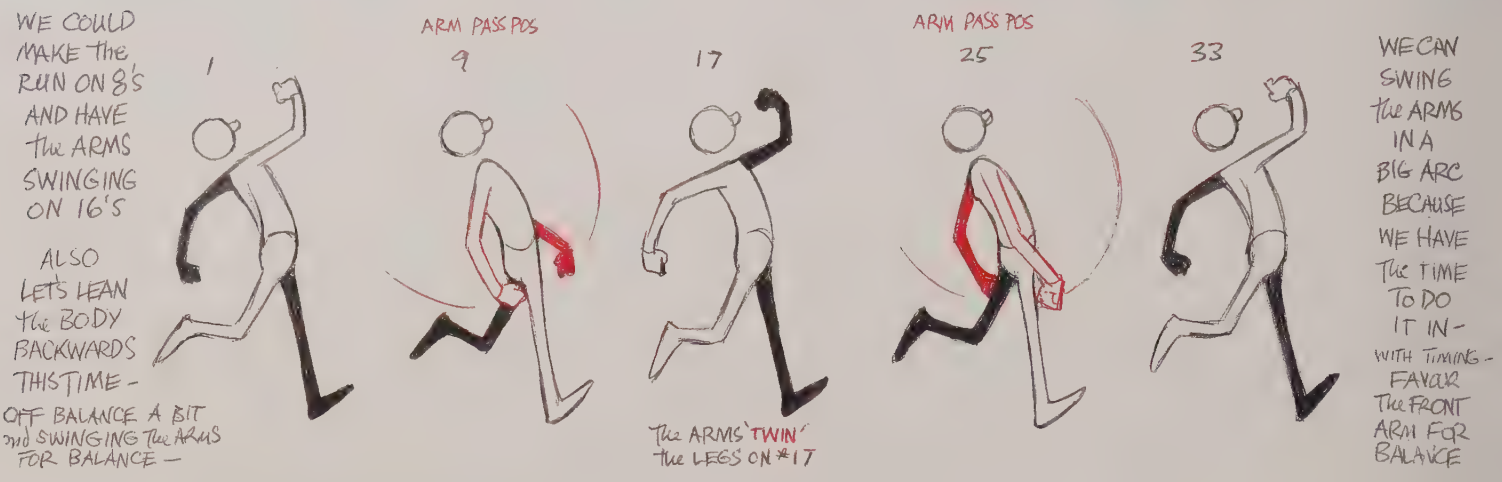


the ARM EXTREMES WILL 'TWIN' THE LEGS ON #9 and #13 BUT WILL RETURN TO OPPOSE the LEGS NORMALLY ON the NEXT EXTREMES #9 and #17.

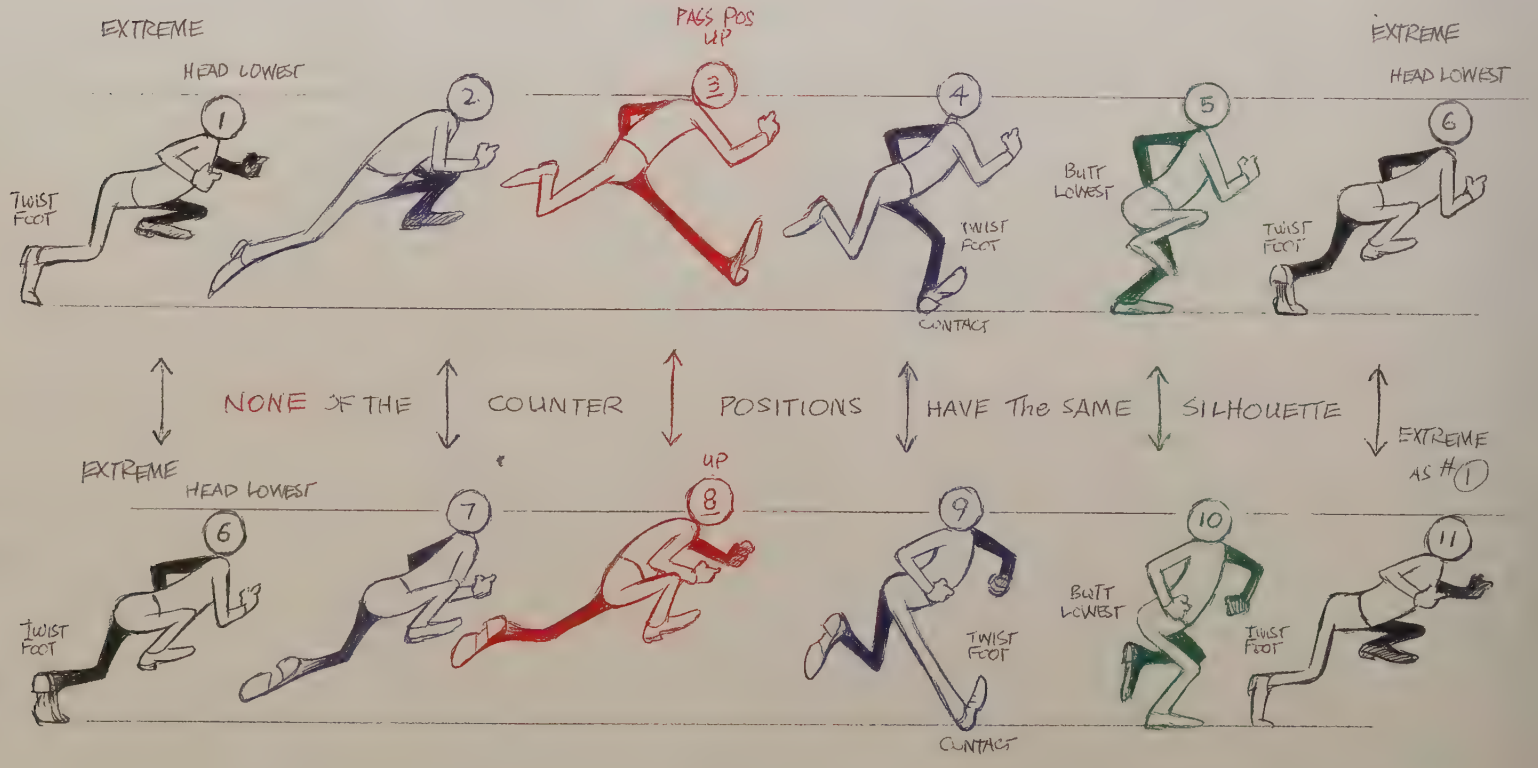
the AMOUNT OF ARM MOVEMENT WILL HAVE TO BE RESTRICTED SINCE IT'S PUMPING EVERY 4 FRAMES (6 TIMES A SECOND)

WE COULD MAKE A RUN ON 12's - AND PUT the ARM ACTION ON 6's. (4 PUMPS A SECOND) - WOULD BE VERY EFFECTIVE.

CONVERSLY - WE COULD MAKE A RUN AND HAVE the ARMS GOING TWICE AS SLOW AS the FEET.


WE COULD MAKE the RUN ON 8's AND HAVE the ARMS SWINGING ON 16's
ALSO LET'S LEAN the BODY BACKWARDS THIS TIME -
OFF BALANCE A BIT and SWINGING the ARMS FOR BALANCE -
1
ARM PASS POS
9
17
ARM PASS POS
25
33
The ARMS 'TWIN' the LEGS ON #17
WE CAN SWING the ARMS IN A BIG ARC BECAUSE WE HAVE the TIME TO DO IT IN - WITH TIMING - FAVOR the FRONT ARM FOR BALANCE

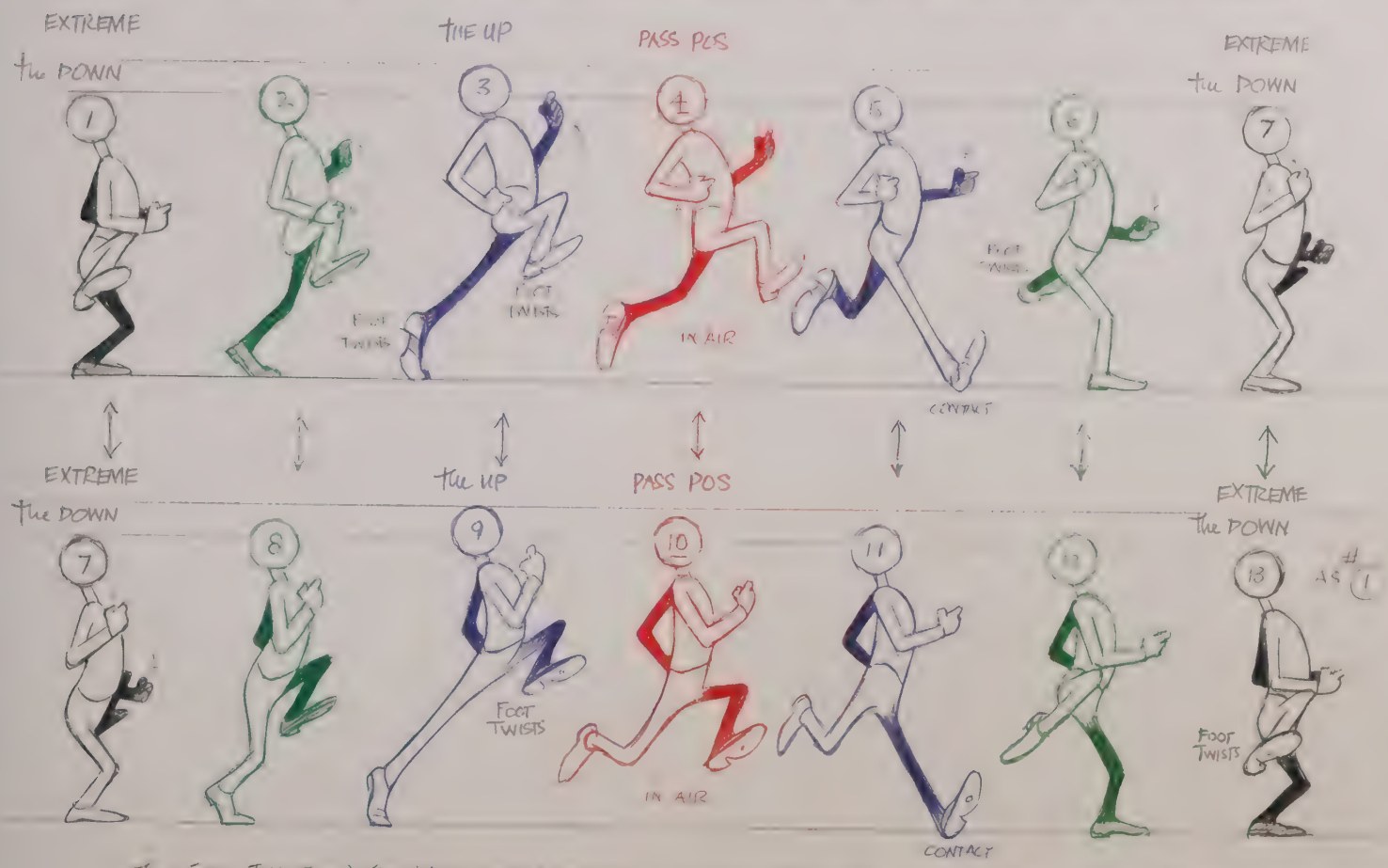
HERE'S A 5 DRAWING RUN
SHOWING HOW WE CAN VARY the SILHOUETTES ON A FAST RUN -
- AGAIN, SO THAT the EYE DOESN'T READ IT AS JUST the SAME ONE LEG and ONE ARM GOING AROUND.



ALSO the BACKS GO FROM CONCAVE TO CONVEX, the FEET TWIST and the ARMS and LEGS ARE QUITE DIFFERENT

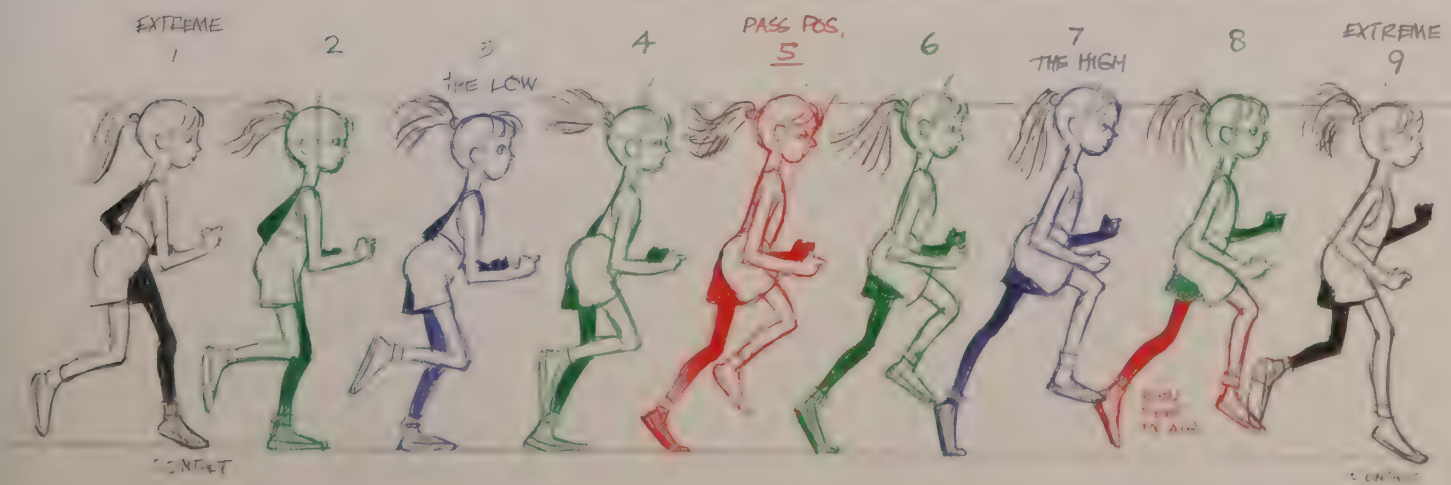
HERE'S A JOGGING RUN ON 6's -

BECAUSE THIS RUN IS SLIGHTLY SLOWER THAN THE PRECEDING WALK ONE (IN 5's AND BECAUSE THE LENGTH OF THE STRIDES IS MUCH REDUCED - BOTH FEET ARE IN THE AIR FOR JUST ONE FRAME) - THE CONVERSE SILHOUETTES CAN BE MORE ALIKE (ANOTHER DIFFERENCE)



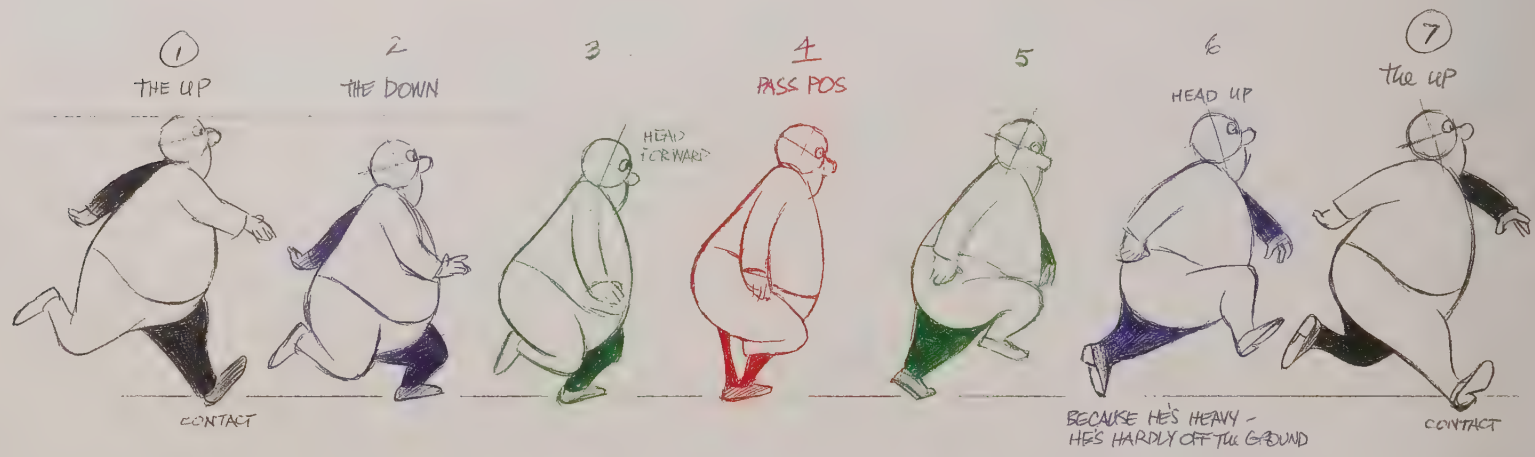
THE FEET TWIST and THE ARMS PUMP AROUND IN A SMALL CIRCLE THE HEAD JUST GOES UP AND DOWN

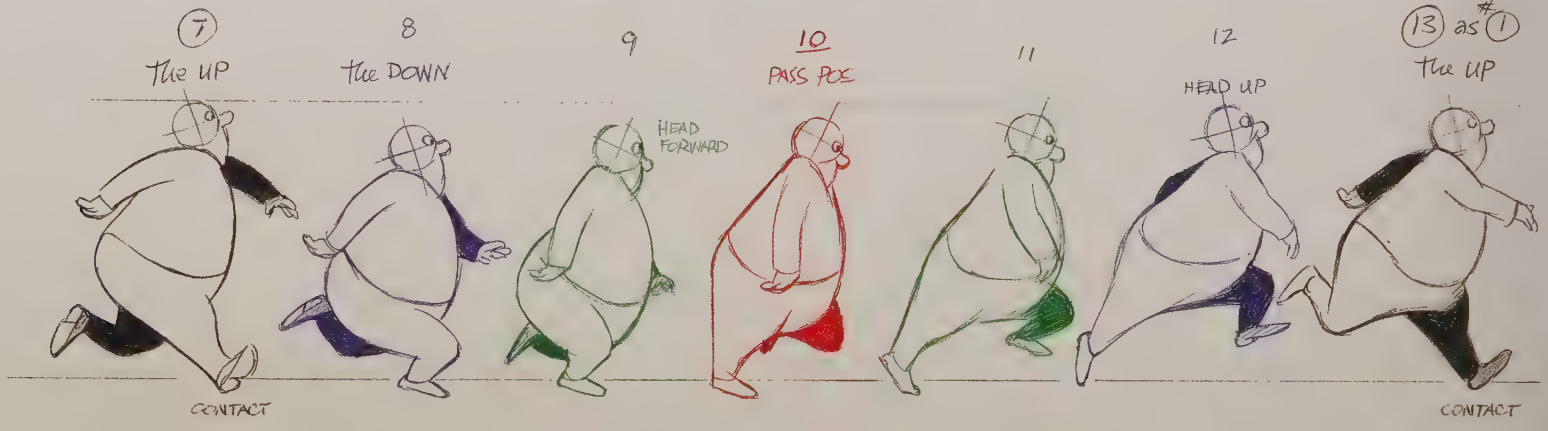
A YOUNG GIRL MIGHT RUN ON 8's - REDUCED ACTION - WITH ONLY ONE DRAWING OFF THE GROUND.



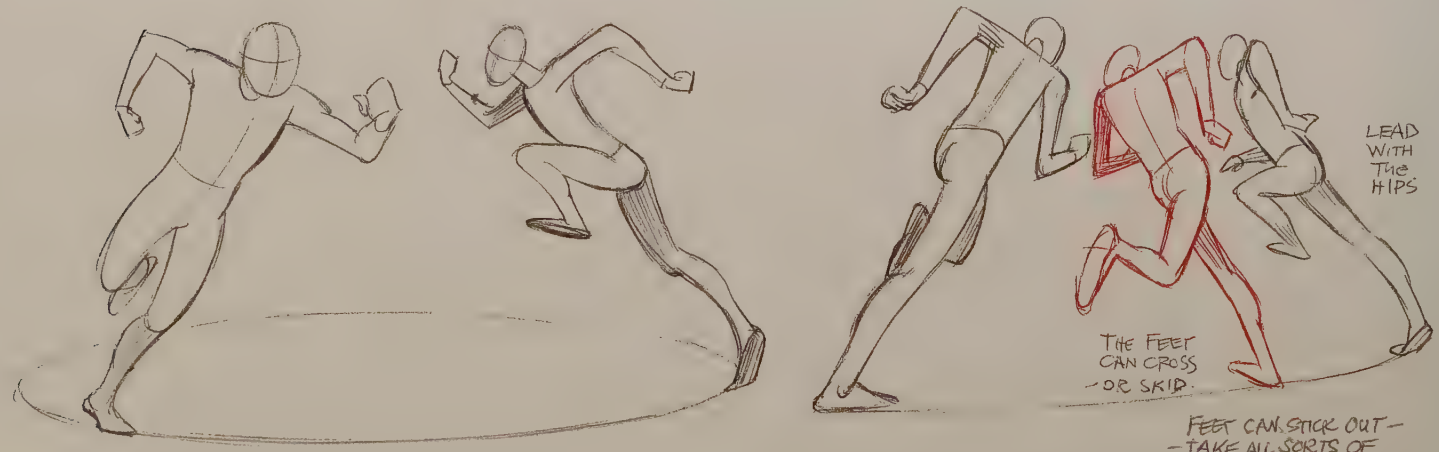
TAKE A FAT MAN RUNNING ON 6's -

THERE'S GOING TO BE LOTS OF UP and DOWN ON the WEIGHT. BECAUSE HE'S SO HEAVY the DOWN POSITION IMMEDIATELY FOLLOWS the UP POSITION. THEN HE HAS TO LIFT HIMSELF UP OVER the NEXT 5 FRAMES IN ORDER TO FALL DOWN HEAVILY AGAIN. THEN HIS HEAD LEANS FORWARD TO HELP the PUSH-UP.





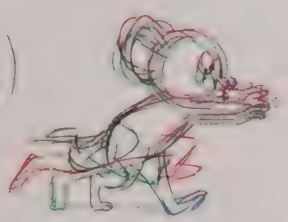
AN IMPORTANT THING - WHEN A RUNNER ROUNDS A CORNER THEY LEAN TOWARDS the CENTRE - IN THE DIRECTION OF the TURN -


LEAD WITH the HIPS
THE FEET CAN CROSS - OR SKID.
FEET CAN STICK OUT - - TAKE ALL SORTS OF LIBERTIES - BUT THE EYE will FOLLOW the BODY.

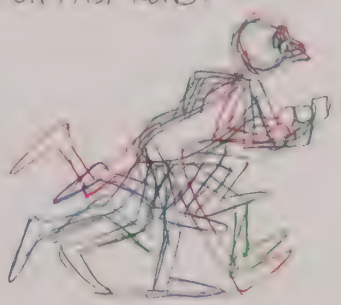
LIKE A MOTORBIKE, THEY LEAN ON the TURN (DEPENDING ON the SPEED)

SOMEONE SAID THAT 'THE CHASE' IS AN INVENTION THAT IS ORGANIC TO MOVIES. CERTAINLY THERE ARE THOUSANDS OF RUNNING AROUND 'CHASE' CARTOONS PRODUCING ENDLESS and INVENTIVE VARIATIONS ON FAST RUNS.

(ON 3's ON 4's)



THE FAST RUNS ARE MORE SUITABLE FOR SHORT FIGURES WHICH NEED FEWER POSITIONS TO FUNCTION IN LESS TIME BECAUSE IT ALL OVERLAPS.



(ON 5's ON 6's ON 7's ON 8's)

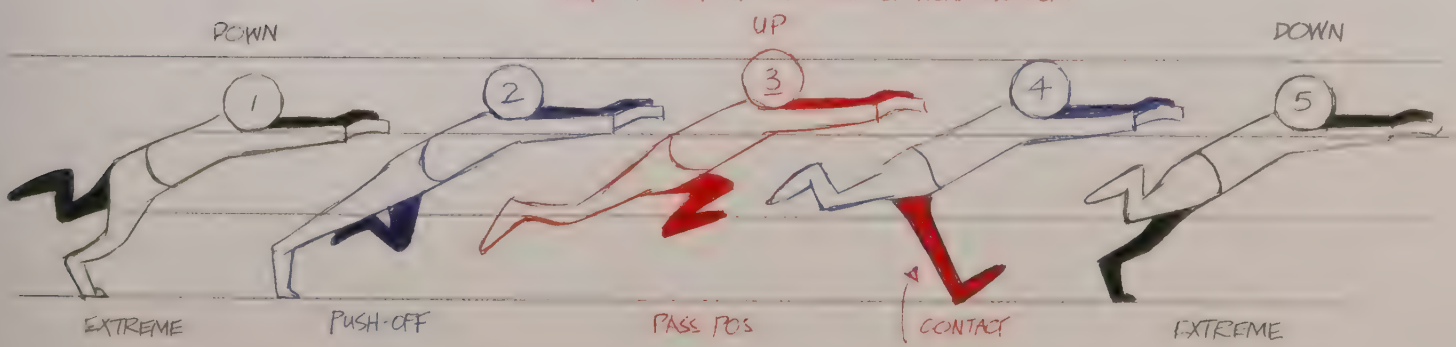
AND the LONGER-LEGGED FIGURE NEEDS SLIGHTLY MORE TIME TO FUNCTION - ONE OR TWO MORE POSITIONS TO HELP CARRY THE EYE.

THE 4 DRAWING FORMULA RUN

EFFECTIVE FOR SHORT-LEGGED FIGURES

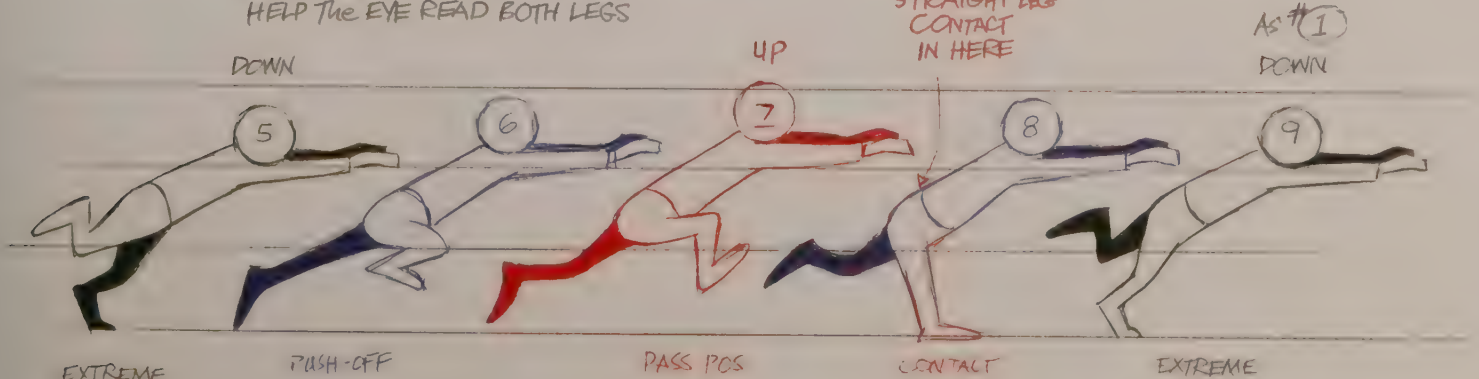
THIS IS SO FAST (6 STEPS PER SECOND) THAT THERE'S NOT ENOUGH TIME TO SWING the ARMS AROUND VIOLENTLY - SO THEY FOUND ITS BEST TO STRETCH the ARMS OUT IN FRONT. the LEG ACTION WORKS UNDER and BEHIND the BODY (OK TO HAVE SLIPPAGE ON the FEET.

VERY LITTLE UP and DOWN ON HEAD and BODY

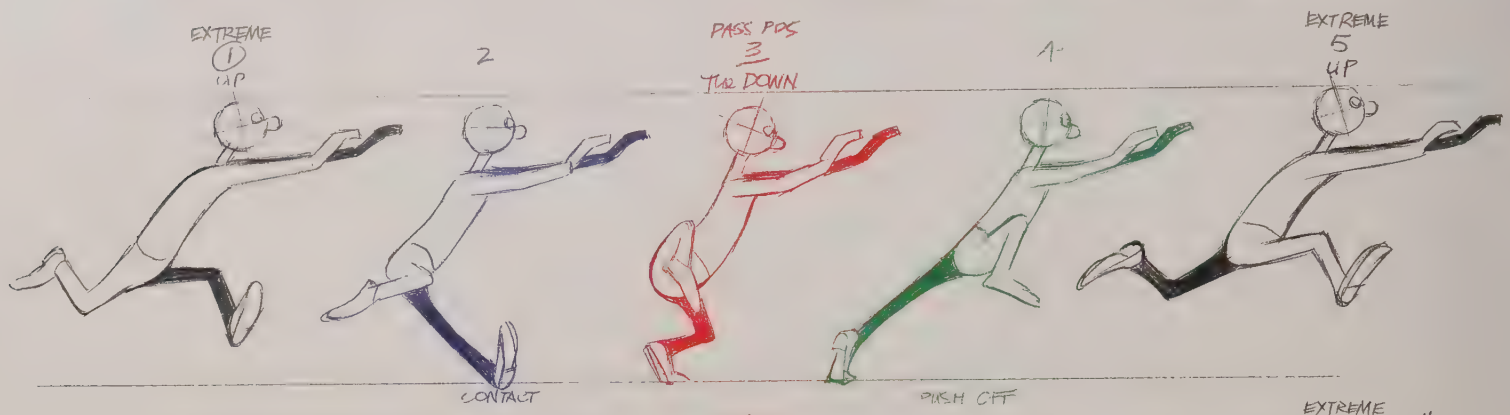


AND AGAIN, WE SHOULD VARY the SILHOUETTES SLIGHTLY TO HELP the EYE READ BOTH LEGS

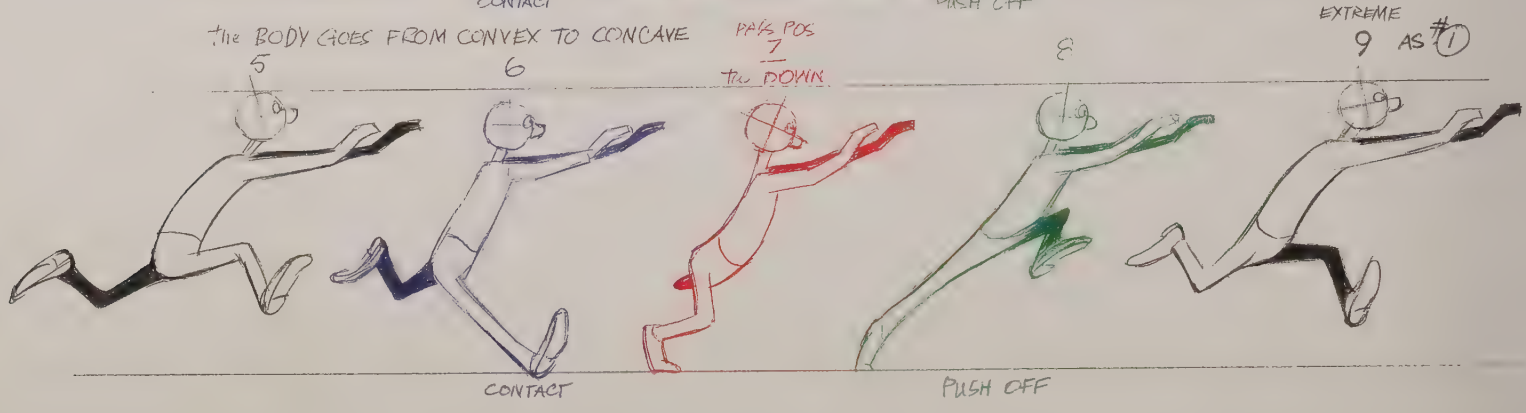
IMPORTANT TO GET A STRAIGHT LEG CONTACT IN HERE



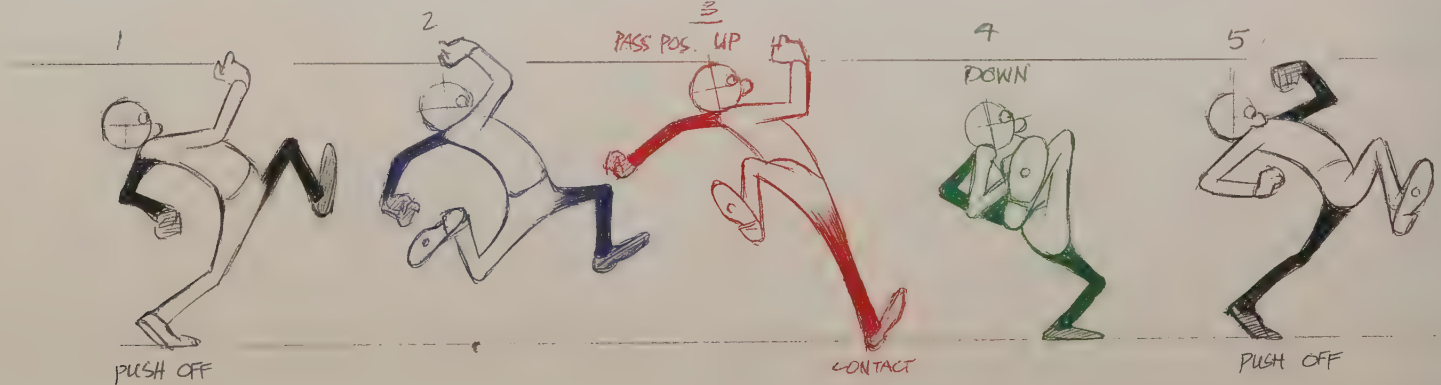
VARIATIONS ON 4 DRAWING RUNS - THIS ONE IS PLANNED FROM the UP IN AIR POSITIONS BUT ITS STILL ON the SAME BASIC PATTERN AS The PRECEDING FORMULA.

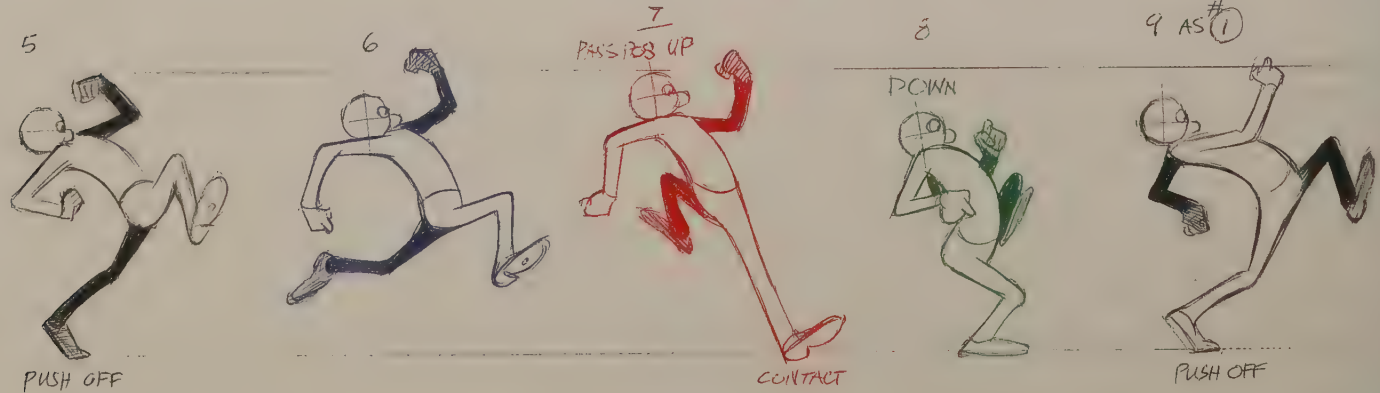


The BODY GOES FROM CONVEX TO CONCAVE



HERE'S A VERY WILD ONE - WITH ARM SWINGS - PLANNED FROM the PUSH OFF POSITIONS BUT STILL BASED ON The FORMULA PATTERN





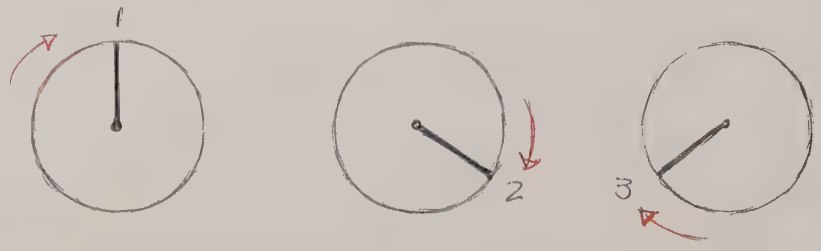
4
3 PASSING
2
1
8
7 PASSING
6
5
2
1 PASSING

INCIDENTALLY, ABOUT CYCLES –

LONG CYCLES ARE GREAT. SHORT CYCLES OBVIOUSLY READ AS CYCLES – BUT IF WE TAKE SEVERAL STRIDES WITH VARIATIONS IN THE EXTREMES and PASSING POSITIONS, etc.–THEN HOOK BACK TO #(1), IT STOPS OR DELAYS THE EYE READING IT AS A CYCLE.

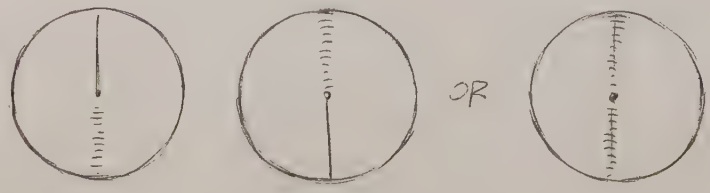
THE 3 DRAWING RUN

= 8 STEPS PER SECOND! WE CAN'T GET MUCH FASTER THAN THIS BECAUSE –

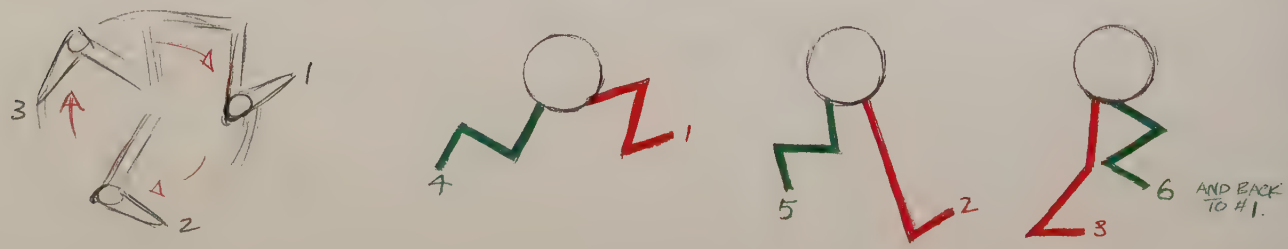


TO MAKE A WHEEL OR A SPOKE APPEAR TO GO AROUND IN A CIRCLE WE NEED A MINIMUM OF 3 DRAWINGS/POSITIONS.

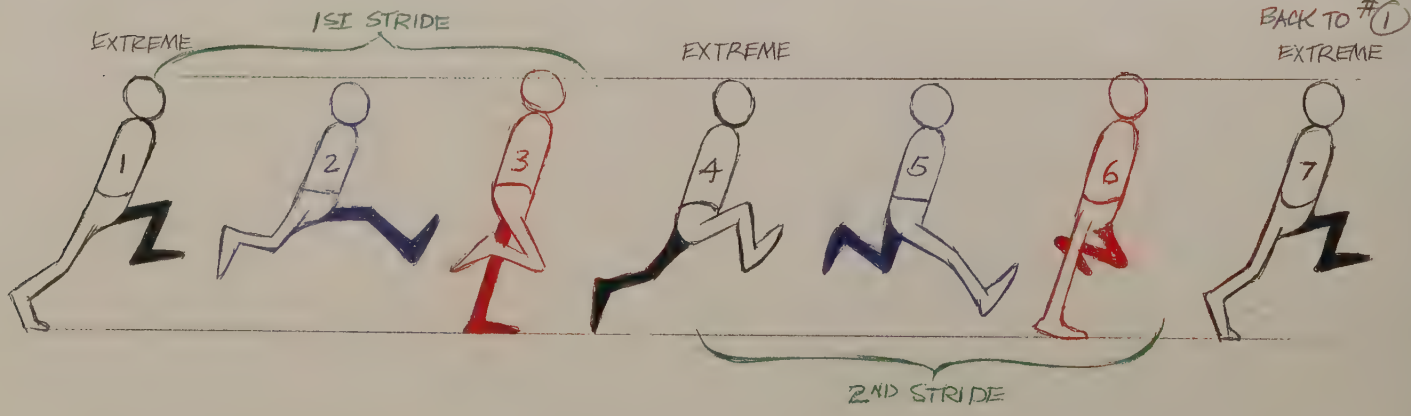
TWO WONT DO IT.
IT JUST FLICKERS – AS



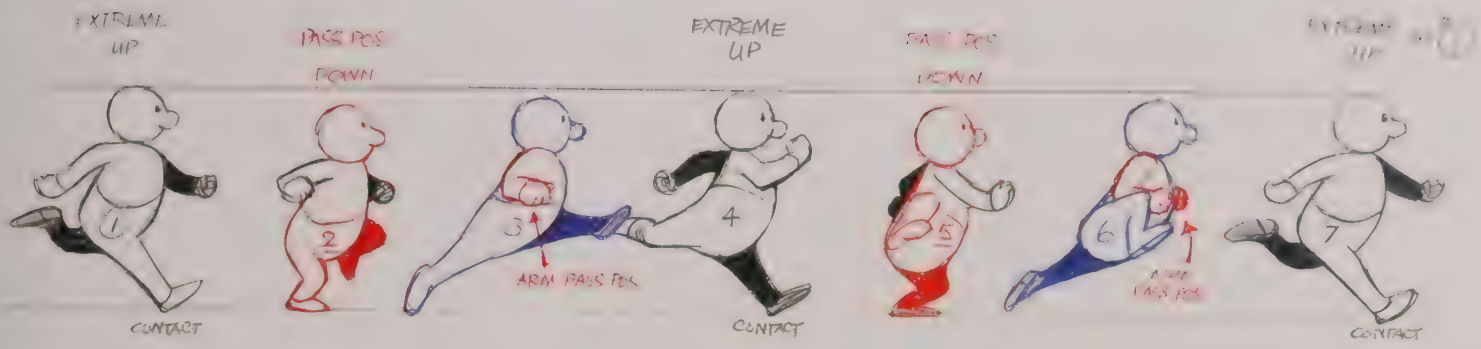
SO WE NEED TO FIND 3 NICE WORKABLE LEG POSITIONS TO MAKE IT GO AROUND.



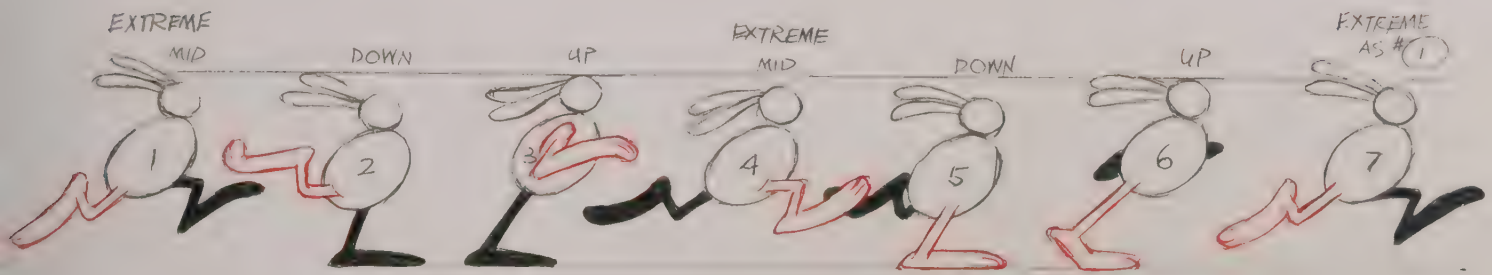
IN PRACTICE, IT WORKS OUT LIKE THIS:

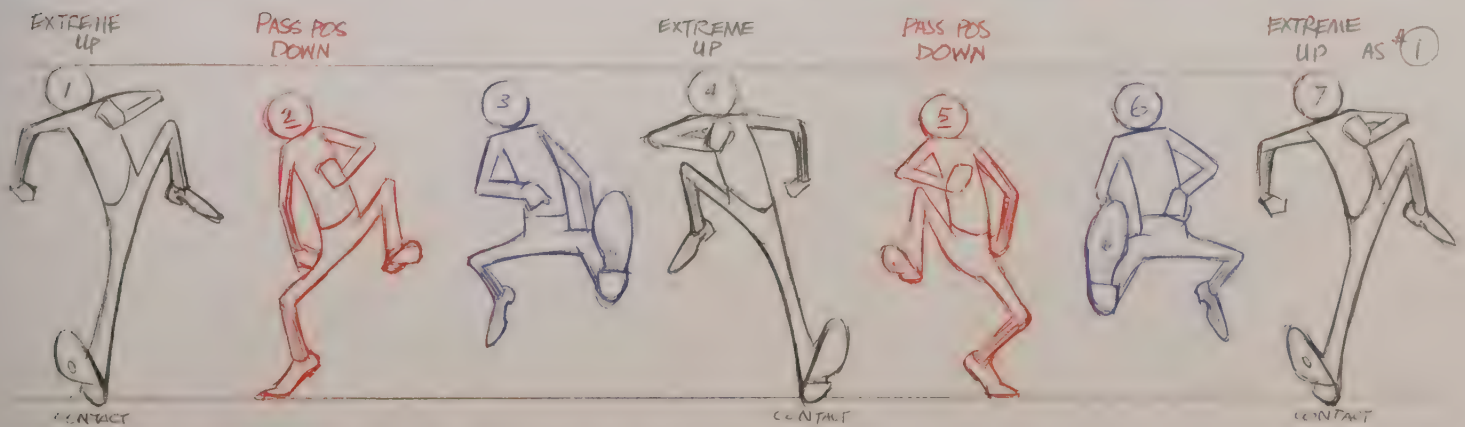


THERE ARE COUNTLESS VARIATIONS ON THIS - BASICALLY JUST GETTING THE 3 DRAWINGS TO GO AROUND.

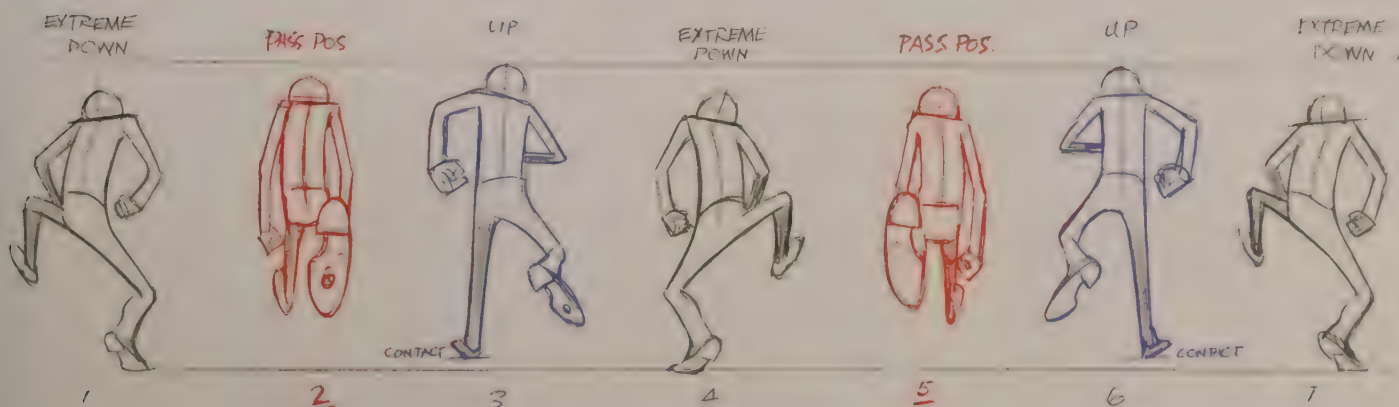


OF COURSE IT WORKS BEST WITH SHORT CARTOONY FIGURES -

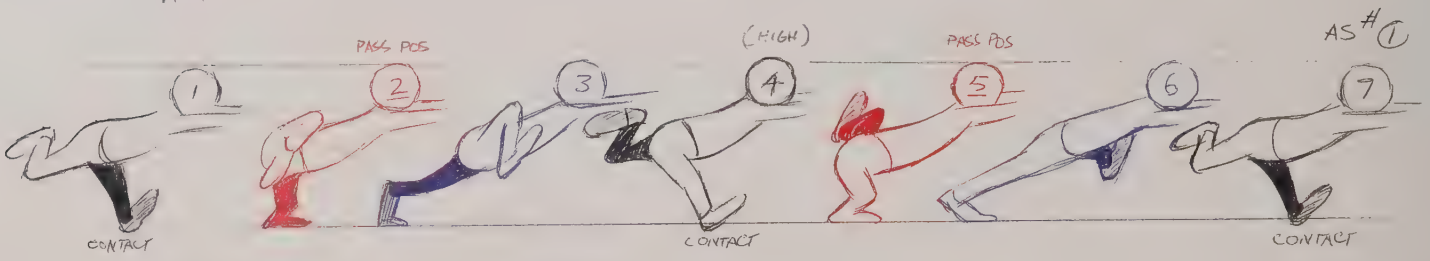




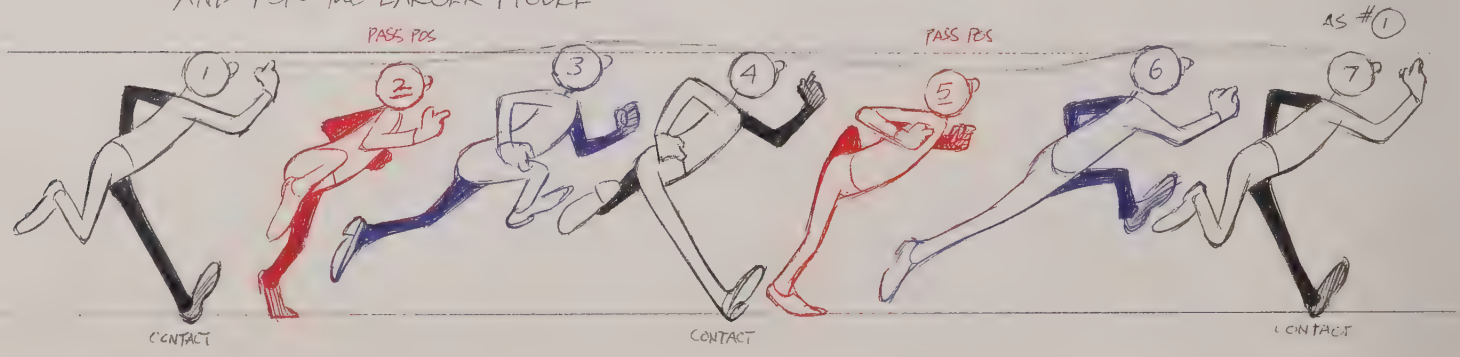
BUT IT'LL STILL WORK WITH A TALLER FIGURE -



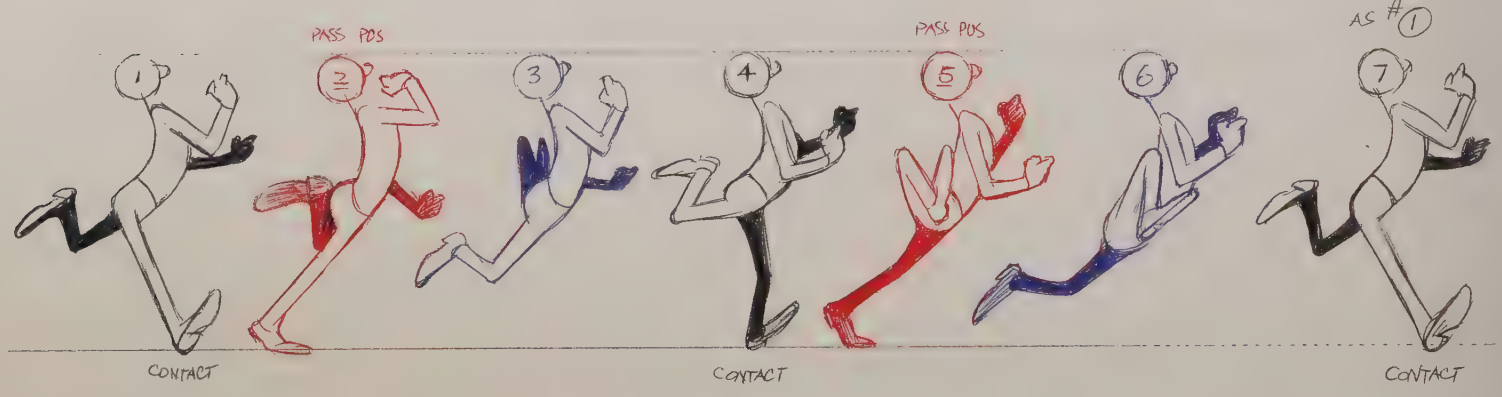
HERE'S THE STANDARD VERSION FOR BROAD LEG ACTION ON A 3 DRAWING RUN -



AND FOR THE LARGER FIGURE -



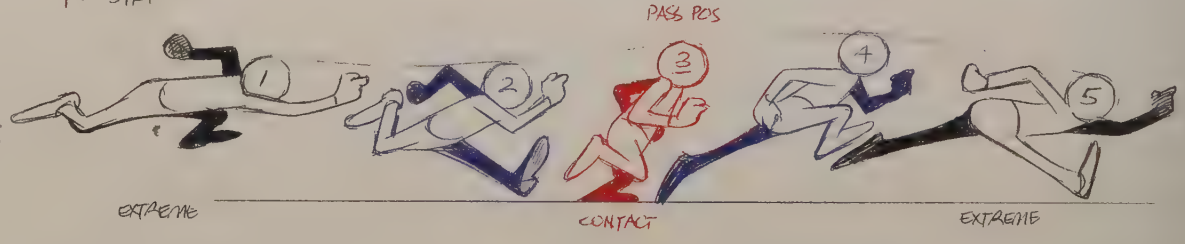
A VARIATION - BUT STILL ON THE SAME PATTERN -



AND WHAT'S TO STOP US BREAKING IT UP?

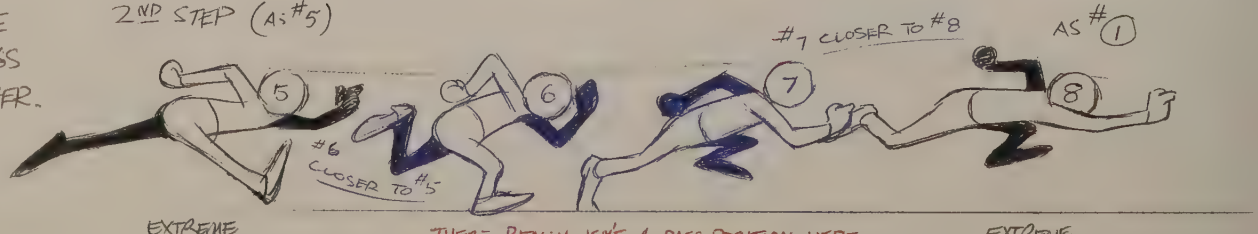
HAVE 4 DRAWINGS FOR ONE STEP -

1ST STEP



AND HAVE 3 DRAWINGS FOR THE OTHER.

2ND STEP (A: #5)

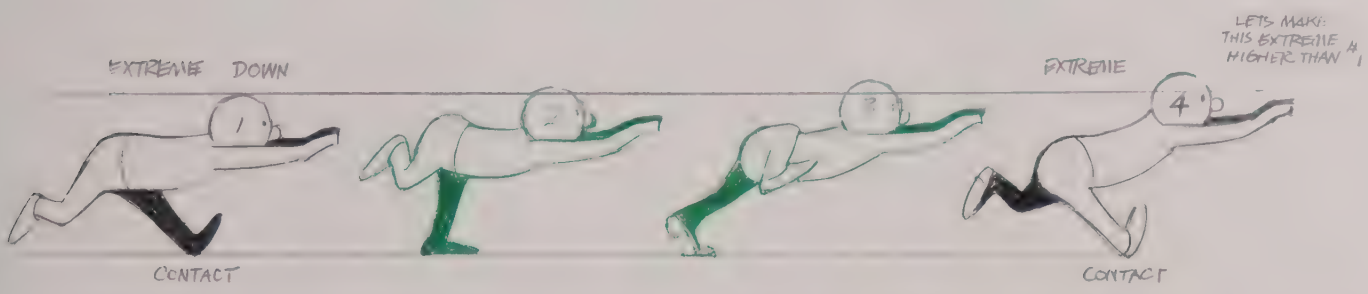


THERE REALLY ISN'T A PASS POSITION HERE. IT'S IMPLIED. WE'RE FAVOURING EACH EXTREME.

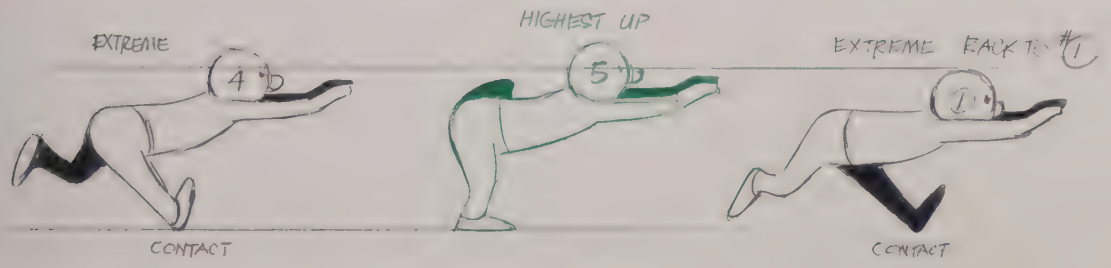
AND WE CAN STILL GO EVEN FASTER -

WE CAN USE 3 POSITIONS FOR the FIRST STRIDE and ONLY TWO FOR the NEXT

HERE'S OUR FIRST 3 POSITIONS - the CONTACT EXTREMES WITH TWO INBETWEEN POSITIONS #2 & #3

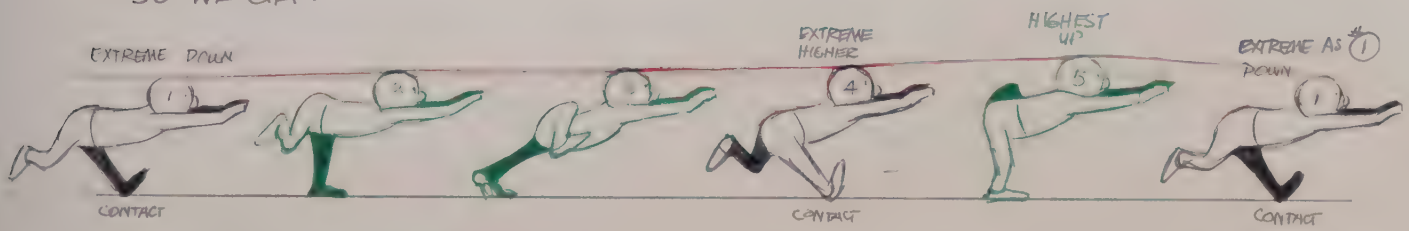


THEN TAKE EXTREME #4 AND ONLY MAKE ONE INBETWEEN BETWEEN IT and EXTREME #1 (AND MAKE IT)



THIS GIVES US VIRTUALLY 10 STEPS IN A SECOND ($9\frac{1}{2}$ ACTUALLY) - AWFULLY FAST -

SO WE GET:



AND WE CAN SWITCH FROM ONE SIDE TO the OTHER WITH the SHORTER OR LONGER STEP -

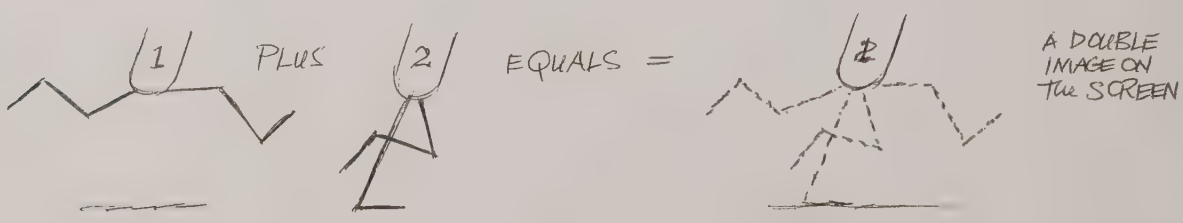
The 2 DRAWING RUN - the FASTEST POSSIBLE RUN.. (AT LEAST WITH FILM RUNNING AT 24 FRAMES PER SECOND) = 12 STEPS per Sec.

IN the 40's DIRECTOR TEX AVERY PUSHED the LIMITS - INVENTIVELY DEFYING GRAVITY - GOING FASTER and FASTER FOR HIS SPLIT SECOND GAGS - and THEY WANTED TO GET 2 DRAWING RUNS THAT WORKED.

CRUDELY, IT'S -

WITH A TWO DRAWING RUN -

THE PROBLEM WITH THE LEG ACTION IS THAT IT'S GOING TO FLICKER AND LOOK LIKE WHAT IT IS - JUST 2 DRAWINGS SHOWING MORE OR LESS AT ONCE.

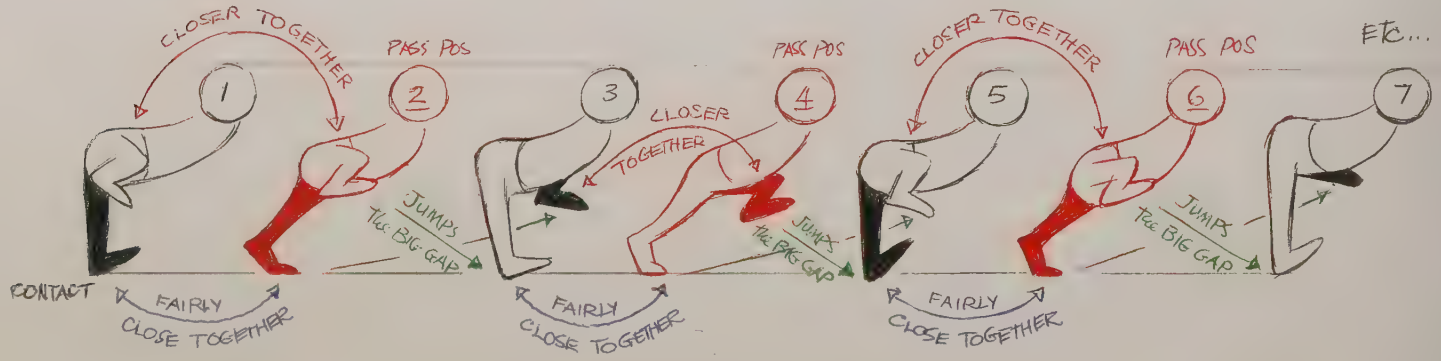


BUT THEY STILL WANTED TO GET THE HUMANLY IMPOSSIBLE SPEED -

ONE SOLUTION IS NOT TO PUT THE PASSING POSITION OF THE LEGS IN THE MIDDLE - BUT TO FAVOUR TWO OF THE LEG POSITIONS CLOSER TOGETHER...

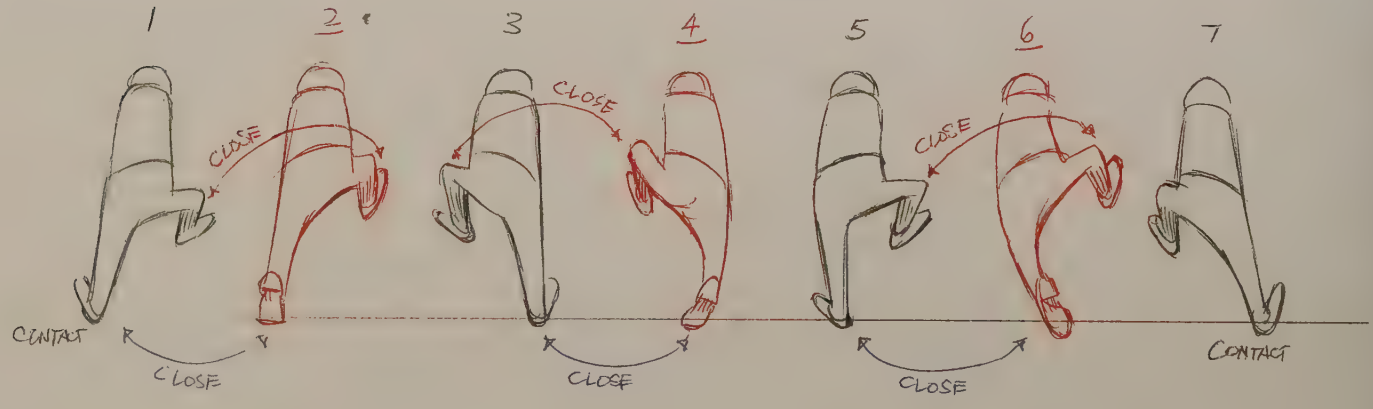
SO THAT THE EYE READS THE TWO DRAWINGS and THEN IT JUMPS THE BIG GAP.

I.E. -



AND THE WEIGHT-BEARING FEET ARE ALSO PRETTY CLOSE TOGETHER.

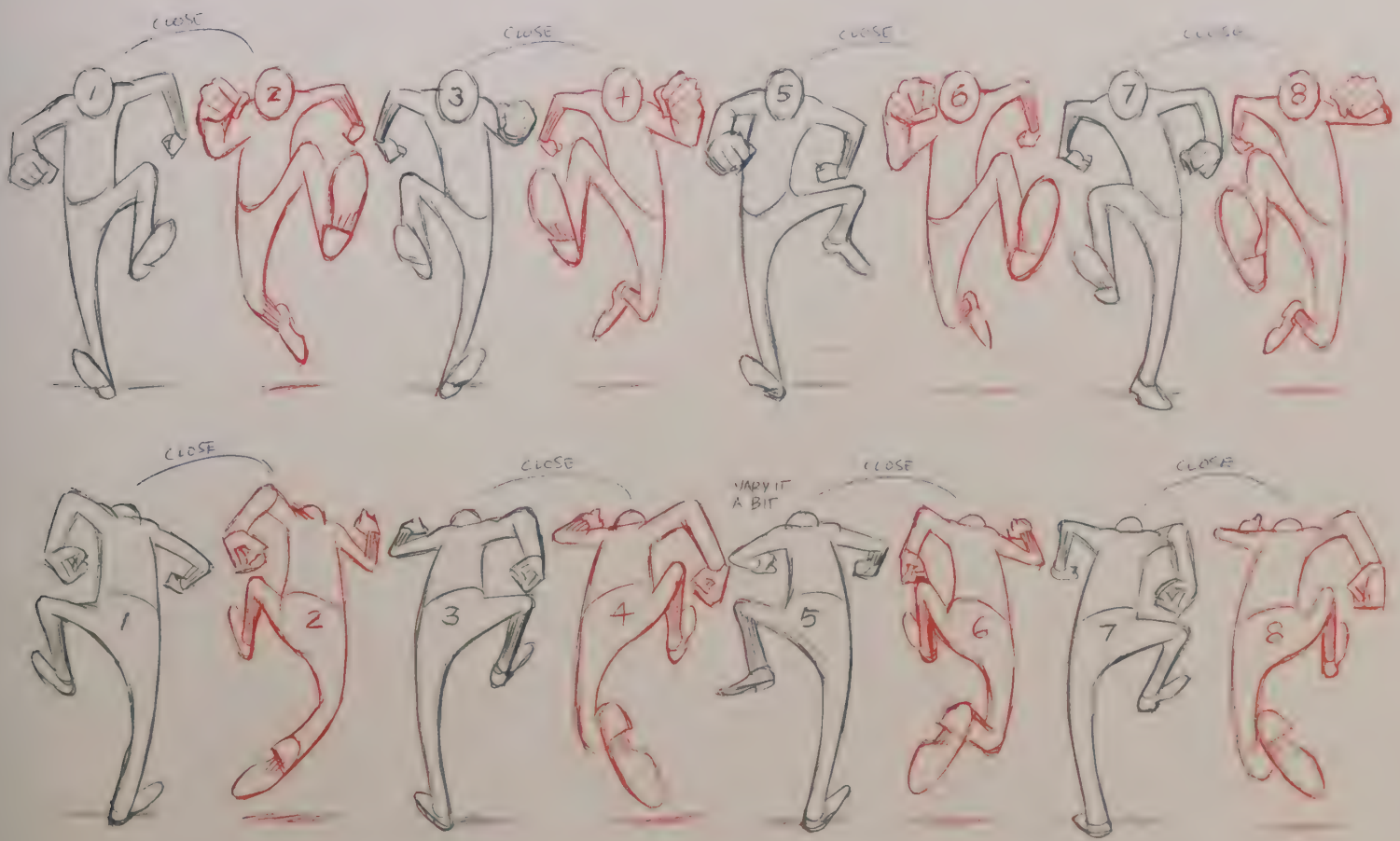
VERY CLEVER!
AND IT'S THE SAME THING WITH A BACK OR FRONT VIEW -



THE SAME IDEA WORKS PRETTY NICELY ON A 3/4 VIEW -

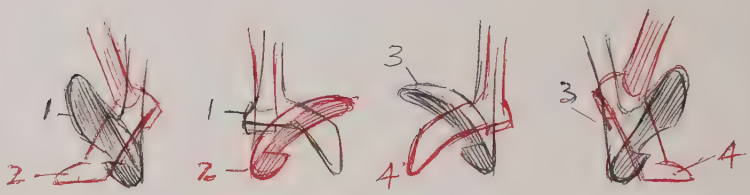
BUT FOR A SIDE VIEW WITH A TALLER FIGURE WITH LONGER LEGS IT'S BEST TO REVERT TO A 3 DRAWING RUN.

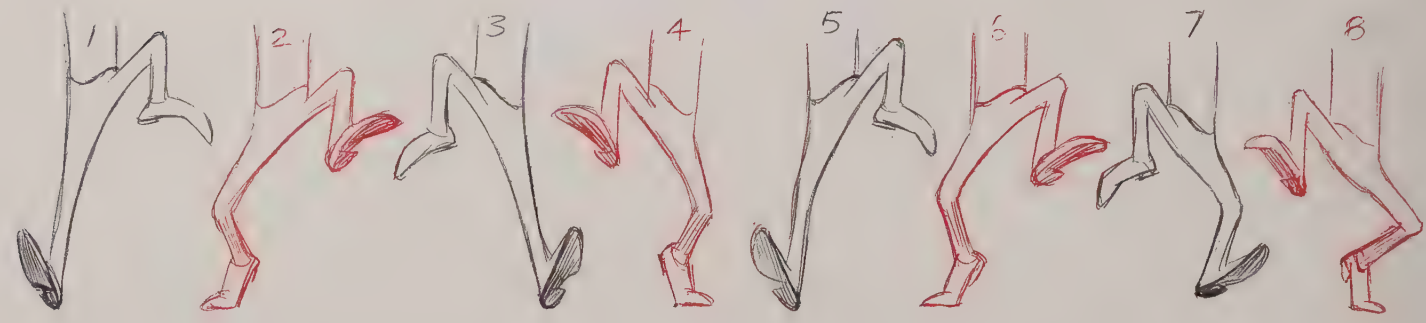
BUT FROM THE FRONT OR THE BACK VIEW THE 2 DRAWING DEVICE WORKS ASTONISHINGLY WELL. NOT POSSIBLE, BUT BELIEVABLE... 12 STEPS IN A SECOND!



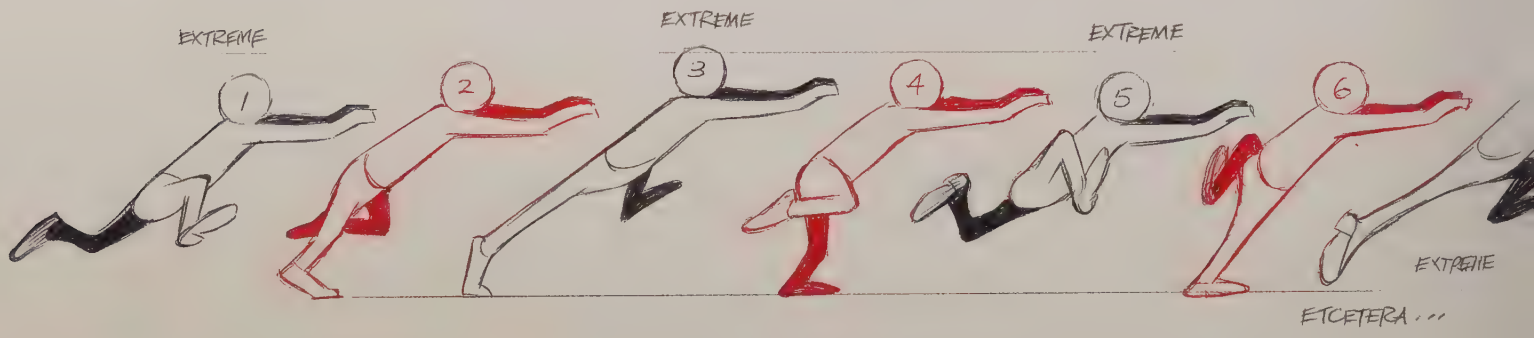
SO, THE ACTUAL PASSING POSITION IS OMITTED - IMPLIED - BY THE 2 CLOSE TOGETHER DRAWINGS AT EACH END - AND THE EYE JUMPS THE GAP WHERE THE PASS POSITION WOULD NORMALLY BE.

THE SAME THING CAN BE HELPED ALONG BY OVERLAPPING CONTRARY SHAPES -

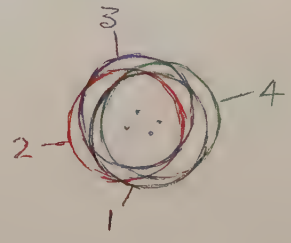




ANOTHER WAY TO DO the 2 DRAWING RUN IS TO KEEP VARYING the SILHOUETTES AS WE GO ALONG - THEN the EYE READS IT AS A SORT OF CONVINCING SCRAMBLE -

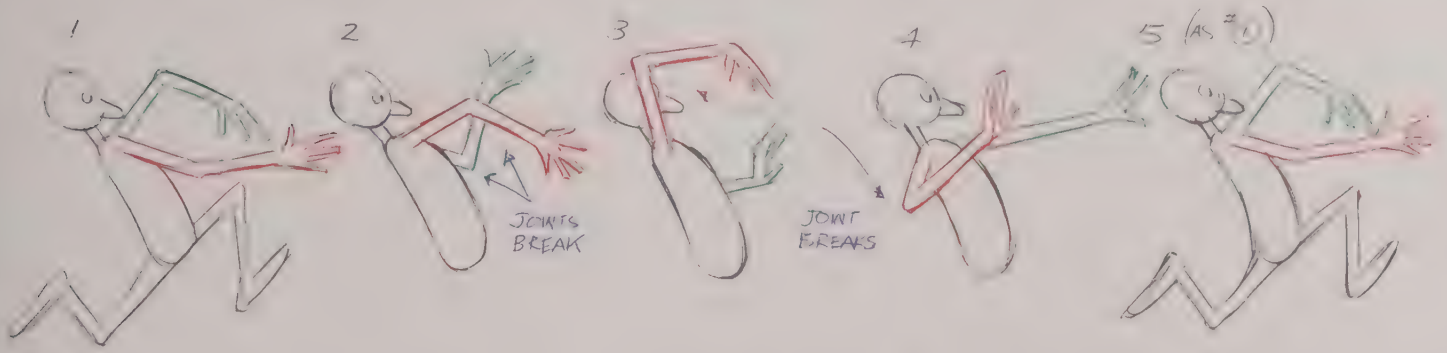


ANOTHER TACTIC IS TO FLAIL the ARMS AROUND FRANTICALLY - PROGRESSING the BODY and HEAD LEAN FORWARD AS SHE GOES - OR BACKWARDS - TO DIVERT the EYE and TAKE the CURSE OFF the 2 DRAWING 'FLICKERING' FOOT ACTION.



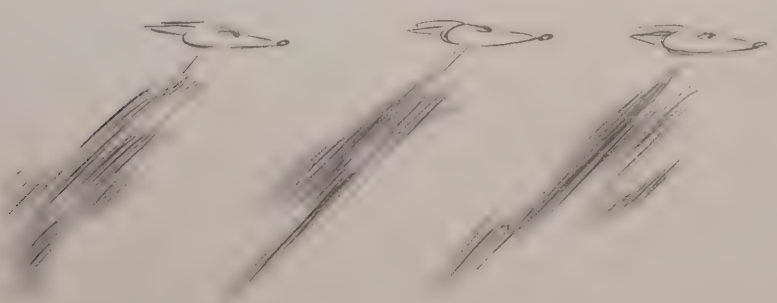
the HEAD COULD MOVE IN A TIGHT CIRCLE - USING A MINIMUM OF 4 DRAWINGS TO DO IT. - AND THAT CIRCLE ACTION COULD ALSO PROGRESS FORWARD - OR BACK -

INCIDENTALLY, HERE'S A SUGGESTION OF A PATTERN FOR ARMS FLAILING DURING A RUN- (IF IT'S A RUN ON TWO'S - THE ARMS WOULD FLAIL TWICE AS SLOW AS THE RUN)



FOR A FINAL VARIATION ON A 2 DRAWING RUN - THE FASTEST POSSIBLE RUN - WE CAN GET INTO BLURS -

WE CAN HAVE JUST TWO DRAWINGS - (ON ONES)
BUT ITS QUITE EFFECTIVE TO FILM THESE ON 2 FRAME DISSOLVES →
SO THE DRAWINGS ARE ON TWOS - FOR 2 FRAMES EACH
BUT SOFTENED BY THE DISSOLVES -



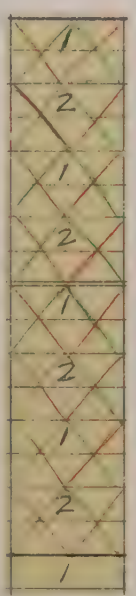
DISSOLVE the 1ST DRAWING OUT

and DISSOLVE IN 2ND DRAWING

THE RESULT IS THAT EVERY OTHER FRAME IS A 50/50 DOUBLE IMAGE EXPOSURE.

FRAME 1 IS IN FOCUS
FRAME 2 IS 50/50%
FRAME 3 IS IN FOCUS
FRAME 4 IS 50/50%
FRAME 5 IS IN FOCUS
ETC ETC

= GIVES A SILKY SOFTENING EFFECT



WE CAN, OF COURSE, ADD MORE BLUR POSITIONS.
I'VE FOUND THAT 2 FRAME DISSOLVES CAN BE USED IN ALL SORTS OF ACTION TO SOFTEN THINGS - ESPECIALLY WHEN THE ACTION IS CLOSE TOGETHER - IT ACTS AS A KIND OF VARNISH.

SUMMING UP ON RUNS:

The RECIPE

1 RUNS ARE ALWAYS ON ONES. (EXCEPT FOR THE 2 FRAME DISSOLVE DEVICE WHICH IS REALLY JUST A TRICK.

2 WE CAN DO EVERYTHING WE DO ON WALKS EXCEPT REDUCED - ROUGHLY BY HALF.

3 IS THE HEAD PUMPING UP and DOWN?
OR ROCKING SIDE TO SIDE?
OR REVOLVING IN A SMALL CIRCLE?

4 ARE the LEGS PUMPING UP and DOWN?
OR PUSHING OUT BROADLY?

5 ARE the ARMS TO BE CONFINED?
STIFF DOWN the BODY?
OR ARE THEY THRASHING AROUND IN BROAD ACTION?

6 WHAT IS the BELT LINE DOING?

7 SHOULD WE SPEND MORE TIME IN the AIR?
OR DO WE SPEND MORE TIME ON the GROUND?

8 WE SHOULD BE INVENTIVE, DARING, TAKE CHANCES!

9 THEN OF COURSE - WHO IS RUNNING?

- FAT?
- OLD?
- THIN?
- YOUNG?
- ATHLETE?
- UNCOORDINATED?
- SPINSTER?
- GLAMOUR QUEEN?
- COP?
- GANGSTER?
- CRIPPLE?
- BISHOP?
- FINANCIER?
- THIEF?
- CHILD?
- DRUNK?
- HIPPY?
- The QUEEN OF ENGLAND?

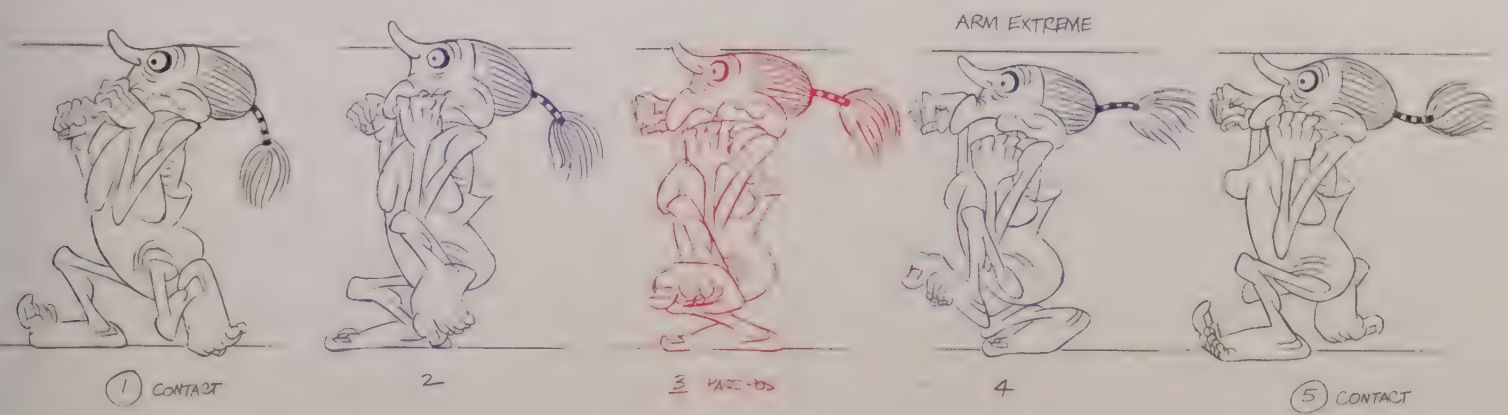
10 AND OF COURSE, WHAT ARE THEY RUNNING FROM - OR TO? AND TO WHAT PURPOSE...
WILL HAVE A DRAMATIC EFFECT ON THE RUN.

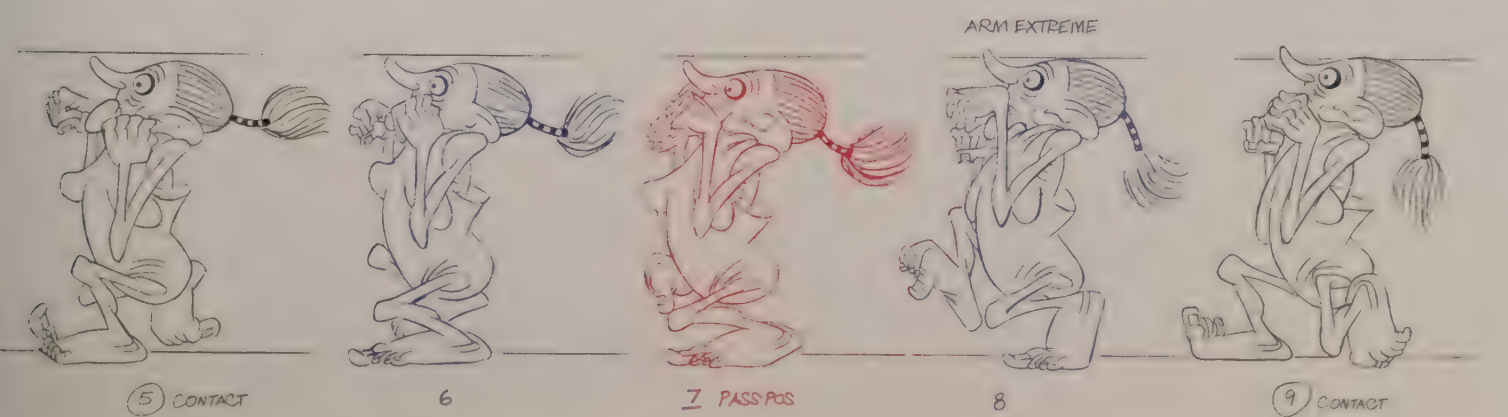
HERE'S AN EXTENDED (RUN, JUMP, SKIP and LEAP) ON the NEXT 6 PAGES (ALL ON ONES)

THIS OLD LADY LOOKS A BIT LIKE AN ANIMATED ROAD MAP, BUT HER ACTION SITS RIGHT ON the BASICS - EVERYTHING WE'VE BEEN TALKING ABOUT.

FIRST WE BUILD HER STARTING RUN - ON 4's - BEGINNING WITH the CONTACTS #1, 5 and 9:

THEN BREAK IT ALL DOWN -



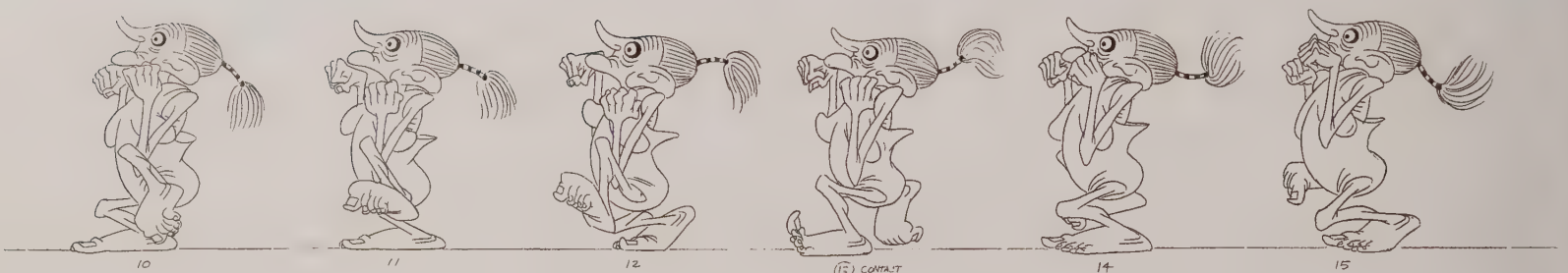


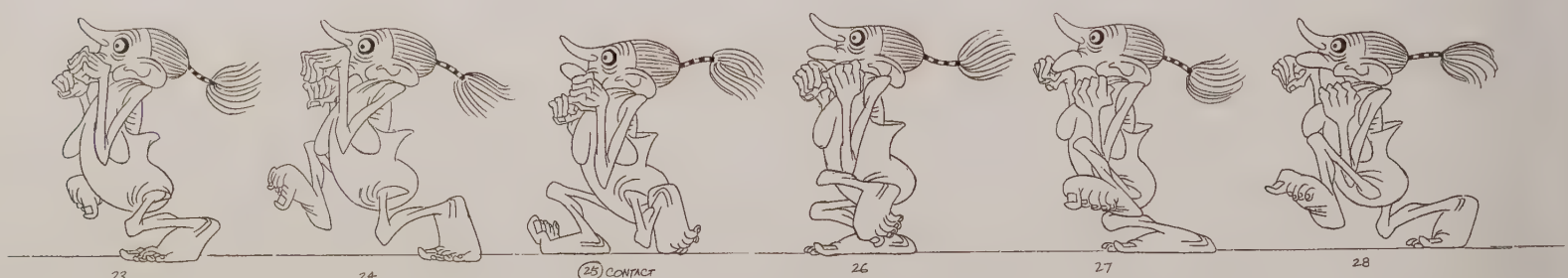
SHE STARTS OUT WITH A VERY CONTAINED OLD PERSON'S RUN - LIKE AN EX-ATHLETE.

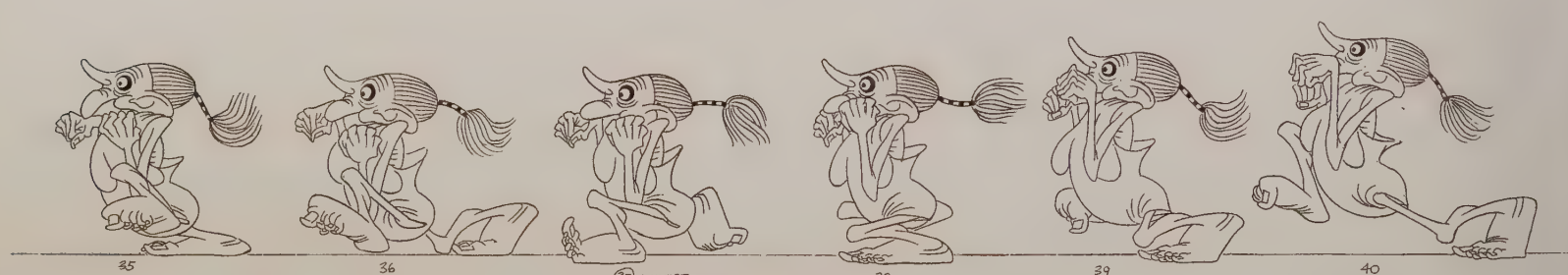
HER HEAD GOES UP and DOWN and AROUND IN A TIGHT CIRCLE (TIP OF NOSE)
AND HER HAND ACTION - EXTREMES #4 and 8 - PUNCHES FORWARD - — LIKE A BOXER'S.

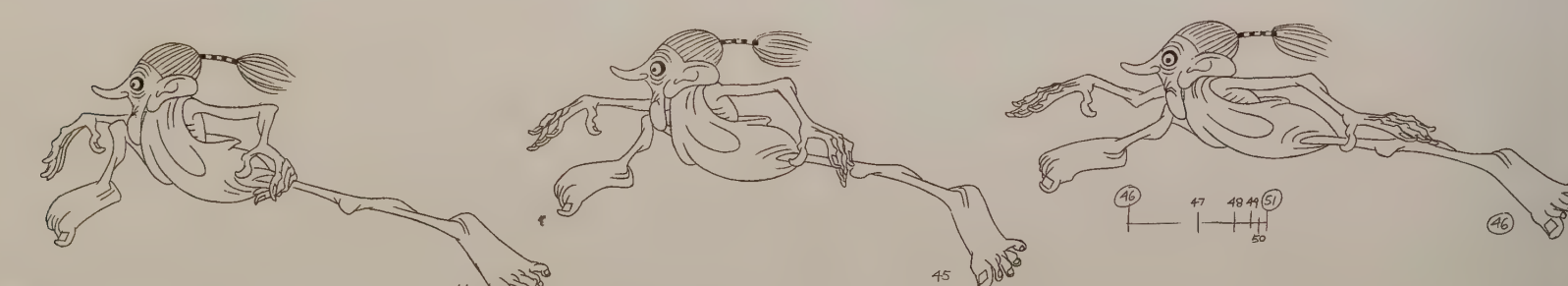
HAVING WORKED OUT the BODY, HEAD, LEG and ARM ACTION, WE ADD the BOBBING PIGTAIL and CHIN ACTION and FLAPPING ANCIENT BREASTS LATER - AS USUAL, DOING ONE THING AT A TIME.

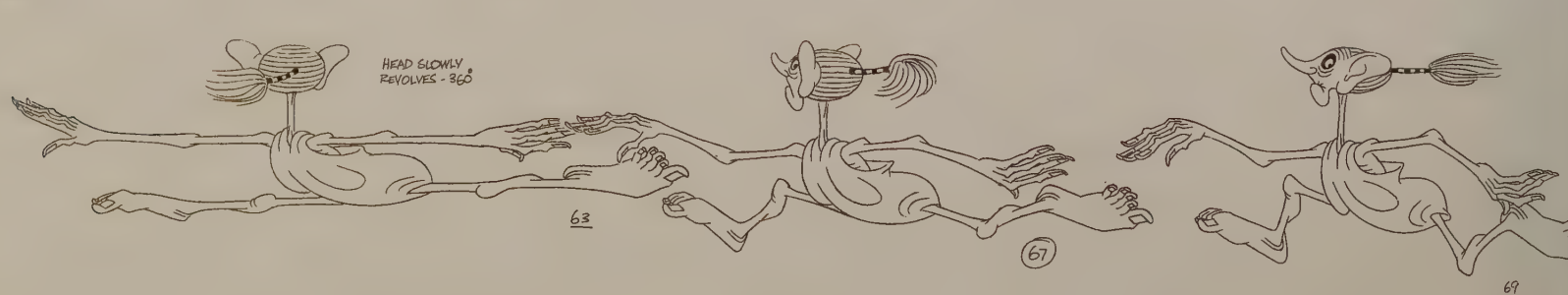
SHE GOES UP and DOWN MORE AS SHE TAKES BIGGER STEPS -



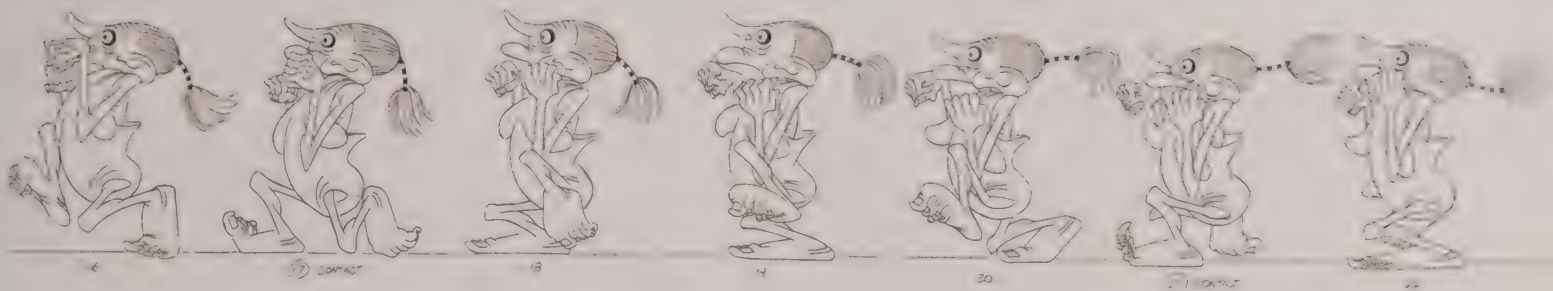




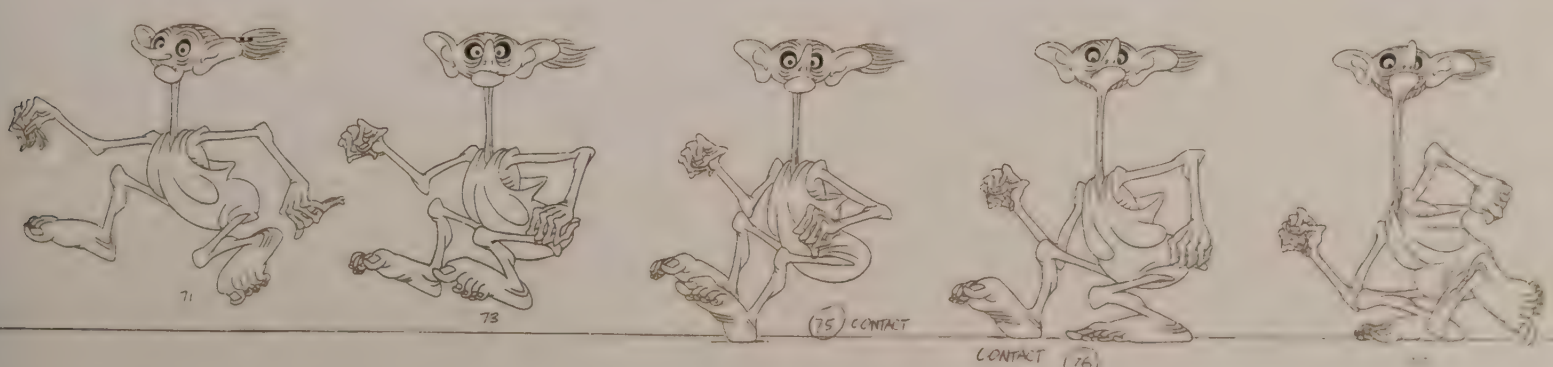


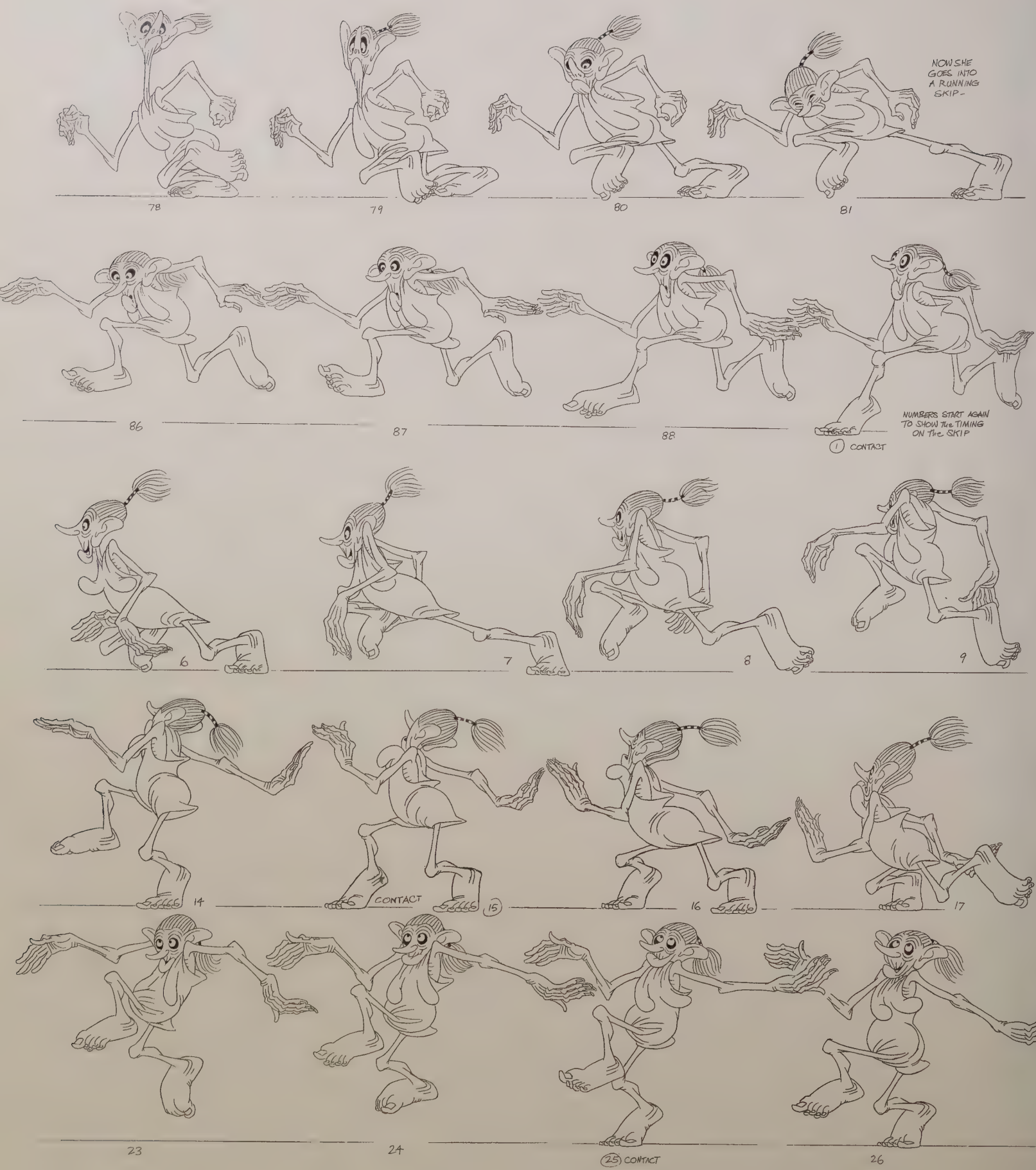


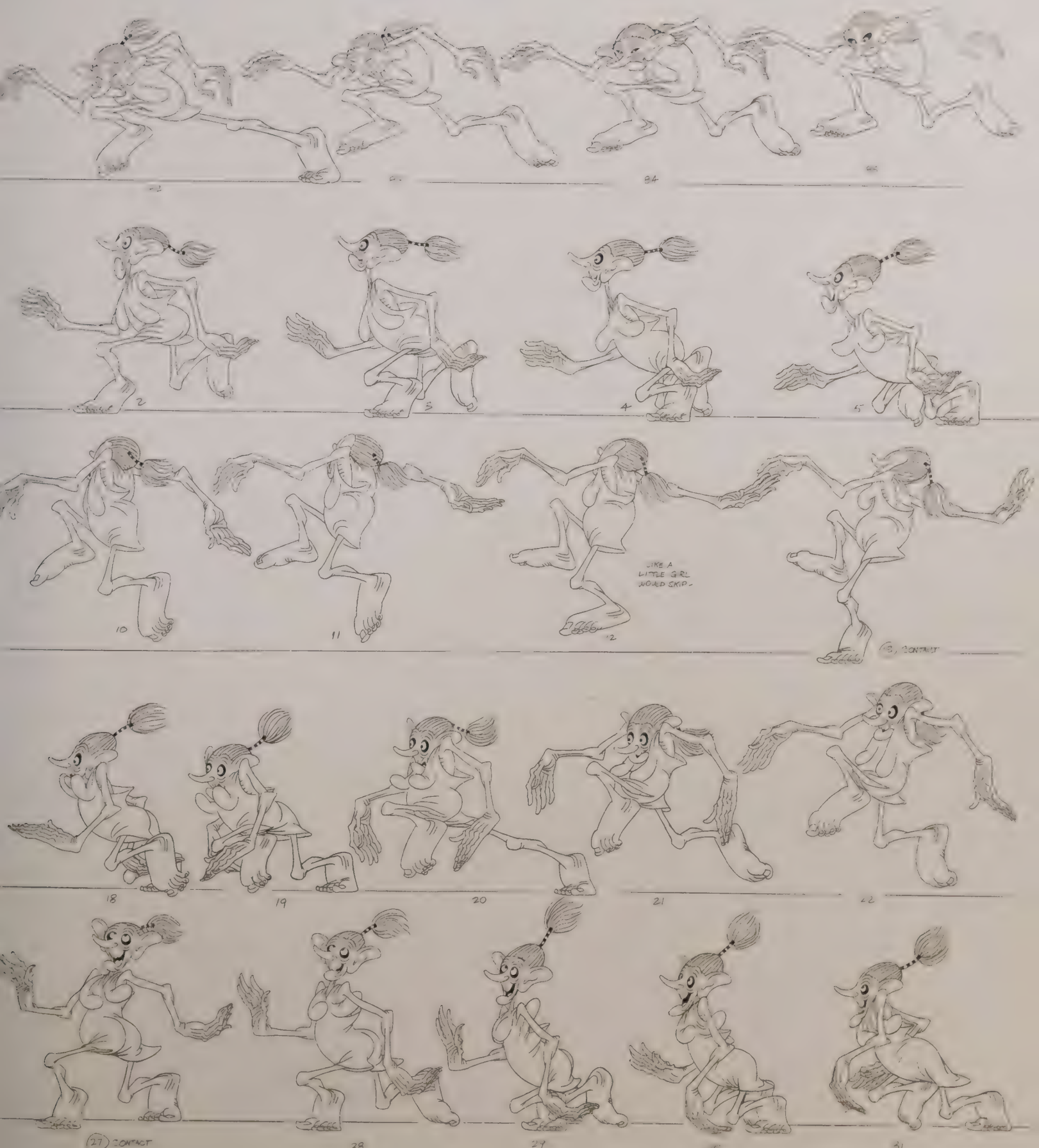
AND SHE GOES LOWER AS SHE PREPARES TO JUMP...

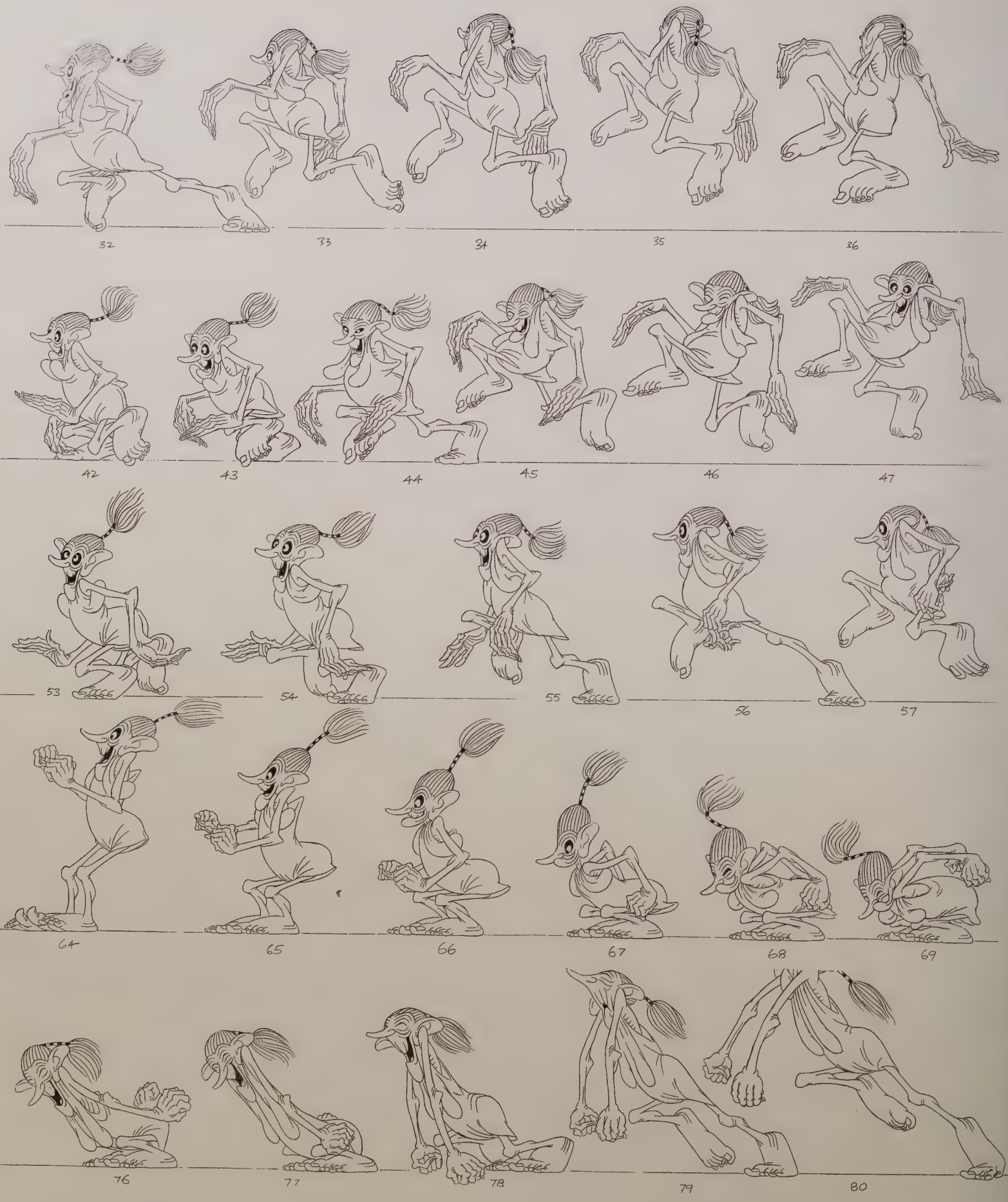


SHE DOES AN OLD-FASHIONED 1930's MID AIR GLIDE -




NOW SHE GOES INTO A RUNNING SKIP-
78
79
80
81
86
87
88
NUMBERS START AGAIN TO SHOW the TIMING ON the SKIP
1 CONTACT
6
7
8
9
14
CONTACT
15
16
17
23
24
25 CONTACT
26

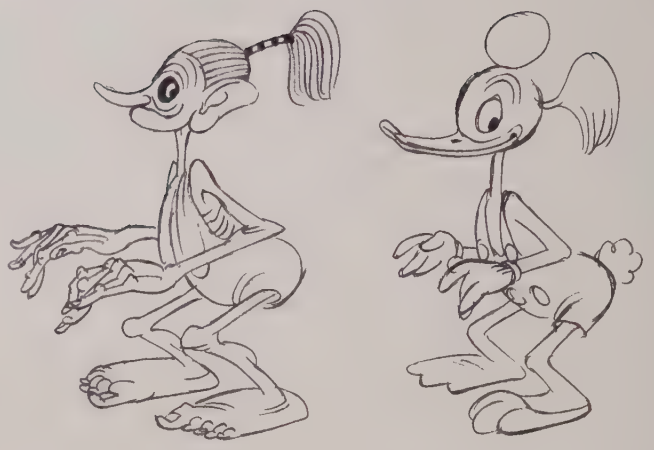

LIKE A
LITTLE GIRL
WOULD SKIP-
CONTACT
CONTACT


32
33
34
35
36
42
43
44
45
46
47
53
54
55
56
57
64
65
66
67
68
69
76
77
78
79
80

INCIDENTALLY -
A RULE OF THUMB:

WE NEED AT LEAST
5 DRAWINGS
TO TAKE A FIGURE
OUT OF THE SCREEN -
OR INTO THE SCREEN -
OR ACROSS THE SCREEN.

THIS OLD LADY MAY LOOK A BIT LIKE A WALKING ANATOMY LESSON - BUT SHE'S REALLY A DUCK/MOUSE/RABBIT/CAT FORMULA. SHE'S A STANDARD '40's HOLLYWOOD PEAR SHAPE, BUT WITH KNEES and ELBOWS - and WITH the FLOPPY HAIR ETC. THERE'S A CONTRAST BETWEEN SOFT and HARD BITS.



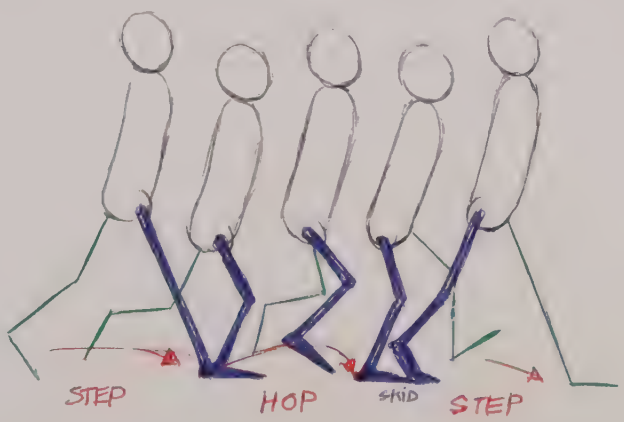
HERE'S the PATTERN OF HER GIRLISH SKIP -

RUNS IN and HOPS FROM HER LEFT FOOT AND LANDS ON the SAME LEFT FOOT. 2 FRAMES LATER HER RIGHT FOOT LANDS AND SHE HOPS FROM IT and LANDS ON the SAME RIGHT FOOT - THEN IMMEDIATELY PUTS DOWN the LEFT FOOT and HOPS FROM IT, LANDING ON the SAME LEFT FOOT, Then SAME WITH theRIGHT, ETC. (HER BODY KEEPS REVERSING ITSELF)

SKIPS

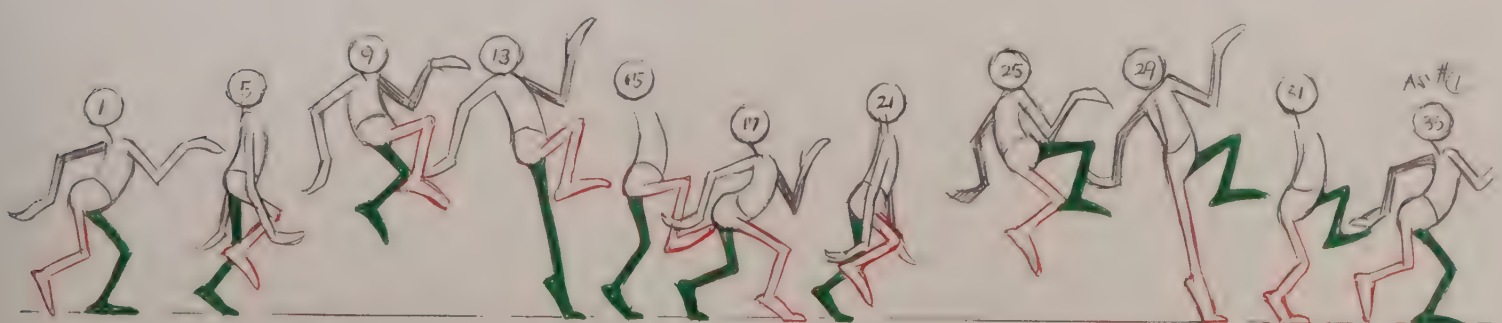
A SKIP IS TWO BOUNCES ON ONE FOOT
THERE ARE ALL KINDS OF SKIPS BUT THE BASIC ONE IS
STEP-HOP, STEP-HOP, STEP-HOP, STEP-HOP, etc.

WHEN WE GO FORWARD OUR FOOT SKIDS A BIT.



WE STEP AND HOP ON ONE FOOT -
THEN WE CHANGE FEET and HOP ON the OTHER FOOT
USUALLY, WE TAKE TWICE AS LONG ON the STEP
AS WE DO ON the SKIP.

OR WE HOP BROADLY LIKE the OLD LADY'S SKIP (HOPPING ON 16's - ON ONES)



MANY THINGS CAN HAPPEN WITHIN the ACTION — MOVEMENT OF ARMS, HEAD, ETC
TO MAKE IT INTERESTING -

THERE ARE SO MANY VARIATIONS - VARIOUS TYPES - SO MANY POSSIBILITIES.
A LITTLE GIRL SKIPPING ROPE USES A DOUBLE BOUNCE. WITH QUITE DEFINITE ACCENTS.
A PRIZEFIGHTER SKIPPING ROPE HARDLY LEAVES the GROUND. HARDLY ANY MOVEMENTS.
THERE'S A DOUBLE BOUNCE ON EACH FOOT. - VERY SLIGHT, VERY SLICK.

LET'S SAY WE DO A SUBTLE SKIP WALK

WE WANT THE FIGURE TO STEP and HOP, CHANGE FEET, STEP and HOP, CHANGE FEET, STEP and HOP, etc.
HAVING ACTED IT OUT (WHICH I'VE JUST DONE - HOPPING AROUND THE ROOM TO DO THIS)
WHAT DO WE DO FIRST?
Answer: The CONTACTS.
WHICH ONES? THERE'LL BE SEVERAL...
Answer: The IMPORTANT ONES - AS WITH A NORMAL WALK, MAKE THE TWO MAIN CONTACT POSITIONS.
OK, WHAT'S THE TEMPO?
Answer: WELL, TO ACCOMODATE THE SKIPS LET'S DO IT ON 24's (1 SECOND FOR EACH FULL STRIDE)

OK, NOW WHAT?
Answer: WELL, WE'VE GOT 24 FRAMES. LET'S PUT IN THE NEXT 2 STEP CONTACTS. LET'S MAKE THEM 8 FRAMES APART - THAT GIVES US 3 CONTACTS PER SECOND (WHICH IS ABOUT WHAT IT WAS WHEN I HOPPED AROUND THE ROOM)

LET'S LEAVE OUT THE ARM ACTION FOR NOW.

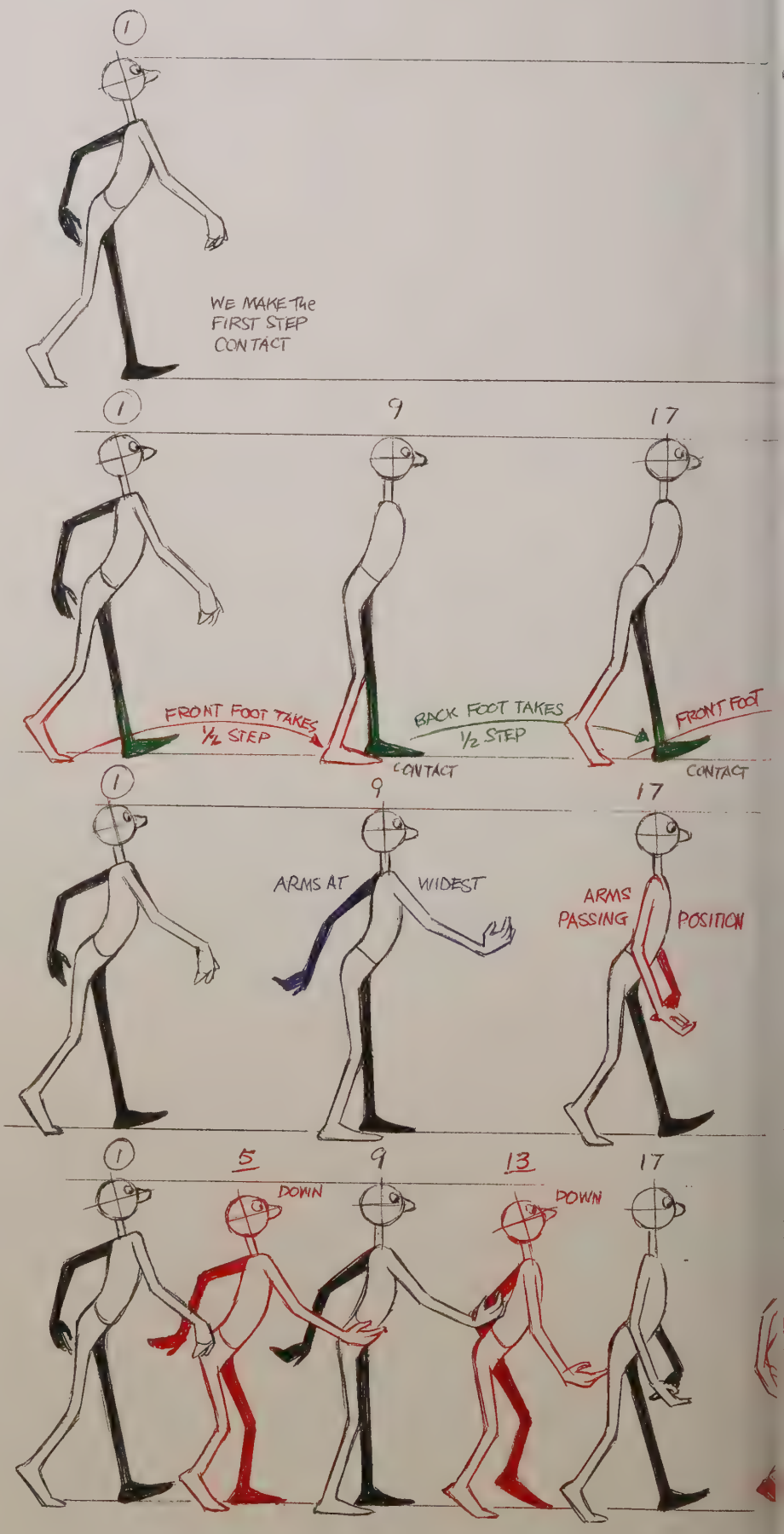
FINE, NOW ALL WE HAVE TO DO IS PUT IN THE PASSING POSITIONS BETWEEN EACH CONTACT...

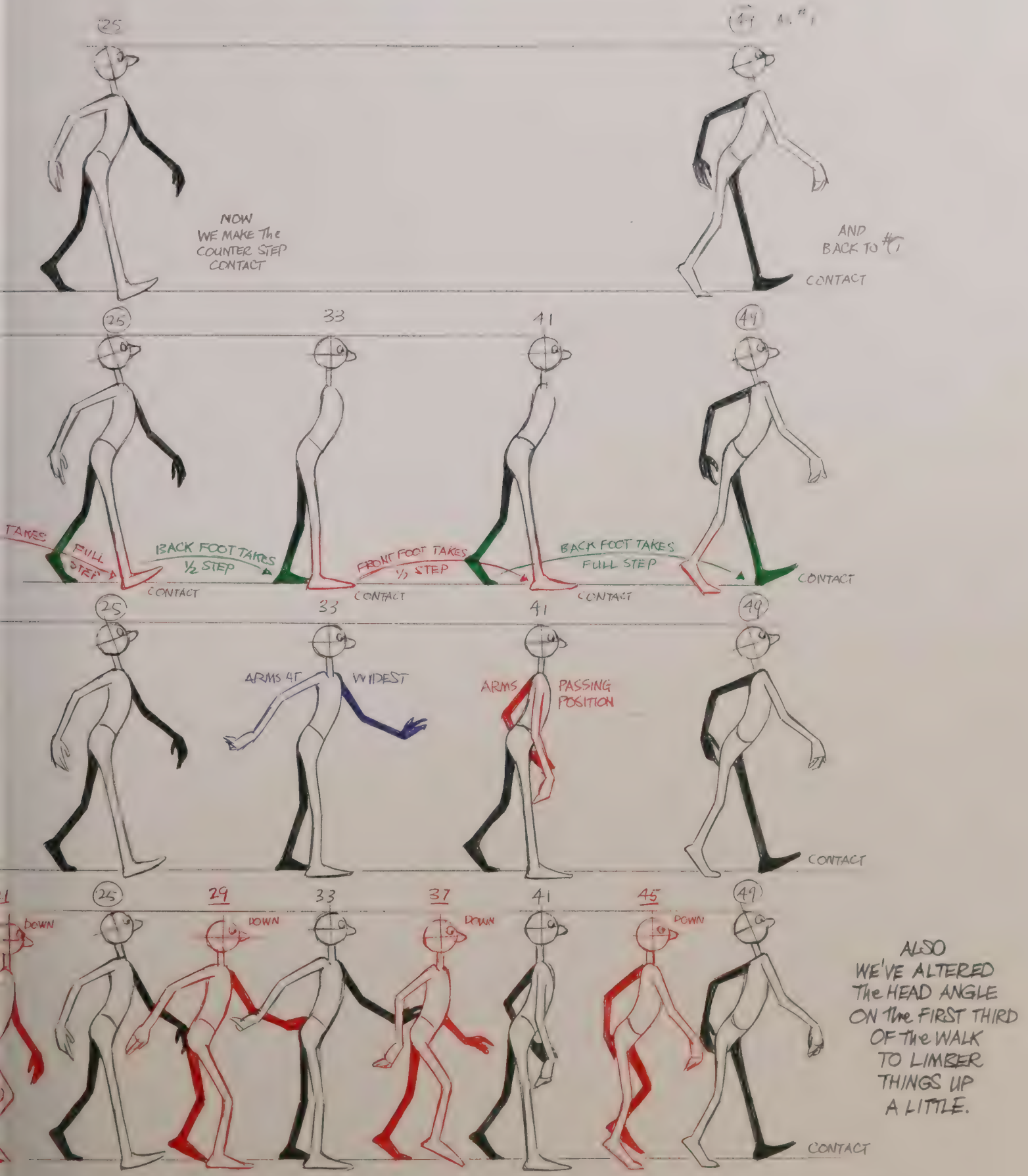
BUT WAIT A MINUTE, LET'S BE CLEVER - LET'S BREAK THE ACTION UP A BIT - LET'S MAKE THE ARM SWING AT IT'S WIDEST ON THE 2ND CONTACT POSITIONS #9 and #33

AND THAT WILL MAKE CONTACTS #17 and #41 THE PASSING POSITIONS FOR THE ARMS.

OK, NOW WE'LL PUT IN THE PASSING POSITIONS. THEY WOULD NATURALLY GO DOWN A BIT BETWEEN EACH CONTACT.
AND THAT GIVES US 3 DOWNS PER SECOND GIVING US A TRIPLE BOUNCE DURING EACH OVERALL STRIDE - NICE.

NOW ALL WE HAVE TO DO IS MAKE INTELLIGENT INBETWEENS CUSHIONING THE ARM SWINGS AT EACH END. THIS WORKS WELL ON TWO'S (BUT WE COULD POLISH IT FURTHER BY ADDING ONES)





ALSO WE'VE ALTERED The HEAD ANGLE ON The FIRST THIRD OF The WALK TO LIMBER THINGS UP A LITTLE.

WE COULD ALTER THE TIMING ON A SKIP (A SKIP IS KIND OF LIKE A RHYTHMIC DANCE - A WALKING DANCE.)
IF WE HAD THIS -

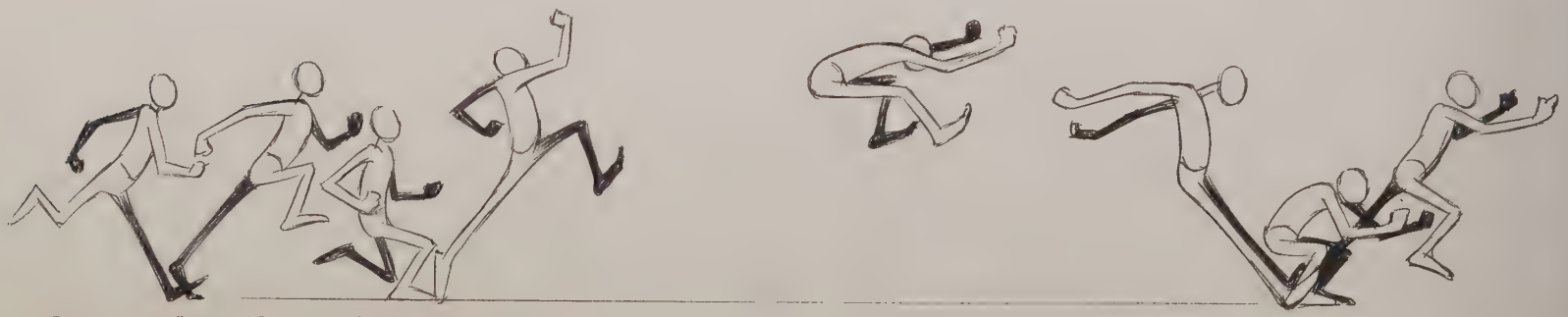
8 FRAMES 8 FMS — HOP HOP — Change foot — 8 8 HOP HOP — Change foot — 8 8 HOP HOP — Change foot — 8 8 HOP HOP

BUT TO CHANGE THE RHYTHM SLIGHTLY, IT COULD BE -

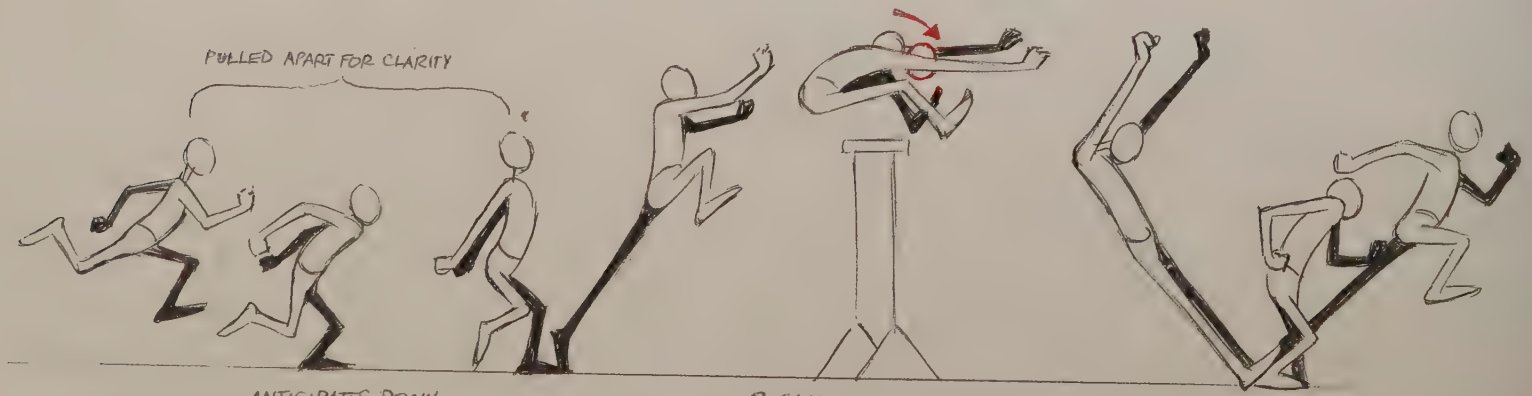
8 8 HOP HOP — Change foot — 10 FRAMES 8 HOP HOP — Change foot — 8 8 HOP HOP — Change foot — 10 FMS 8 HOP HOP

JUMPS

IN A BROAD JUMP THE PERSON STARTS WITH A RUN AND WHILE RUNNING WORKS INTO AN ANTICIPATION. (NICE TO HAVE THE SPINE SHAPE KEEP REVERSING)



SAME SORT OF THING IN A HURDLE. THE RUNNER IS MAKING PROGRESS - BUT PAUSES JUST LONG ENOUGH TO CLEAR THE HURDLE - QUITE SIMILAR TO A HORSE IN A HORSE SHOW -



HE'LL REACH AND STRETCH AND LAND AND GO INTO A RUN AGAIN. THERE IS ANTICIPATION BUT IT DOESN'T LAST VERY LONG.

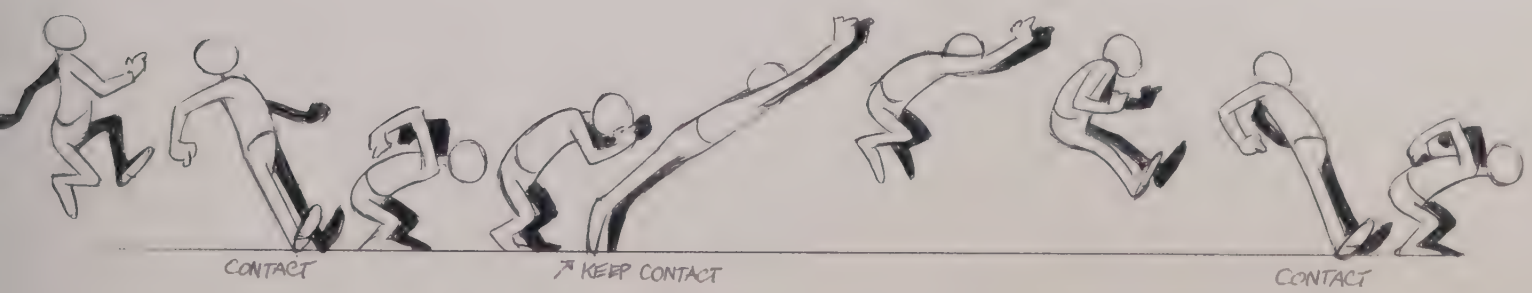
GET LOTS OF LEAN INTO the BODIES.

THERES AN OLD 'GOLDEN AGE' ANIMATION MAXIM:
'WHEN YOU THINK YOU'VE GONE FAR ENOUGH - GO TWICE AS FAR!'

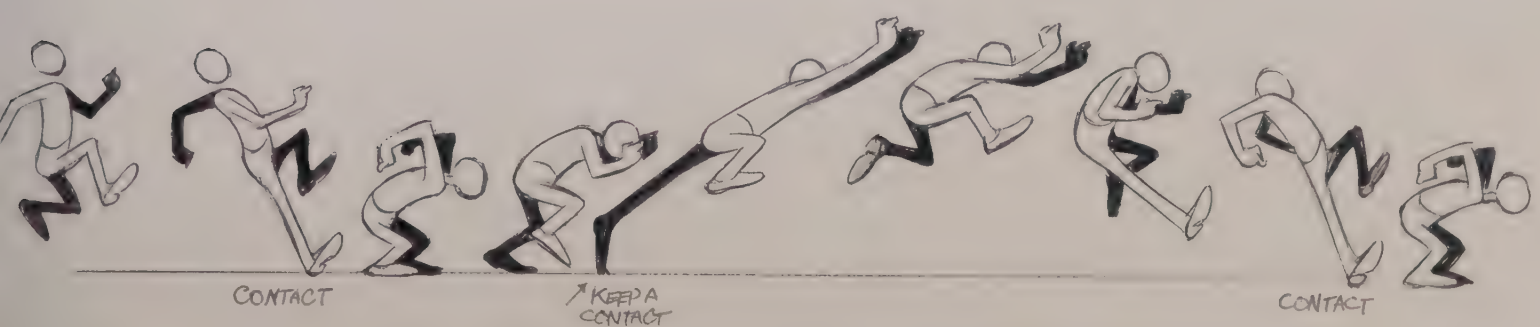
THEN THEY SAY, 'IF ITS TOO FAR - YOU CAN ALWAYS PULL IT BACK LATER!'
WELL, I NEVER SAW ANYONE PULL IT BACK.

BEING BELLIGERENT, I'D SAY, 'WELL YOU CAN ALWAYS INCREASE IT LATER.'
(AND I NEVER SAW ANYONE INCREASE IT LATER EITHER.)
ANYWAY, IT HELPS TO GET LOTS OF LEAN INTO the BODIES.

A 'CARTOONY' JUMP LIKE THIS WORKS FINE, ARM ACTION IS GOOD, LEGS ARE OK.



BUT LET'S DELAY ONE OF the LEGS -



- HELPS BREAK IT UP WITH MORE ACTION WITHIN the JUMP.

(WEIGHT) ON A JUMP

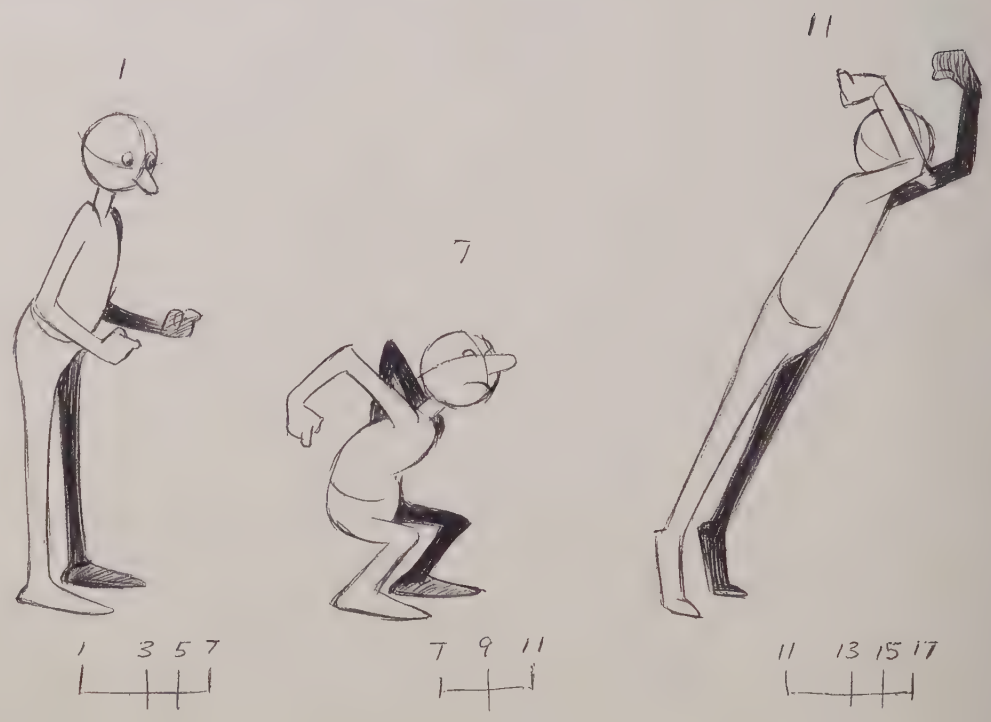
TO AVOID FLOATING and GIVE WEIGHT -
IF A PERSON JUMPS IN the AIR
WE'VE GOT TO GET ACTION WITHIN the GENERAL ACTION.
GET the ARMS GOING
OR the FEET GOING
WITHIN the GENERAL JUMP.
THIS HELPS GIVE IT WEIGHT and AVOIDS FLOATING.

LET'S TAKE 2 JUMPS STARTING FROM A STANDING POSITION:
BOTH TAKE ABOUT THE SAME TIME = 1½ SECONDS TO DO THE JUMP.

IT'S GOING TO BE EASIER TO SHOW THIS WITH 'CARTOON CHARACTER' PROPORTIONS.

THIS 1ST JUMP IS ON TWO'S.
(BUT OF COURSE, ONES COULD BE ADDED IN TO 'VARNISH' IT.)

NOTHING WRONG WITH IT - IT FUNCTIONS WELL. I LIKE IT BECAUSE IT'S NOT OVERANIMATED. - SIMPLE, CLEAR and SOLID.



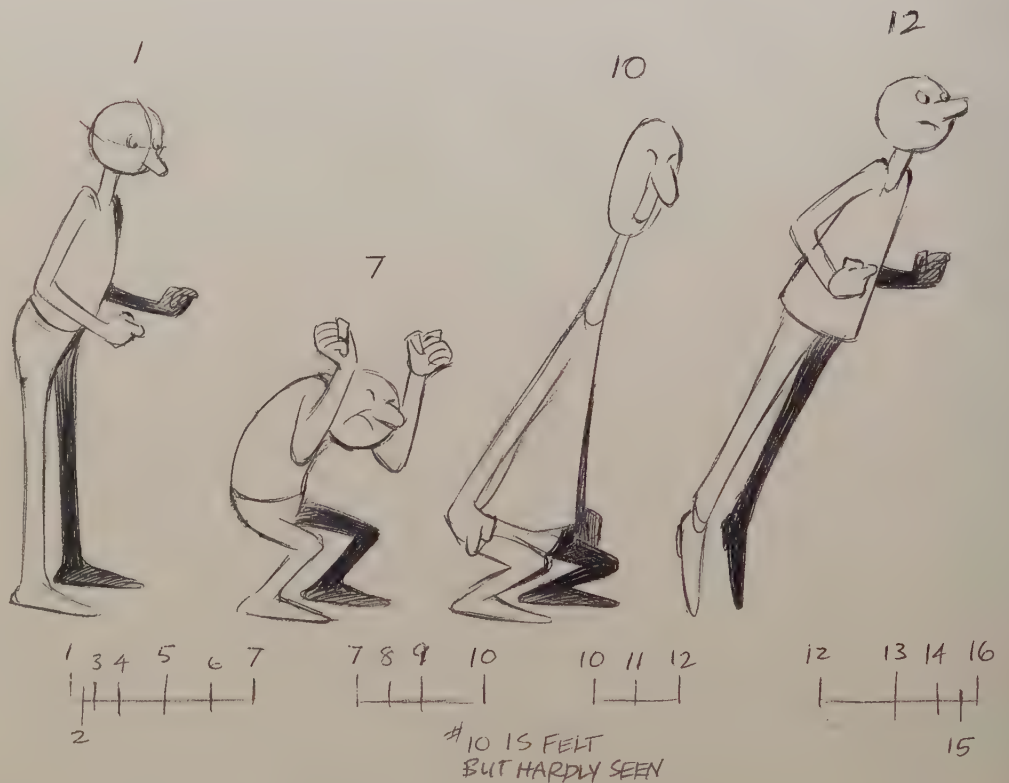
BUT NOW LET'S LOOSEN THE WHOLE THING UP -

WE CAN GO QUITE FAR BY PLANNING IT ON ONES and ADDING IN

MORE STRETCH -
MORE COMPRESSION -
DELAYED PARTS -
MORE ARM REVERSALS -
SECONDARY ACTION -
SHIRT, ANY EXTRA BITS.

THE RESULT IS MUCH MORE FLUID and LOOSE (and cartoony)

IT'S ALL A MATTER OF TASTE. IT'S WHAT YOU LIKE and HOW MUCH OR HOW LITTLE YOU USE THESE DEVICES TO GET YOUR RESULT.



17
23
COULD DELAY A FOOT -
37
27
17 19 21 23
23 25 27
27 29 31 33 37 35
16
20
22
32
40
26
16 18 19 20 17
20 21 22
22 23 24 26 25
26 28 24 30 31 32 27
32 34 36 38 40 (ON TWOS)
AGAIN, #20 IS FELT BUT HARDLY SEEN

1887 Eadweard Muybridge `HUMAN AND ANIMAL LOCOMOTION´

The MUYBRIDGE BOOKS ARE A TREASURE TROVE OF ACTION INFORMATION. THERE'S NEVER BEEN ANYTHING LIKE THEM BEFORE OR SINCE. SHOOTING the ACTION IN FRONT OF BACKGROUND GRIDS SHOWS US JUST WHERE the UPS and the DOWNS ARE ON the DIFFERENT PARTS OF the BODY.

FLEXIBILITY

AS I SEE IT, THERE ARE 2 BIG ANIMATION FLAWS –

WE EITHER HAVE The 'KING KONG' EFFECT
WHERE EVERYTHING MOVES AROUND
The SAME AMOUNT

(OR)

EVERYTHING IS FLASHING AROUND
ALL OVER The PLACE

(SO)

WE WANT TO HAVE A STABLE IMAGE
and STILL HAVE FLEXIBILITY

(AND)

THIS IS HOW WE GET IT:

The FOLLOWING DEVICES ARE GUARANTEED TO LIMBER UP, LOOSEN UP and GIVE 'SNAP' and VITALITY TO OUR PERFORMANCE WHILE KEEPING The FIGURE STABLE and SOLID.

WE'VE ALREADY INTRODUCED SOME OF THESE DEVICES WITH WALKS and RUNS, BUT I WANT TO TAKE EACH OF THEM SEPARATELY and DIG INTO THEM.

FIRST, **The BREAKDOWN**

A GREAT WAY TO GET FLEXIBILITY IS WHERE WE'RE GOING TO PLACE

The BREAKDOWN DRAWING
OR PASSING POSITION
OR MIDDLE POSITION
OR INTERMEDIATE POSITION
(WHATEVER YOU WANT TO CALL IT)

- BETWEEN 2 EXTREMES.

WHERE DO WE GO IN the MIDDLE? CRUCIAL! AS WE'VE SEEN WITH the WALKS, IT GIVES CHARACTER TO the MOVE. IT'S A TRAVELLER - A TRANSITIONAL POSITION. AND WHERE WE PUT IT IS SO IMPORTANT. IT'S the SECRET OF ANIMATION, I TELL YOU!

IT STOPS THINGS JUST GOING BORINGLY FROM A to B.
GO SOMEWHERE ELSE THAT'S INTERESTING EN ROUTE FROM A TO B.

EMERY HAWKINS, A MASTER ANIMATOR OF 'CHANGE' SAID TO ME,

"DICK, DONT GO FROM A TO B.
GO FROM A to X to B.
GO FROM A to G to B.
GO SOMEWHERE ELSE IN the MIDDLE!"

A SIMPLE, POWERFUL TOOL:

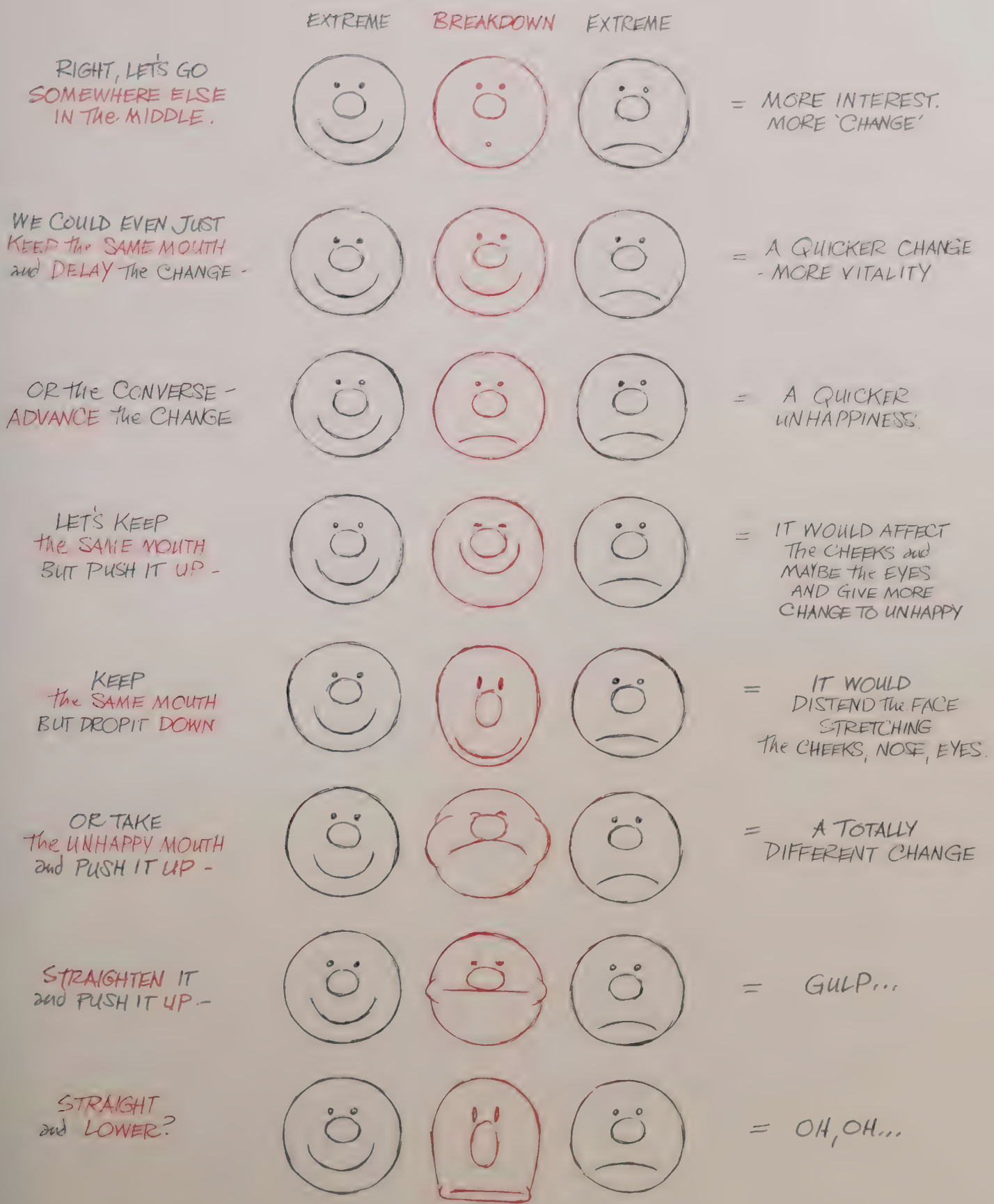
I FIRST GOT ONTO THIS BY WORKING WITH KEN HARRIS, WHEN HE'D CUT UP MY DRAWINGS, OR BITS OF THEM, and HE'D STICK THEM DOWN IN A DIFFERENT PLACE.

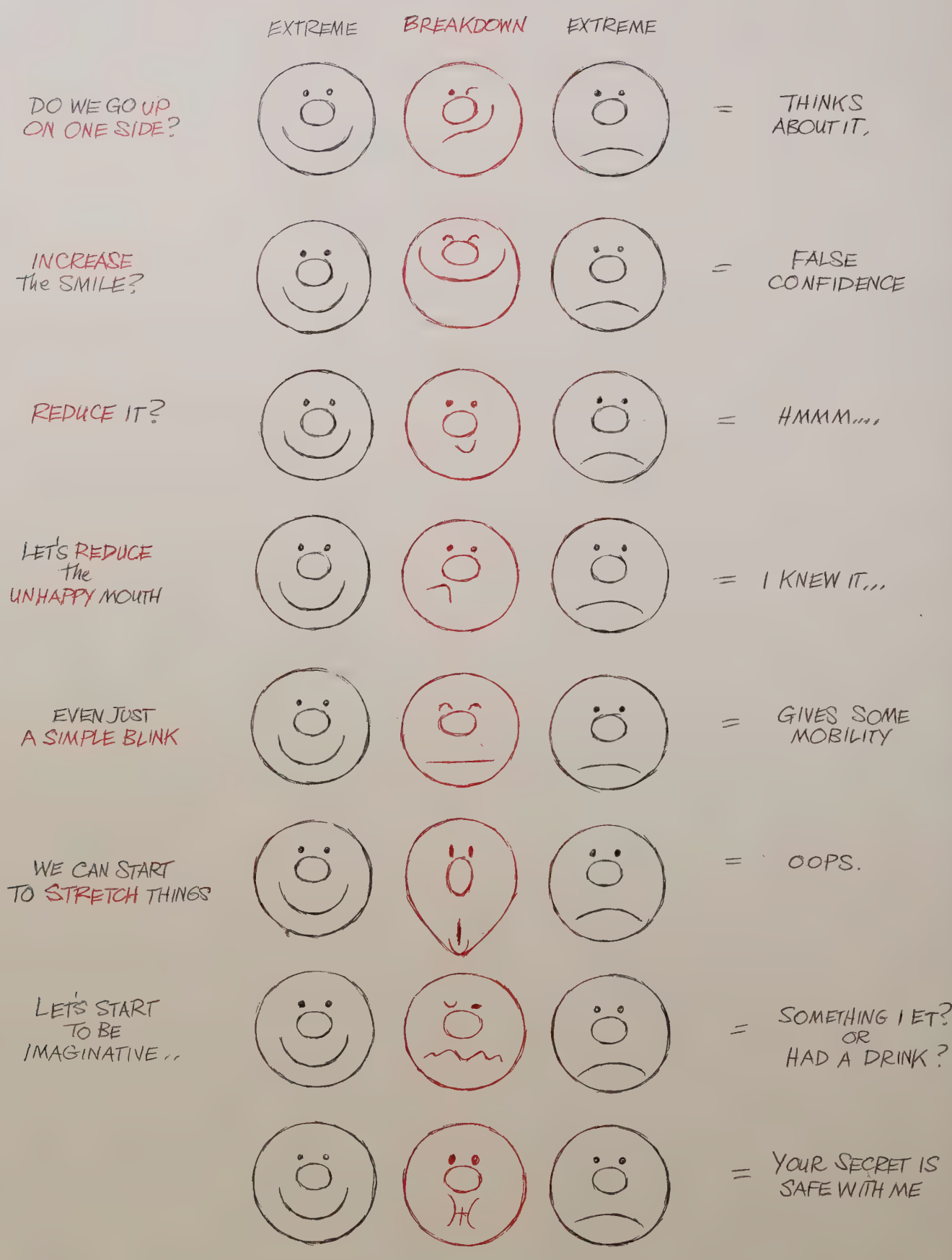
I ENDED UP FEELING SO STRONGLY ABOUT the BREAKDOWN THAT FOR YEARS I WENT AROUND RANTING and RAVING THAT I COULD WRITE A WHOLE BOOK ABOUT IT. (IT HAS ONLY JUST OCCURRED TO ME THAT THIS IS IT.)

LETS TAKE OUR 2 EXTREMES OF A MAN GOING FROM HAPPY to SAD -

PUT IN the MIDDLE POSITION WHERE IT WOULD BE LOGICALLY -

OK, BUT DULL


EXTREME
BREAKDOWN
EXTREME
RIGHT, LET'S GO SOMEWHERE ELSE IN THE MIDDLE.
= MORE INTEREST. MORE 'CHANGE'
WE COULD EVEN JUST KEEP THE SAME MOUTH and DELAY THE CHANGE -
= A QUICKER CHANGE - MORE VITALITY
OR THE CONVERSE - ADVANCE THE CHANGE
= A QUICKER UNHAPPINESS.
LET'S KEEP THE SAME MOUTH BUT PUSH IT UP -
= IT WOULD AFFECT THE CHEEKS and MAYBE THE EYES AND GIVE MORE CHANGE TO UNHAPPY
KEEP THE SAME MOUTH BUT DROPIT DOWN
= IT WOULD DISTEND THE FACE STRETCHING THE CHEEKS, NOSE, EYES.
OR TAKE THE UNHAPPY MOUTH and PUSH IT UP -
= A TOTALLY DIFFERENT CHANGE
STRAIGHTEN IT and PUSH IT UP -
= GULP...
STRAIGHT and LOWER?
= OH, OH...


EXTREME
BREAKDOWN
EXTREME
DO WE GO UP ON ONE SIDE?
= THINKS ABOUT IT,
INCREASE The SMILE?
= FALSE CONFIDENCE
REDUCE IT?
= HMMM....
LET'S REDUCE the UNHAPPY MOUTH
= I KNEW IT...
EVEN JUST A SIMPLE BLINK
= GIVES SOME MOBILITY
WE CAN START TO STRETCH THINGS
= OOPS.
LET'S START TO BE IMAGINATIVE..
= SOMETHING I ET? OR HAD A DRINK?
= YOUR SECRET IS SAFE WITH ME

EXTREME BREAKDOWN EXTREME

WE CAN GO ON LIKE THIS FOREVER...

(THIS'D BE BETTER IN REVERSE...)

JUST A SIMPLE TILT TO IT...

LIFT the MASS?

IT'S ENDLESS...

(CONCLUSION:)

WHERE WE GO WITH the MIDDLE 'TRAVELLING' POSITION HAS A PROFOUND EFFECT ON the ACTION and CHARACTER.

I HANG MY HAT ON THIS!

MAKE the EXTREMES (OR CONTACTS) THEN the BREAKDOWN (OR PASSING POSITION.) THEN MAKE the NEXT BREAKDOWN BETWEEN the EXTREME and the MAIN BREAKDOWN. KEEP BREAKING IT DOWN INTO EVER SMALLER BITS.
(THEN DO SEPARATE 'STRAIGHT-AHEAD' RUNS ON SEPARATE BITS)

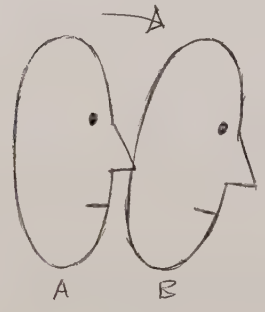
30 YEARS AGO WHEN I WAS FIRST CATCHING ON TO ALL THIS STUFF, I WORKED BRIEFLY WITH ABE LEVITOW, KEN HARRIS'S EARLY PROTEGÉ. ABE DREW BEAUTIFULLY and I WAS IMPRESSED BY BOTH the QUALITY AND the QUANTITY OF HIS WORK. 'FAST AND GOOD.' WORKING ON TOUGH STUFF, ABE PRODUCED 20 to 25 SECONDS A WEEK WHILE the OTHERS MANAGED TO STRUGGLE THROUGH 5 SECONDS. AND ABE'S WAS BETTER.

I ALWAYS REMEMBER ABE SAYING TO ME ON A TUESDAY:

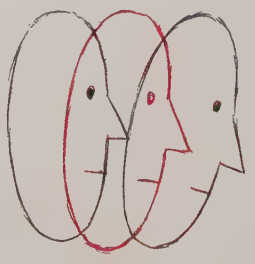
"DICK, I'VE DONE ALL the EXTREMES.
TOMORROW I'M GOING TO BREAK THEM ALL DOWN.
THEN the REST OF the WEEK I'LL ADD IN the BITS and PIECES."

AGAIN,

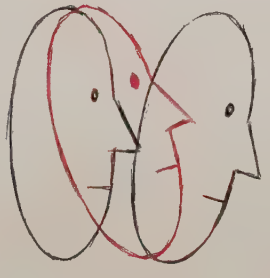
LET'S SAY A HEAD JUST MOVES FORWARD A BIT -



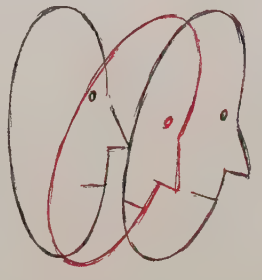
JUST PUTTING the BREAKDOWN IN the MIDDLE IS DULL



SO WE CAN DO THIS -



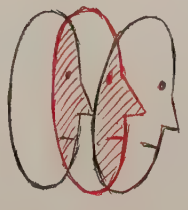
OR WE CAN DO THIS -

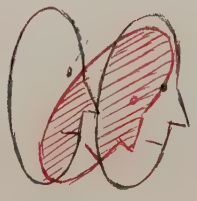


THIS 'SIMPLE OVERLAP' GIVES US ACTION WITHIN AN ACTION. MORE 'CHANGE'-MORE LIFE.

THIS IS the RAW IDEA. WE CAN DO IT VERY SUBTLY

OR WE CAN DO IT BROADLY





GIVES US 'MORE BANG FOR OUR BUCK'

- GIVES US MOVEMENT WITHIN A MOVEMENT.

AGAIN, GOING FROM HERE TO HERE -

OR

PULLED APART -

KEN HARRIS WOULD OFTEN DO A VERY INTERESTING THING:

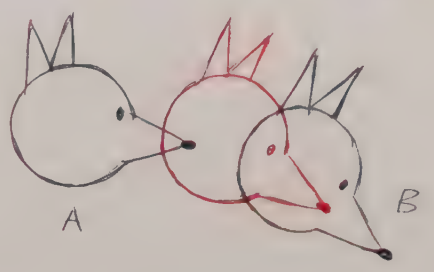
THOUGH HE WAS VERY CONFIDENT OF HIS ANIMATION ABILITIES, KEN HAD LESS CONFIDENCE IN HIS DRAWING.

HE LIKED TO MAKE FULL USE OF the ROUGH SKETCHES BY CHUCK JONES, HIS DIRECTOR AT WARNER'S - and LATER ON, MY DIRECTING DRAWINGS.

I'D OFTEN FIND KEN MAKING AN EXACT TRACING OF MY DRAWING "A" OR "B" and USING IT AS the PASSING POSITION - (OR BREAKDOWN)

BUT HE'D PLACE IT TO FAVOUR DRAWING "A" LIKE THIS →

OR HE'D PLACE IT TO FAVOUR DRAWING "B" LIKE THIS →



FAR FROM BEING A LIMITATION, THIS ACTUALLY WAS AN ASSET TO KEN. IT GAVE HIS WORK A STABILITY - INSTEAD OF HAVING FACILE DRAWINGS FLASHING AROUND ALL OVER the PLACE - 'OVERANIMATING'.

WATCHING HIM DO THIS - and SEEING the RESULTS, I GRADUALLY LEARNED TO UNDERSTATE and GET SUBTLE MOVEMENT WHICH WAS STILL 'LIMBER'.

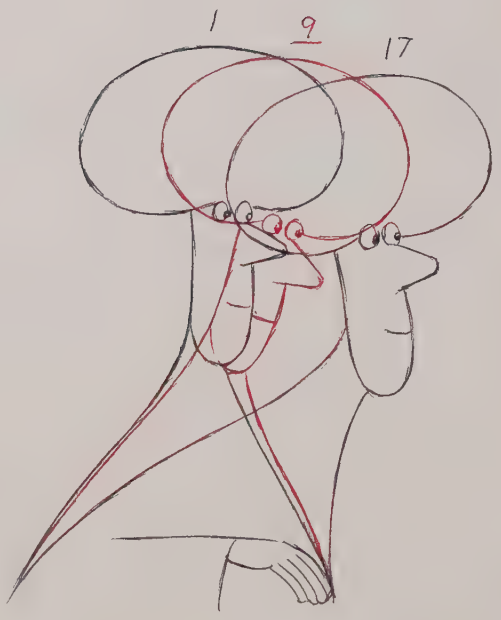
SIMPLE OVERLAP

SAY WE HAVE A MAN WITH A TURBAN -

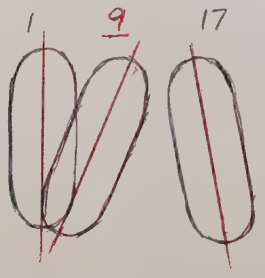
AND HE LEANS FORWARD -

IF WE TILT the HEAD #9 IN the MIDDLE - and MAKE IT CLOSER TO #1

WE GET THIS WITH the HEAD - and LOOK WHAT HAPPENS TO the TURBAN MASS - IT'S SMACK IN the MIDDLE.



THIS CREATES A REALLY NICE OVERLAPPING OF the MASSES ON A VERY SIMPLE MOVE -

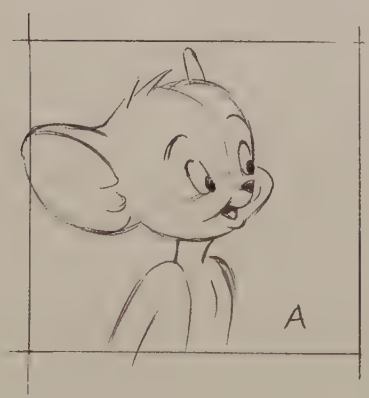


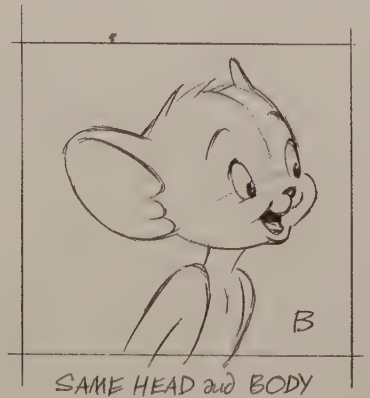
and WE'VE USED ONLY 3 POSITIONS. The REST WOULD BE STRAIGHT IN BETWEENS.

WE'VE DONE THIS ON A BLAND DESIGN OF A SIMPLE CHARACTER - WITH NO CHANGE OF EXPRESSION - NOT EVEN A BLINK - MAKING A VERY ORDINARY MOVE. AND YET IT WILL HAVE A LOT OF LIFE JUST BECAUSE OF the SPACING.

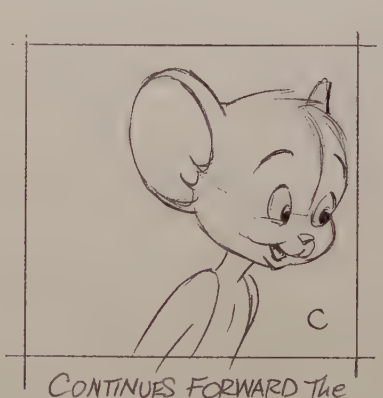
SO WE LOOK FOR WAYS TO PLACE the MIDDLE BREAKDOWN POSITION - (OR POSITIONS) WHERE WE CAN GET AN OVERLAP OF the MASSES.
= MOVEMENT WITHIN MOVEMENT.

4 DRAWING OVERLAP ON A CALIFORNIA - ISSUE MOUSE

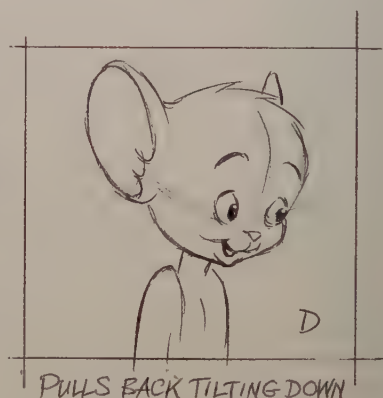




SAME HEAD and BODY PROGRESSED FORWARD



CONTINUES FORWARD the SAME AMOUNT TILTED DOWN

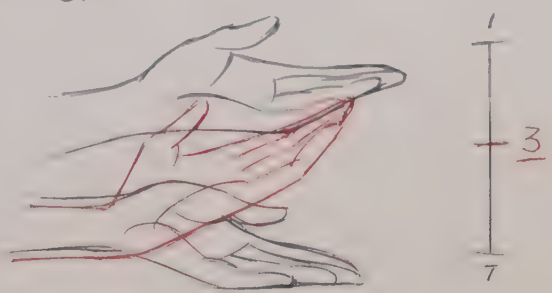


PULLS BACK TILTING DOWN JUST A BIT MORE.

OF COURSE, THIS BREAKDOWN POSITION KIND OF THING CAN GET OUT OF HAND. LIKE EVERYTHING ELSE, IT'S HOW, WHEN and WHERE WE USE IT.

WHEN I WAS ASSISTING KEN HARRIS and THERE'D BE A HAND SETTLING LIKE THIS -

- I'D START BEING CLEVER and THROW the BREAKDOWN OFF LIKE THIS -



KEN WOULD FREAK OUT, "GODDAMN IT, DICK, I JUST WANT A STRAIGHT INBETWEEN IN THERE! JUST GIVE ME A STRAIGHT INBETWEEN! THE GUY JUST RELAXES HIS HAND! I DONT WANT ALL THIS CRAZY FLASHING AROUND ALL OVER the PLACE KIND OF STUFF!"
(KEN HAD AWFULLY GOOD TASTE.)

BUT WHEN I DID GET TO KNOW HOW, WHEN and WHERE TO USE IT, I CAN ALMOST SAY I MADE MY LIVING WITH the BREAKDOWN DRAWING.

I OFTEN HAD TO PRODUCE MASSIVE AMOUNTS OF FOOTAGE AT the LAST MINUTE. I BECAME 'the TELEPHONE ANIMATOR' ANIMATING AT the SAME TIME AS DOING the BUSINESS ON the PHONE. CLIENTS WOULD RANT, "WE CAME TO YOU BECAUSE OF HIGH STANDARDS - WE DONT CARE IF YOUR MAN'S IN the HOSPITAL OR IN TIMBUKTOO - IT'S YOUR SHINGLE ON the DOOR, BUSTER, - YOU FIX IT!"

WE USUALLY HAD GOOD STORYTELLING KEYS and EXTREMES, SO ALL I HAD TO DO WAS JOIN A LOT OF STUFF UP IN AN INTERESTING WAY. I FOUND THAT ALMOST ANYTHING WILL WORK. PUT IT SOMEWHERE ELSE IN the MIDDLE, FAIRLY INTELLIGENTLY. IT NEVER LET ME DOWN.

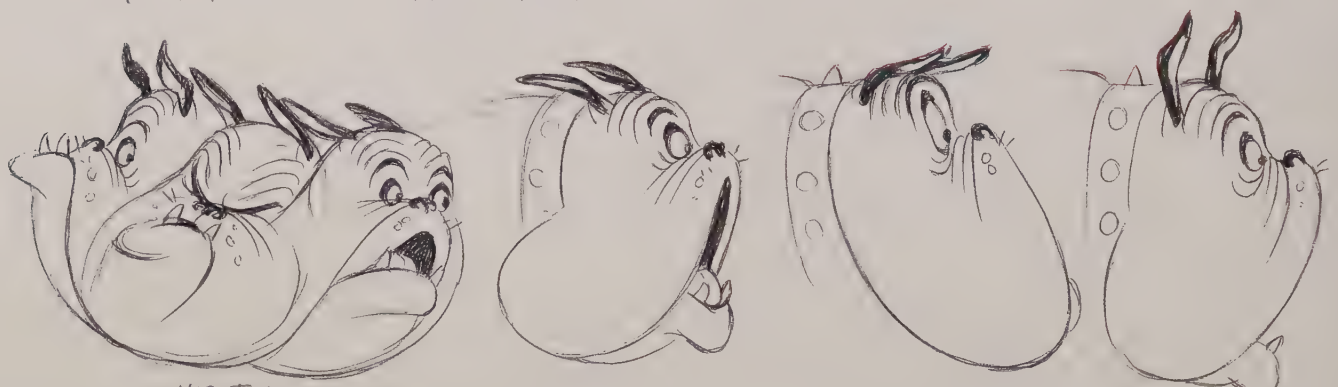
OF COURSE, THE WORK WOULDN'T BE AS GOOD AS IF I'D HAD the TIME TO ANALYSE and THINK WHAT the HELL I WAS DOING, BUT AT 5 IN the MORNING, WITH JET LAG, HOLDING the LAB BATH and A GRUMPY CLIENT PHONING IN 4 HOURS, IT GETS YOU THROUGH.

NOW WE COME TO A DIFFERENT THING WITH A SIMILAR NAME -

OVERLAPPING ACTION

THIS IS WHERE THINGS MOVE IN PARTS.
- WHERE EVERYTHING DOES NOT HAPPEN AT THE SAME TIME.

TAKE A HOLLYWOOD BULLDOG TURNING QUICKLY AROUND TO SEE SOMETHING -



HIS JOWLS WILL DRAG AS HE TURNS

HIS HEAD ARRIVES AT ITS DESTINATION

BUT HIS JOWLS and EARS ARRIVE LATE and KEEP ON GOING.

THEN SETTLE DOWN TO NORMAL (MOUTH MIGHT KEEP ON GOING - EARS MIGHT WIGGLE)

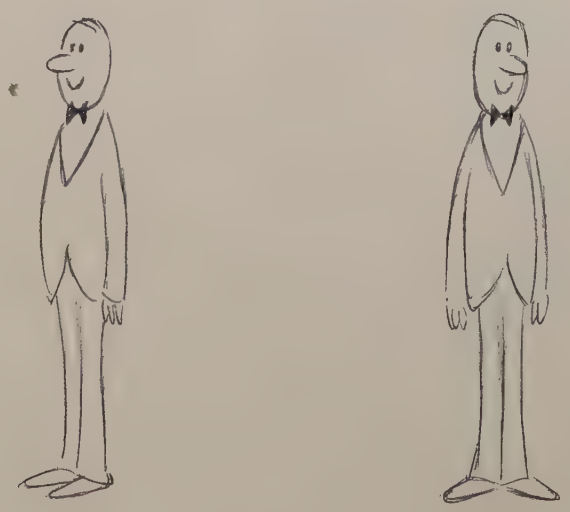
THE JARGON IS - "The JOWLS and EARS "DRAG" and THEN THEY "FOLLOW THROUGH"

THEY'RE the RESULT of the MAIN ACTION - GENERATED BY the MAIN ACTION.

'OVERLAPPING ACTION' MEANS ONE PART STARTS FIRST and OTHER PARTS FOLLOW.

LET'S TAKE A TYPICAL UTTERLY BLAND, BORING DESIGN LIKE THEY HAD FOR TV COMMERCIALS IN the 1950's -

THIS DULL CREATURE IS GOING TO TURN and FACE US.



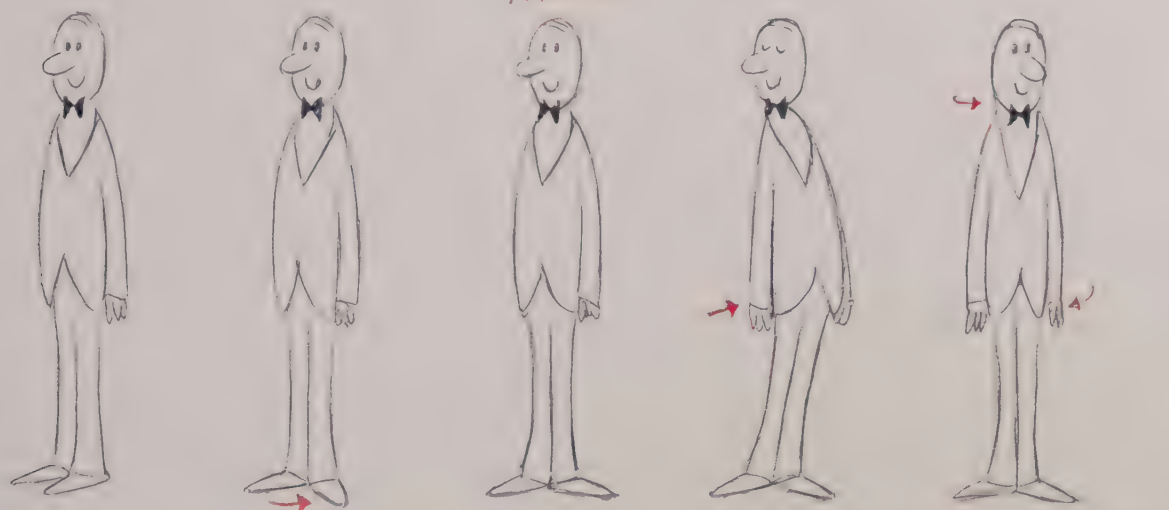
NOT MUCH TO WORK WITH - IS IT?

WE COULD CONTRIBUTE TO THE BOREDOM BY PUTTING IN AN EQUALLY DULL BREAKDOWN RIGHT IN THE MIDDLE and GO HOME.

AS MILT KAHL SAID, "THE MOST DIFFICULT THING TO DO IN ANIMATION IS NOTHING. -YOU KNOW, THATS A VERY TRUE STATEMENT."

RIGHT, BUT HERE'S HOW WE CAN MAKE 'NOTHING' AT LEAST INTERESTING... WE CAN TAKE THE CURSE OFF THIS VERY ORDINARY BIT OF ACTION BY SIMPLY BREAKING THE ACTION INTO PARTS.

PASS POS



THE EYES WOULD PROBABLY MOVE FIRST, BUT WE'RE STUCK WITH DOTS-

SO LET'S SIMPLY MOVE THE FOOT FIRST

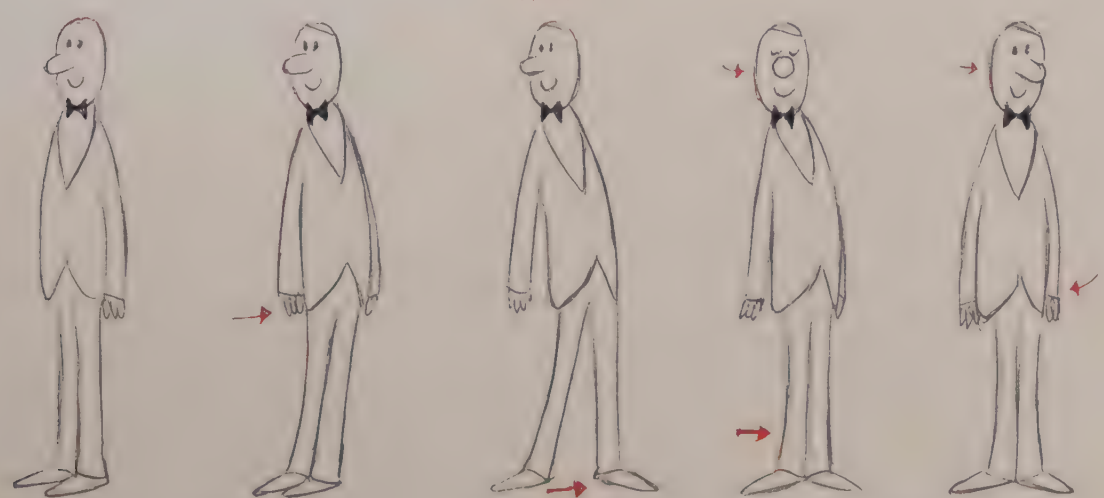
DELAY THE HEAD and THE REST

THEN LET'S MOVE THE STOMACH and HIPS. STILL DELAY THE HEAD BUT THROW IN A BLINK

THEN EVERYTHING SETTLES and THE HEAD FOLLOWS LAST.

OR SINCE MOST OF OUR BODY ACTIONS START FROM THE HIPS...

PASS POS



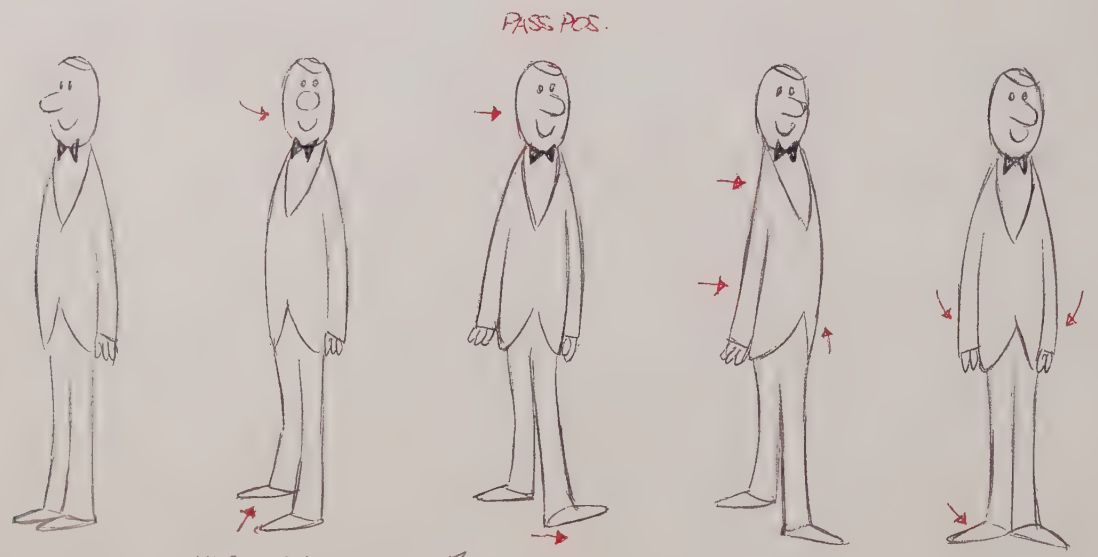
WE'LL MOVE THE HIPS and STOMACH FIRST.

TAKES A STEP. STILL DELAY THE HEAD.

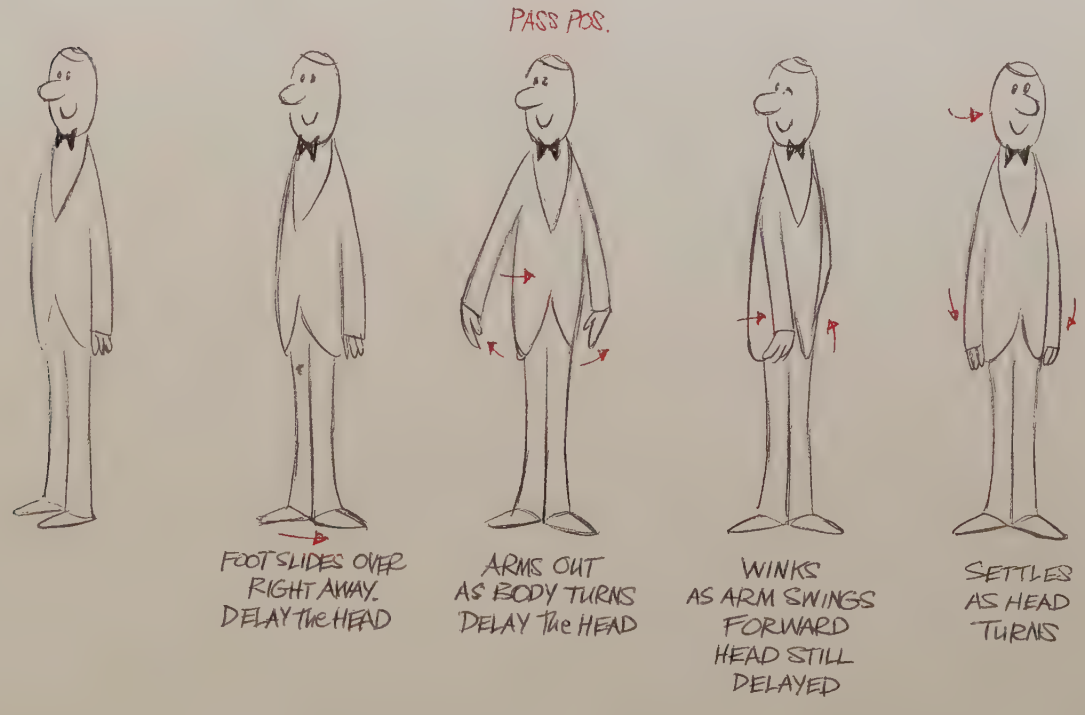
OTHER FOOT SLIDES OVER WHILE HEAD IS IN MID TURN. THROW IN A SLOW BLINK

SETTLES.

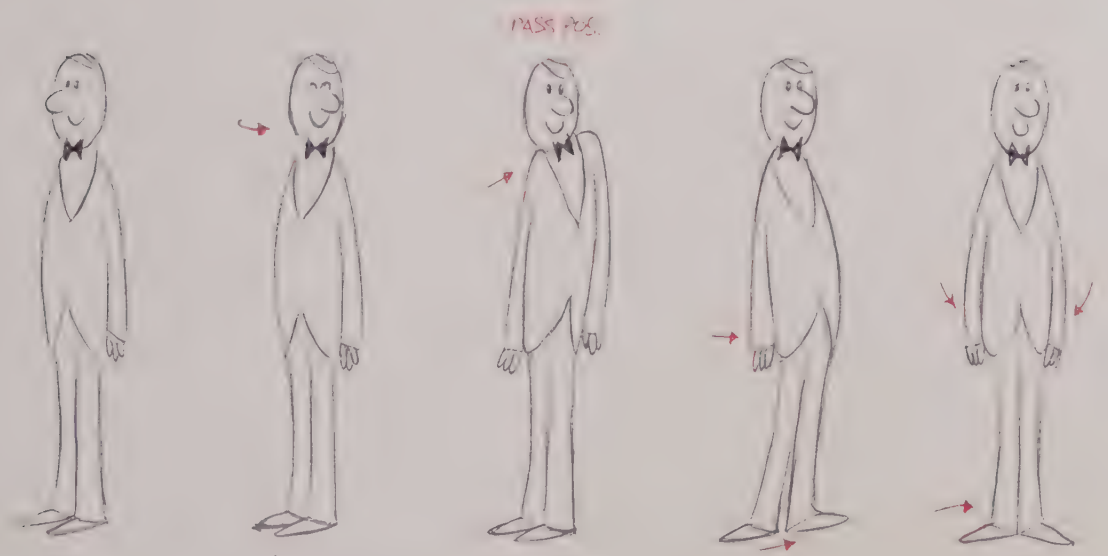
WE HAVEN'T EVEN TILTED HIS HEAD OR CHANGED HIS EXPRESSION – BUT SIMPLY BY OVERLAPPING PARTS WE'VE INJECTED LIFE INTO A PEDESTRIAN SITUATION.


PASS POS.
HEAD IS TURNING AS HE STEPS BACK SLIGHTLY
THE OTHER FOOT STEPS OVER AS WEIGHT IS SHIFTING
WEIGHT, CHEST and STOMACH CONTINUE OVER
BACK FOOT SLIDES FORWARD AS HE SETTLES.

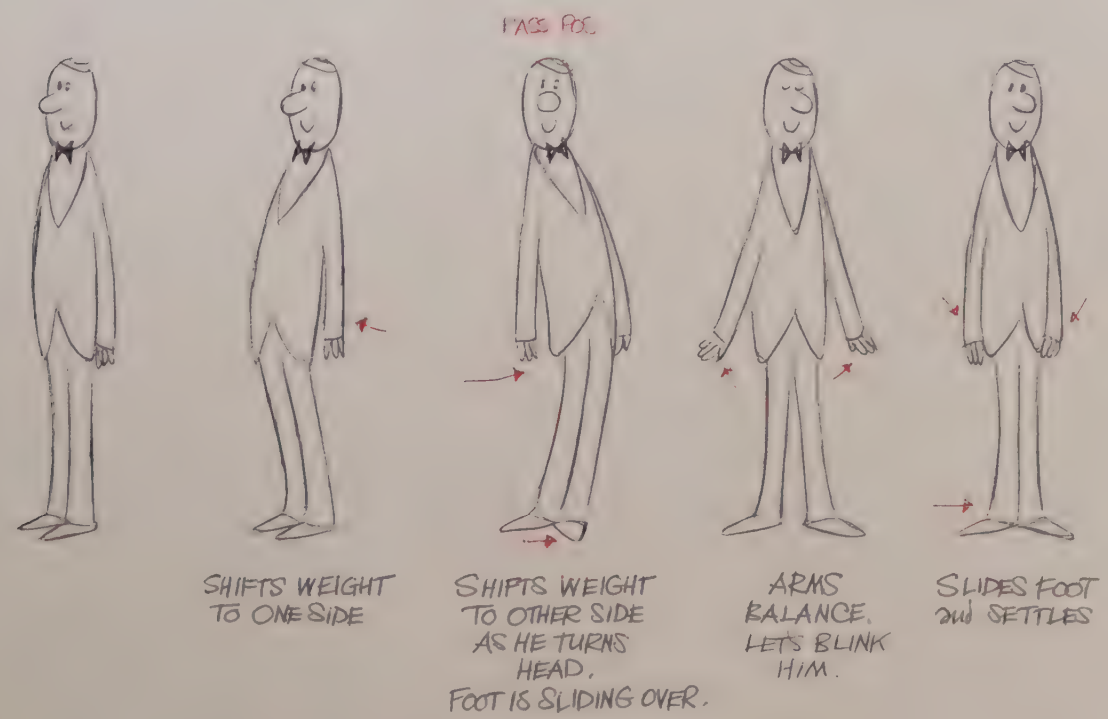
WE CAN GO ON LIKE THIS FOREVER...


PASS POS.
FOOT SLIDES OVER RIGHT AWAY. DELAY THE HEAD
ARMS OUT AS BODY TURNS DELAY THE HEAD
WINKS AS ARM SWINGS FORWARD HEAD STILL DELAYED
SETTLES AS HEAD TURNS

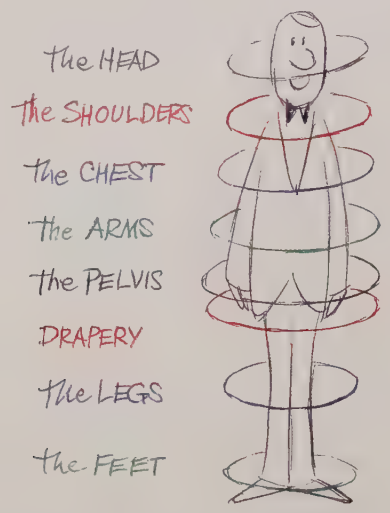
NO MATTER HOW DEADLY THE ACTION IS THAT'S CALLED FOR · WE CAN MAKE IT MORE INTERESTING BY OVERLAPPING -


PASS POS.
LET'S TURN THE HEAD FIRST and BLINK HIM
NOW LET'S MOVE WHAT SHOULDERS HE HAS
HIPS FOLLOW THE SHOULDERS AS HE STEPS
SLIDES OTHER FOOT SLIGHTLY and SETTLES

JUST ONE LITTLE DETAIL THAT'S DIFFERENT WILL CHANGE EVERYTHING.


PASS POS.
SHIFTS WEIGHT TO ONE SIDE
SHIFTS WEIGHT TO OTHER SIDE AS HE TURNS HEAD. FOOT IS SLIDING OVER.
ARMS BALANCE. LET'S BLINK HIM.
SLIDES FOOT and SETTLES

SO TO MAKE EVEN the DULLEST ACTION OR FIGURE INTERESTING, WE BREAK the BODY INTO SECTIONS – INTO DIFFERENT ENTITIES and MOVE SECTIONS – ONE AT A TIME, CONSTANTLY OVERLAPPING.

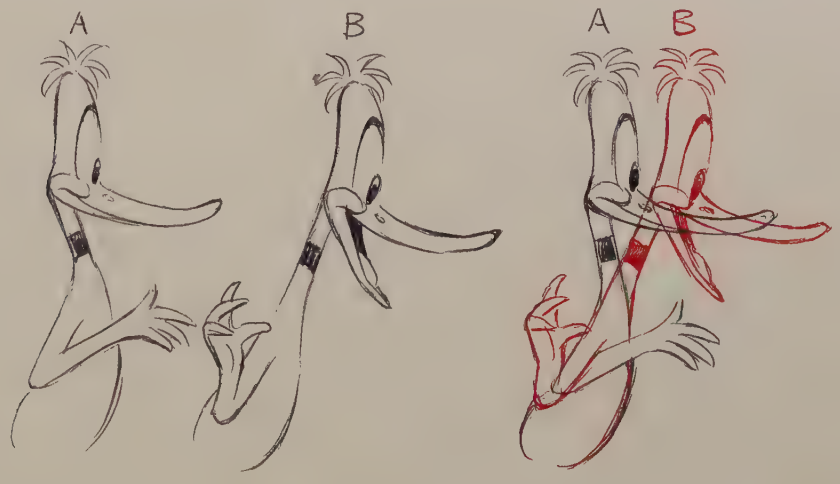


AND WE CAN BREAK IT UP INTO EVEN SMALLER SECTIONS IF WE LIKE.

CONCLUSION:

PEOPLE UNFOLD, ONE PART STARTS FIRST, GENERATING the ENERGY FOR OTHER PARTS TO FOLLOW – WHICH THEN 'FOLLOW THROUGH!' WHEN A FIGURE GOES FROM ONE PLACE TO ANOTHER, A NUMBER OF THINGS TAKE PLACE and EVERYTHING ISN'T HAPPENING AT the SAME TIME. WE HOLD BACK ON AN ACTION. THINGS DON'T START OR END AT the SAME TIME. VARIOUS PARTS OF the BODY OVERLAP EACH OTHER, SO THIS IS WHAT'S CALLED IN the CRAFT – 'OVERLAPPING ACTION'.

SIMPLE COUNTERACTION



THERE'S NOT MUCH TO SAY ABOUT COUNTERACTION. OBVIOUSLY WE DO IT NATURALLY TO BALANCE OURSELVES.

ONE PART GOES FORWARD AS ANOTHER PART BALANCES BY GOING BACK.

– OR ONE PART GOES UP AS ANOTHER BALANCES BY GOING DOWN.

NOW WE COME TO ONE OF THE MOST FASCINATING DEVICES IN ANIMATION –

BREAKING OF JOINTS TO GIVE FLEXIBILITY

AND EVEN MORE INTERESTING:

SUCCESSIVE BREAKING OF JOINTS TO GIVE FLEXIBILITY

i.e. WE KEEP ON DOING IT TO LOOSEN THINGS UP.

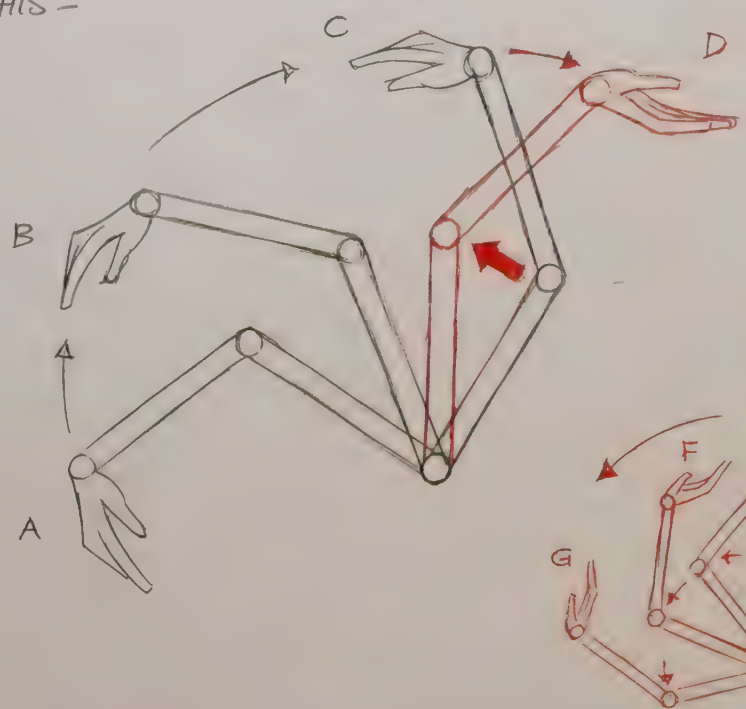
IT'S QUITE A MOUTHFUL. THE PIONEER DISNEY ANIMATORS DISCOVERED THIS DEVICE and ALL THE GOOD GUYS WERE DOING IT, BUT ART BABBITT WAS THE ONE WHO GAVE IT A NAME.

WHEN I NOTICED MILT KAHL DOING IT, I REMARKED ON IT, and MILT SAID, "OH, WELL, YOU'VE GOT TO DO THAT." I THINK IF I'D SAID, "OH, I NOTICE THAT YOU'RE BREAKING THE JOINTS HERE SUCCESSIVELY IN ORDER TO GIVE FLEXIBILITY," HE'D HAVE THROWN ME OUT OF THE ROOM.

IT'S NOT WHAT IT'S CALLED – BUT WHAT IS IT?

PUT SIMPLY, IT'S THIS –

WHEN AN ARM GOES UP and IS GOING TO COME BACK DOWN AGAIN –



THE HAND WILL KEEP ON GOING BUT THE ELBOW JOINT BENDS OR 'BREAKS' GOING BACK IN THE OPPOSITE DIRECTION – STARTING ON IT'S WAY BACK DOWN.

'BREAKING' MEANS BENDING THE JOINT WHETHER OR NOT IT WOULD ACTUALLY BEND IN REALITY.

AND THEN WE'RE GOING TO KEEP ON DOING IT CONTINUOUSLY – 'SUCCESSIVELY' – TO MAKE THINGS LIMBER.

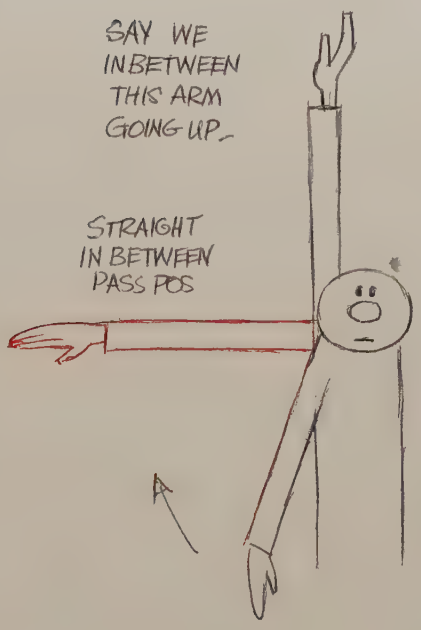
GRIM NATWICK, the FIRST ANIMATOR TO REALLY DRAW WOMEN, ALWAYS SAID,
'CURVES ARE BEAUTIFUL TO WATCH!'

IN the 1920's GRIM'S FRIEND, ANIMATOR BILL NOLAN DEVELOPED 'RUBBER HOSE' ANIMATION. IT WAS NOVEL and FUNNY SINCE NOBODY HAD ANY BONES and EVERYTHING FLOWED WITH ENDLESS CURVING ACTIONS – LOTS OF VARIATIONS ON FIGURE 8'S, ROUND FIGURES MAKING ROUNDED ACTIONS.

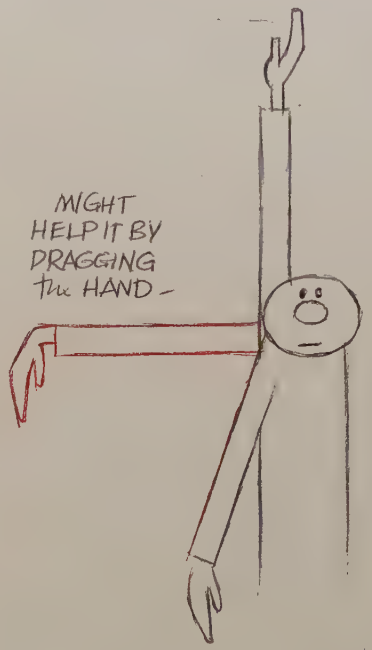
BUT NOW WE CAN GET CURVES WITH STRAIGHT LINES!

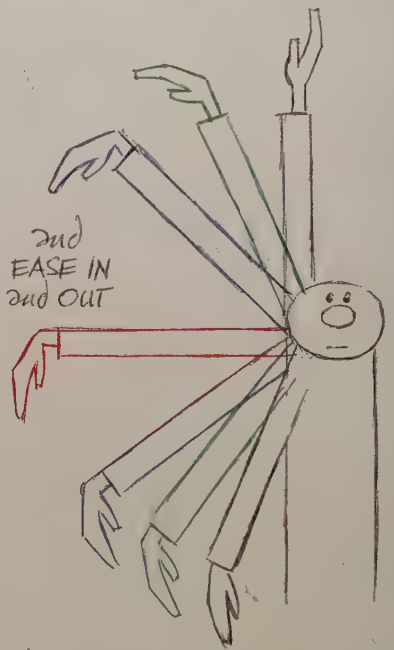
SUCCESSIVE BREAKING JOINTS ENABLE US TO GET the EFFECT OF CURVED ACTION BY USING STRAIGHT LINES.

WE'RE FREED FOREVER FROM the TYRANNY OF HAVING TO ANIMATE RUBBERY FIGURES. I ALWAYS FIGURED THAT 'DRAWINGS THAT WALK and TALK' SHOULD BE ANY TYPE OF FIGURE IN ANY STYLE, MADE OF FLESH AND BONES. THIS OPENS UP A PANDORA'S BOX OF STUFF. WHAT A TOOL! WE CAN HAVE BONES and 'STRAIGHTS' IN OUR FIGURES and STILL HAVE FLUID, FLOWING MOVEMENT.



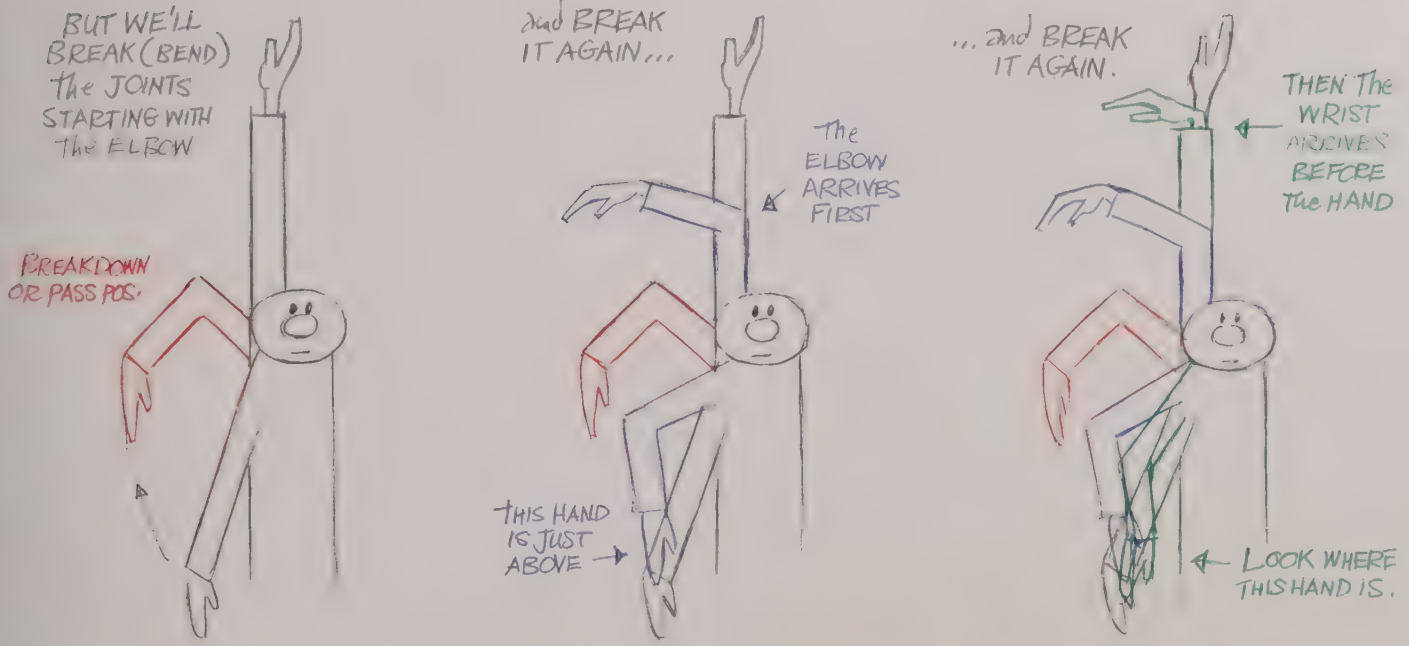
IT'S GOING TO BE STIFF AS A BOARD.



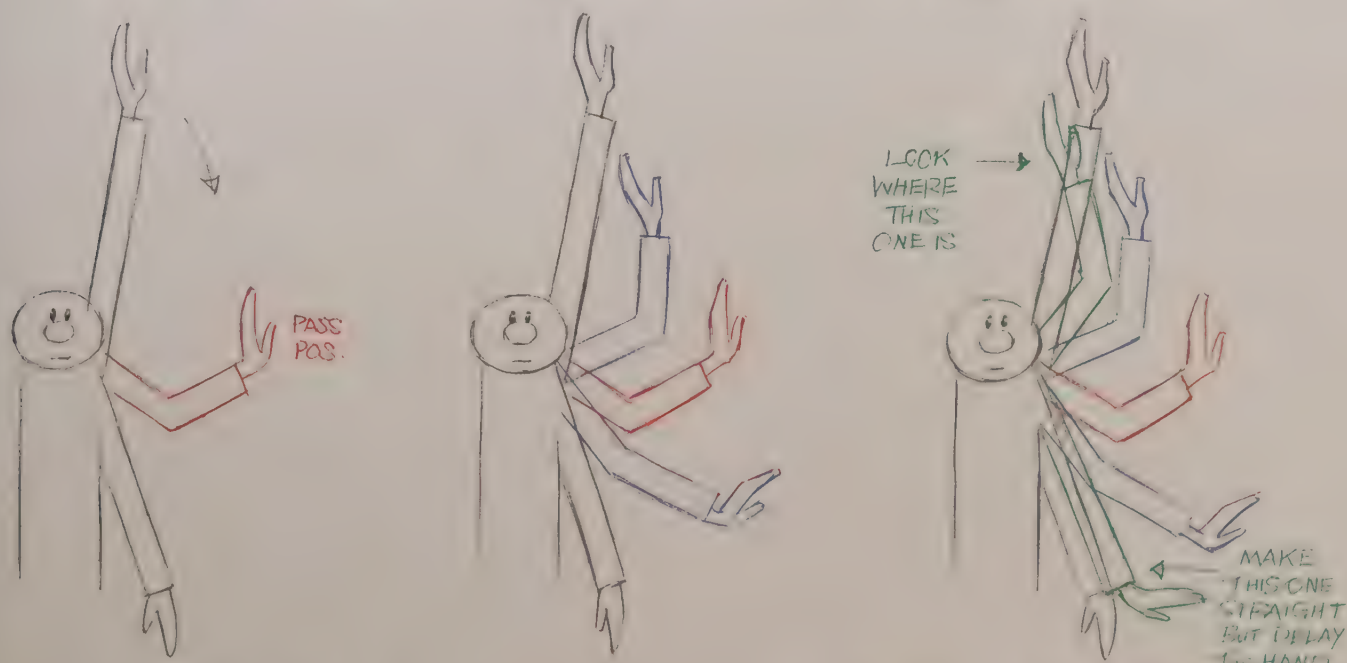


IT'S STILL AWFULLY RIGID.

WE WON'T DUCK THE PROBLEM WITH A RUBBERISED ARM -

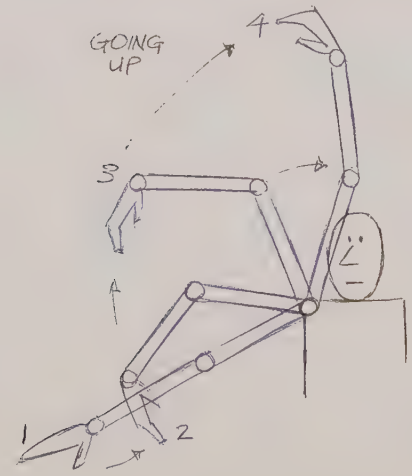

BUT WE'LL BREAK (BEND) THE JOINTS STARTING WITH THE ELBOW
BREAKDOWN OR PASS POS.
AND BREAK IT AGAIN...
THE ELBOW ARRIVES FIRST
THIS HAND IS JUST ABOVE
... AND BREAK IT AGAIN.
THEN THE WRIST ARRIVES BEFORE THE HAND
LOOK WHERE THIS HAND IS.

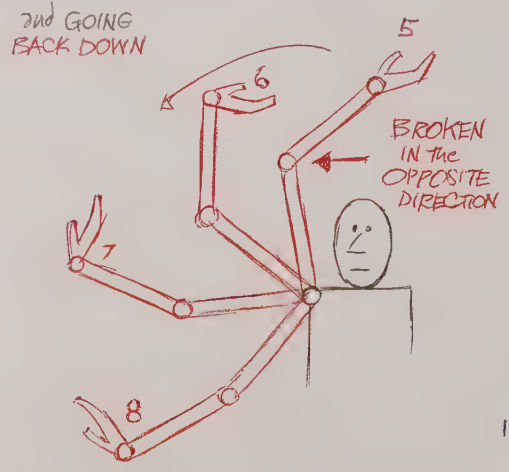
NOW WE GO DOWN THE OTHER SIDE - SUCCESSIVELY BREAKING THE JOINTS:

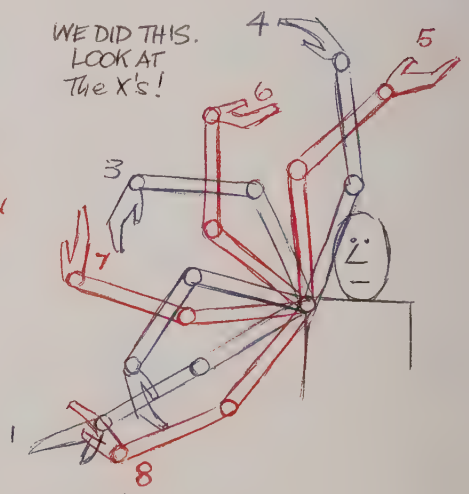


IN THIS EXAMPLE ALL THE BENDS OR 'BREAKS' ARE PHYSICALLY POSSIBLE.
WE HAVENT HAD TO ACTUALLY BEND OR BREAK ANYTHING THE WRONG WAY YET
(BUT WE CAN)

LET'S DO IT AGAIN: The ELBOW LEADS and the JOINTS BREAK IN SUCCESSION -

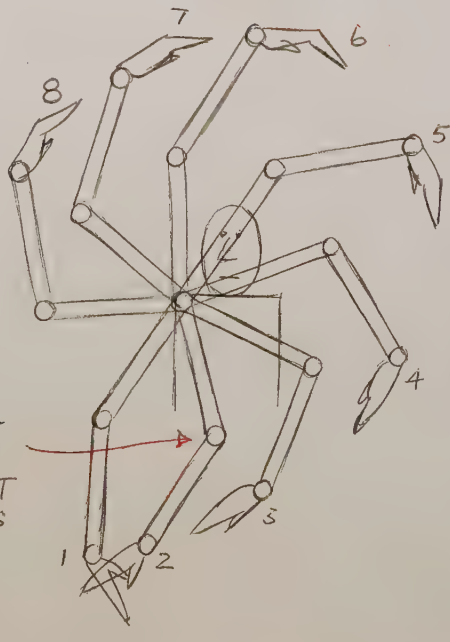




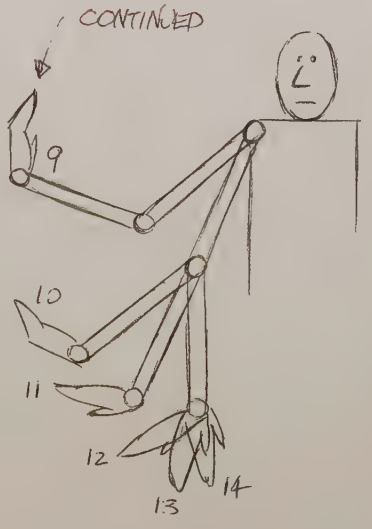


(I ALWAYS THINK OF IT AS 'DOS EQQUIS' - DOUBLE X MEXICAN BEER)

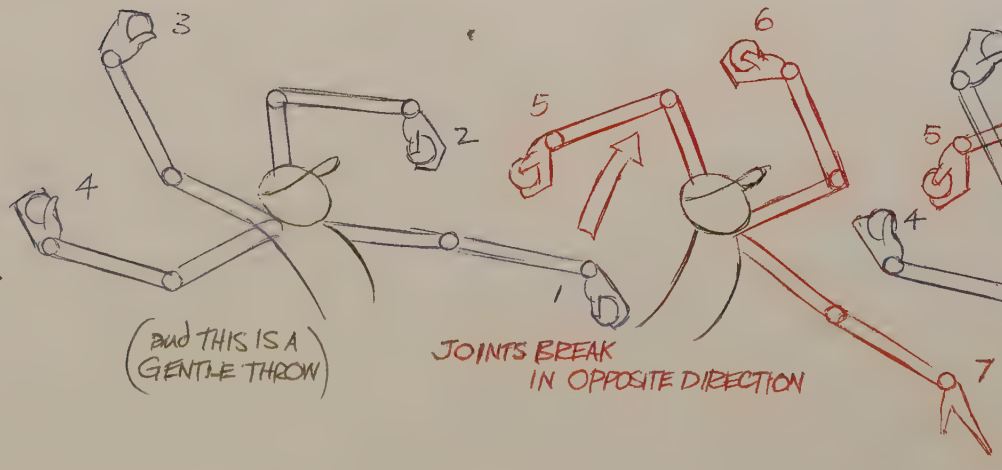
LET'S GO AROUND IN A CIRCLE. The ELBOW LEADS -

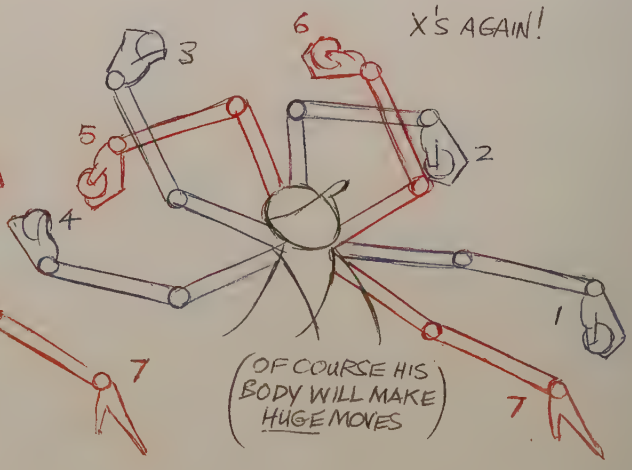


RIGHT AWAY The JOINT BREAKS



IT'S WHAT A BASEBALL PITCHER DOES -





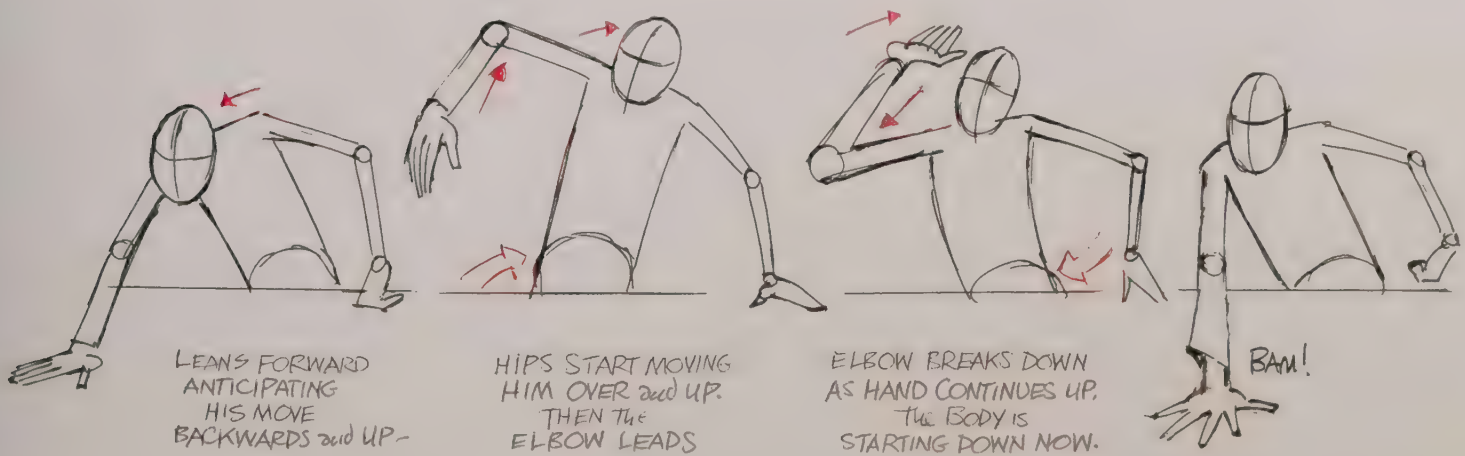
A THING TO REMEMBER IN BREAKING the JOINTS SUCCESSIVELY IS

WHERE DOES the ACTION START?
WHAT STARTS MOVING FIRST?
IS IT the ELBOW? the HIPS? the SHOULDER? HEAD?

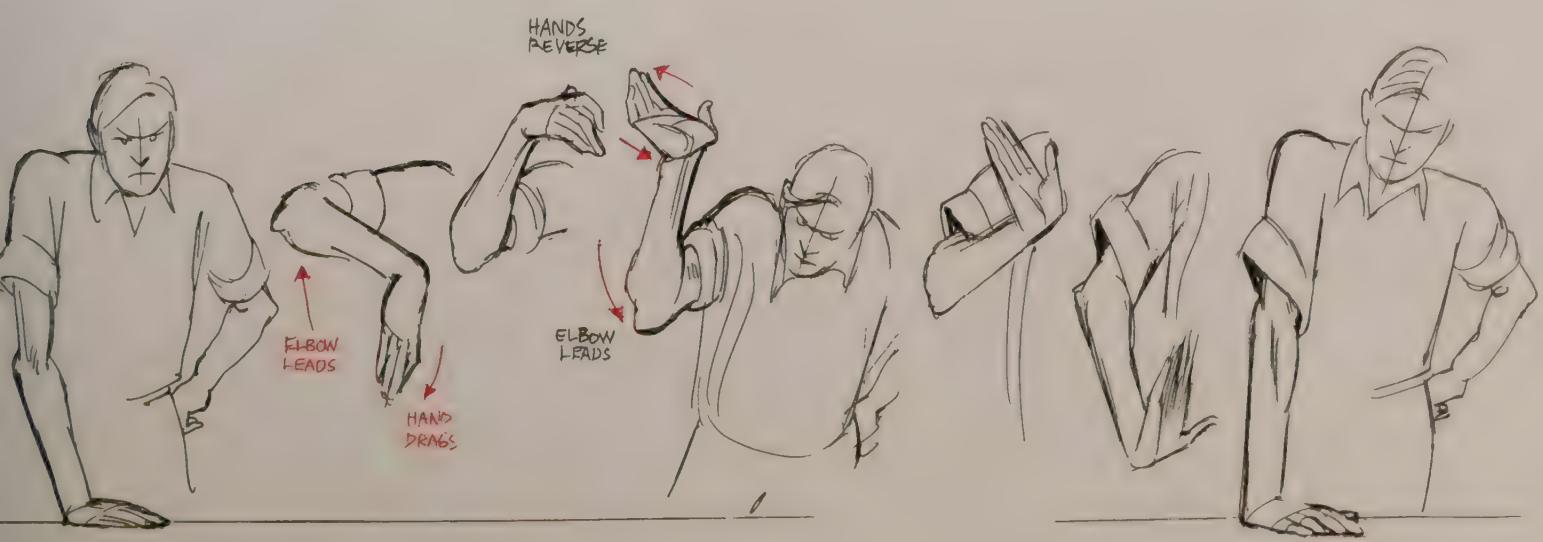
IN MOST BIG ACTIONS OF the BODY the SOURCE, the START OF the ACTION IS IN the HIPS.

DANCERS SAY, "GO FROM YOUR HIPS, LOVE.
FROM the HIPS, DEARIE."

TAKE A MAN SLAPPING A TABLE: the ACTION STARTS FROM HIS HIPS—

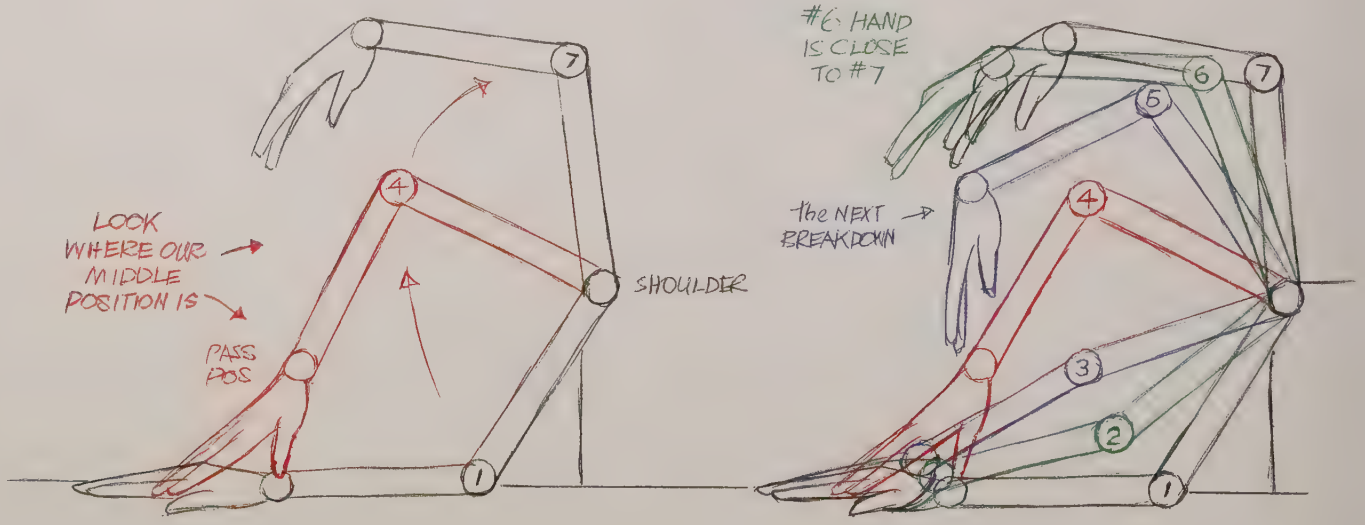

LEANS FORWARD ANTICIPATING HIS MOVE BACKWARDS and UP—
HIPS START MOVING HIM OVER and UP. THEN the ELBOW LEADS
ELBOW BREAKS DOWN AS HAND CONTINUES UP. the BODY IS STARTING DOWN NOW.
BAM!

WE HAVE LOTS OF LEEWAY TO ACCENTUATE and EXAGGERATE BREAKING JOINTS BECAUSE IT HAPPENS ALL the TIME IN REALITY.

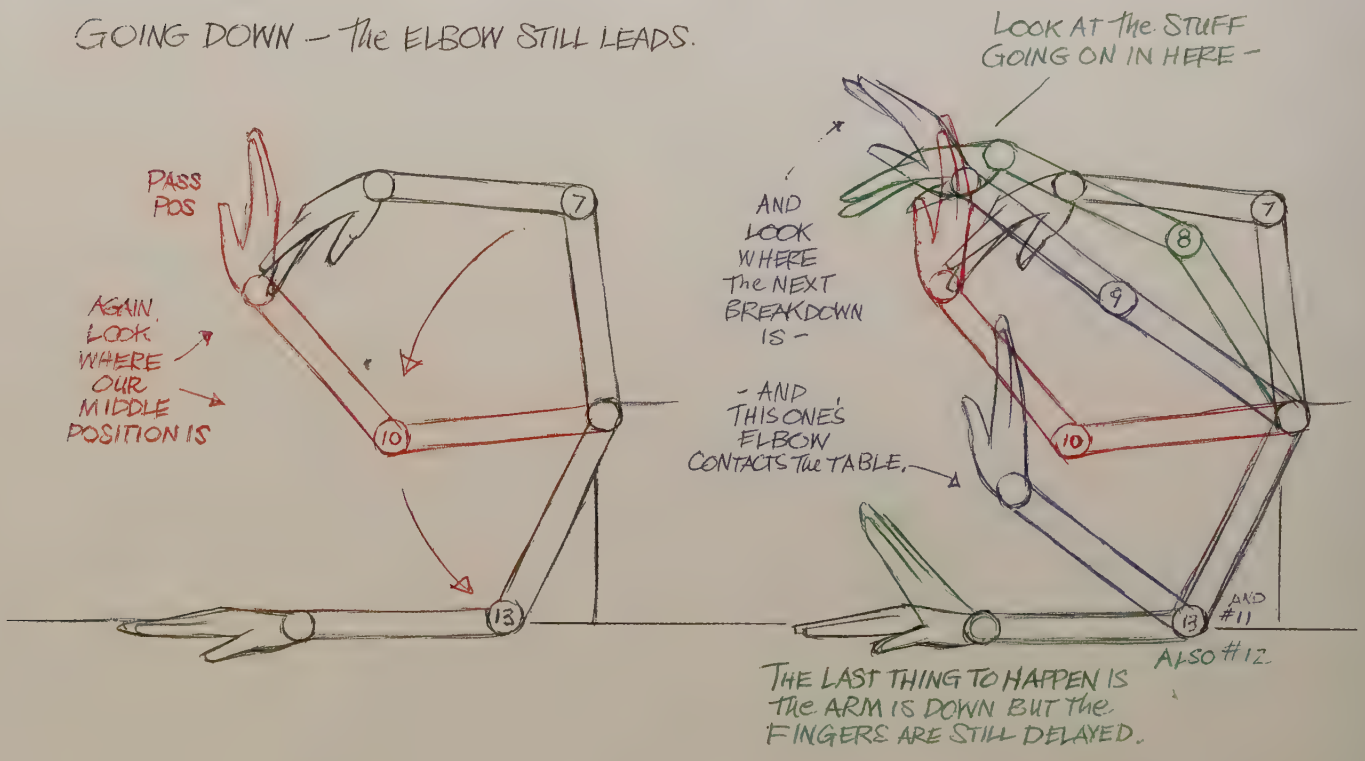


LET'S KEEP ON HITTING the TABLE -
IT'S AN AWFULLY GOOD EXAMPLE OF HOW WE CAN ACHIEVE the SAME FLEXIBILITY AS 'RUBBER HOSE' ANIMATION BY BREAKING the JOINTS WHEREVER WE CAN -

GOING UP - the ELBOW LEADS and the HAND DRAGS.

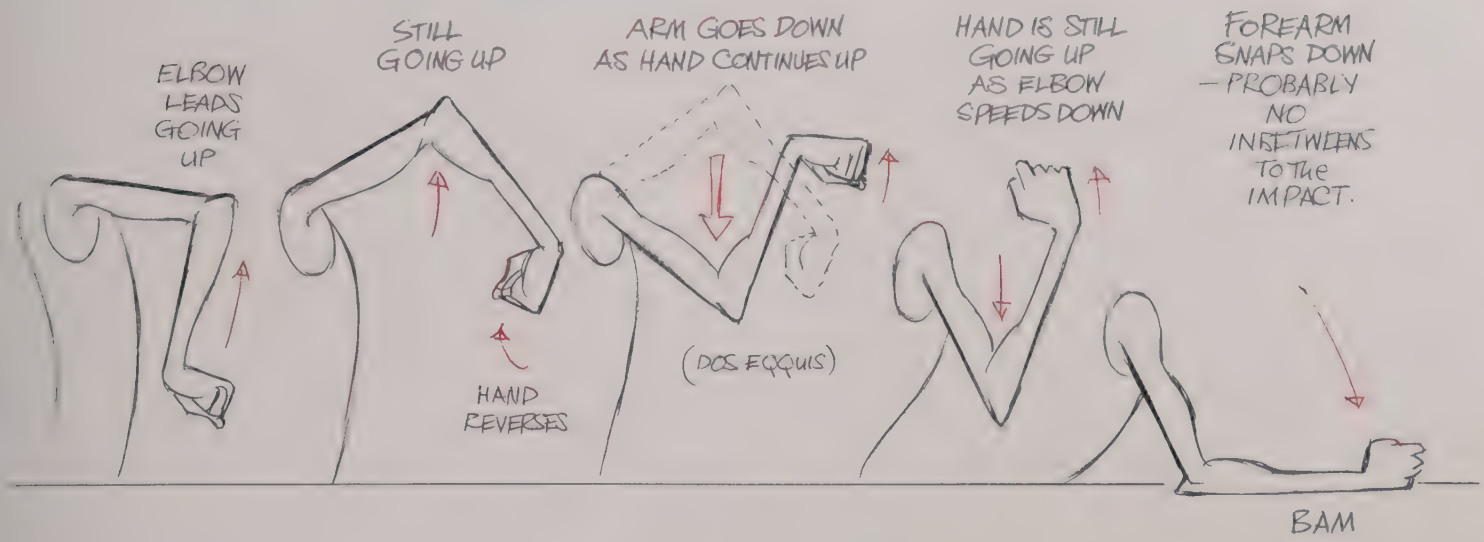


GOING DOWN - the ELBOW STILL LEADS.


PASS POS
AGAIN LOOK WHERE OUR MIDDLE POSITION IS
LOOK AT the STUFF GOING ON IN HERE -
AND LOOK WHERE the NEXT BREAKDOWN IS -
- AND THIS ONE'S ELBOW CONTACTS the TABLE.
AND #11
ALSO #12.
THE LAST THING TO HAPPEN IS the ARM IS DOWN BUT the FINGERS ARE STILL DELAYED.

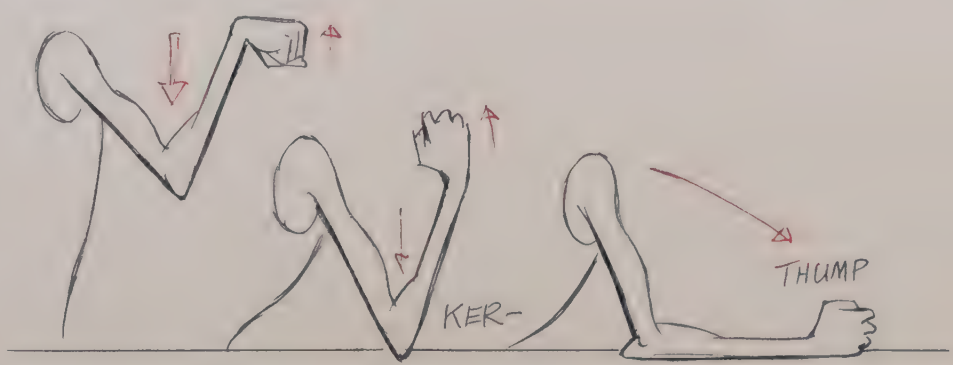
ONE MORE TIME - SHOWING the IDEA SIMPLY.

NOW HE'S GOING TO BANG HIS FIST ON the TABLE -

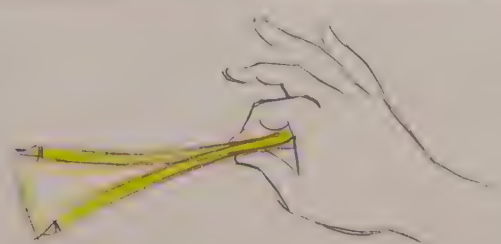

ELBOW LEADS GOING UP
STILL GOING UP
HAND REVERSES
ARM GOES DOWN AS HAND CONTINUES UP
(DOS ECQUIS)
HAND IS STILL GOING UP AS ELBOW SPEEDS DOWN
FOREARM SNAPS DOWN - PROBABLY NO INBETWEENS TO the IMPACT.
BAM

OR

AS ON the PRECEEDING PAGE
The ELBOW HITS the TABLE FIRST -
FOLLOWED BY the FOREARM and FIST
= MORE UNFOLDING.

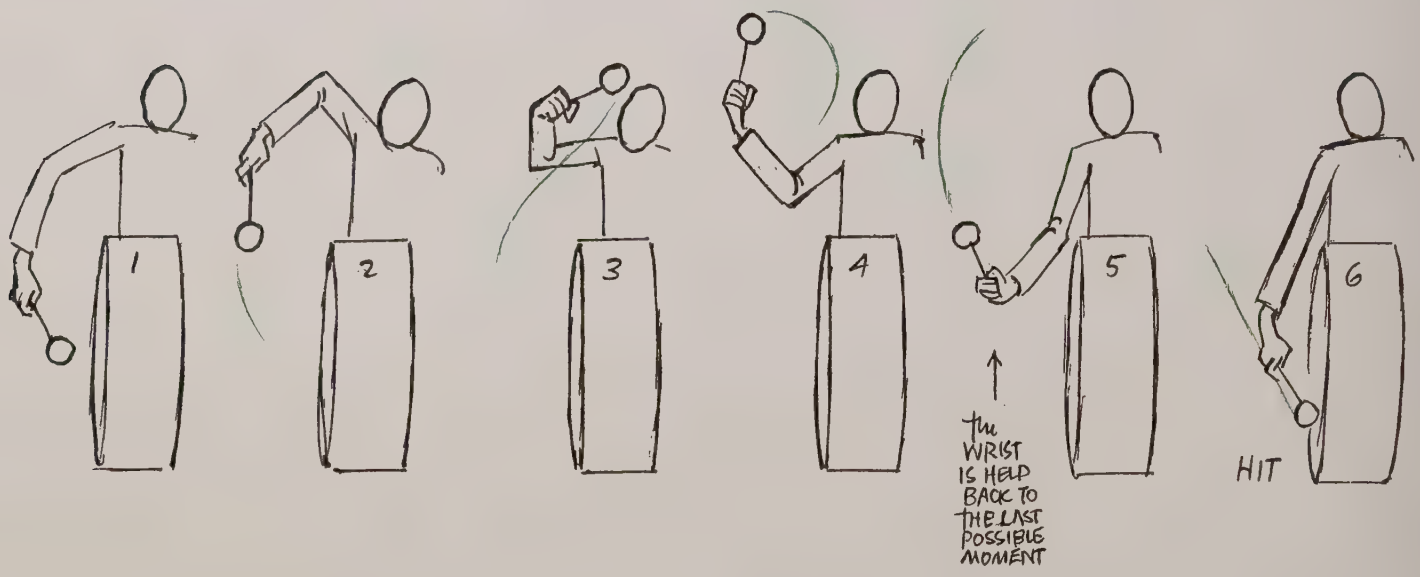


IF ALL the JOINTS DO NOT BREAK AT the SAME TIME WE'LL GET ALL the FLEXIBILITY WE'LL EVER NEED.



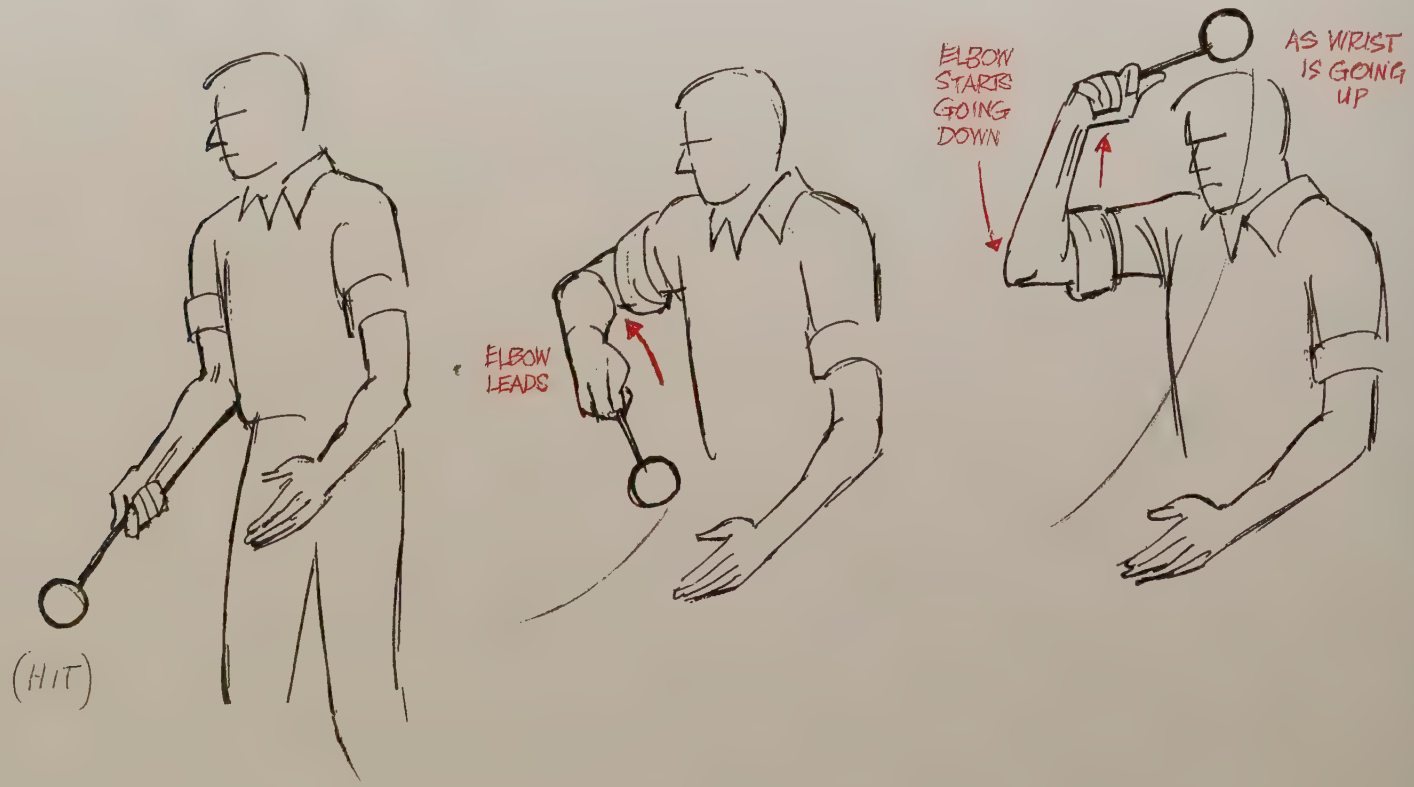
IT'S LIKE WHAT WE DO WHEN WE MAKE A PENCIL APPEAR RUBBERY.
AND IT'S JUST WHAT A BALINESE, HINDU OR ORIENTAL TEMPLE DANCER OR A VAUDEVILLE ECCENTRIC DANCER DOES - AND FRED ASTAIRE! THEY'VE ONLY GOT STRAIGHT BONES and JOINTS TO WORK WITH -- TO GIVE the ILLUSION OF CURVACEOUS, LIMBER MOVEMENT.

BEATING ON A BASS DRUM HAS A VERY SIMILAR ACTION TO SMACKING THE TABLE.



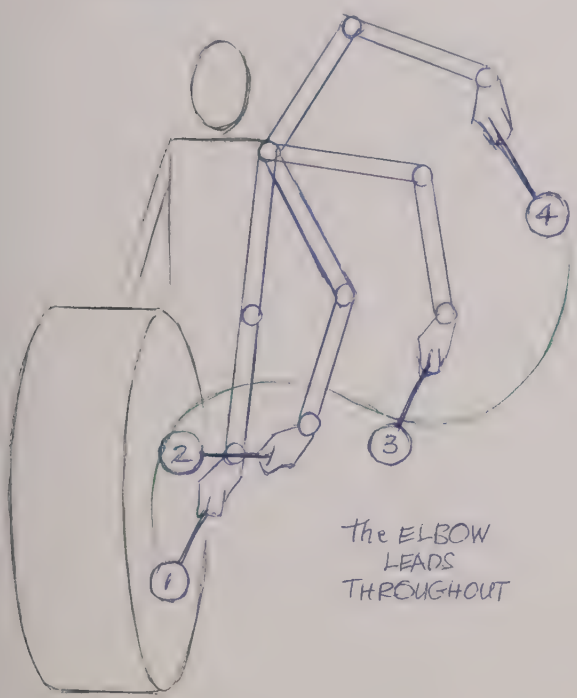
THIS BENT JOINT BUSINESS CAN LOOK AWFULLY COMPLICATED AT FIRST BUT YOU QUICKLY GET USED TO IT and USE IT EVERY CHANCE YOU GET. IT BECOMES SECOND NATURE and SIMPLE.

IN 'REALISM' —



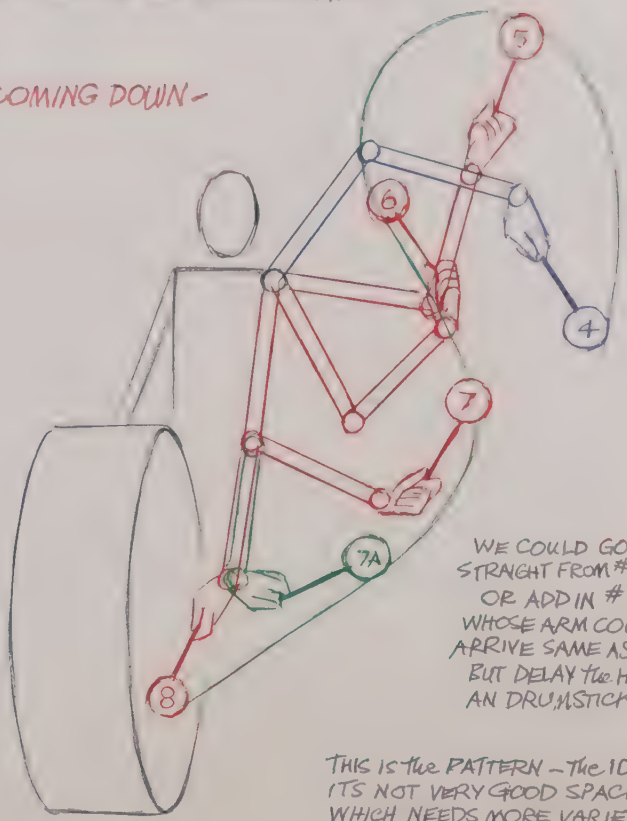
OF COURSE, DRUMMERS DO ALL KINDS OF SPINS and FLOURISHES -
BUT THIS IS the BASIC PATTERN -

GOING UP -



The ELBOW LEADS THROUGHOUT

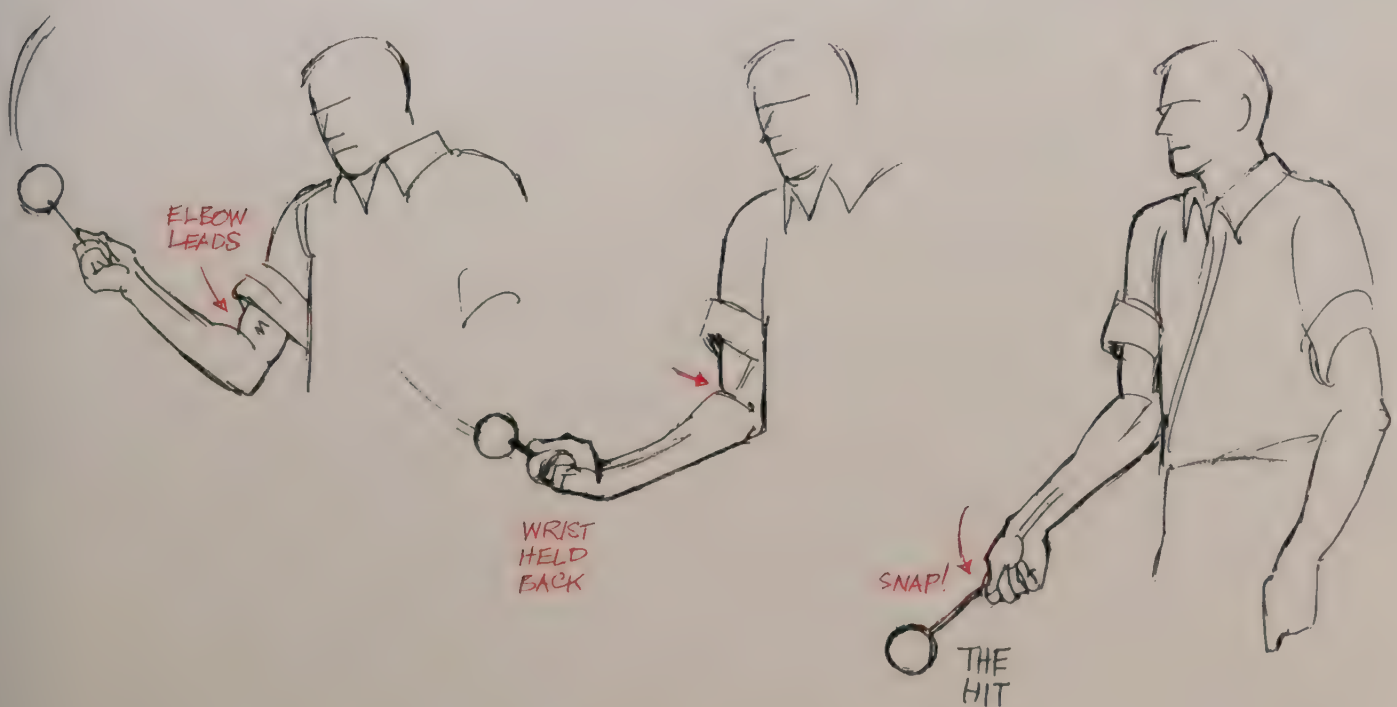
COMING DOWN -



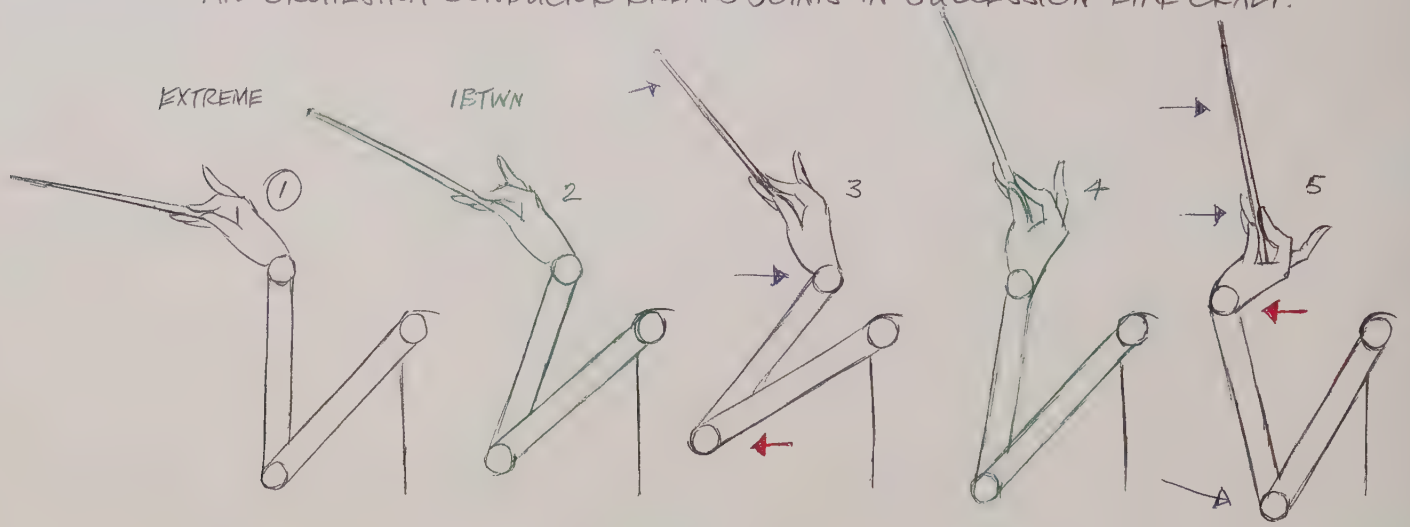
WE COULD GO STRAIGHT FROM #7 to #8 OR ADD IN #7A WHOSE ARM COULD ARRIVE SAME AS #8 BUT DELAY the HAND AN DRUMSTICK.

THIS is the PATTERN - the IDEA. ITS NOT VERY GOOD SPACING - WHICH NEEDS MORE VARIETY.

RESULT: CURVACEOUS, UNFOLDING MOVEMENT - MADE WITH A RULER.



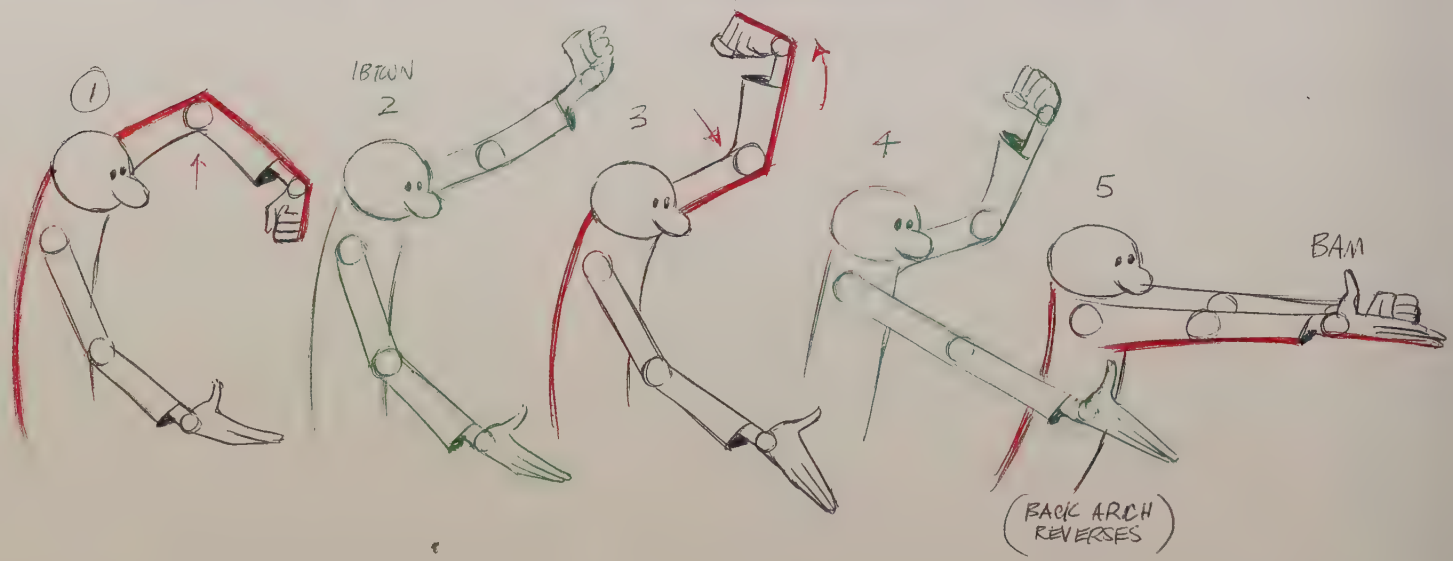
AN ORCHESTRA CONDUCTOR BREAKS JOINTS IN SUCCESSION LIKE CRAZY.



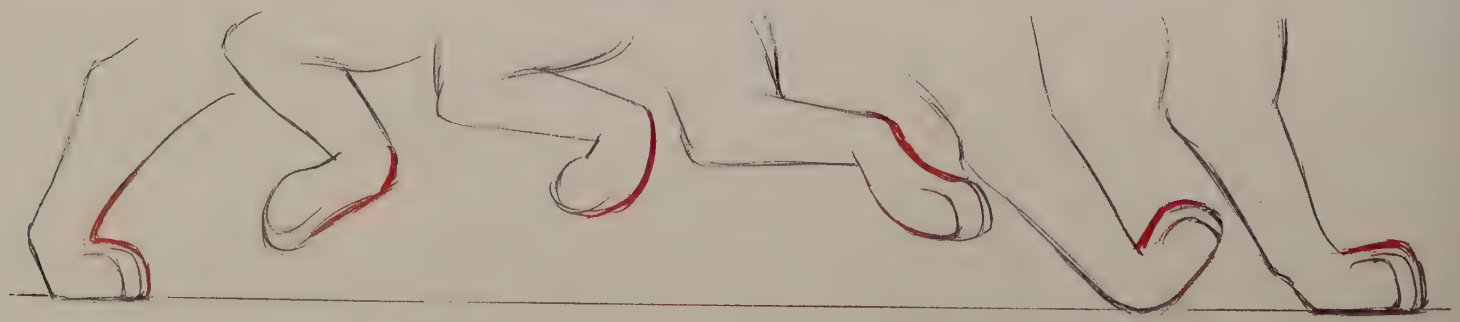
ELBOW GOES FORWARD AS HAND and BATON GO BACK.

WRIST BREAKS FORWARD AS ELBOW, FINGERS, BATON GO BACK.

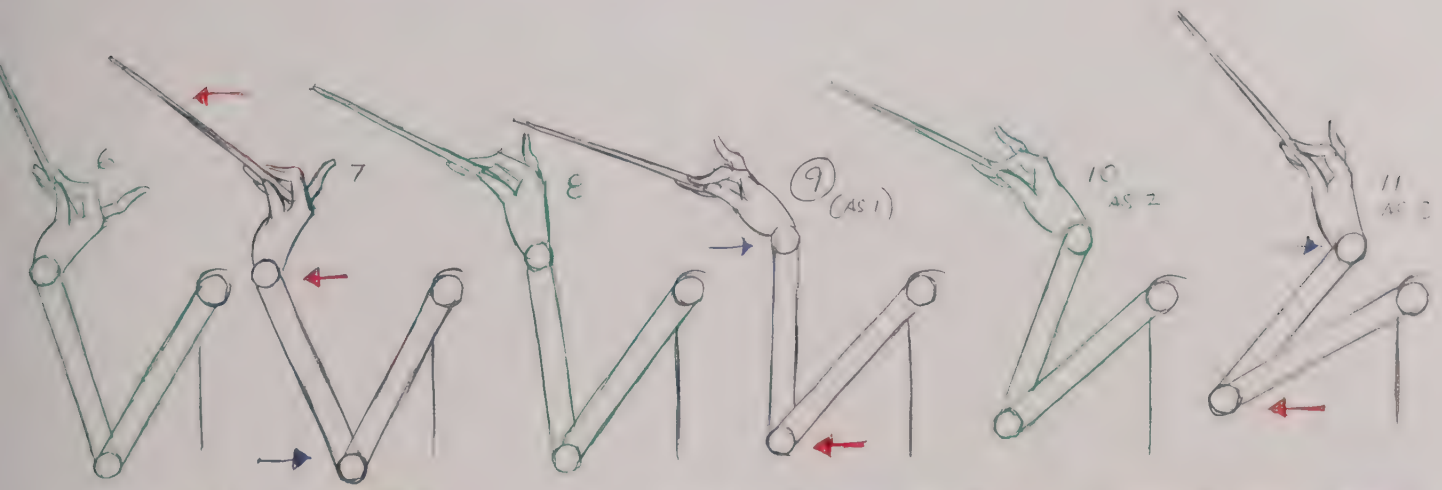
LET'S TAKE the VERY BROAD ACTION OF A MAN SLAPPING OUT A MUSICAL BEAT.-



IT'S HAPPENING WITH A DOG'S FOOT -



AND THIS IS A REDUCED ACTION FOR A CONDUCTOR...



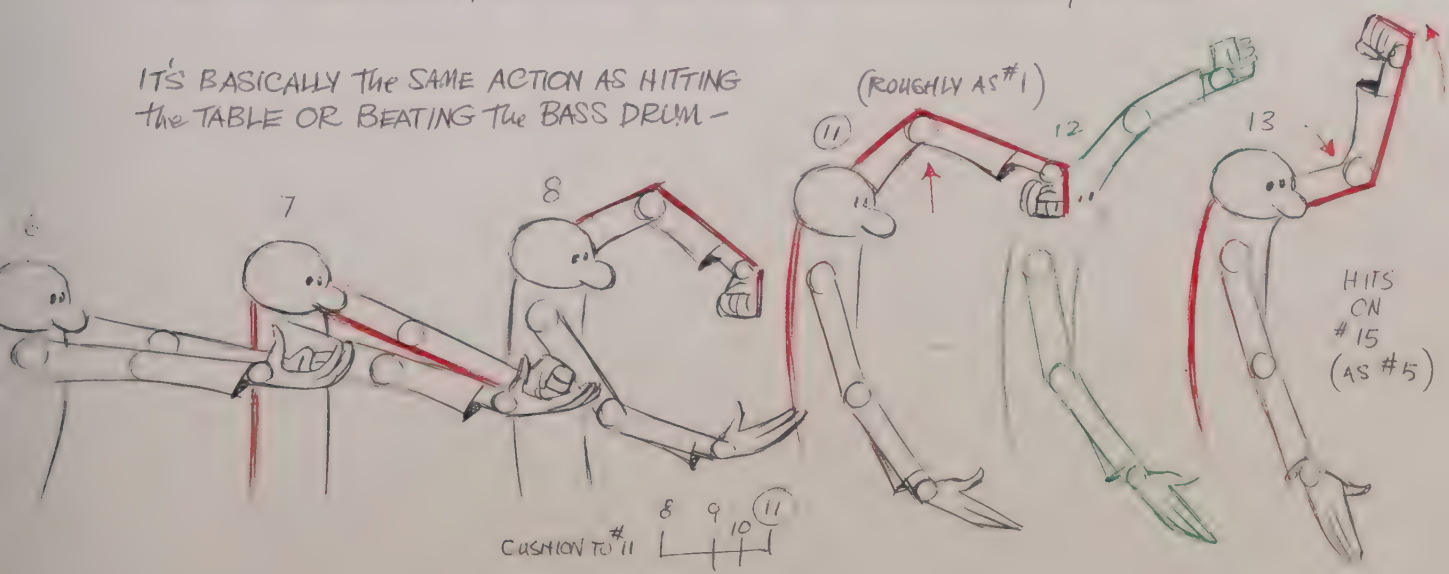
THEN ALL GOES FORWARD AS ELBOW GOES BACK FURTHER

WRIST BREAKS BACK AS FINGERS and BATON CONTINUE FORWARD and ELBOW STARTS FORWARD

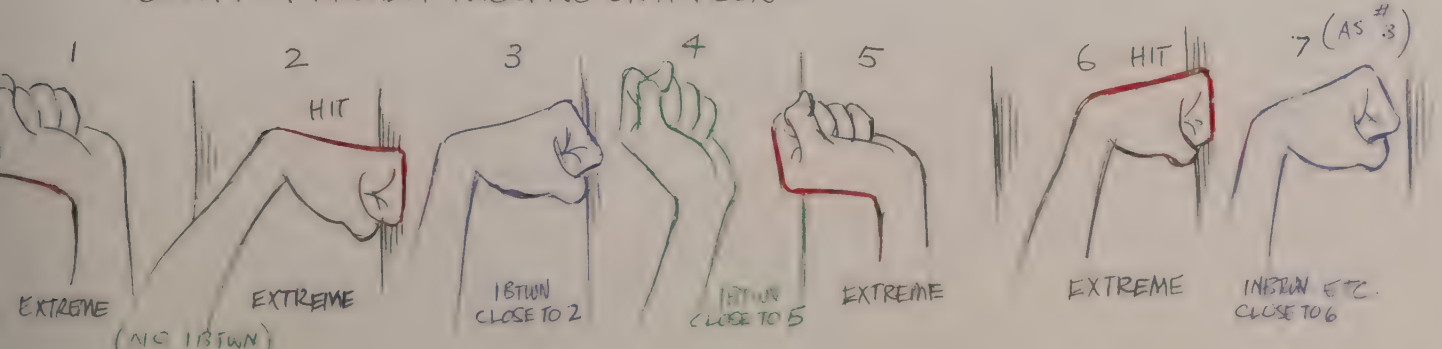
HAND and WRIST GO BACK AS ELBOW ARRIVES FORWARD

IT LOOKS COMPLICATED, BUT WHEN YOU START TO THINK THIS WAY, IT AIN'T:

IT'S BASICALLY THE SAME ACTION AS HITTING THE TABLE OR BEATING THE BASS DRUM -

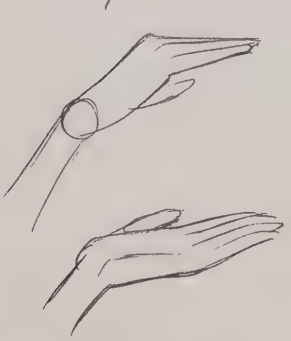


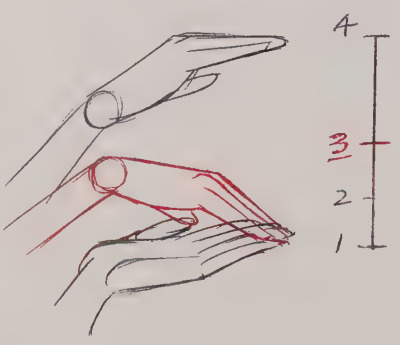
OR A FIST BROADLY KNOCKING ON A DOOR -



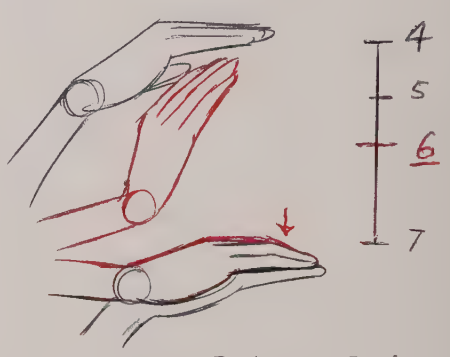
THERE ARE LOTS OF SIMPLE LITTLE ACTIONS WHICH CAN BE ENHANCED WITH JUST A TINY BIT OF FLEXIBILITY.

SAY, A HAND CLAPPING -



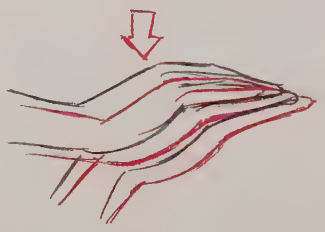


WRIST LEADS - TIP DRAGS GOING UP



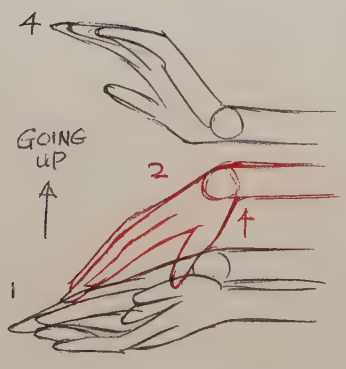
WRIST LEADS - TIP DRAGS GOING DOWN

ALSO, IT HELPS TO DISPLACE THE PALM SLIGHTLY ON THE HIT.
(ON THE CONTACT / NOT AFTER THE HIT),
- DISPLACE THE HAND THAT'S BEING HIT SLIGHTLY.

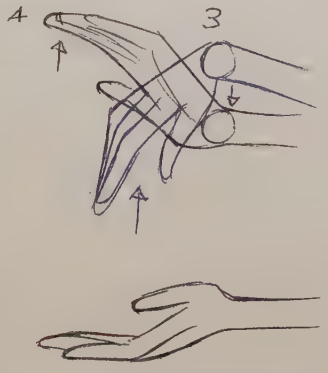


IF THE HAND STAYS IN THE SAME PLACE IT WILL LACK VITALITY.
WHAT WE FEEL IS THE DISPLACEMENT OF THE HIT.

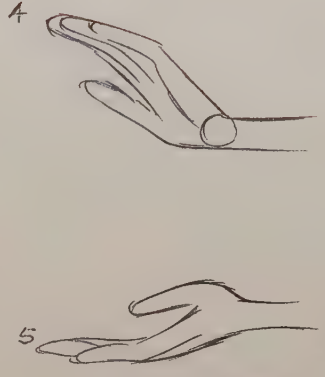
AGAIN, WE COULD DO THIS:



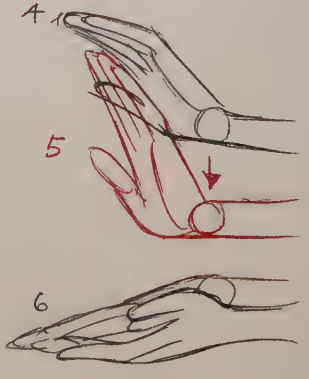
BREAKDOWN AS PREVIOUS



THE WRIST BREAKS AS THE FINGERS KEEP RISING

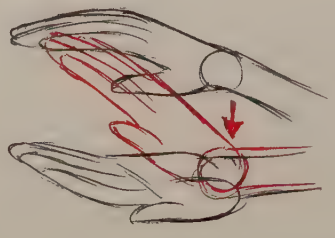


MAY BE HAVE NO IN BETWEEN GOING DOWN



OR COULD HAVE ONE IN BETWEEN GOING DOWN.

OR



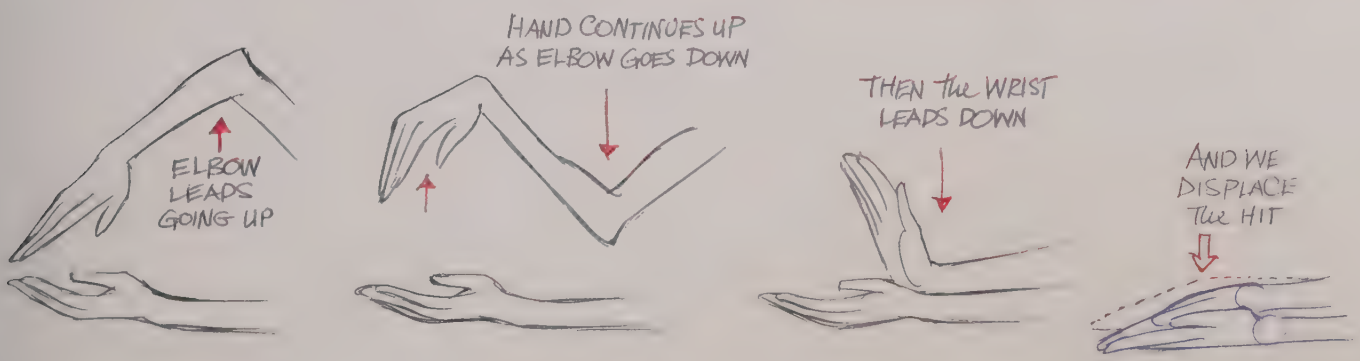
WITH ONE IN BETWEEN THE WRIST COULD ARRIVE FIRST

AND THEN DISPLACE THE PALM ON THE HIT.

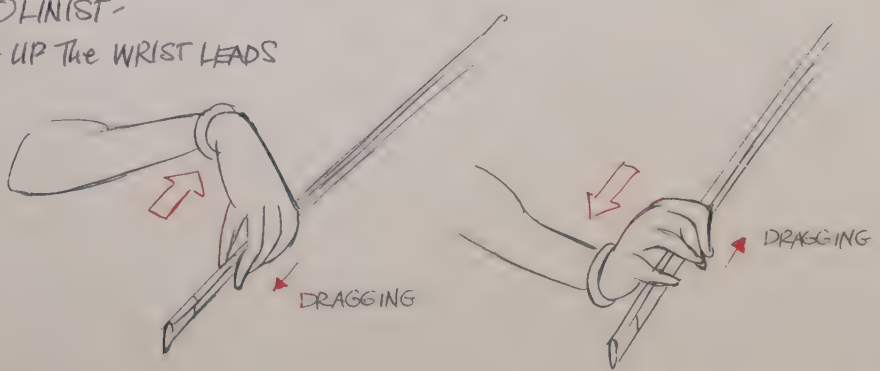
OF COURSE, APPLAUSE MAY BE LIKE THIS · SO WE'D DRAW IT THIS WAY, OBVIOUSLY -

SPANISH FLAMENCO PERSON CLAPS DIFFERENTLY. TIPS OF FINGERS HIT PALM

AND OBVIOUSLY A WRESTLER CLAPS DIFFERENTLY FROM A DRUNK OR A DIPLOMAT'S WIFE-OR A BABY.
BUT THE PRINCIPLE IS STILL THIS -- A NUMBER OF JOINTS BREAKING, ONE AFTER ANOTHER

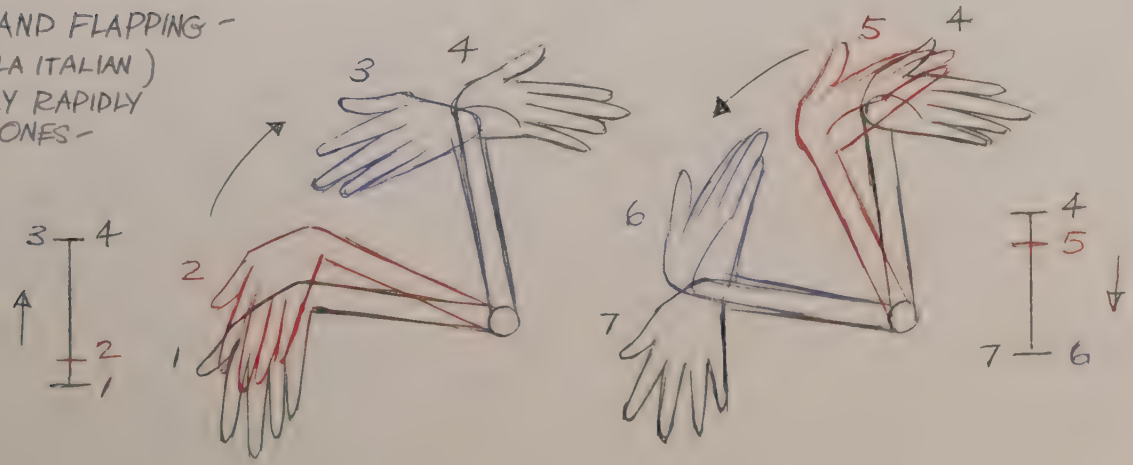


A VIOLINIST -
GOING UP THE WRIST LEADS

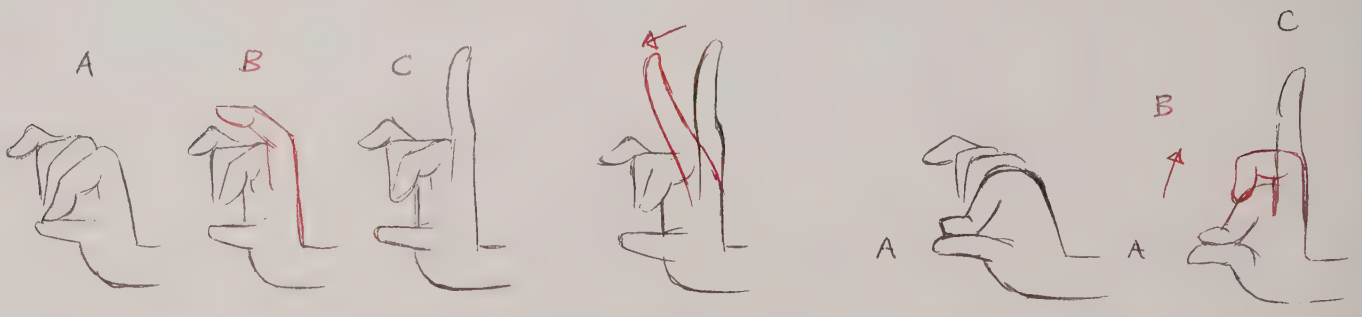


COMING DOWN THE WRIST STILL LEADS and the HAND DRAGS.

A HAND FLAPPING -
(A LA ITALIAN)
VERY RAPIDLY
ON ONES -



EVEN IN A LITTLE THING LIKE THIS WE CAN GET FLEXIBILITY -



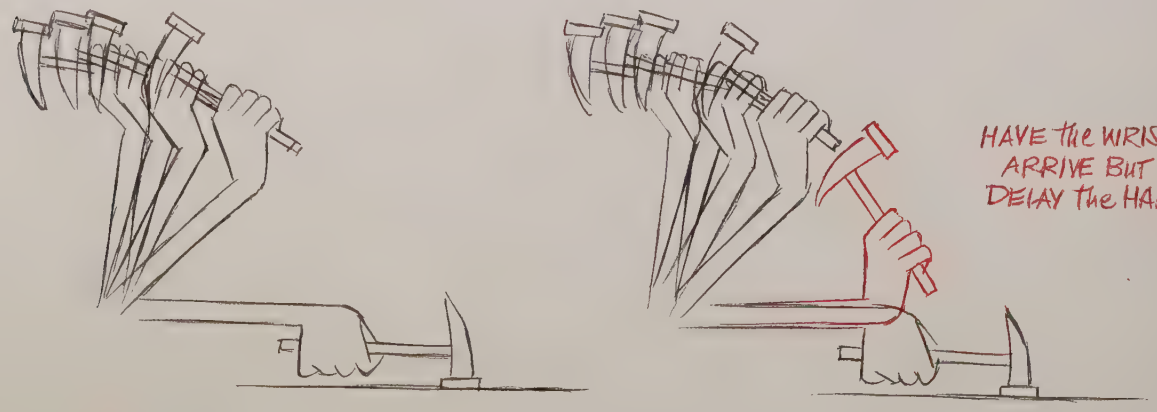
TO OPEN THESE FINGERS A STRAIGHT INBETWEEN GOING UP WOULD BE OK.

BUT ON THE WAY DOWN DRAG THE INBETWEEN

IF WE HAD A BETTER FEELING OF CONTACT AND PRESSURE TO BEGIN WITH -

= BETTER GOING UP WHEN THIS PRESSURE IS RELEASED.

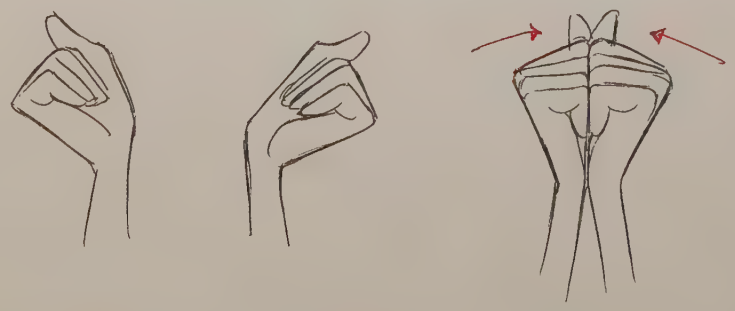
SAY WE'RE HAMMERING A NAIL -



HAVE THE WRIST ARRIVE BUT DELAY THE HAND -

AGAIN, WE CAN TAKE ALL THIS TOO FAR.
BUT THE THING IS TO KNOW IT SO WE CAN USE IT WHEN WE WANT (WHICH WILL BE A LOT.)

TAKE SOMEONE'S HANDS KNOCKING TOGETHER GOING 'GOODY, GOODY'



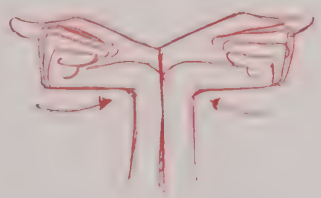
MAYBE WE JUST WANT TO INBETWEEN IT FAVOURING THE ANTICIPATE.

AND IT WOULD BE FINE -

IT MIGHT NOT BE NECESSARY TO 'OVERANIMATE' IT WITH BROKEN JOINTS - BUT MAYBE IT'S GOOD. LETS TRY IT.

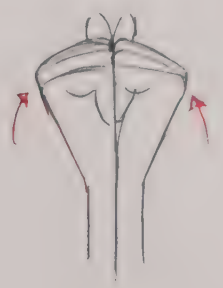
1

2



The WRISTS LEAD
CLUNK.

3



CLUNK.

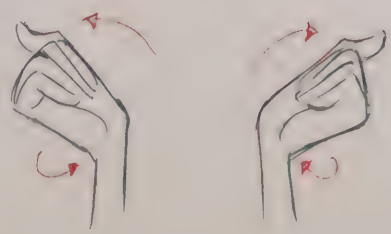
NOW HOW ABOUT THIS FOR PULLING IT APART?

3

4

ELBOWS GO FIRST -
THEN WRISTS LEAD OUT

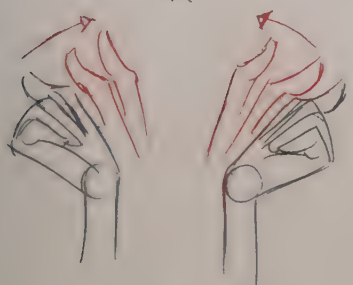
5



AND COME IN A BIT
AS HANDS FLOP OVER.

(OR) IT MIGHT BE NICE TO HAVE JUST ONE BREAK -

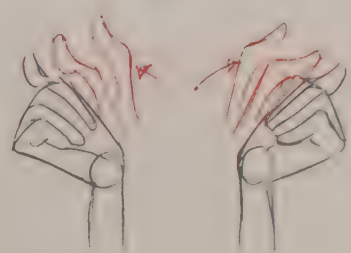
A



B

C

D

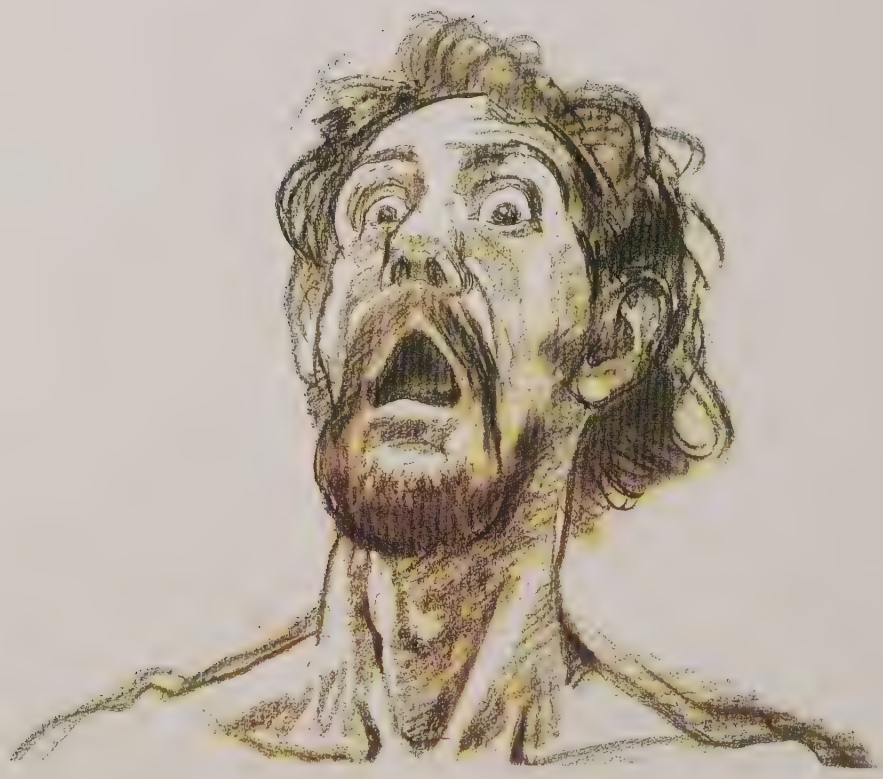


SO IT'S ALL A MATTER OF DEGREE -

WE'RE SHOWING THESE DEVICES and PRINCIPLES IN The RAW -- IN The CRUDEST POSSIBLE STATE TO MAKE IT CLEAR -- TO LIMBER THINGS UP - TO STOP THINGS BEING STIFF OR STILTED.

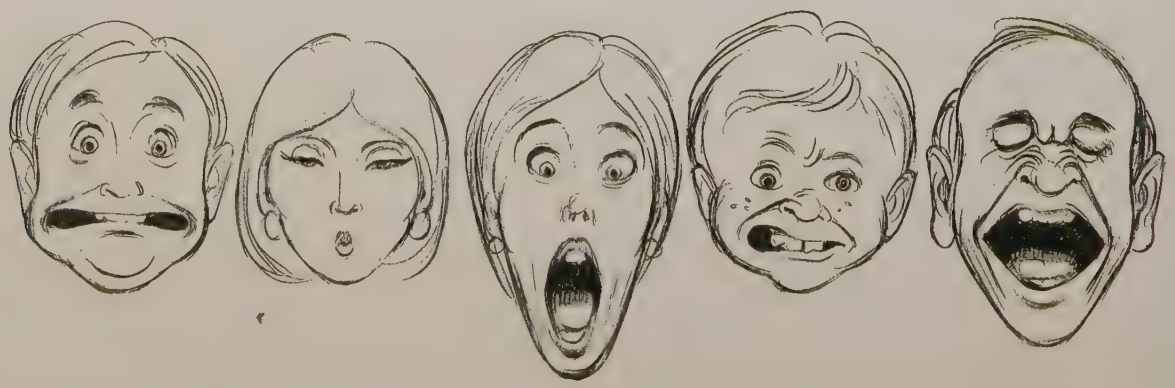
WE CAN USE THEM INCREDIBLY SUBTLY OR OVERUSE THEM SO THINGS GO RUBBERY OR MUSHY.

BUT IT'S SURPRISING HOW FAR WE CAN GO WITH BREAKING JOINTS and HAVE IT WORK BEAUTIFULLY.

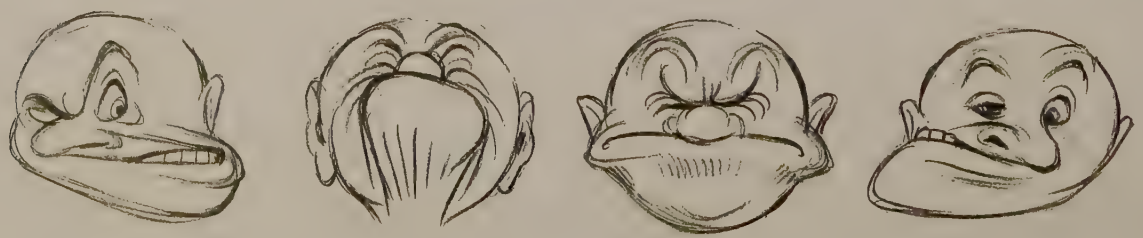


FLEXIBILITY IN The FACE

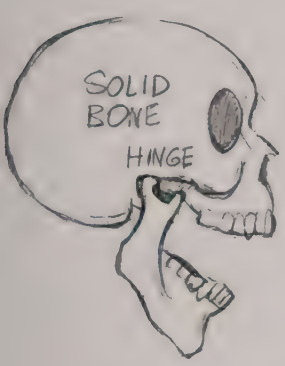
THERE'S A TENDENCY TO FORGET HOW MOBILE OUR FACES REALLY ARE IN ACTION - AND IT'S ALWAYS SHOCKING TO SEE HOW MUCH DISTORTION THERE IS WHEN WE LOOK AT LIVE ACTION OF ACTORS' CLOSE-UPS FRAME BY FRAME.

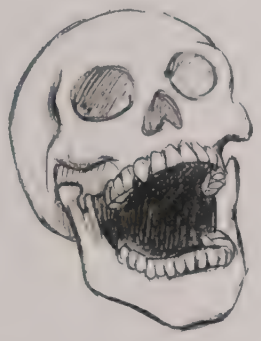


NOT TO MENTION WHAT A FACIAL CONTORTIONIST CAN DO (IN SPITE OF the JAWS and TEETH NOT BEING RUBBER.)

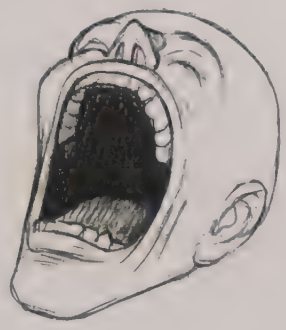


THE SKULL OBVIOUSLY REMAINS the SAME BUT THERE'S LOTS OF ACTION HAPPENING BELOW THE CHEEKBONES. OUR UPPER TEETH DON'T CHANGE POSITION AS THEY'RE LOCKED ONTO OUR SKULL. THE HINGED LOWER JAW ACTION IS PRIMARILY UP and DOWN WITH A SLIGHT LATERAL MOTION.





the TENDENCY IS TO FORGET JUST HOW BIG OUR MOUTH CAVITY IS...



OUR DENTIST KNOWS HOW BIG IT IS -

the LOWER JAW IS HINGED IN FRONT OF the EAR.

AND HOW SMALL IT CAN APPEAR.

ART BABBITT OFTEN TOLD OF HOW, AFTER ANIMATING the BEAUTIFUL EVIL QUEEN 'MAGIC MIRROR ON the WALL' SCENE IN "SNOW WHITE and the SEVEN DWARFS" (A DEGREE OF REALISM THAT NO ONE HAD EVER ATTEMPTED BEFORE, LET ALONE SUCCEED IN ACHIEVING,) HE BECAME INHIBITED WHEN ANIMATING CLOSE-UPS ON the 7 DWARFS. HE GOT HELP FROM the OTHER TOP MEN IN DARING TO COMPRESS and DISTEND the FACES. HE ALWAYS SAID, "BE BRAVE. DON'T BE AFRAID TO STRETCH the FACE."

THERE'S A TENDENCY TO HAVE A SIMPLE MOUTH SQUIRMING AROUND - FLOATING ON the FACE

STRETCH IT TO MAKE IT AN INTEGRAL PART OF the FACE.

and COMPRESS IT.

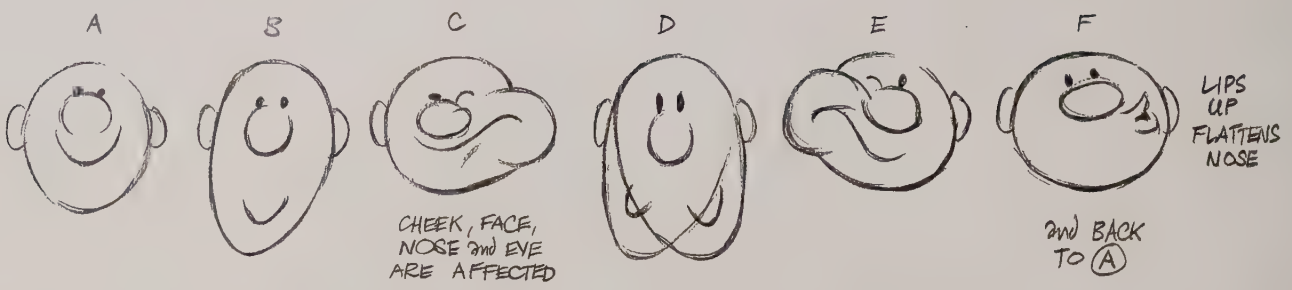
THERE'S A TREMENDOUS AMOUNT OF ELASTICITY IN OUR FACE MUSCLES.

A MAN SMOKING A PIPE - (LEAVING OUT the PIPE)

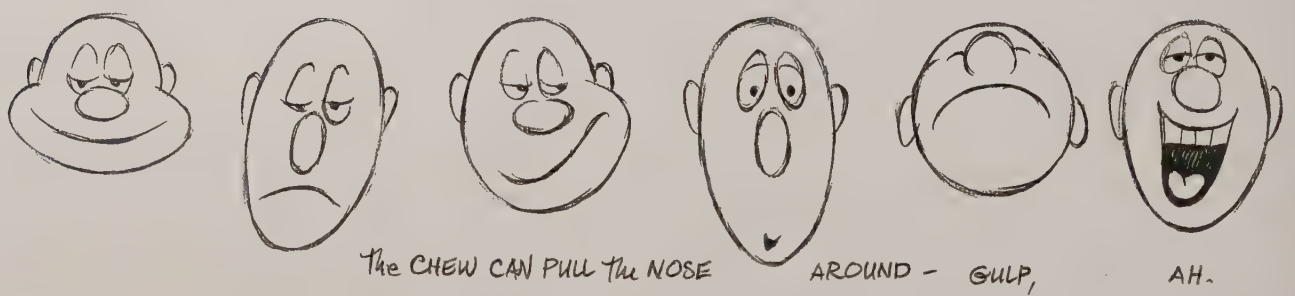
SUCKING IN

PUFFING OUT

TAKE CHEWING, FOR EXAMPLE:

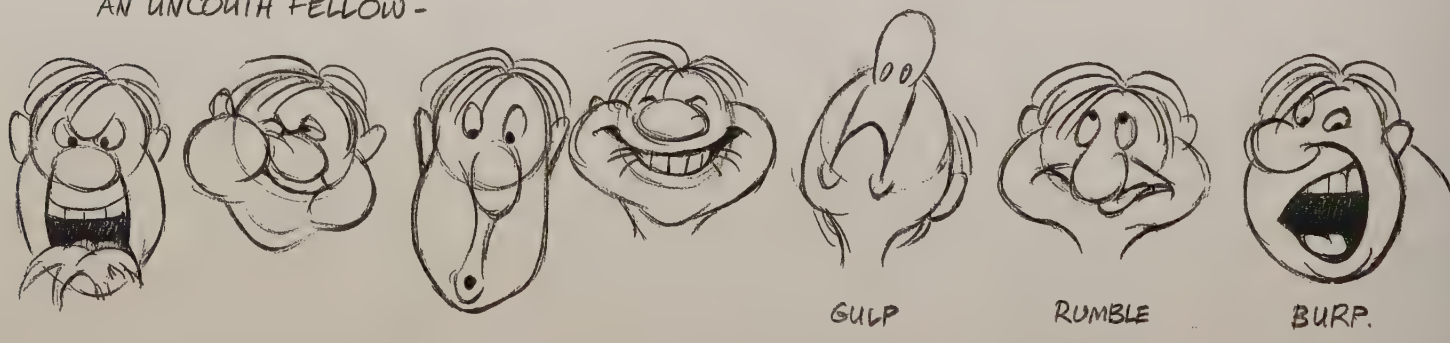


WE COULD GO FROM ANY OF THESE POSITIONS TO ANY OTHER IN ANY SEQUENCE, VARYING IT.

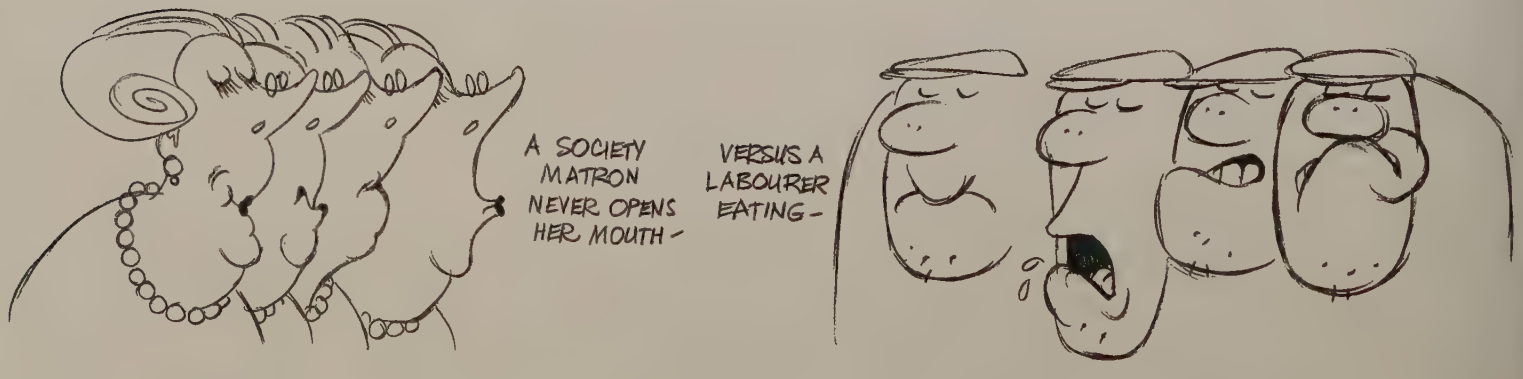


AGAIN, WITH SQUASH and STRETCH, WE TRY TO KEEP the SAME AMOUNT OF MEAT. IF YOU TOOK IT OUT and WEIGHED IT - IT WOULD WEIGH the SAME.

AN UNCOUTH FELLOW -



SO, AGAIN, IT'S <u>WHO</u> IS CHEWING? FAT, SMALL, OLD, CRAZY, INHIBITED?
A SOPHISTICATED PERSON CHEWING VERSUS A TRAMP WHO HASN'T EATEN FOR 3 WEEKS?



OVERLAPPING ACTION IN the FACE

HERE'S A THING YOU OFTEN SEE GOOD ACTORS DOING:
SAY SOMEONE GETS FRIGHTENED -

IT'S CRUDE JUST TO GO

FROM ONE TO the OTHER.

IT CAN GO IN SECTIONS -

ONE THING AT A TIME -

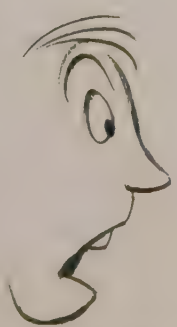
the OVERLAPPING ACTION WORKS IT'S WAY DOWN the FACE (CAN BE VERY FAST)

FIRST the EYE - THEN the NOSE - THEN the MOUTH - THEN the HAIR

(OR) VICE VERSA - WORKS IT'S WAY UP the FACE -

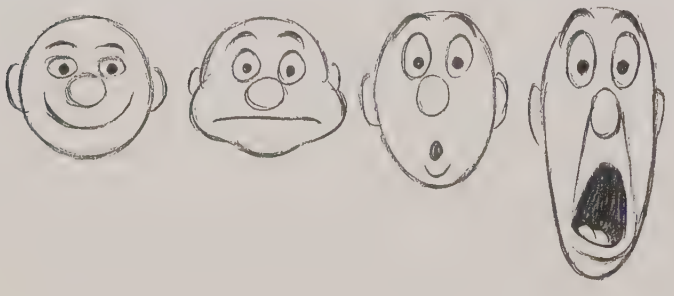
FIRST the MOUTH - THEN the NOSE - THEN the EYE - THEN the HAIR .

START FROM SQUINT -

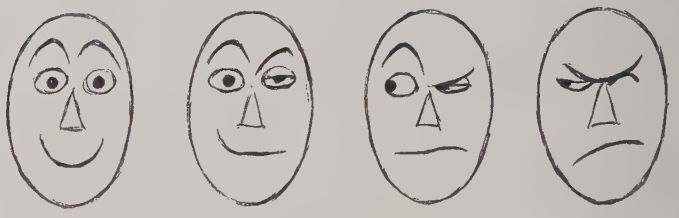


EYE OPENS FIRST - NOSE STRAIGHTENS - JAW FALLS 2nd OPENS

START WITH the EYES – THEN KEEP GOING AS the MOUTH OVERLAPS and STRETCHES

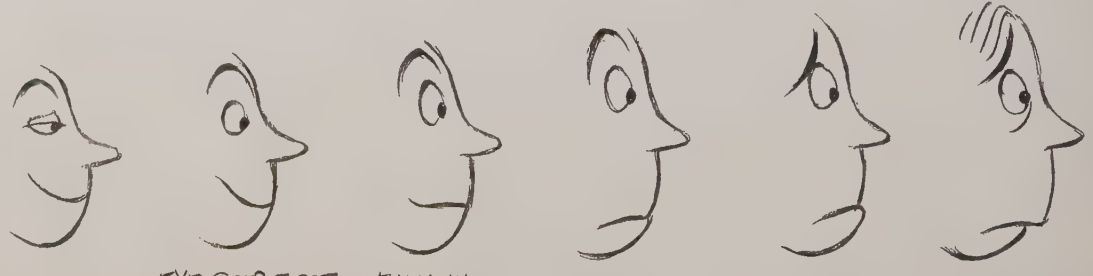


(OR) The CHANGE COULD TRAVEL ACROSS The FACE.



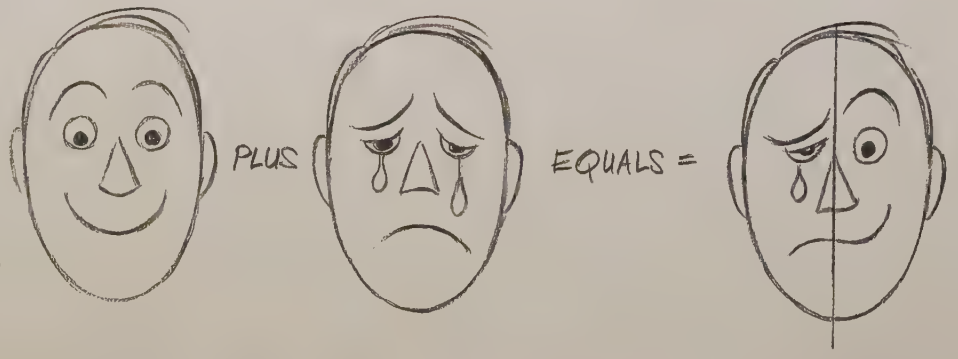
SAY SOMEONE'S DISAPPOINTED -

START FROM IT'S OPPOSITE - (THIS MIGHT HAPPEN MORE SLOWLY)



EYE GOES FIRST - THEN THE MOUTH DROPS - The EYEBROW REVERSES and BROW FURROWS and CHIN GOES IN.

WE ALL KNOW The TWO FACE - The DOUBLE FACE WHERE THERE'S CONTRADICTION:



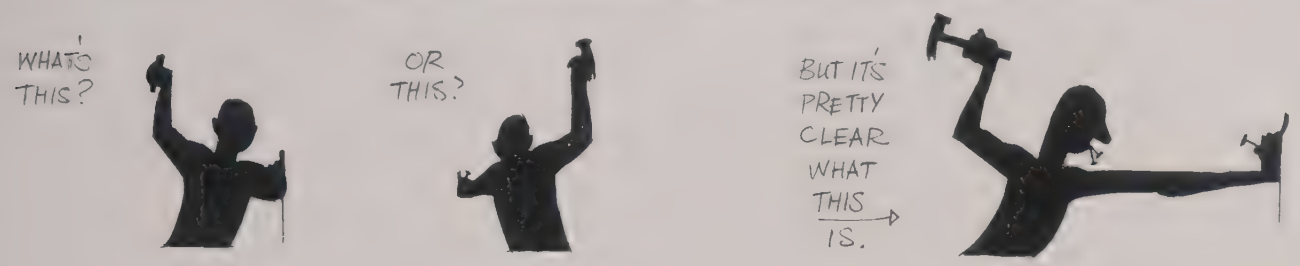
PLUS EQUALS = PUTTING A BRAVE FACE ON IT -

ONE SIDE OF The FACE IS TELLING US ONE THING and the OTHER SIDE IS TELLING US ANOTHER -

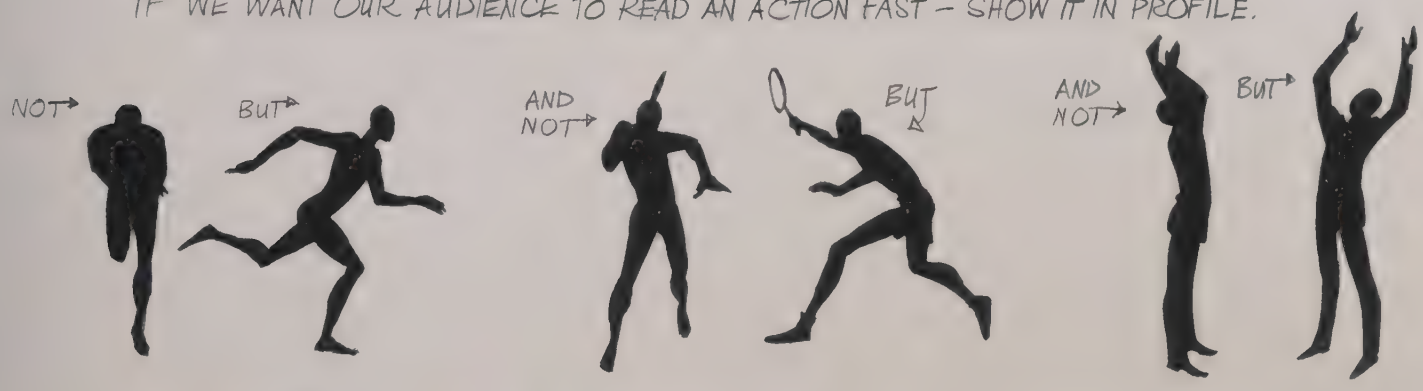
I'D LIKE TO ANIMATE ONE SIDE SEPARATELY and THEN ANIMATE The OTHER.

INSTANT READ - PROFILES FOR READABILITY

THIS HAS TO GO IN the BOOK SOMEWHERE and IT MIGHT AS WELL BE HERE...



IF WE WANT OUR AUDIENCE TO READ AN ACTION FAST - SHOW IT IN PROFILE.



WE CERTAINLY DON'T HAVE ANY TROUBLE SEEING WHAT'S HAPPENING HERE-

AND FROM the POINT OF VIEW OF FLEXIBILITY - LOOK HOW JUST A SIMPLE REVERSAL OF HER BACK ARCH GIVES TERRIFIC SUPPLENESS. DRAWING (D)'S BACK IS ABOUT AS CONCAVE AS YOU CAN GET - STAYS THAT WAY ON (E) and THEN REVERSES TO CONVEX ON (F) and (G). The HAIR IS DELAYED and ONLY DROPS ON (F). NICE.

IT'S ALWAYS A GOOD IDEA TO TRY TO GET A CLEAR OPPOSITE FROM WHAT WE'RE GOING TO CHANGE TO - WHETHER IT'S A FACIAL EXPRESSION OR A CHANGE OF SHAPE LIKE THIS.

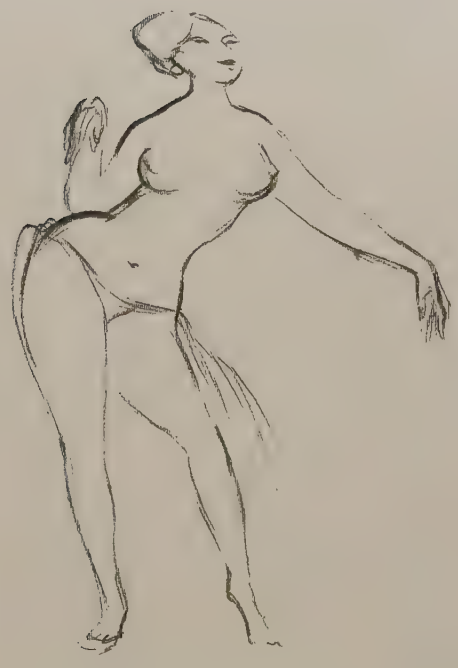
TO FINISH OFF THIS SECTION and AS A KIND OF REVIEW -
HERE'S AN EXAM IN FLEXIBILITY -
AN ASSIGNMENT ART BABBITT GAVE US TO PRACTICE SUCCESSIVE BREAKING JOINTS -

1. TAKE the FRONT VIEW OF A FEMALE SWAYING SIDE TO SIDE.
2. HAVE The HIPS WORK IN A FIGURE 8.
3. HAVE the HEAD COUNTER the BODY.
4. HAVE the HANDS WORK INDEPENDENTLY and BREAK the JOINTS.

HERE'S The SCRIBBLE I MADE AS ART SET OUT the PROBLEM:

KIND OF A SCARY PROBLEM and AS I WANTED TO DO IT SORT OF REALISTICALLY - EVEN SCARIER.
OK, WHAT DO WE DO FIRST? (THINKS) DUHHH... HEY, OF COURSE - the (KEY) = DRAWING #(1)
The ONE THAT TELLS the STORY

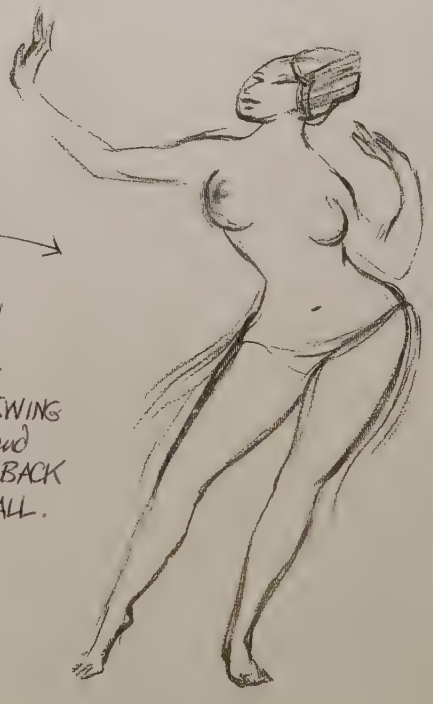
(1)



13

WHAT'S NEXT?
(THINKS)
... OBVIOUSLY...
The NEXT EXTREME
WHERE SHE'LL SWAY
TO the OTHER SIDE →

- CALL THIS #13
BECAUSE WHEN
I ACT IT OUT
I TAKE ABOUT
½ A SECOND TO SWING
TO ONE SIDE and
½ SEC TO SWING BACK
= 1 SECOND OVERALL.



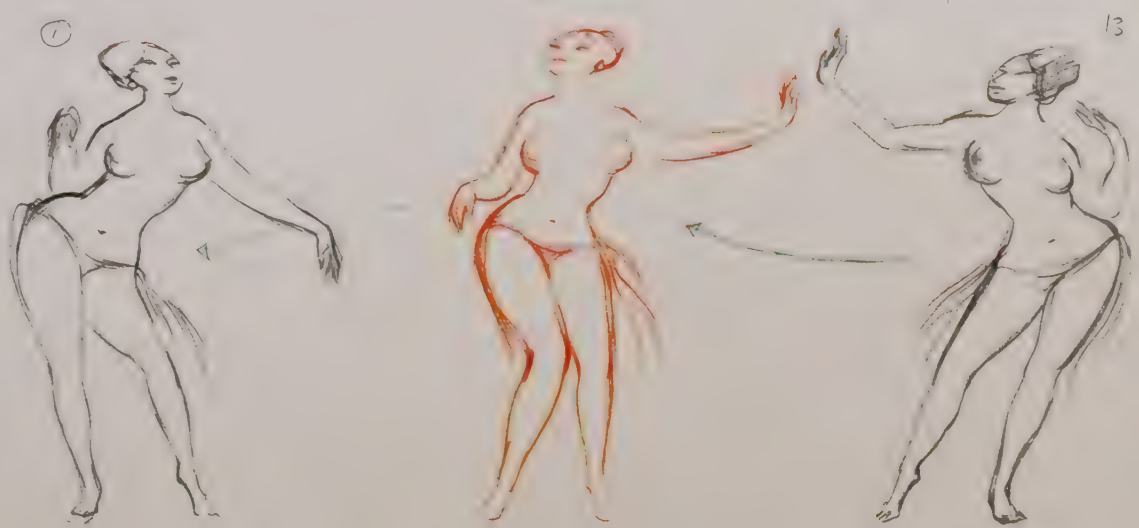
MAKE IT A CYCLE SO WE CAN TEST IT REPEATEDLY TO SPOT ANY GOOFS.

HEY, IT'S NOT SO SCARY ANYMORE - NOW IF WE JUST GET INTERESTING PASSING POSITIONS BETWEEN THE TWO EXTREMES... FIRST, SWAYING THIS WAY. → HAVE THE HIPS FAVOUR #13.

NOW BACK THE OTHER ← WAY.

GETTING SOME CONFIDENCE NOW... LETS HAVE THE HIPS FAVOUR #1 and THROW THE LEG OFF AS I DID INSTINCTIVELY ON MY ORIGINAL SCRIBBLE.

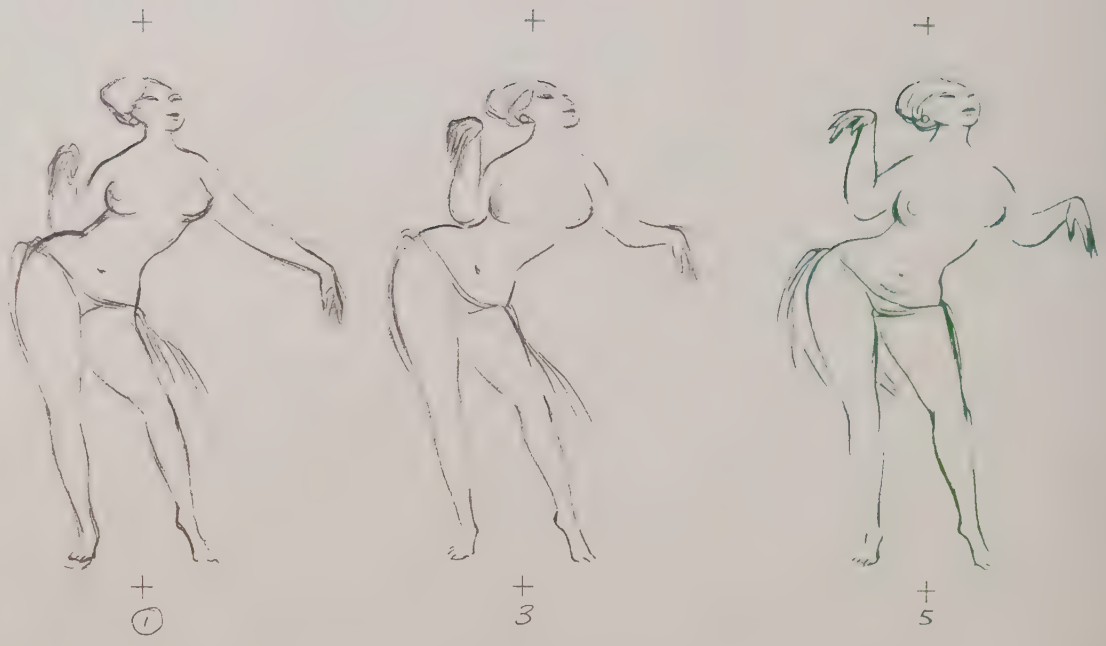
NOW LETS BE CLEVER -



3
1
13
15
PUT IN ANOTHER EXTREME NEXT TO #1 PUSHING HER FURTHER OVER.
and PUT IN ANOTHER EXTREME NEXT TO #13 PUSHING HER FURTHER OVER -
CONT'D

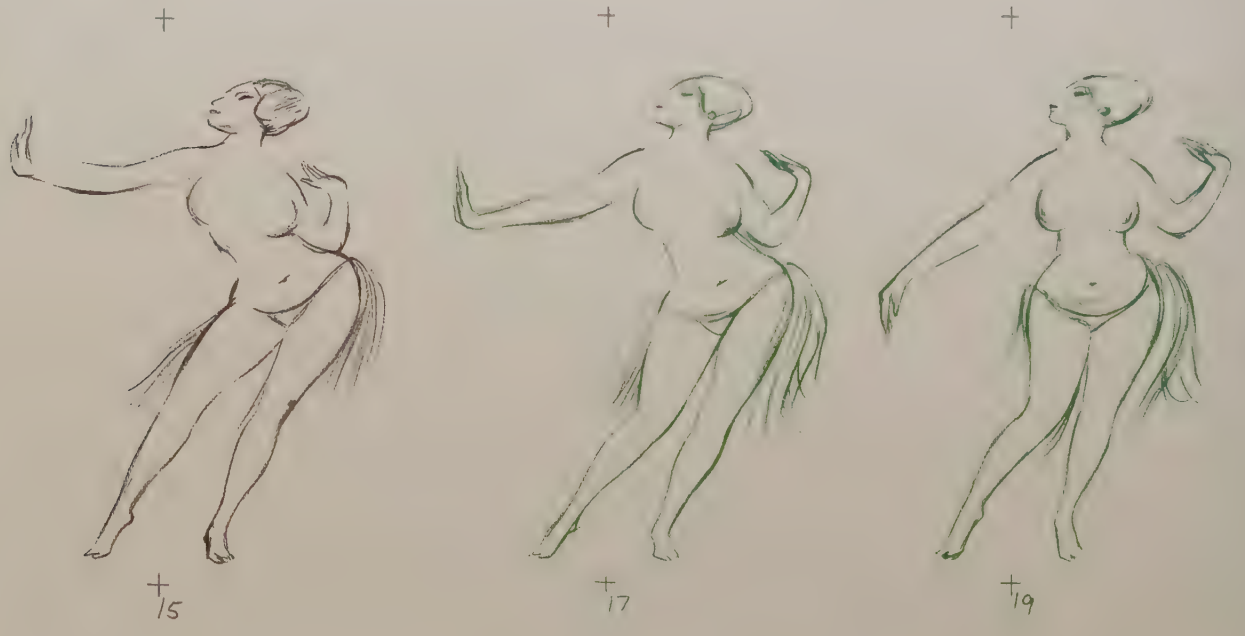
NOW IT LOOKS LIKE IT'S ALL GOING TO WORK

and WE CAN KIND OF RELAX, BREAKING IT DOWN FURTHER and ENJOY TAKING ON The REST BIT BY BIT- PUTTING IN The HANDS CIRCLING and OTHER CURVY BITS.

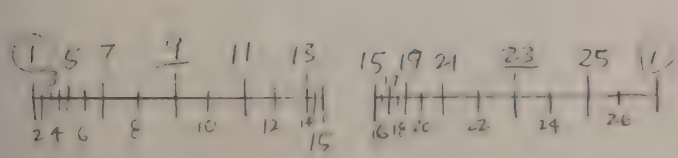


The CHARTS ARE SIMPLE

GOING OVER →



and COMING BACK ←



THEN ADD IN ONES THROUGHOUT — BUT THEY'RE JUST BRAINLESS INBETWEENS TO SMOOTH THINGS OUT FURTHER. (THIS CAME OUT JUST FINE, DIDN'T NEED ANY CORRECTIONS.)

WEIGHT

THE FIRST QUESTION I EVER ASKED MILT KAHL WAS: 'HOW DID YOU EVER GET THAT JUNGLE BOOK TIGER TO WEIGH SO MUCH?'

HE ANSWERED, 'WELL, I KNOW WHERE THE WEIGHT IS ON EVERY DRAWING. I KNOW WHERE THE WEIGHT IS AT ANY GIVEN MOMENT ON THE CHARACTER. I KNOW WHERE THE WEIGHT IS, AND WHERE IT'S COMING FROM AND WHERE IT'S JUST TRAVELLING OVER - AND WHERE THE WEIGHT IS TRANSFERRING TO.'

WE'VE ALREADY SEEN THAT IN A WALK WE FEEL THE WEIGHT ON THE DOWN POSITION WHERE THE LEG BENDS AS IT TAKES THE WEIGHT, ABSORBING THE FORCE OF THE MOVE. BUT HOW ABOUT OTHER KINDS OF WEIGHT? OBJECTS - LIGHT? HEAVY? HOW DO WE SHOW THAT?

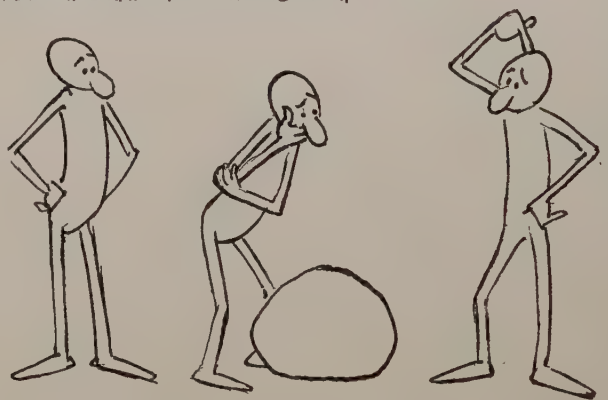
ONE WAY WE CAN SHOW HOW HEAVY AN OBJECT IS -
- IS BY THE WAY WE PREPARE TO PICK IT UP.

TO PICK UP WEIGHT WE HAVE TO PREPARE FOR IT - TO ANTICIPATE THE WEIGHT. OBVIOUSLY PICKING UP A PIECE OF CHALK, A PEN OR A FEATHER DOESN'T REQUIRE ANY PREPARATION -

BUT A HEAVY STONE...

BAD. NO FEELING OF WEIGHT. IT MUST BE A POLYSTYRENE ROCK.

WE CAN SUGGEST WEIGHT BY JUST HAVING HIM WALK AROUND IT - SIZING IT UP.



HOW'S HE GOING TO DO THIS? HE'S CONSIDERING WHAT HE'S GOING TO PICK UP. HOW HEAVY IS IT? HE'S ANTICIPATING WHAT IT'S GOING TO WEIGH...

MAYBE WE DON'T HAVE THE SCREEN TIME TO HAVE HIM WALK AROUND, BUT ONE WAY OR ANOTHER, HE'S GOING TO ANTICIPATE THE WEIGHT.

HE'D CERTAINLY SPREAD HIS FEET FIRST AND BEND HIS KNEES -

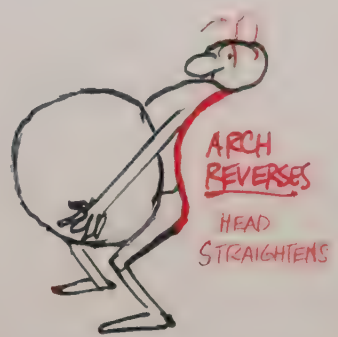
LOOK WHAT THE SPINE IS DOING...

AND GET AS CLOSE TO THE WEIGHT AS POSSIBLE.

HE ADJUSTS HIMSELF SO AS TO NOT DAMAGE HIMSELF, HE DOESN'T WANT A HERNIA.

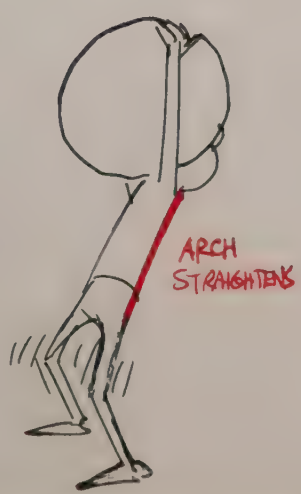
BODY GOES BACK AS HE LIFTS

TRIES TO GET UNDERNEATH THE WEIGHT - MIGHT ADJUST FEET IN LITTLE BITS - ERRATICALLY



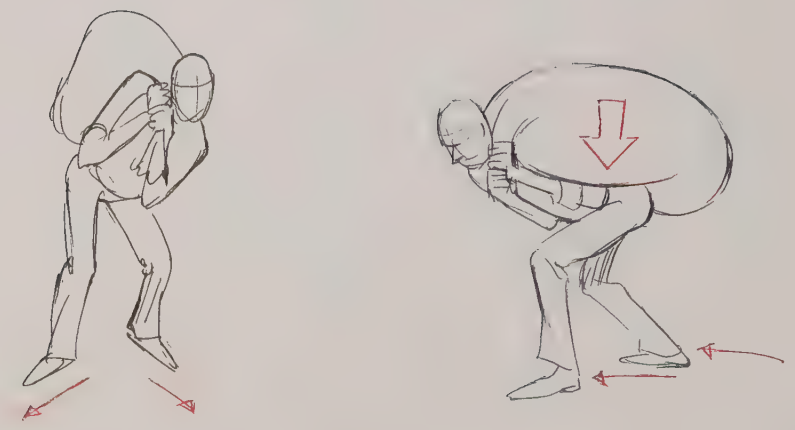
BACK ARCH REVERSES AS HE TRIES TO GET A PURCHASE -

BIG LIFT



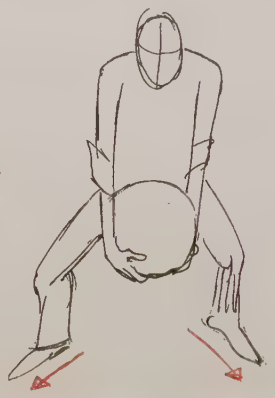
STRAIGHTENS - KNEES SHAKE

FALLS BACK OR WHATEVER.



A MAN CARRYING A SACK OF POTATOES ON HIS BACK BENDS DOWN TO COUNTERBALANCE the WEIGHT. THE WEIGHT FORCES HIS BODY CLOSER TO the GROUND, KEEPING the KNEES BENT and MAKING the FEET SHUFFLE ALONG. The FEET ALSO SPLAY OUT TO FORM A SORT OF TRIPOD TO SPREAD the WEIGHT OVER A LARGER AREA.

FEET APART- KNEES ALWAYS BENT

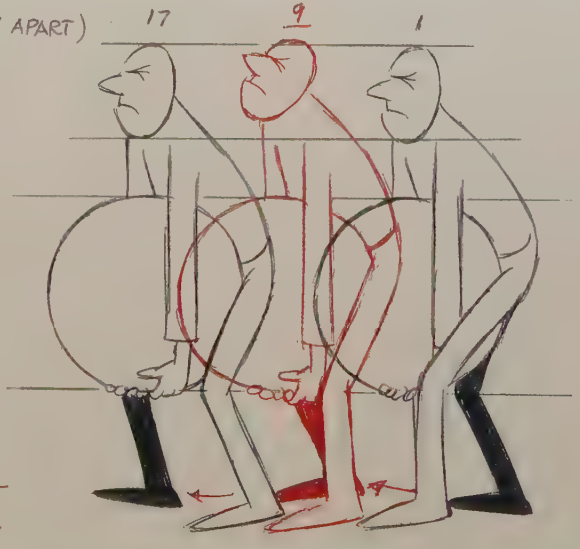


FEET DONT COME OFF the GROUND VERY MUCH.

A LOT OF DIFFERENCE IN THESE WALKS OR RUNS IS DETERMINED BY the WEIGHT the PERSON MIGHT BE CARRYING. IF A PERSON IS CARRYING A HEAVY ROCK- The WEIGHT WOULD LOWER the SHOULDERS and STRETCH the ARMS. The HEAD and NECK COULD COME DOWN.

(PULLED SLIGHTLY APART)

17 9 1



HE'LL MOVE MORE SLOWLY and the BODY WILL RAISE ONLY SLIGHTLY ON the PASSING POSITION

BUT the ROCK WILL NOT RAISE AT ALL.

AGAIN, the PASSING FOOT WILL HARDLY LEAVE the GROUND and The KNEES WILL REMAIN BENT ALL the TIME FROM the WEIGHT.

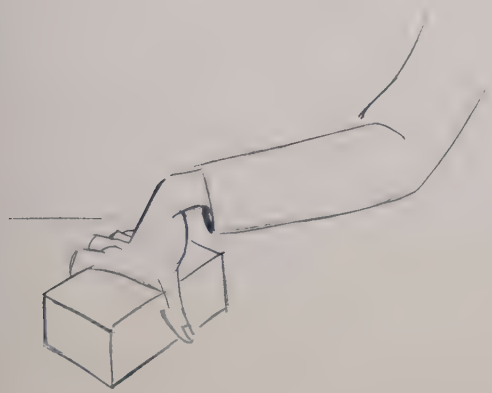
The TIMING OF the FEET COULD BE ERRATIC -

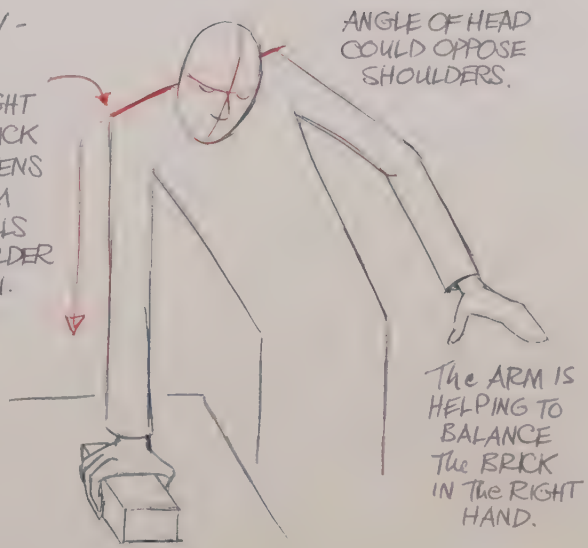
ie. STEP, PAUSE, STEP, STEP, PAUSE, STEP, PAUSE, STEP, STEP, STEP, PAUSE, etc.

(OR) HE COULD GLIDE RAPIDLY and THEN DROP IT.

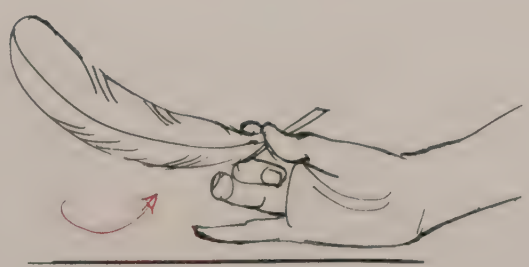
A HAND PICKING UP A SILK HANDKERCHIEF LYING ON THE GROUND ENCOUNTERS NO RESISTANCE -

BUT A HAND PICKING UP A BRICK - LET'S CONSIDER WHAT HAPPENS TO THE WHOLE BODY -




ANGLE OF HEAD COULD OPPOSE SHOULDERS.
THE WEIGHT OF THE BRICK STRAIGHTENS THE ARM AND PULLS THE SHOULDER DOWN.
THE ARM IS HELPING TO BALANCE THE BRICK IN THE RIGHT HAND.

PICKING UP A FEATHER ISN'T GOING TO HAVE ANY EFFECT ON THE BODY.



REVERSING THE FEATHER SHAPE ⌒ TO ⌣ IN THE MOVE MAKES THE FEATHER EVEN LIGHTER.

OF COURSE, ONE WAY TO GET WEIGHT IS TO BE CONSCIOUS OF IT.

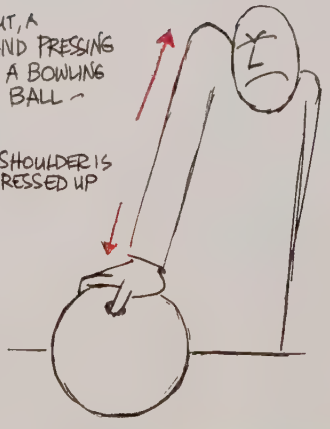
THE GREAT ANIMATOR, BILL TYTLA SAYS -

"THE POINT IS THAT YOU ARE NOT MERELY SWISHING A PENCIL ABOUT, BUT YOU HAVE WEIGHT IN YOUR FORMS AND YOU DO WHATEVER YOU POSSIBLY CAN WITH THAT WEIGHT TO CONVEY SENSATION. IT IS A STRUGGLE FOR ME AND I AM CONSCIOUS OF IT ALL THE TIME."

SAY A HAND PRESSES ON A BALLOON: THE ARM MIGHT JUST STRAIGHTEN A BIT -

BUT, A HAND PRESSING ON A BOWLING BALL -

SHOULDER IS PRESSED UP



A HAND PRESSING ON WATER

THE HAND WILL DISPLACE SOME OF THE WATER BUT WILL REALLY HAVE LITTLE EFFECT ON THE WATER.

LET'S DROP A FEW THINGS WHICH FALL AT DIFFERENT SPEEDS BECAUSE OF THEIR WEIGHT and WHAT THEY'RE MADE OF.

A SILK HANKY WOULD CATCH A CERTAIN AMOUNT OF AIR AS IT FALLS

DROPS

HAS AIR UNDER IT and WILL TEND TO FLOAT

LANDS - HAS AIR UNDER IT

AND SETTLES

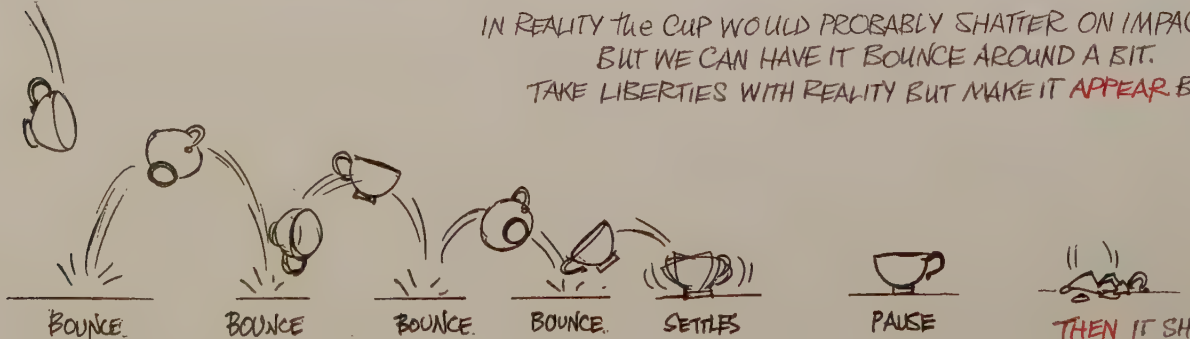
A HEAVY OVERCOAT FALLS -

CATCHES AIR BUT DROPS FAST - IT WONT LINGER IN THE AIR.

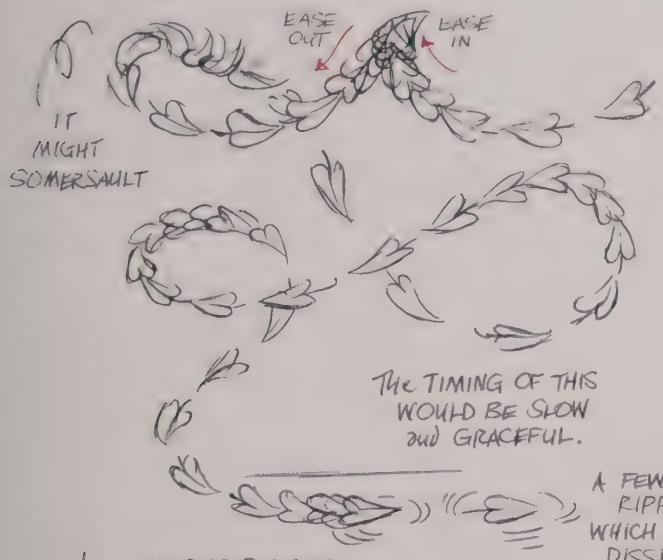
MAYBE THIS WOULD NEVER SETTLE AT ALL.

TAKE A CHINA CUP -

IN REALITY THE CUP WOULD PROBABLY SHATTER ON IMPACT BUT WE CAN HAVE IT BOUNCE AROUND A BIT. TAKE LIBERTIES WITH REALITY BUT MAKE IT APPEAR BELIEVABLE.

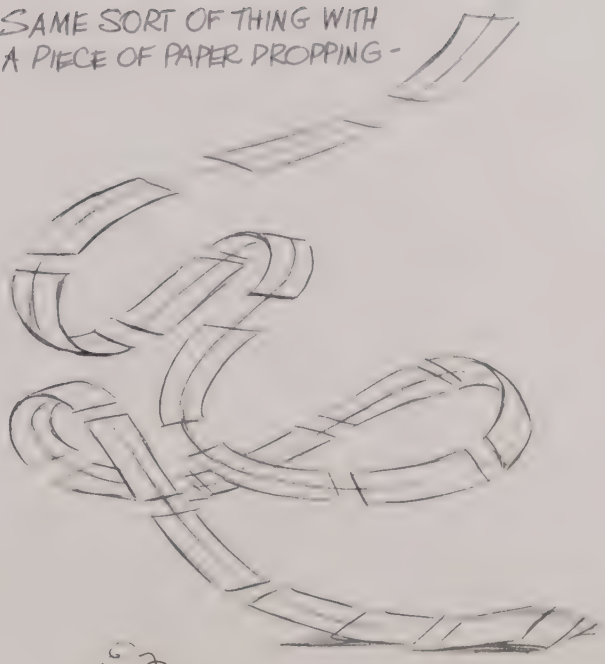


A FALLING LEAF WILL LINGER IN THE AIR - AIR CURRENTS WILL AFFECT IT - IT'S FALL IS BEING RESISTED BY THE AIR.

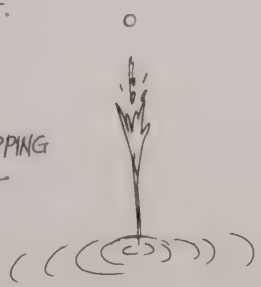

EASE OUT
EASE IN
IT MIGHT SOMERSAULT
THE TIMING OF THIS WOULD BE SLOW AND GRACEFUL.
A FEW SMALL RIPPLES WHICH QUICKLY DISSIPATE.

IT'S LANDING IS RESISTED BY WATER - A SLOW SKID TO A HALT.

SAME SORT OF THING WITH A PIECE OF PAPER DROPPING -

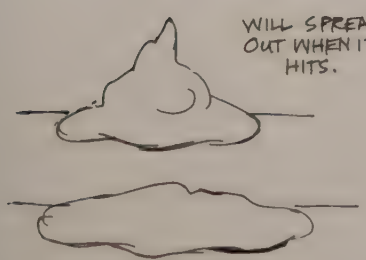


A PEBBLE DROPPING INTO WATER -

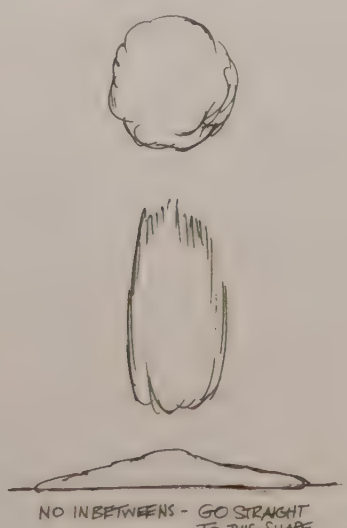


DROP A ROCK OF 50-60 LBS. - RIPPLES MIGHT GO TO THE VERY EDGE OF THE POND.

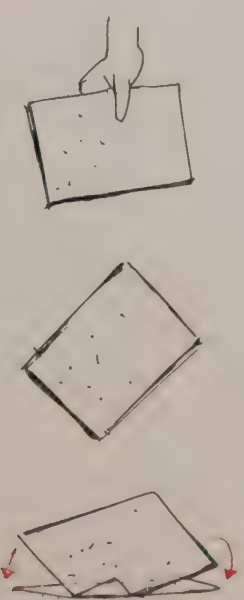
DOUGH FALLING -



A BALL OF MUD -



CARDBOARD WOULD LEAD WITH ONE CORNER AND COME DOWN FAST.

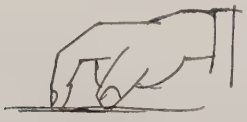


PRESSURE and WEIGHT -

TOUCHING

PRESSING

NOT MUCH PRESSURE



PRESS

TO STRENGTHEN THE POSE

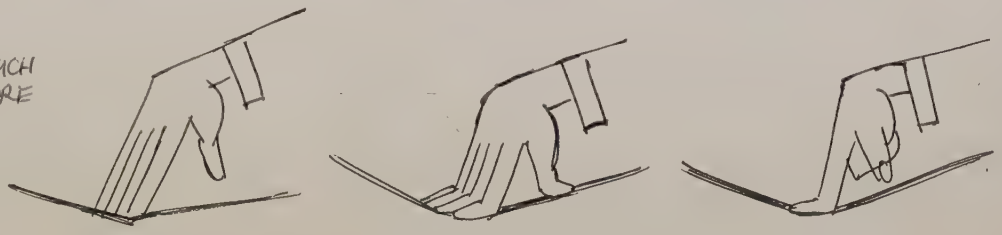
TO STRENGTHEN IT FURTHER -

FLATTEN END FOR PRESSURE

STRENGTHEN IT FURTHER

SUPPOSE the SURFACE IS SOFT - CLOTH OR RUBBER - IT WOULD GIVE.

NOT MUCH PRESSURE HERE

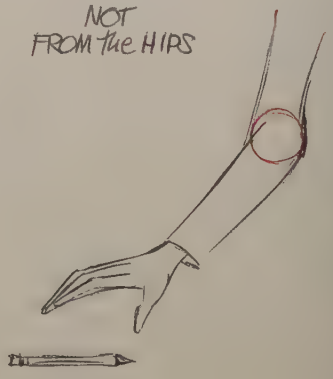


BEND the FINGERS TO GIVE PRESSURE

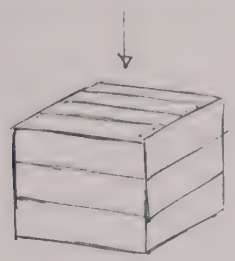
AGAIN, IN PICKING UP SOMETHING HEAVY, the WHOLE BODY WILL HELP AND the SOURCE OF the ACTION IS IN the HIPS -

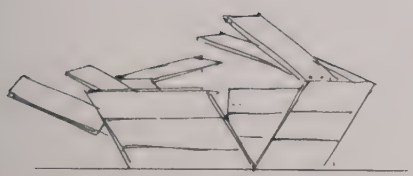
IN PICKING UP A PENCIL the SOURCE of the ACTION IS IN the ELBOW,

- OBVIOUSLY NOT FROM the HIPS



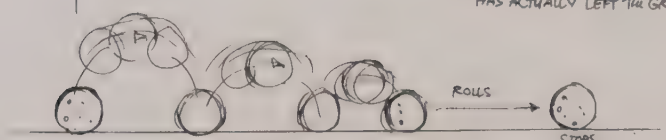
A VERY HEAVY BOX FALLING -





TO FEEL THE IMPACT THE BOX IS PARTIALLY OPEN AT THE MOMENT OF IMPACT.

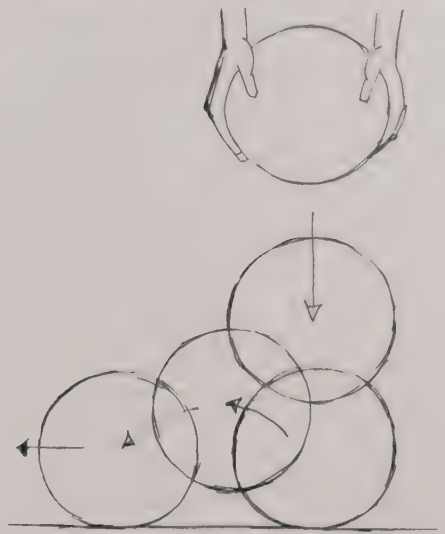
A HARD GOLF BALL FALLING -



WHEN IT HITS WE SHOW THE CONTACT BUT IT DOES NOT SQUASH AND IMMEDIATELY RISES.

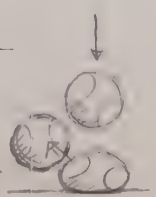
IT BOUNCES BUT IMMEDIATELY ROLLS TO A STOP.

A STEEL BALL OR BOWLING BALL FALLS



VERY SLIGHT BOUNCE -THEN ROLL. AGAIN, IT DOES NOT SQUASH.

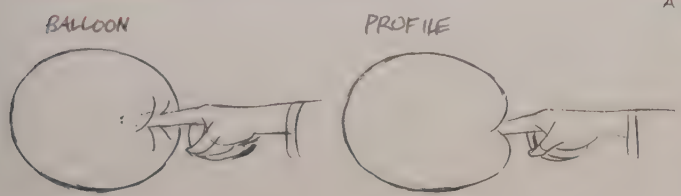
THE SOUND COMES WHEN IT HAS ACTUALLY LEFT THE GROUND



A TENNIS BALL WILL SQUASH ON IMPACT

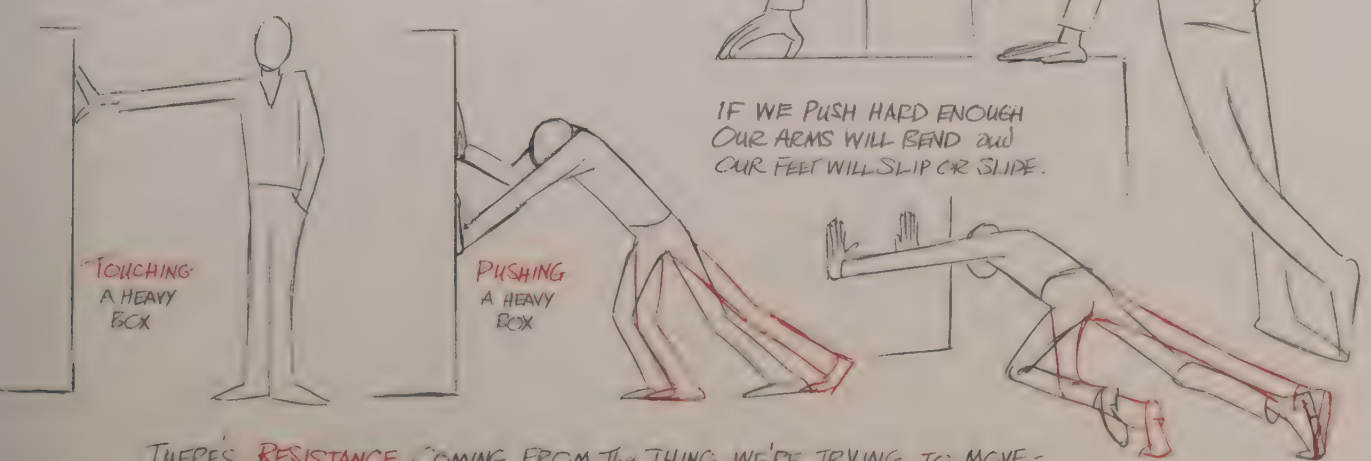
THEN REGAIN ITS ORIGINAL SHAPE

PRESSURE IS PART OF WEIGHT -



TOUCHING A DESK -

PRESSING A DESK.

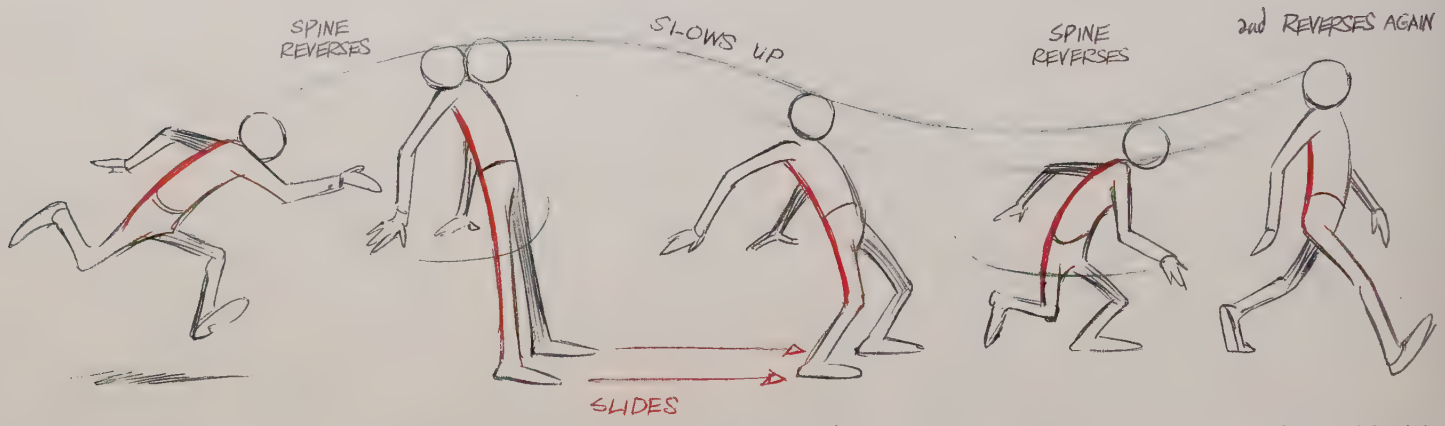


IF WE PUSH HARD ENOUGH OUR ARMS WILL BEND and OUR FEET WILL SLIP OR SLIDE.

THERE'S RESISTANCE COMING FROM THE THING WE'RE TRYING TO MOVE -

HOW MUCH EFFORT DO WE HAVE TO EXPEND
① TO MOVE SOMETHING?
② TO CHANGE ITS DIRECTION?
③ OR TO STOP IT?
WILL INDICATE HOW MUCH IT WEIGHS.

COMING TO A STOP IS PART OF WEIGHT:



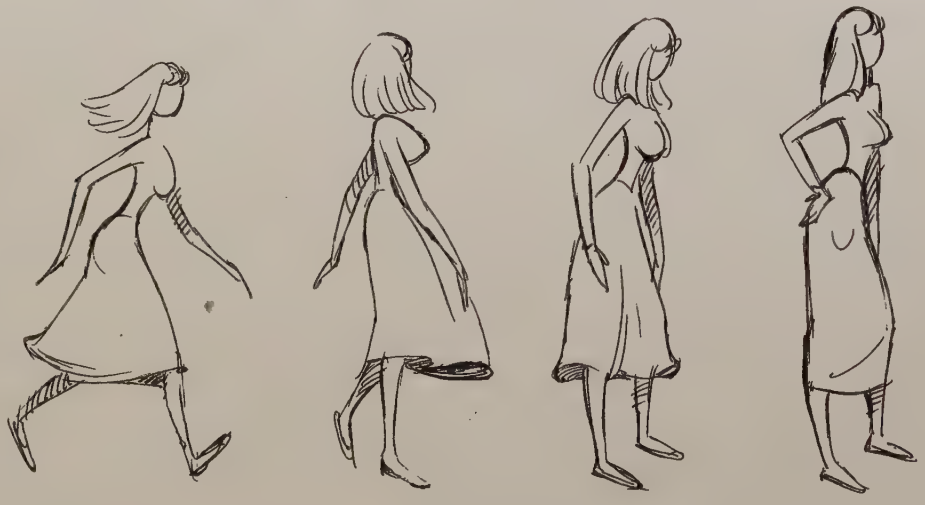
COMING TO the END OF A SLIDE, WE'RE THROWN OFF BALANCE

THEN WE GO INTO OUR NEXT ACTION - LIKE COMING OFF AN ESCALATOR.

FRANK THOMAS SAYS -
"WE'VE GOT TO DO SOMETHING TO STOP the FORWARD PROGRESSION OF BELIEVABLE WEIGHT."

WHATEVER WAS IN MOTION WILL TRY TO KEEP ON GOING-

ARMS, HEAD, HANDS, HAIR, DRAPERY.



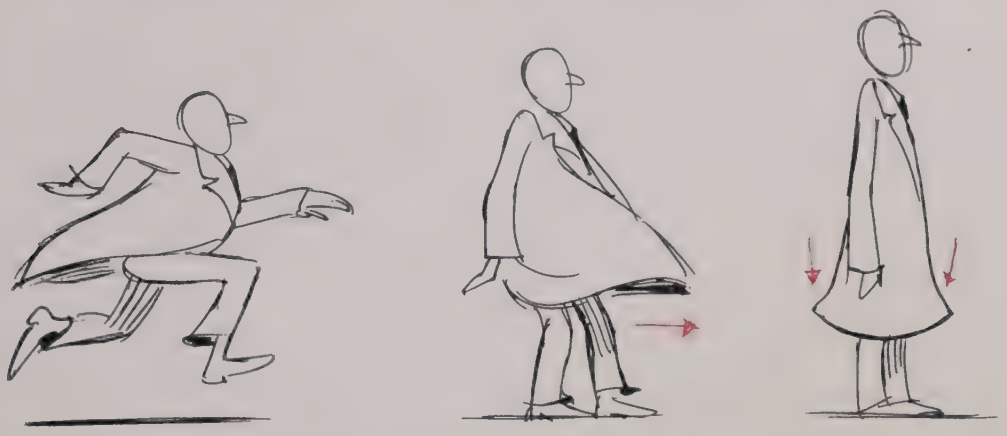
SO WE STOP IN BITS - EACH BIT INDICATING the WEIGHT OF ITSELF.

HERE'S MILT KAHL ON IT -
"STOPPING THINGS CONVINCINGLY IS ONE OF the DIFFICULT THINGS TO DO IN ANIMATION. WHEN YOU COME TO A STOP, PICK A GOOD PLACE TO STOP. HOW YOU CHOOSE TO STOP - WHAT KIND OF A STOP - WHETHER IT'S AN ALERT STOP OR A LAZY ONE, CHOOSING WHERE TO DO IT IS AN IMPORTANT CHOICE. I HATE TO SEE A FOOT COME THROUGH and LAND and THEN NOTHING HAPPENS TO IT. I THINK WHEN IT LANDS WE OUGHT TO GO AHEAD and PUT the WEIGHT ON IT - OR ROCK FORWARD - OR RAISE the OTHER FOOT."

SO, HOW MUCH EFFORT IT TAKES TO STOP SOMETHING SHOWS HOW MUCH IT WEIGHS

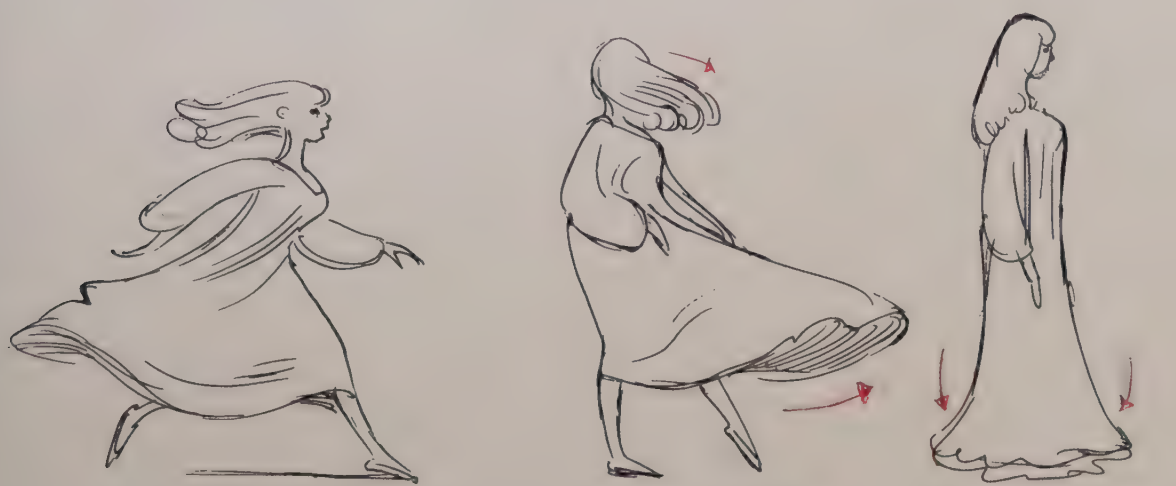
ALSO, the SPEED OF AN ACTION WILL DETERMINE HOW VIOLENT the DRAPERY IS -

IF A MAN IS RUNNING WITH A COAT MADE OF THIN, LIGHT MATERIAL and HE COMES TO A SUDDEN STOP, the MATERIAL WILL CONTINUE TO FLOW, TO KEEP ON GOING - TO GO AHEAD OF HIM INDEPENDENTLY and THEN FLOP BACK and SETTLE. ('FOLLOWS THROUGH')



STOPS - MATERIAL CONTINUES and SETTLES

A WOMAN IN A SILK NIGHTIE... the MATERIAL WILL BLOSSOM and FLAP VIOLENTLY.

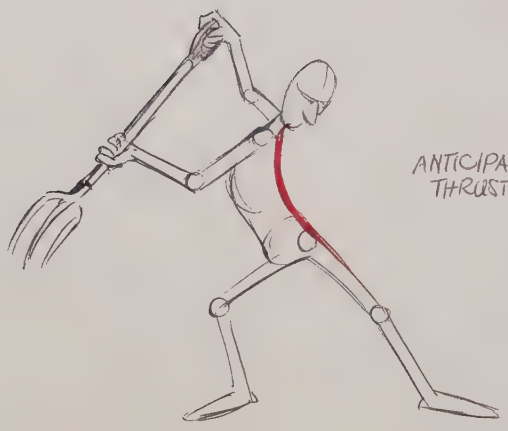


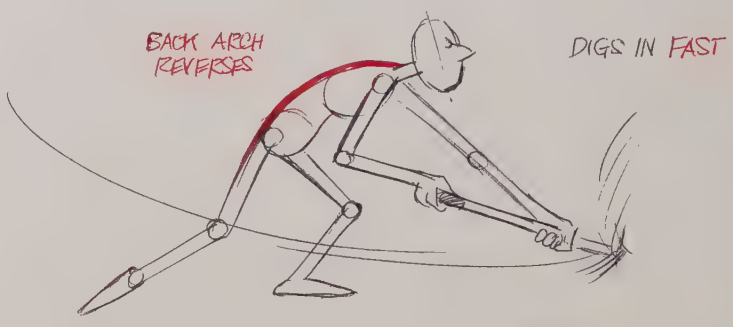
STOPS - MATERIAL CONTINUES BLOSSOMING and WILL SETTLE MORE SLOWLY.

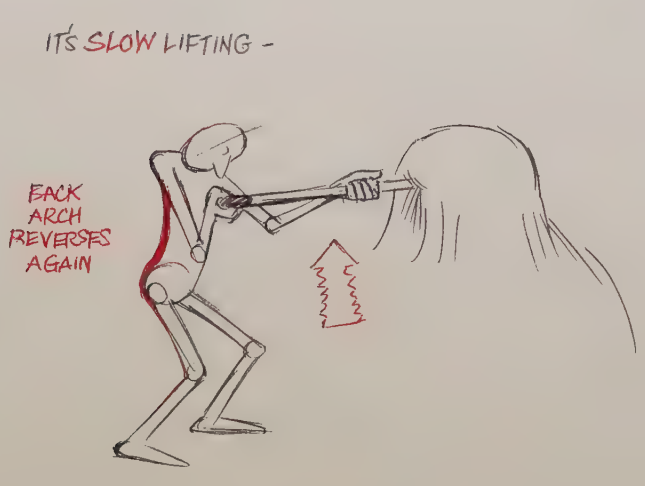
SO WHEN SHE STOPS, HER CLOTHES and HAIR FOLLOW THROUGH ARRIVING LATER THAN the MAIN ACTION. AND OF COURSE, HER MAIN ACTION ALSO STOPS IN PARTS, FINISHING UP AT DIFFERENT TIMES. HAS THERE EVER BEEN AN ACTION WHERE ALL the PARTS OF A BODY MOVED UNIFORMLY? (EXCEPT IN ROBOTS, and PROBABLY NOT EVEN IN THEM.)

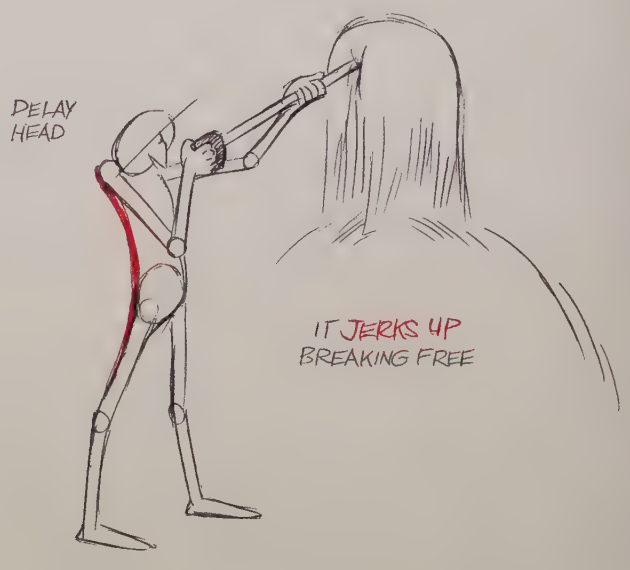
AGAIN, 'FOLLOW THROUGH' IS the RESULT OF and IS GENERATED BY the MAIN ACTION.

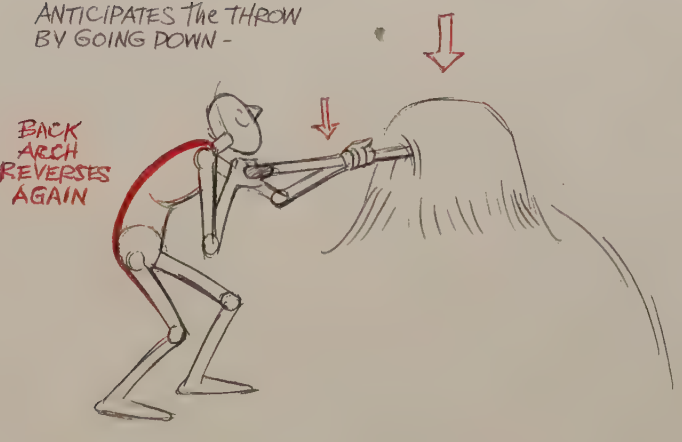
BUT THE ONLY WAY WE CAN REALLY SHOW WEIGHT IS WITH THE ACTION.
SAY WE'RE PICKING UP A HEAVY BATCH OF HAY WITH A PITCHFORK-

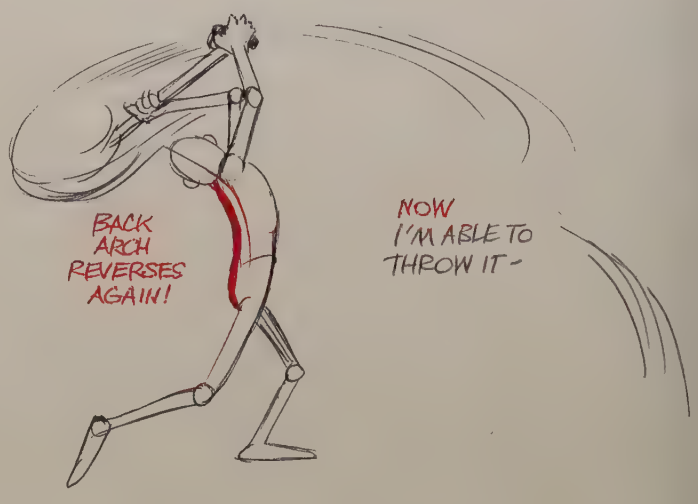




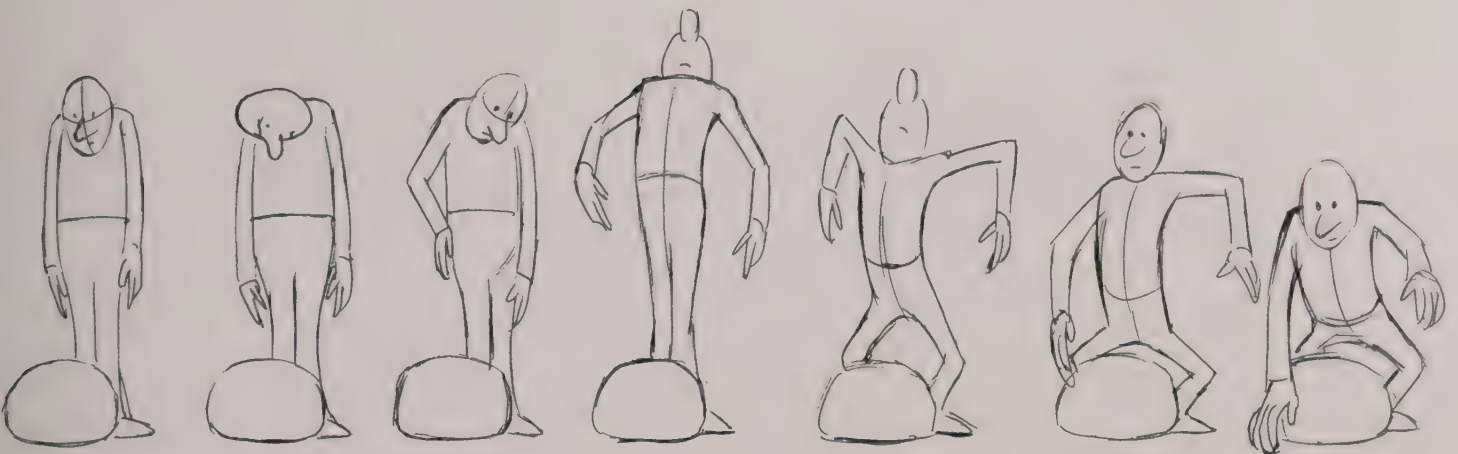








BACK TO LIFTING A ROCK AGAIN - WITH SUGGESTIONS OF HOW TO BREAK THINGS UP INTERESTINGLY -



CONSIDERS IT

ONE HAND STARTS BACK

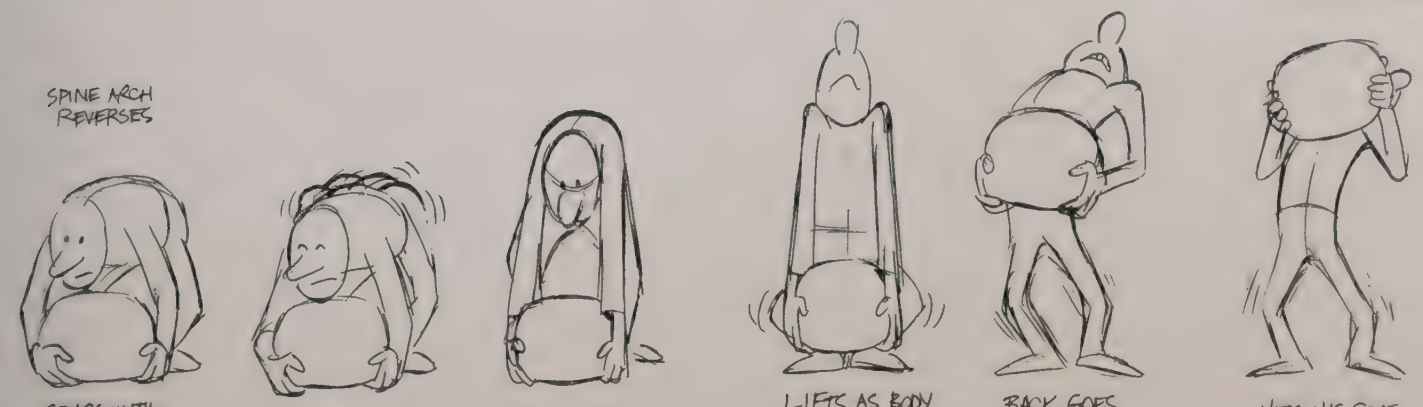
BODY STRETCHES UP. HANDS DON'T GO BACK AT THE SAME TIME

BENDS DOWN BUT HOLD HEAD BACK. ARMS GO HIGHER BUT NOT TOGETHER

HEAD STILL SOMEWHAT DELAYED. ONE HAND PRECEEDS THE OTHER.

HEAD BIGGER AND STILL SOMEWHAT DELAYED. ONE HAND GRABS

SPINE ARCH REVERSES



GRABS WITH OTHER HAND HEAD COMES DOWN LATE

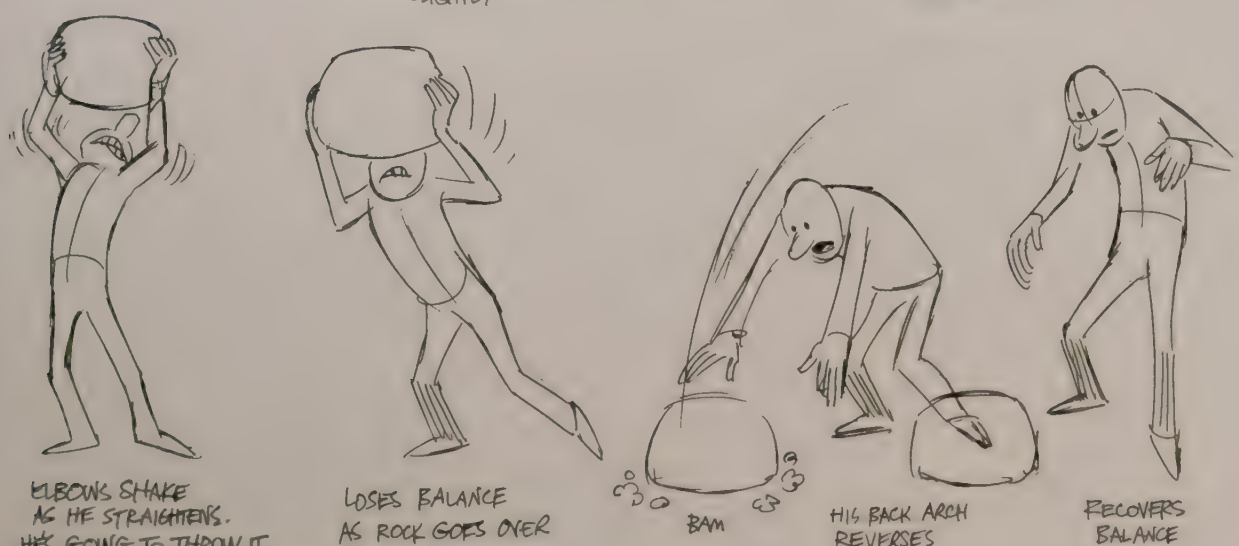
ADJUSTS BUTT SIDE TO SIDE

STRETCH ARMS AND TOP BODY GOES UP LEGS STRAIGHTEN SLIGHTLY

LIFTS AS BODY GOES BACK DOWN 2nd KNEES VIBRATE

BACK GOES CONCAVE AS ROCK IS CLOSE TO BODY. LEGS SHAKE.

HEAD HAS GONE RIGHT BACK



ELBOWS SHAKE AS HE STRAIGHTENS. HE'S GOING TO THROW IT.

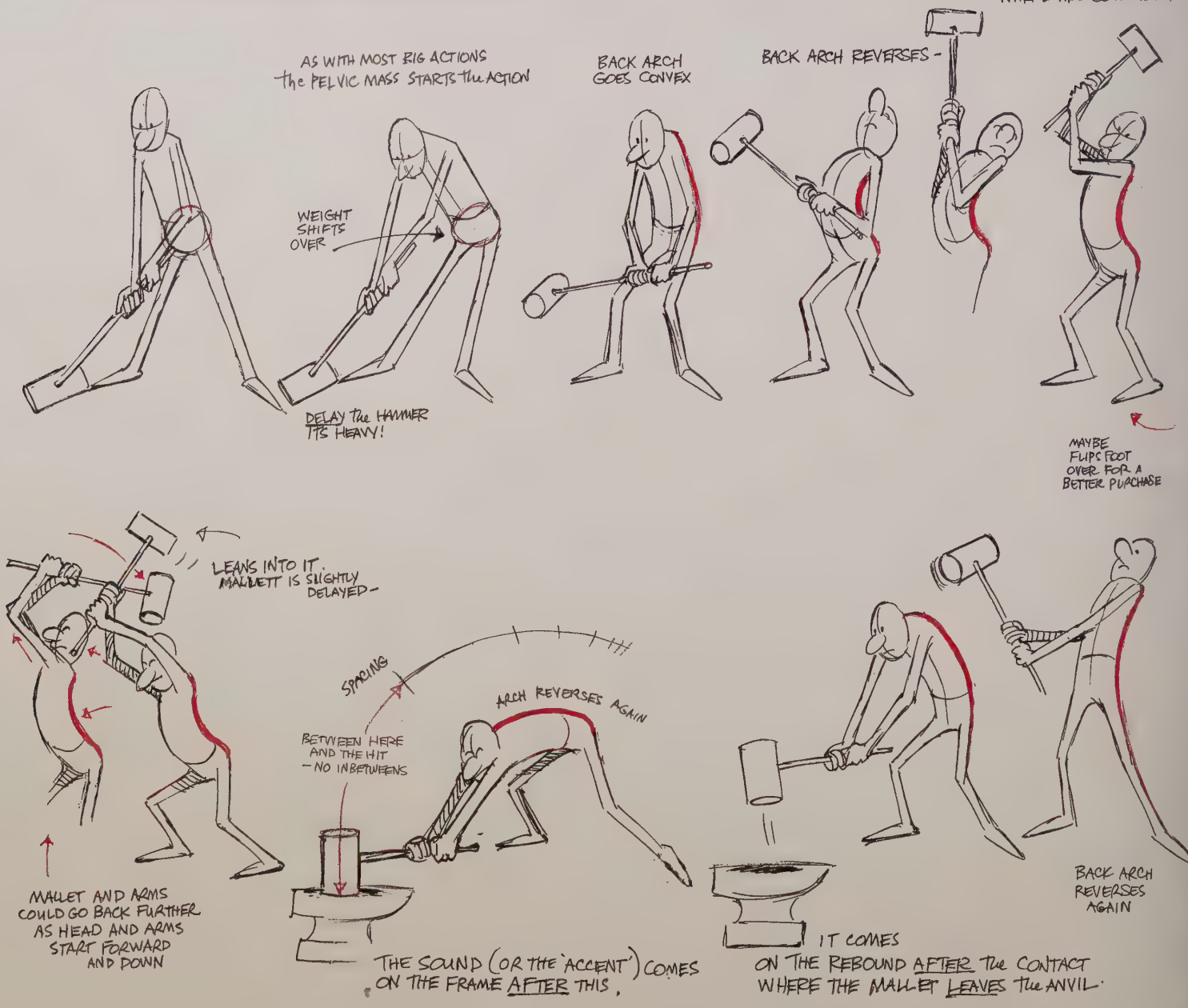
LOSES BALANCE AS ROCK GOES OVER

BAM

HIS BACK ARCH REVERSES

RECOVERS BALANCE

A MAN WITH A HEAVY MALLET IS GOING TO THROW IT ON AN ANVIL -


STARTS LOOKING AT WHERE HE'S GOING TO HIT
AS WITH MOST RIG ACTIONS the PELVIC MASS STARTS the ACTION
BACK ARCH GOES CONVEX
BACK ARCH REVERSES -
WEIGHT SHIFTS OVER
DELAY the HAMMER ITS HEAVY!
MAYBE FLIPS FOOT OVER FOR A BETTER PURCHASE
LEANS INTO IT. MALLETT IS SLIGHTLY DELAYED -
SPACING
ARCH REVERSES AGAIN
BETWEEN HERE AND THE HIT - NO INBETWEENS
MALLET AND ARMS COULD GO BACK FURTHER AS HEAD AND ARMS START FORWARD AND DOWN
THE SOUND (OR THE 'ACCENT') COMES ON THE FRAME AFTER THIS.
IT COMES ON THE REBOUND AFTER the CONTACT WHERE THE MALLET LEAVES the ANVIL.
BACK ARCH REVERSES AGAIN

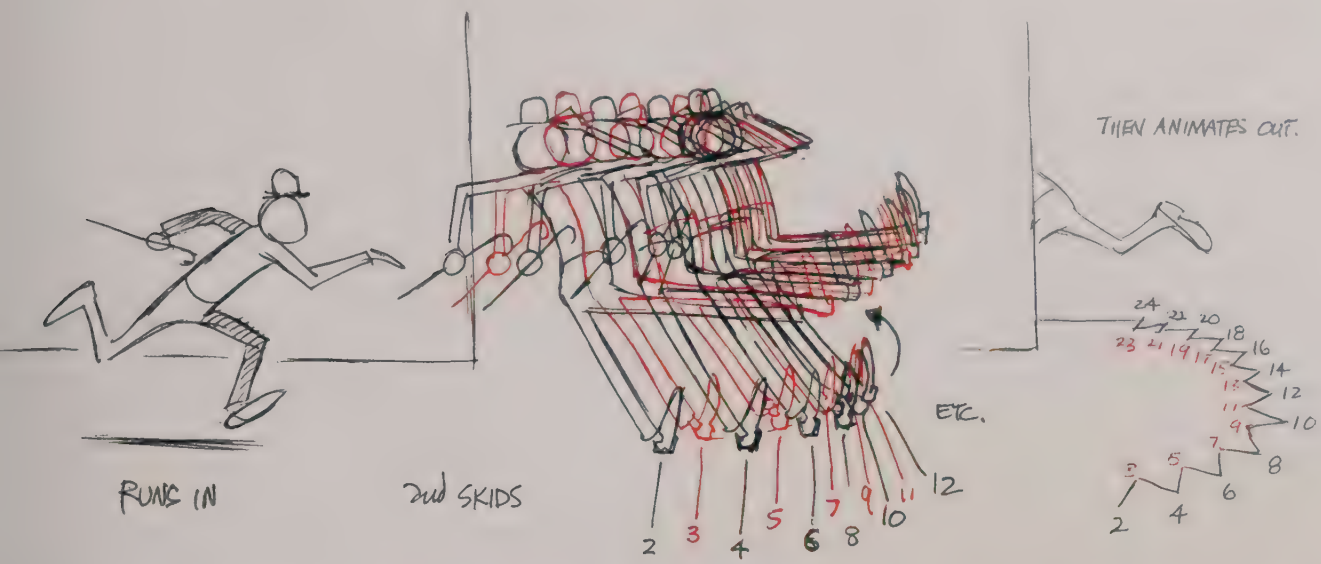
SO WE TRY TO FIND ALL the VARIOUS POSSIBILITIES TO CONVEY WEIGHT VISUALLY -

CAN WE DELAY PARTS?
GO FAST AND SLOW?
USE UP AND DOWN?
BREAK the JOINTS?
REVERSE the BODY ARCH?
SHIFT the WEIGHT?

- AND SELECT WHAT WE NEED TO PUT OVER WHAT WE WANT.
AND WHEN WE HAVE ALL THIS STUFF IN OUR BLOODSTREAM - CONCENTRATE ON PERSONALITY.
WHO IS DOING IT and IN WHAT SITUATION?

RUNNING and TRYING TO CHANGE DIRECTION SHOWS the WEIGHT.

IN TURNING A CORNER CHARLIE CHAPLIN DID A FAMOUS SKIDDING OR HOPPING TURN.
HE SKIDS ROUND the CORNER IN A CURVE and RUNS OUT the OTHER WAY.



LIKE A MOTORBIKE HE LEANS INTO the CURVE OF the TURN.

THE FEET ARE OFFSET ON the IN BETWEENS TO MAKE the SKID.

IN ANIMATION - IF HE SKIDS FOR ABOUT A SECOND -
A WAY TO DO THIS IS TO MAKE A SERIES OF DRAWINGS FROM 2 TO 24 (EVEN NUMBERS)
THEN MAKE ANOTHER SERIES, OFFSET SLIGHTLY, FROM 3 to 23 (ODD NUMBERS)
THEN WE INTERLEAVE THEM. (FOR MORE ON THIS SEE 'VIBRATIONS')

DANCING

TO FINISH OFF THIS SECTION ON WEIGHT WE SHOULD INCLUDE DANCING.
The REASON IS THAT the ESSENTIAL PART OF DANCING IS NOT WHAT'S HAPPENING TO the FEET
BUT WHAT'S HAPPENING TO the BODY - the WEIGHT - the UP and DOWN OF the BODY.

KEN HARRIS and ART BABBITT WERE BOTH SPECIALISTS IN DANCE ANIMATION and THEY
BOTH SAID EXACTLY the SAME THING: IT'S the UP AND DOWN ON the BODY and HANDS
THAT IS the MOST IMPORTANT THING IN A DANCE. IT'S WHATS HAPPENING TO the BODY
WITH the WEIGHT MOVING UP and DOWN IN RHYTHM.

IN A TAP DANCE -

(PULLED APART)

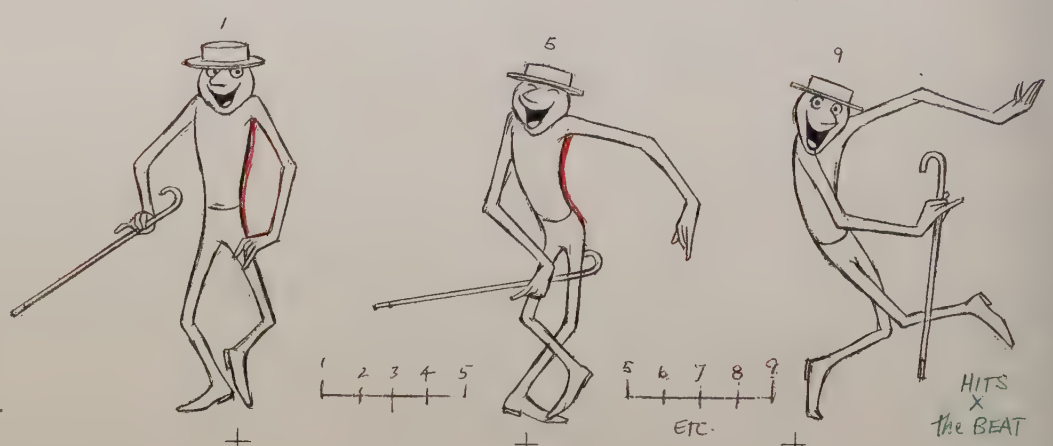
IF WE BLOCK OUT the FEET and JUST GET the UP and DOWN OF the BODY RIGHT -
THEN WE CAN PUT the FEET ON ANYWHERE.

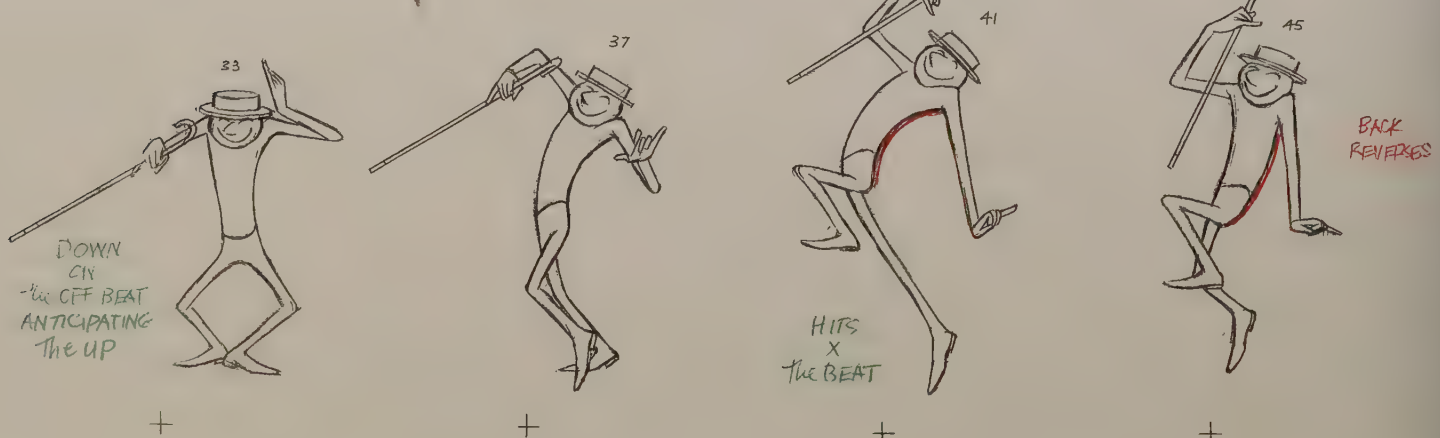
LET'S ADD FEET TO A SIMILAR UP and DOWN BODY PLAN. The BEAT IS ON 12's (THIS WORKS WELL ON TWOS)

NOW LET'S ACCENT the UP and REALLY THROW the BODY UP and DOWN and SWING the ARMS AROUND.

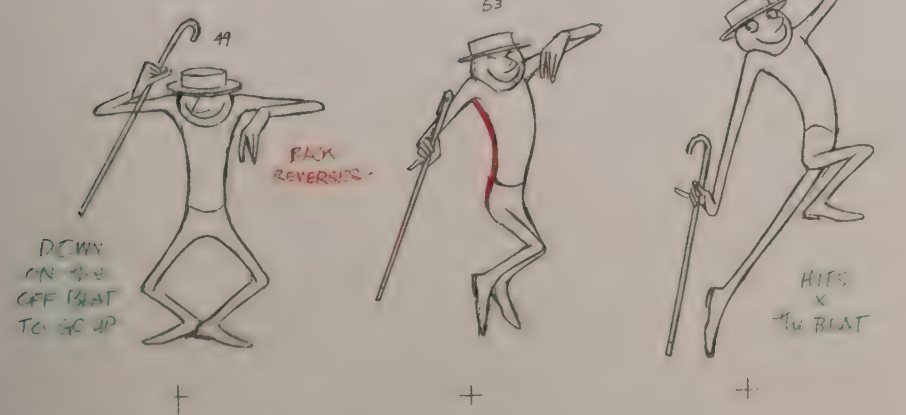
THIS BEAT IS ON 16's EVERY 4TH DRAWING IS AN EXTREME.

THIS IS ALL ON ONES and JUST NEEDS 3 SINGLE MORE OR LESS STRAIGHT INBETWEENS BETWEEN EACH EXTREME.





ON A DANCE - USUALLY HIT THE BEAT ON THE DOWN. WE FEEL THE WEIGHT AS THE BODY COMES DOWN



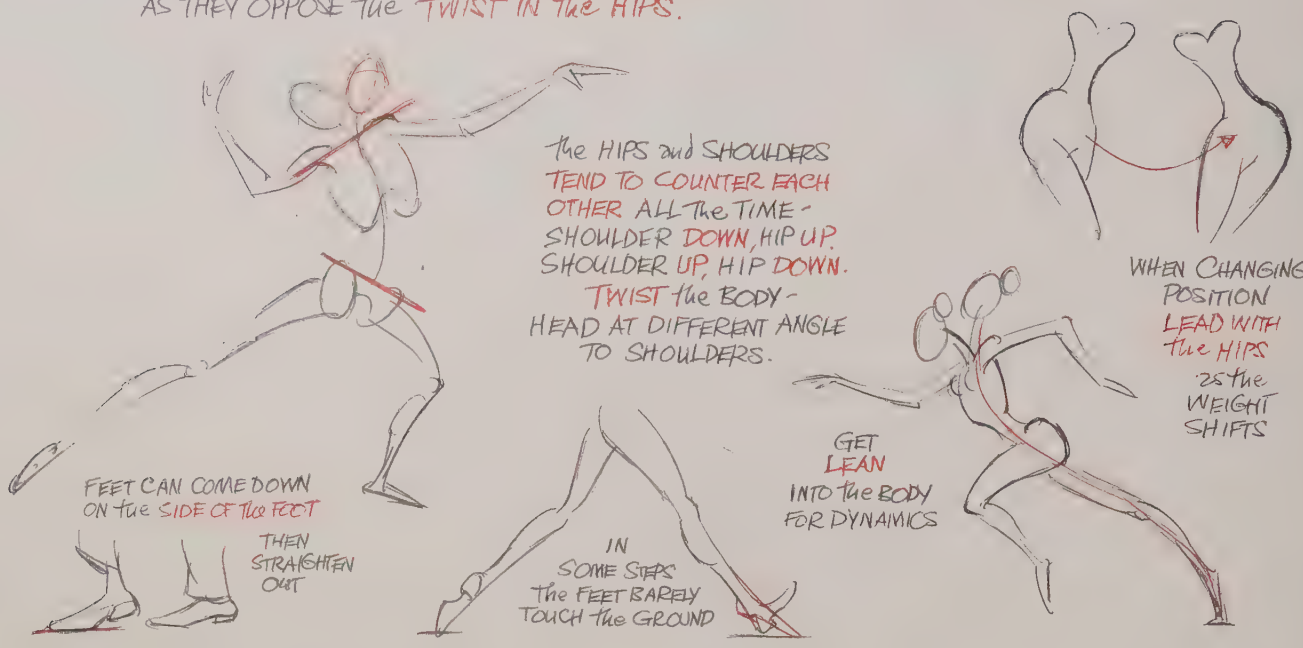
WE CAN ACCENT EITHER THE DOWN OR THE UP OF THE BODY.

ON A DANCE, IF WE GET MOST OF THE BIG BEATS RIGHT - THEN WE CAN ALMOST IGNORE THE LITTLE BEATS OR SECONDARY ONES.

DONT SPEND TIME ON THE INFINITESMAL - ANYTHING LESS THAN 4 FRAMES WONT READ.

GET THE MAIN THING RIGHT - REALLY RIGHT. THEN SUPPORT IT WITH SECONDARY RUNS ON STUFF.

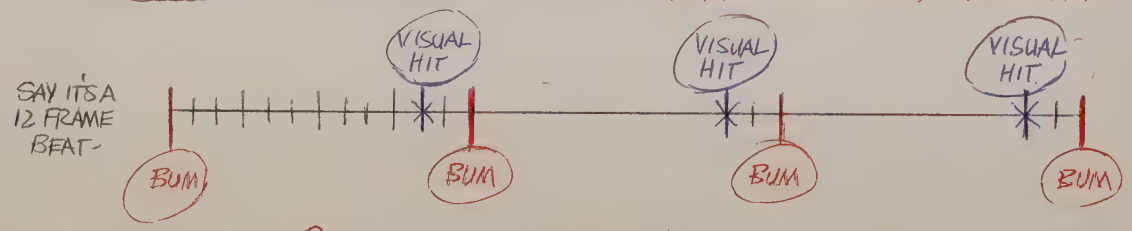
WITH DANCERS - NOTICE the TWIST IN the SHOULDERS AS THEY OPPOSE the TWIST IN the HIPS.


the HIPS and SHOULDERS TEND TO COUNTER EACH OTHER ALL the TIME - SHOULDER DOWN, HIP UP. SHOULDER UP, HIP DOWN. TWIST the BODY - HEAD AT DIFFERENT ANGLE TO SHOULDERS.
WHEN CHANGING POSITION LEAD WITH the HIPS as the WEIGHT SHIFTS
GET LEAN INTO the BODY FOR DYNAMICS
FEET CAN COME DOWN ON the SIDE OF the FOOT
THEN STRAIGHTEN OUT
IN SOME STEPS the FEET RARELY TOUCH the GROUND

ON SYNCHRONISING the ACTION TO A MUSICAL BEAT, THERE ARE 2 RULES OF THUMB:

RULE OF THUMB #1

HAVE the VISUAL ACCENT POSITION OCCUR 2 FRAMES AHEAD OF the ACTUAL SOUND - PRECEEDING the SOUND BY 2 FRAMES.



SO WE CAN EITHER ANIMATE the HIT 2 FRAMES AHEAD OF the SOUND OR, WE CAN ANIMATE LEVEL WITH the SOUND and ADVANCE the PICTURE IN the EDITING, LATER and GET IT SO IT LOOKS RIGHT. (I MUCH PREFER THIS)

RULE OF THUMB #2

MANY LIVE ACTION EDITORS OFTEN PUT the VISUAL HIT AHEAD BY 1/3 the LENGTH OF the OVERALL BEAT (WITH A 12 FRAME BEAT THAT'S 4 FRAMES AHEAD OF the SOUND.)

AS WITH DIALOGUE, I THINK the BEST WAY IS TO ANIMATE LEVEL WITH the SOUND - THEN FIDDLE WITH IT IN the EDITING TILL IT LOOKS JUST RIGHT. ALSO WE LEARN THINGS THIS WAY, AS RULES OF THUMB ARE ONLY WHAT THEY ARE - RULES OF THUMB. TRY IT and SEE WHAT WORKS BEST. MAYBE IT'S BETTER ONE FRAME ADVANCED, MAYBE TWO, MAYBE 3 OR 4. MAYBE ITS BEST LEVEL. (IT'S NEVER BETTER LATE.)

ANTICIPATION

IS THERE ANYBODY WHO DOESN'T KNOW WHAT THIS GUY'S GOING TO DO?

The GREAT ANIMATOR, BILL TYTLA SAID,

"THERE ARE ONLY 3 THINGS IN ANIMATION -

1 ANTICIPATION
2 ACTION
3 REACTION

AND THESE IMPLY the REST.
LEARN TO DO THESE THINGS WELL
and YOU CAN ANIMATE WELL."

CHARLIE CHAPLIN SAID,

1 TELL 'EM WHAT YOU'RE GOING TO DO.
2 DO IT.
3 TELL 'EM THAT YOU'VE DONE IT.

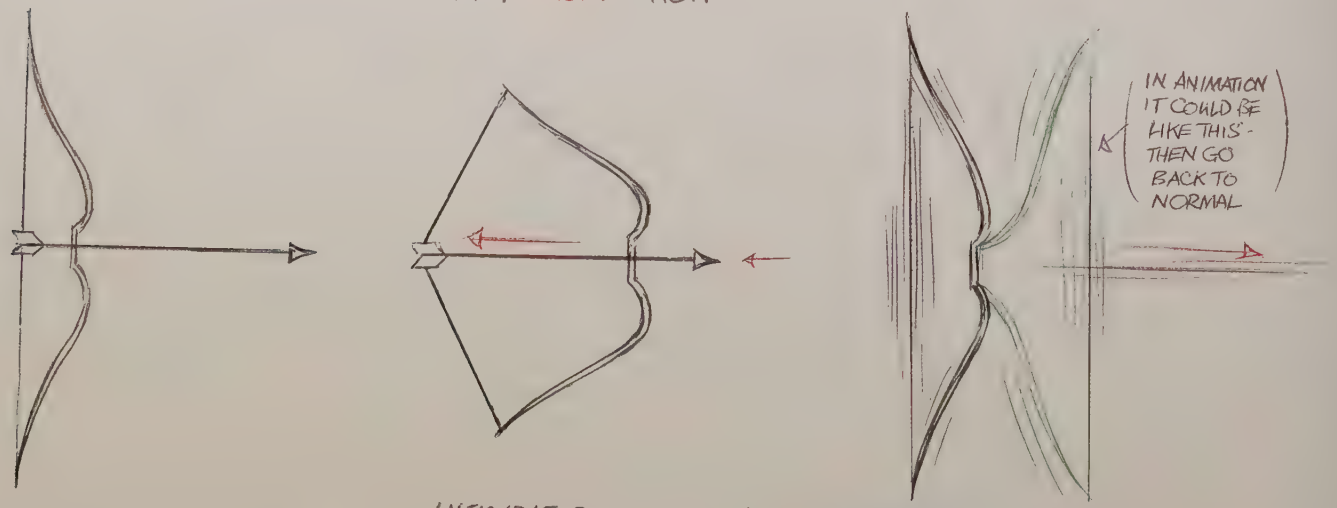
The GREAT FRENCH MIME, MARCEL MARCEAU SAYS,

"USE BIG ANTICIPATION."

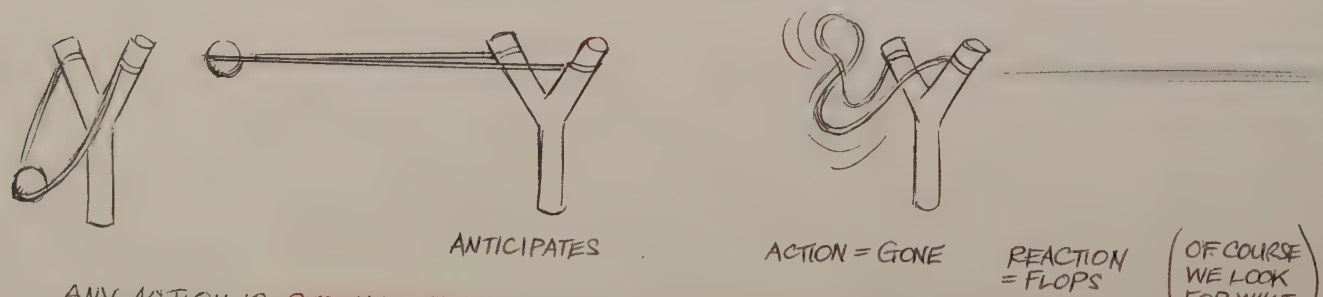
WHY? BECAUSE IT COMMUNICATES WHAT IS GOING TO HAPPEN.
The AUDIENCE SEES WHAT IS GOING TO HAPPEN - THEY SEE the ANTICIPATION and SO THEY ANTICIPATE IT WITH US. THEY GO WITH US.

WHY? BECAUSE FOR ALMOST EVERY ACTION WE MAKE THERE IS AN ANTICIPATION.
WE THINK OF THINGS FIRST - THEN DO THEM.
UNLESS IT'S A PRE-PROGRAMMED RESPONSE LIKE SHIFTING GEARS ON A CAR OR GETTING DRESSED, WE KNOW THAT WE THINK OF SOMETHING FIRST - THEN DO IT.
AS WITH SPEECH, WE KNOW THAT OUR BRAIN FIXES UPON the SENSE OF WHAT IT WANTS TO SAY - THEN GOES INTO A VERY COMPLEX SERIES OF MUSCLE SELECTIONS TO SAY IT.

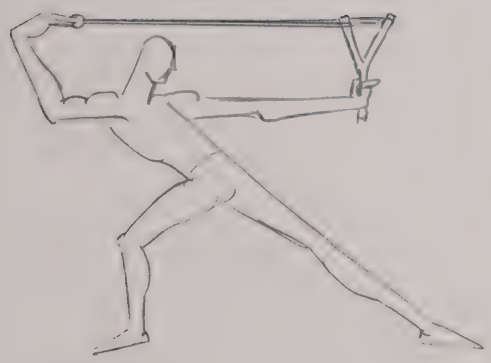
SO, ANTICIPATION IS the PREPARATION FOR AN ACTION. (WHICH WE ALL RECOGNISE WHEN WE SEE IT.)
ANTICIPATION TAKES PLACE IN ALMOST EVERY ACTION -
and CERTAINLY IN EVERY BIG ACTION.



The ANTICIPATION IS ALWAYS IN the OPPOSITE DIRECTION TO WHERE the MAIN ACTION IS GOING TO GO.



ANY ACTION IS STRENGTHENED BY BEING PRECEEDED BY IT'S OPPOSITE.



IF ACTION IS IN the WHOLE BODY
THEN WE HAVE ANTICIPATION OF
TREMENDOUS LATENT FORCE.

USUALLY the ANTICIPATION IS SLOWER - LESS VIOLENT THAN the ACTION
SLOW ANTICIPATION ..... ZIP! = FAST ACTION

STARTS SLOW WIND UP — THEN PUTS the BODY INTO IT FOR — the THROW

NOTE. A WOMAN - UNLESS SHE'S ATHLETIC - - OR A SMALL CHILD WILL THROW WITHOUT USING the BODY MASS TO HELP the THROW.

A RUNNER WILL GO BACK BEFORE GOING FORWARD

READY — SET — GO

WE GET A MUCH STRONGER ACTION —

ANY ACTION CAN BE ENHANCED IF THERE IS AN ANTICIPATION BEFORE the ACTION.

(SO) WE GO BACK BEFORE WE GO FORWARD.
WE GO FORWARD BEFORE WE GO BACK.
WE GO DOWN BEFORE WE GO UP.
WE GO UP BEFORE WE GO DOWN.

The RULE IS: 'BEFORE WE GO ONE WAY - FIRST GO the OTHER WAY.'

OF COURSE, WITH A 'CARTOON' CARTOON -

SEES SOMETHING

ANTICIPATES HIS EXIT

FEATHERS LINGER

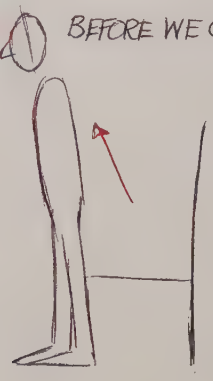
NO DRAWINGS GOING OUT — HE'S JUST GONE.

ANTICIPATION HAPPENS WITH SMALLER and UNDERSTATED MOVEMENTS.

GETTING UP FROM A CHAIR, WE GO BACK BEFORE WE GO FORWARD and DOWN BEFORE WE GO UP.

ANTICIPATES BACK TO GO FORWARD

GOES FORWARD and DOWN TO GO



UP

SOMEONE MAKING A POINT -

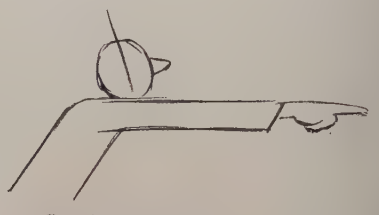
WEAK ANTICIPATE

and WEAK POINT

NOW, MAKING THE ACTION STRONGER -

PREPARING GOING BACK FIRST

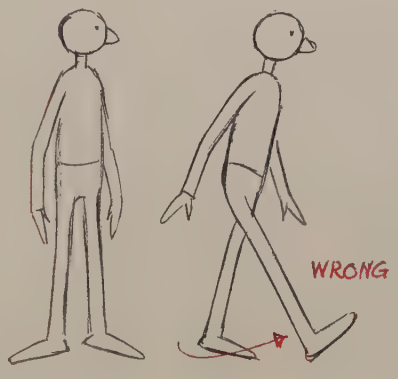
BODY BACK SLIGHTLY IN THE OPPOSITE DIRECTION



BODY FORWARD MAGNIFIES THE RESULT.

TAKE A SIMPLE THING LIKE STARTING A WALK -

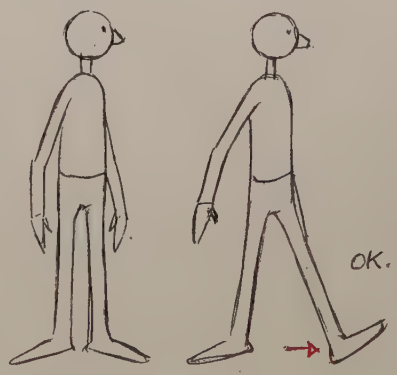
IT'S UNNATURAL TO START A WALK WITH THE FARTHEST FOOT FROM THE DIRECTION WE'RE GOING.



WRONG

THE OBVIOUS WAY TO GO TO HIS LEFT IS TO START WITH HIS LEFT FOOT.

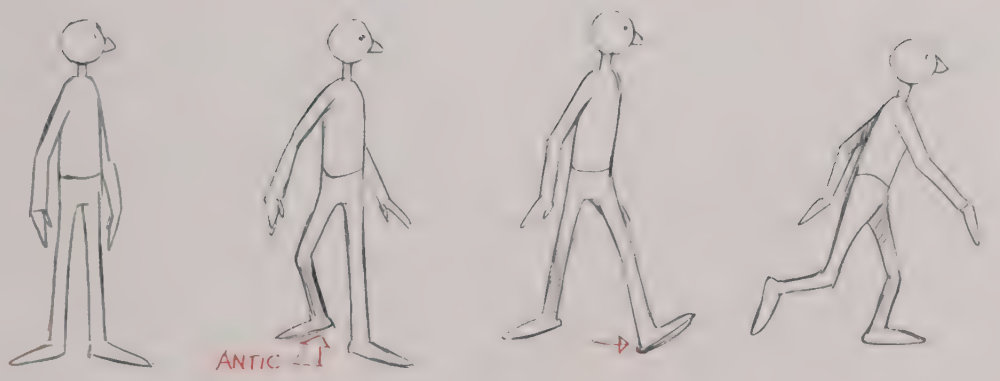
START THE WALK WITH THE FOOT NEAREST TO WHERE HE'S GOING -



OK.

BUT HE COULD ANTICIPATE the WALK WITH HIS RIGHT FOOT LIKE THIS -

HIS RIGHT FOOT COULD BACK UP AS AN ANTICIPATE -



OR

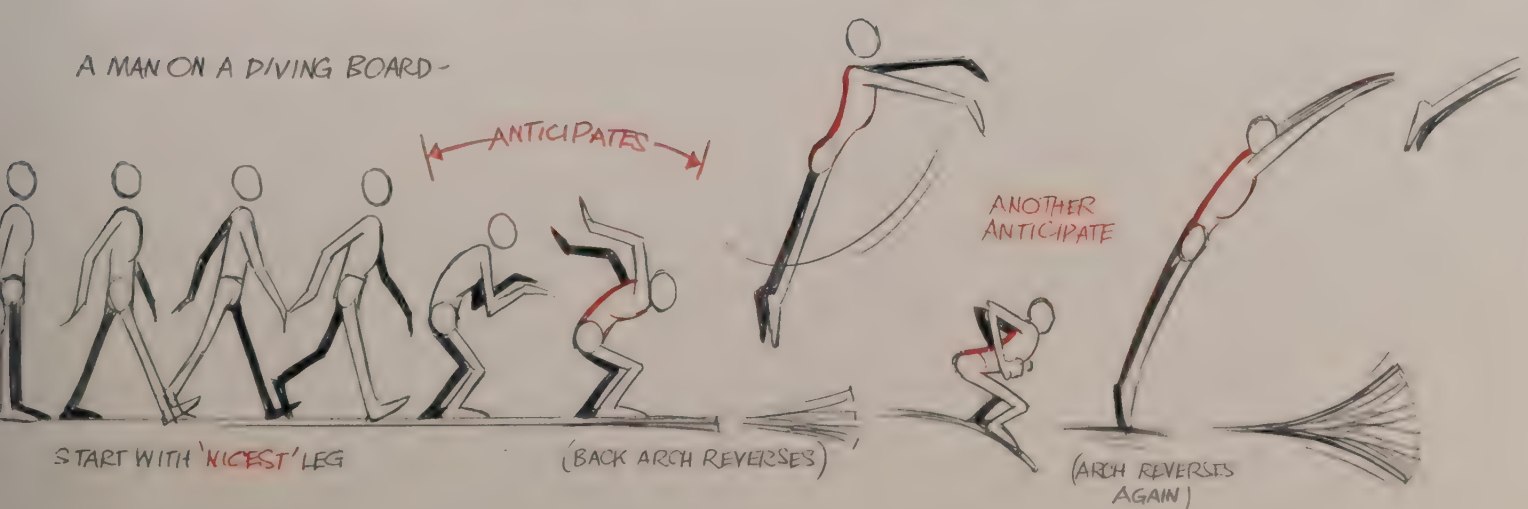
ALTERNATIVELY HE COULD ANTICIPATE HIS WALK BY BACKING uP WITH HIS LEFT FOOT IN ORDER TO FREE HIS RIGHT FOOT TO STEP OVER.

A BALLET PLIÉ IS AN ANTICIPATION BEFORE JUMPING UP IN the AIR TO DO AN ENTRECHAT = WIGGLING FEET

WE GO

DOWN BEFORE WE GO UP

A MAN ON A DIVING BOARD -



START WITH 'NICEST' LEG

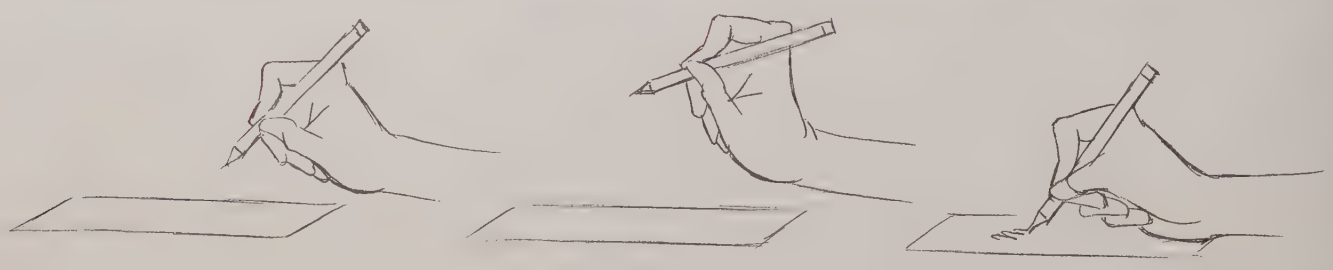
(BACK ARCH REVERSES)

(ARCH REVERSES AGAIN)

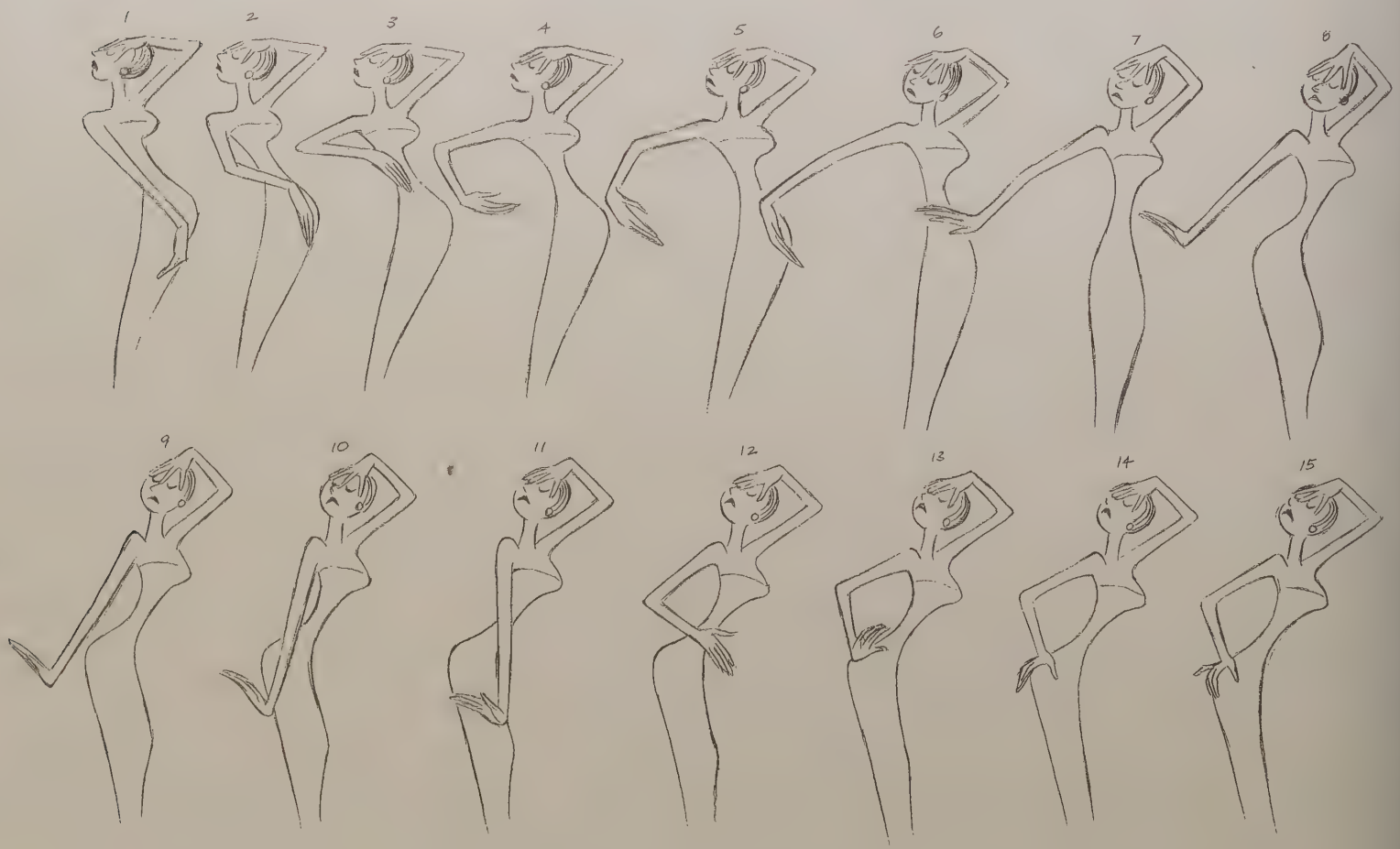
WITH SMALLER ACTIONS – TAKE A HAND WRITING –

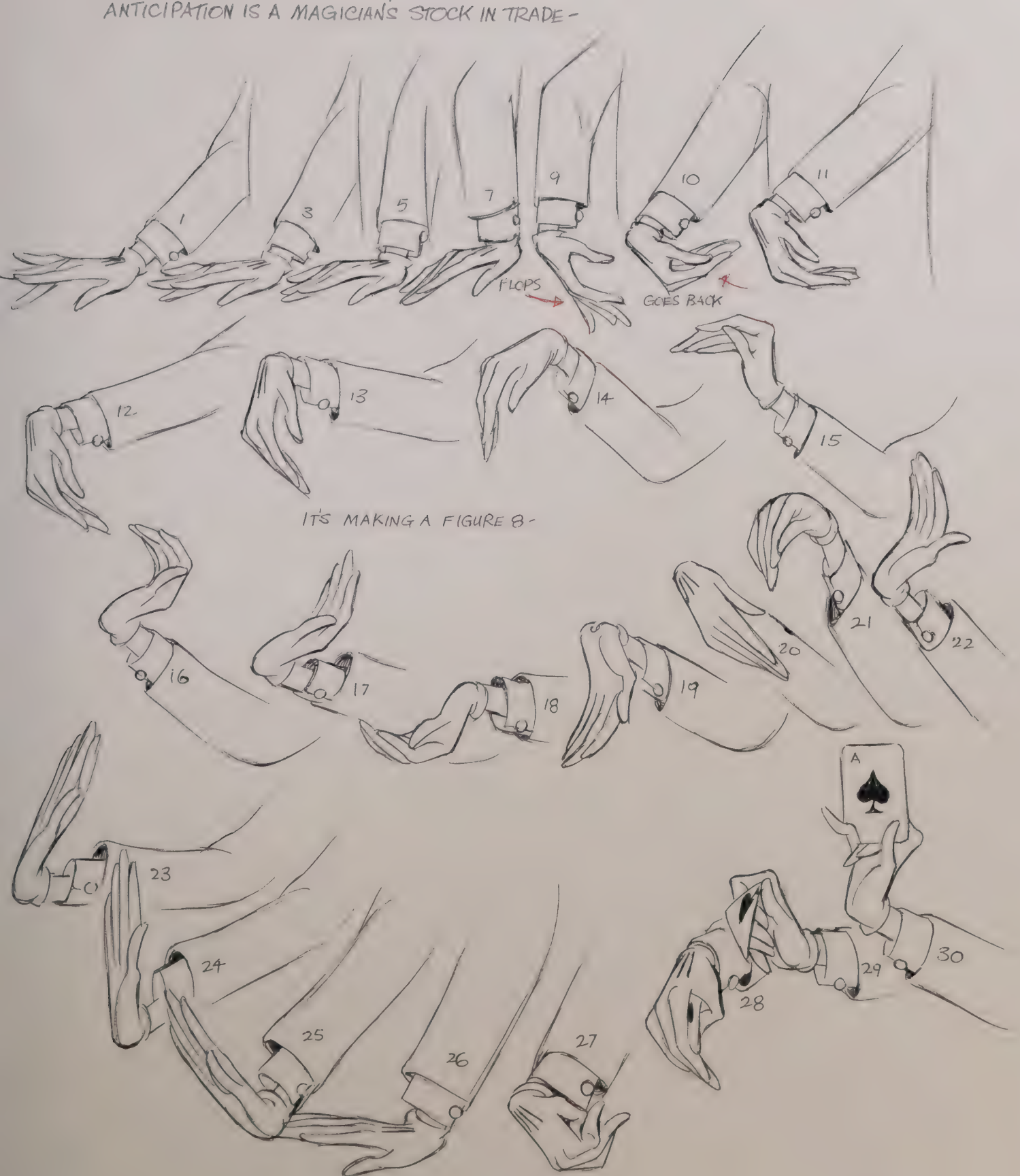
IT'S PERFECTLY CLEAR WHAT'S HAPPENING –

BUT JUST BY PUTTING IN A SMALL ANTICIPATE UP BEFORE HE WRITES – WE FEEL the PERSON THINKING.



OR WE CAN USE FLAMBOYANT THEATRICAL GESTURES AS ANTICIPATION.
SAY A SHOWBIZ WOMAN IS GOING TO PUT HER HAND ON HER HIP – (IT'S A FIGURE 8)

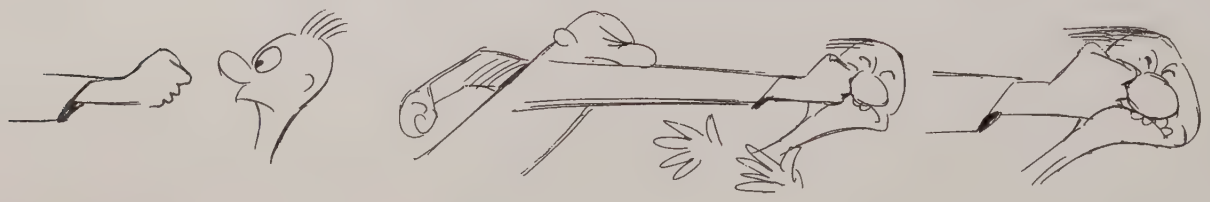



ANTICIPATION IS A MAGICIAN'S STOCK IN TRADE -
1
3
5
7
9
FLOPS
10
GOES BACK
11
12
13
14
15
IT'S MAKING A FIGURE 8 -
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
A
28
29
30

IF SOMEONE'S GOING TO HIT SOMEONE HE WOULD ANTICIPATE BACK BEFORE SWINGING FORWARD.

The ANTICIPATION TELLS US EXACTLY WHAT'S GOING TO HAPPEN.

IN the EARLY DAYS OF ANIMATION the CONTACT WAS LIKE HITTING A PUDDING –

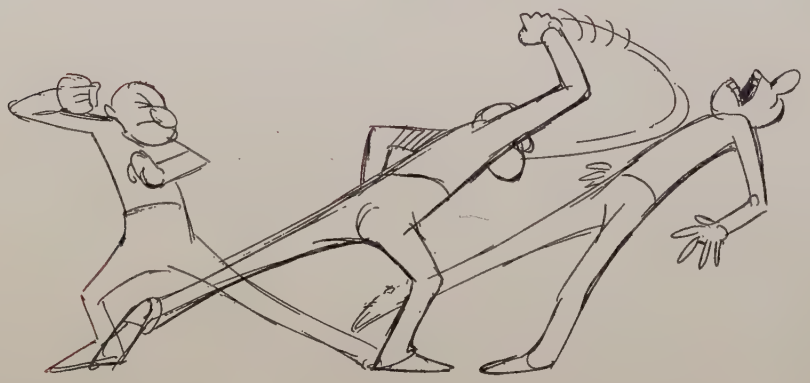


THE 'HIT' WAS USUALLY HELD FOR 4 FRAMES.

GRIM NATWICK SAID,
"AT DISNEY'S I LEARNED HOW TO DELIVER A PUNCH FROM ART BABBITT. ART SAID, 'DON'T EVER SHOW the HAND HITTING the CHIN. SHOW the HAND AFTER IT'S PAST the CHIN and the CHIN HAS MOVED OUT OF PLACE!"

TODAY WE JUST SHOW the RESULT.

THERE IS NO POINT OF CONTACT.



WE LEAVE OUT the CONTACT and SHOW the HAND PAST the HITTING POINT

= 10 TIMES the IMPACT.

KEN HARRIS TOLD ME THIS IS WHAT THEY DID IN OLD WESTERN FILMS. THEY WOULD EDIT OUT the 'POINT OF CONTACT' FRAMES TO JUST SHOW the RESULT OF the HIT and PUT A BIG BANG ON IT.

SO, WE PUT the SOUND HIT WHEN the FIST IS PAST the FACE – WHEN the CHARACTER IS DISLODGED and the ARM SWINGS THROUGH. WE GET the IMPACT, the STRENGTH FROM the DISPLACEMENT.

AGAIN,

The ANTICIPATION IS – WE PREPARE FOR the ACTION. WE BROADCAST WHAT WE'RE GOING TO DO.

The ONLY TROUBLE WITH ANTICIPATIONS IS THAT THEY CAN BE CORNY. the AUDIENCE GOES, "AW SURE, I KNOW, I SEE, NOW YOU'RE GOING TO DO THIS... BORING..."

SO THEN the GREAT THING IS TO DO SOMETHING DIFFERENT – A SURPRISE – WHICH CAN BE VERY FUNNY (OR SHOCKING.) JUST DON'T DO WHAT'S EXPECTED.

WE COULD SAY THAT AN ANTICIPATION IS AN EXPECTATION OF WHAT WILL OCCUR. THE AUDIENCE EXPECTS SOMETHING TO HAPPEN BEFORE IT ACTUALLY HAPPENS.

A SURPRISE GAG WORKS WHEN THE AUDIENCE READS THE EXPECTATION and EXPECTS A CERTAIN THING TO HAPPEN and THEN SOMETHING QUITE DIFFERENT HAPPENS —

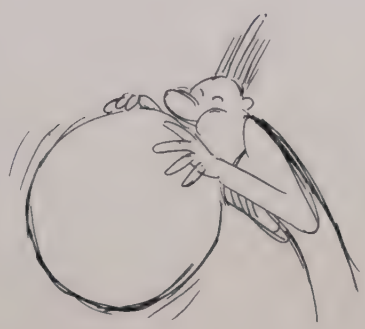
The INHALE IS the ANTICIPATION

ACTION

RESULT

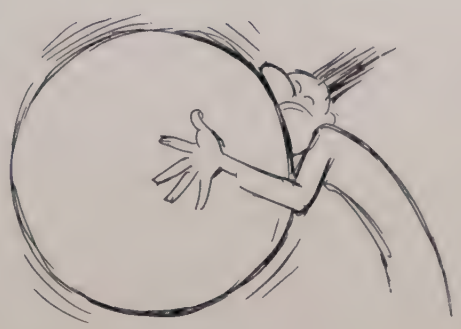
(OR)

INHALE = ANTICIPATION



ACTION

INHALE = MORE ANTICIPATION



MORE ACTION

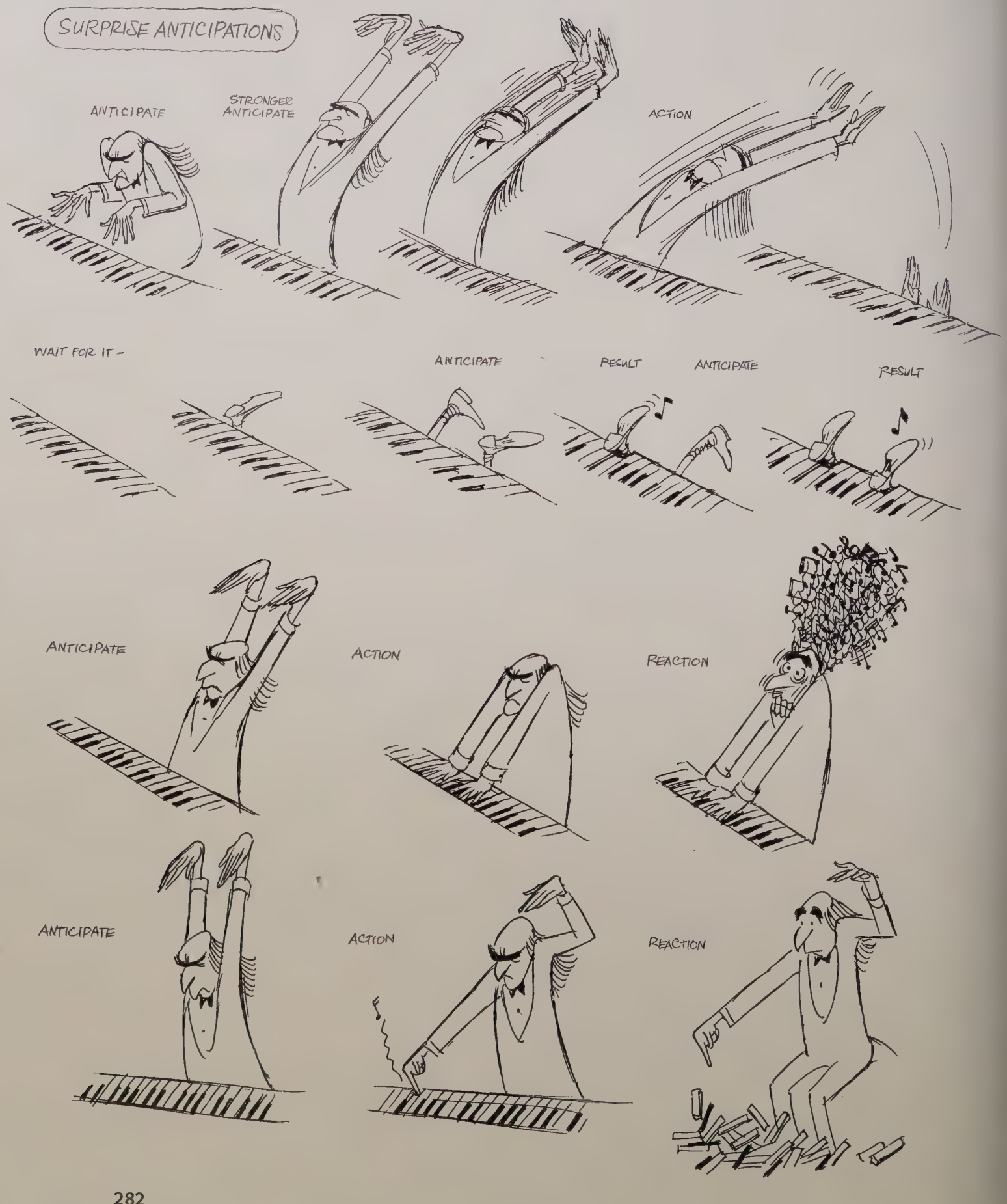
MORE INHALE = MORE ANTICIPATION

ACTION

REACTION OR RESULT

MORE REACTION

YET MORE REACTION.

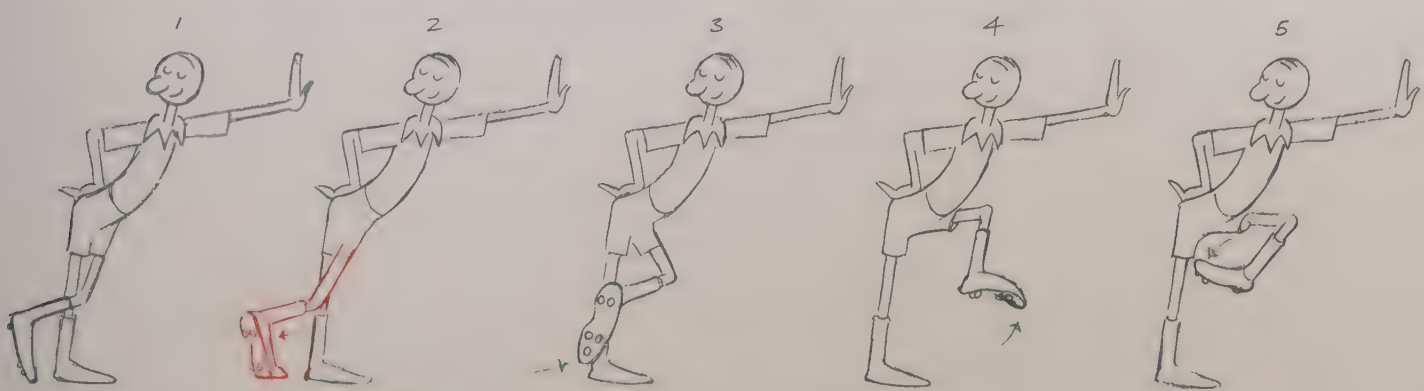

SURPRISE ANTICIPATIONS
ANTICIPATE
STRONGER ANTICIPATE
ACTION
WAIT FOR IT -
ANTICIPATE
RESULT
ANTICIPATE
RESULT
ANTICIPATE
ACTION
REACTION
ANTICIPATE
ACTION
REACTION

INVISIBLE ANTICIPATIONS

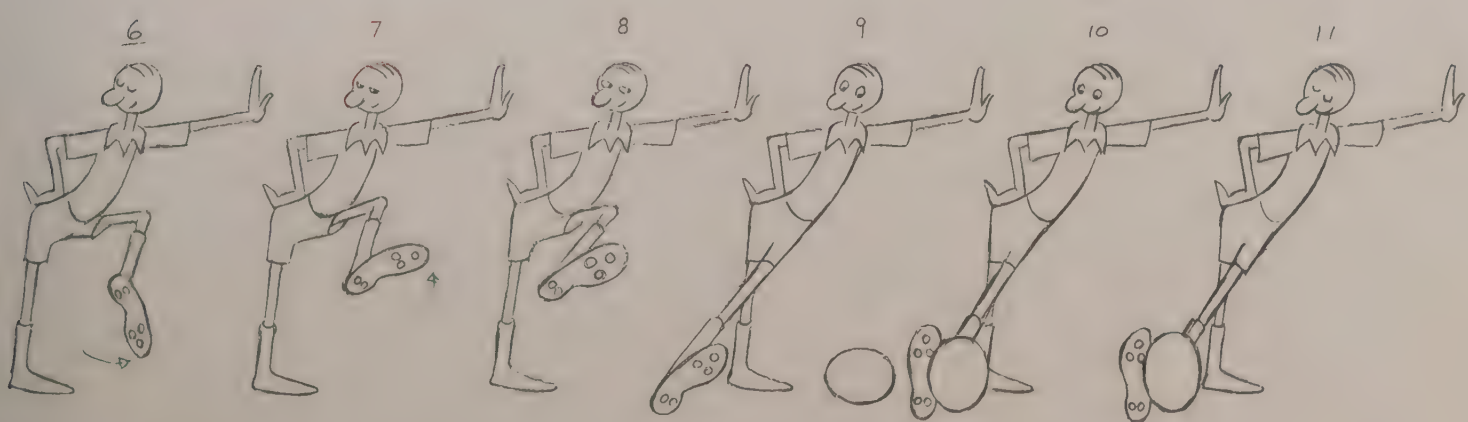
A WAY TO GET 'SNAP' WHICH ANIMATORS ARE ALWAYS TALKING ABOUT IS THIS:
SAY A CHARACTER SEES SOMETHING MILDLY SURPRISING and LOOKS UP SLIGHTLY -

WE PUT IN A VERY FAST ANTICIPATION - A DRAWING OR TWO IN the OPPOSITE DIRECTION FROM WHERE WE WANT TO GO. IT'S TOO FAST FOR the EYE TO SEE IT - IT'S JUST FOR ONE OR TWO FRAMES - IT'S INVISIBLE TO the EYE BUT WE FEEL IT. THIS GIVES IT the SNAP.

SAY A SOCCER GOALIE IS GOING TO STOP A BALL WITH A CIRCULAR FOOT FLOURISH -



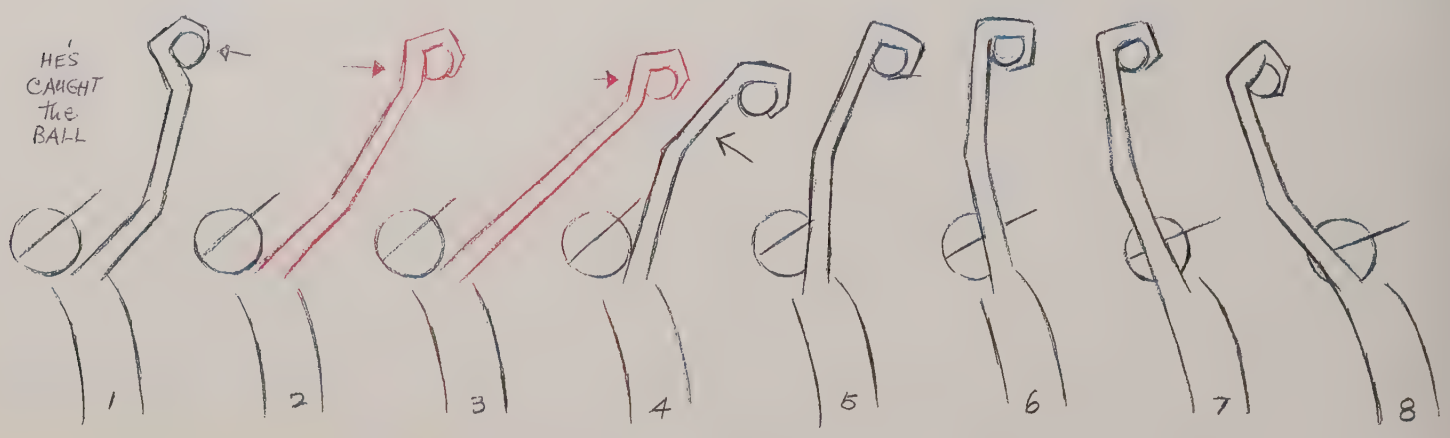
JUST A ONE FRAME ANTICIPATION WILL DO the TRICK! ← THEN → MOVES IN OPPOSITE DIRECTION



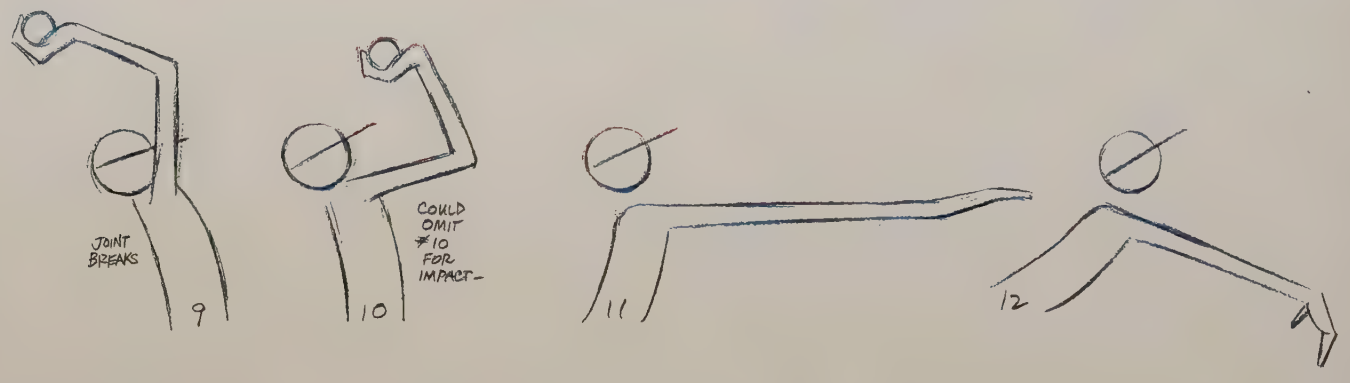
OF COURSE, the FOOT FLOURISH IS ITSELF AN ANTICIPATION OF CATCHING the BALL.

THIS DEVICE GIVES AN EXTRA PUNCH TO AN ACTION BY INVISIBLY ANTICIPATING ANY ACTION. IT'S THE SAME THING AS A 'NATURAL' ANTICIPATION – JUST GO THE OPPOSITE WAY FIRST – BUT ONLY FOR ONE, TWO OR THREE FRAMES.

A BASEBALL PLAYER HAVING CAUGHT A BALL COULD ANTICIPATE THE ANTICIPATION OF HIS THROW FOR JUST 2 FRAMES –



ANTIC. FORWARD FOR 2 FRAMES – NOW GO BACK INTO THE 'NORMAL' ANTICIPATION –



CONCLUSION:

WHENEVER POSSIBLE WE TRY TO FIND AN ANTICIPATION (OR ANTICIPATIONS) BEFORE THE ACTION.

BILL TYTLA SAID, "BE SIMPLE.
BE DIRECT.
BE CLEAR."

AND "BE VERY SIMPLE.
MAKE A STATEMENT –
and FINISH IT – SIMPLY."

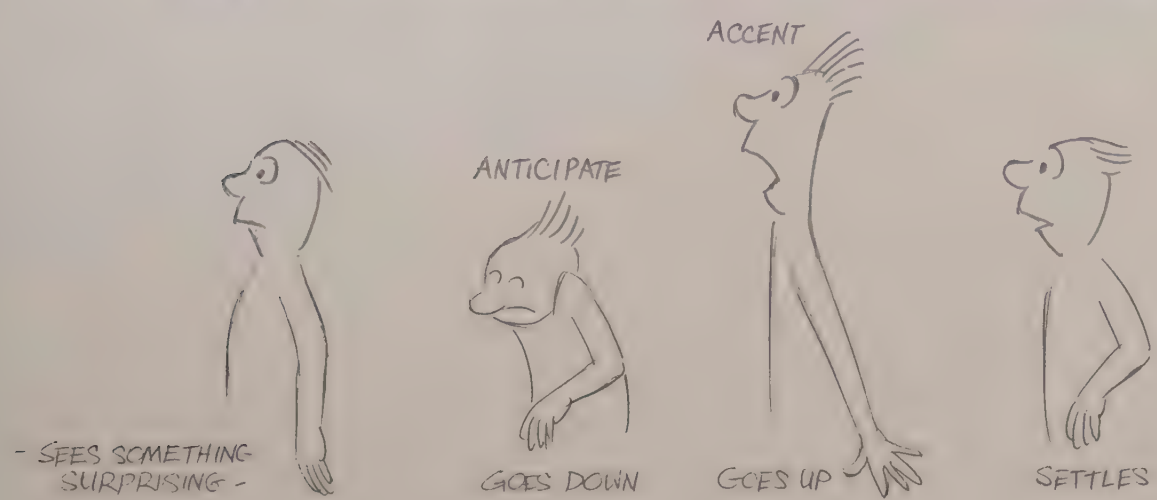
SO,

1 WE ANTICIPATE the ACTION
2 DO IT
3 and SHOW WE'VE DONE IT.

ANTICIPATION LEADS ON NATURALLY RIGHT INTO 'TAKES' and 'ACCENTS'

TAKES AND ACCENTS

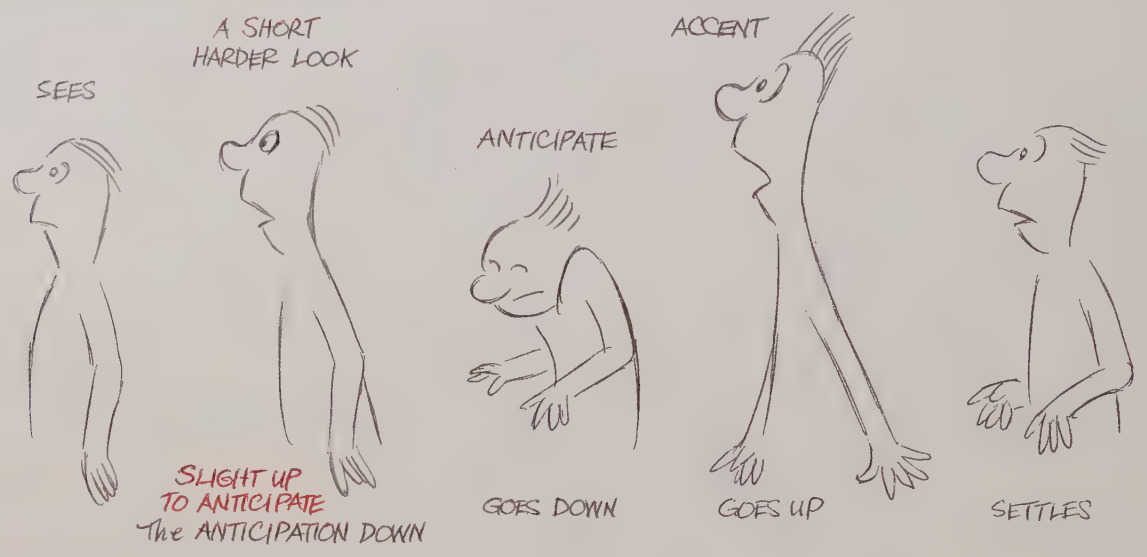
A 'TAKE' IS AN ANTICIPATION OF AN ACCENT WHICH THEN SETTLES.



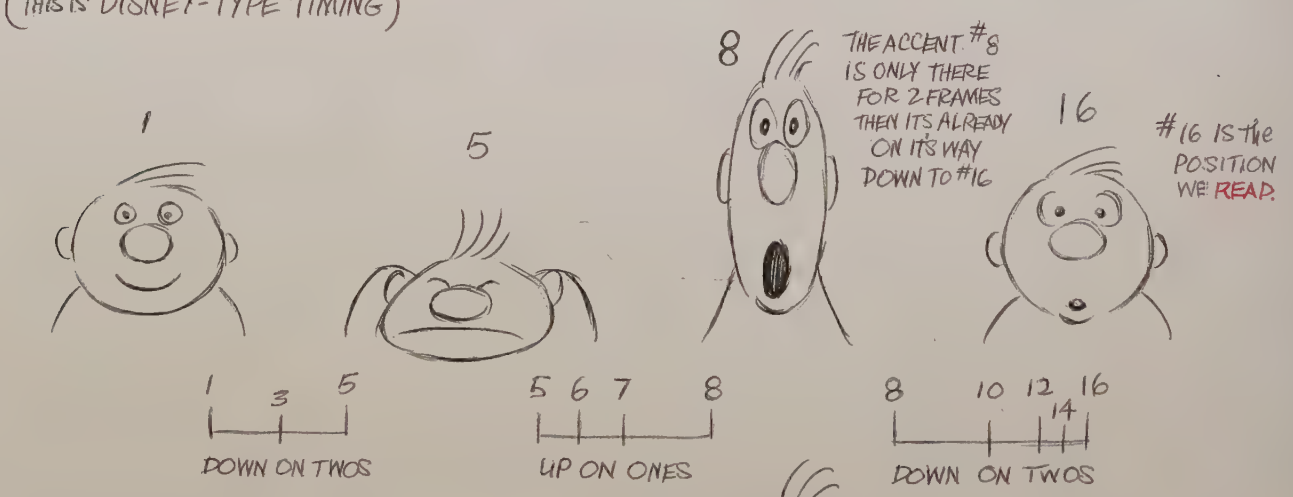
THIS IS THE BASIC PATTERN OF A CARTOON 'TAKE.'

HERE FOLLOWS A BUNCH OF FORMULAS AND VARIATIONS ON HOLLYWOOD TAKES WORKED OUT IN THE 1930'S AND 40'S.....

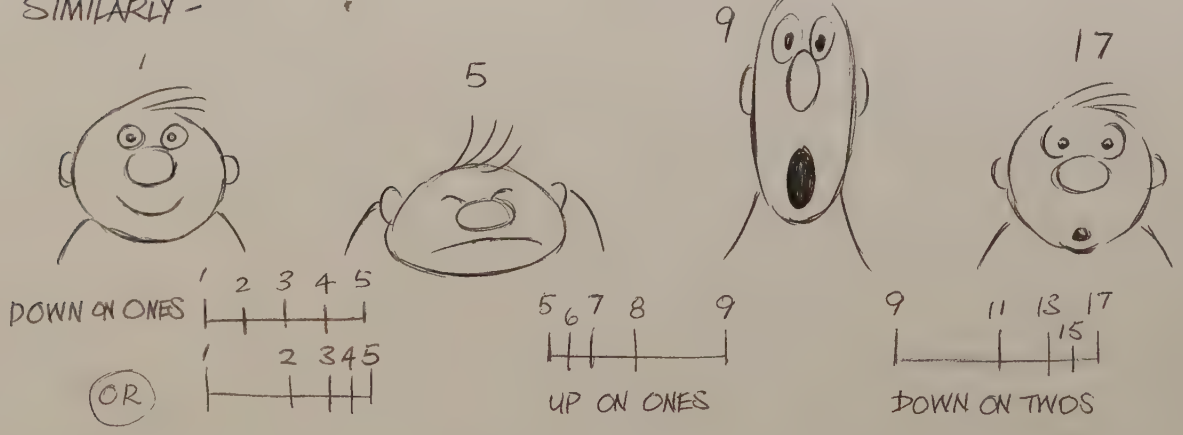
BUT WHILE WE'RE AT IT, WE COULD STRENGTHEN OUR BASIC TAKE BY ADDING IN A SLIGHT UP ANTICIPATION OF the DOWN ANTICIPATION AS HE TAKES A CLOSER LOOK-



HERE'S A FORMULA FOR AN ORDINARY STRAIGHT UP and DOWN TAKE (LASTS 1 FOOT = 2/3 SEC.)
(THIS IS DISNEY-TYPE TIMING)


1
5
8
THE ACCENT #8 IS ONLY THERE FOR 2 FRAMES THEN ITS ALREADY ON IT'S WAY DOWN TO #16
16
#16 IS the POSITION WE READ.
1 3 5
DOWN ON TWOS
5 6 7 8
UP ON ONES
8 10 12 14 16
DOWN ON TWOS

SIMILARLY -

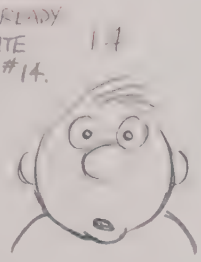


HERE'S the SAME THING BUT WITH WARNER SHORTS-TYPE TIMING- (14 FRAMES = JUST OVER ½ SEC)

TOWN ON TWOS 1 3 5 7

POP FROM 7 TO 8

AGAIN, the ACCENT IS ONLY FELT AS IT'S ALREADY EN ROUTE DOWN TO #14.



8 9 10 11 12 13 14
DOWN ON ONES

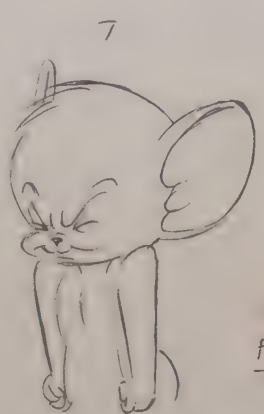
SAME THING FROM the SIDE-

DOWN ON TWOS 1 3 5 7

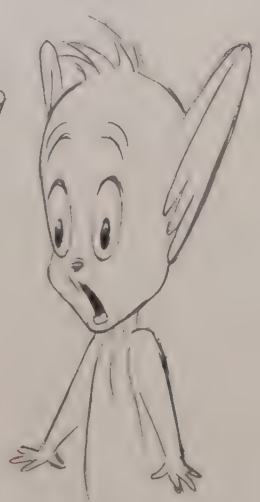
POP FROM 7 TO 8

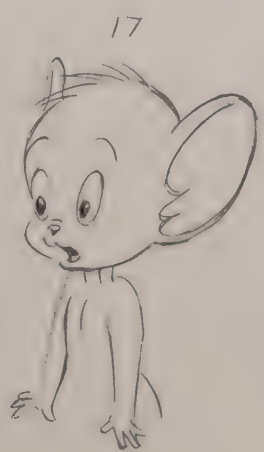
8 9 10 11 12 13 14
DOWN ON ONES

SAME THING WITH the BODY-BUT ALL ON TWOS.
(TAKES ONE FOOT = ⅔ SEC.)



POP FROM 7 TO 9



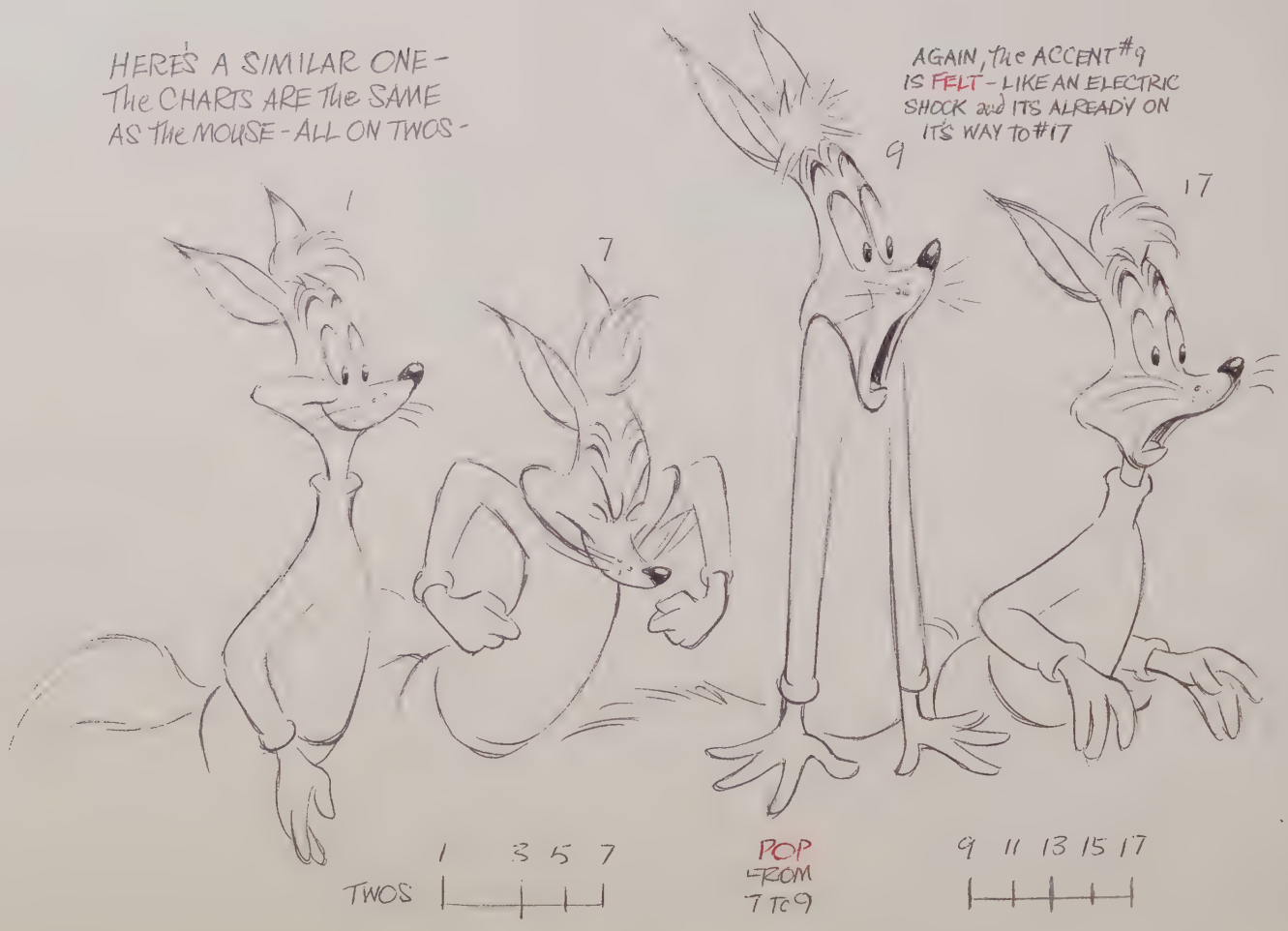


TWOS 1 3 5 7

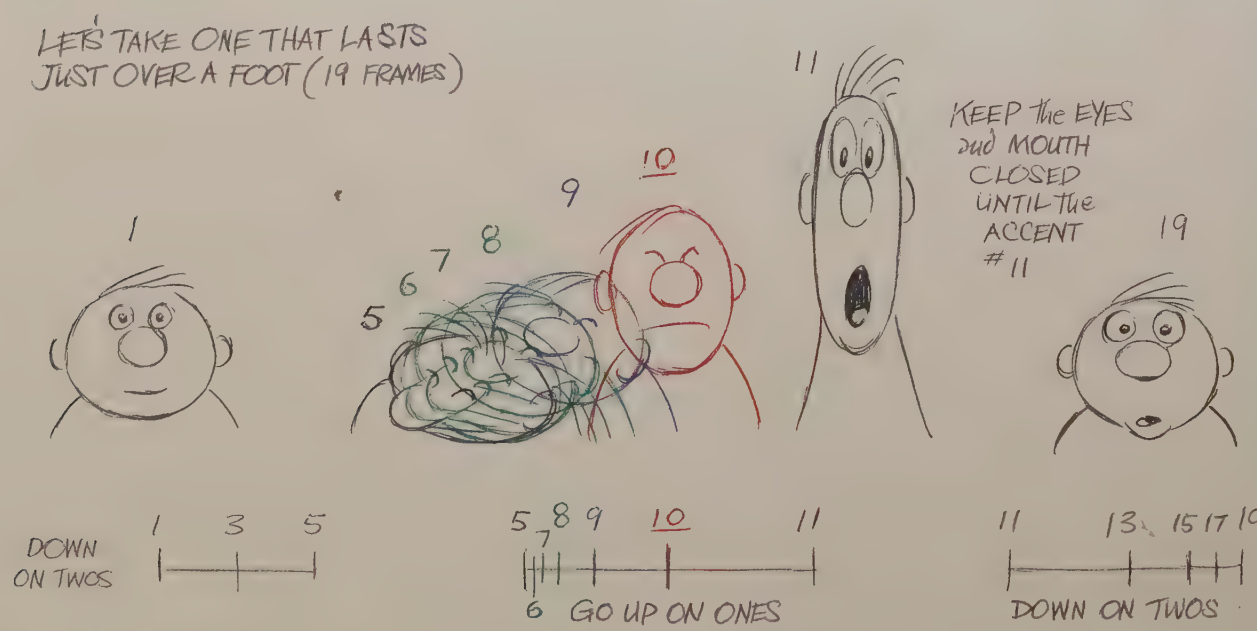
ALTERNATE #7

TWOS 9 11 13 15 17

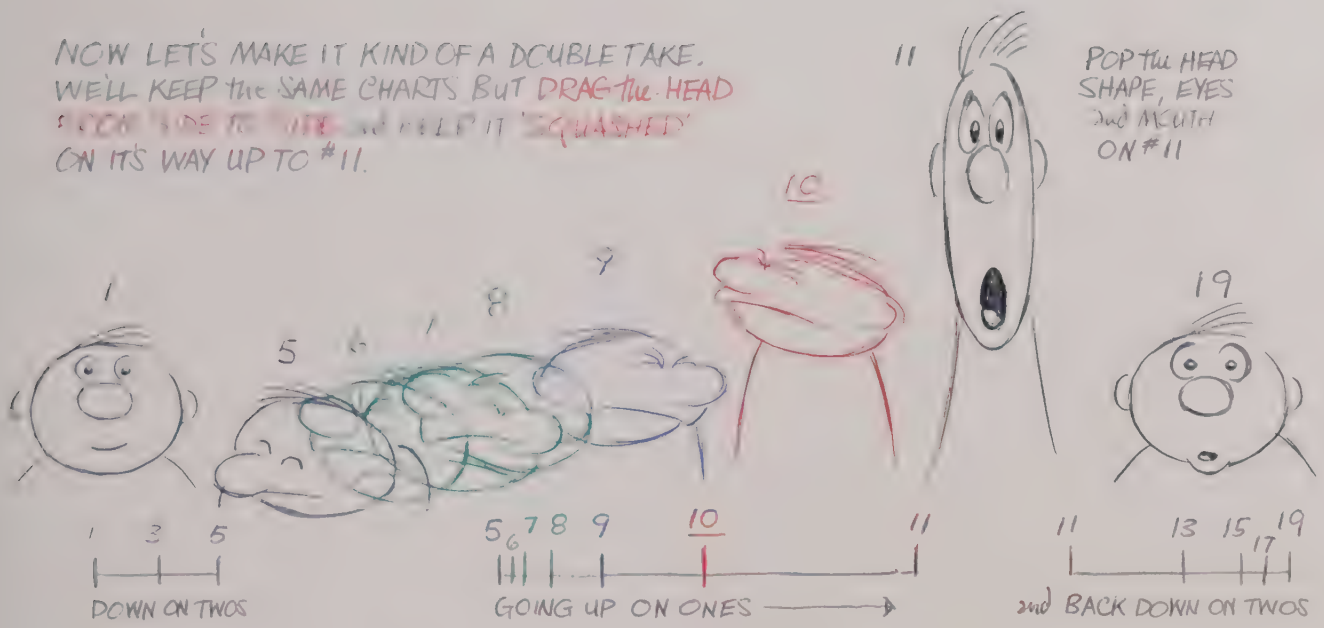
WE CAN EXAGGERATE EVERYTHING AS MUCH AS WE LIKE IN the DRAWING BUT THESE ARE STANDARD TIMINGS.


HERE'S A SIMILAR ONE - The CHARTS ARE The SAME AS The MOUSE - ALL ON TWOS -
AGAIN, the ACCENT #9 IS FELT - LIKE AN ELECTRIC SHOCK and ITS ALREADY ON ITS WAY TO #17
1
7
9
17
TWOS
1 3 5 7
POP FROM 7 TO 9
9 11 13 15 17

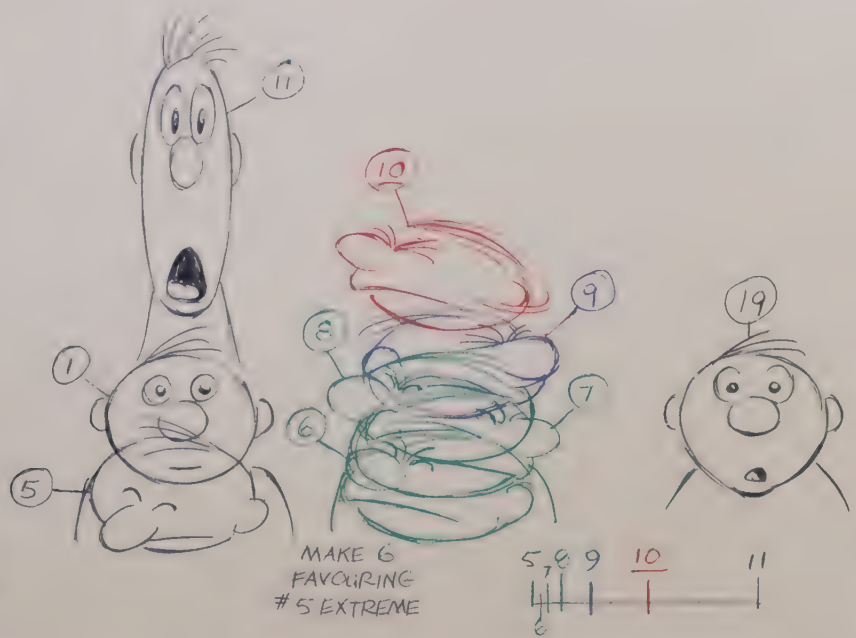
THESE ARE SOLID WORKING FORMULAS - BUT WE CAN START BEING MORE INVENTIVE -



NOW LETS MAKE IT KIND OF A DOUBLE TAKE.
WE'LL KEEP the SAME CHARTS BUT DRAG the HEAD
[illegible] and HELP IT "SQUASHED"
ON ITS WAY UP TO #11.



MAYBE ITS CLEARER SHOWING IT THIS WAY –

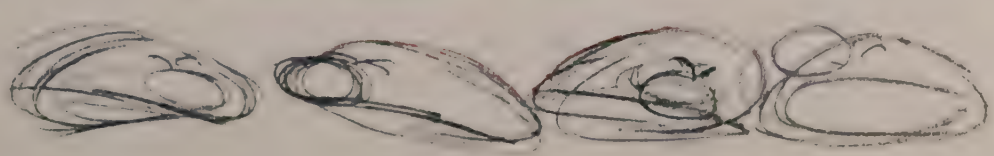


WE SHOULDN'T WORRY ABOUT DISTORTED DRAWINGS OR IMAGES.
LIVE ACTION HAS TERRIBLY DISTORTED FRAMES.

BUT WE SHOULD REMEMBER WHAT the ORIGINAL VOLUME OF A CHARACTER IS -
AND NOT STRETCH and COMPRESS FORGETTING THIS VOLUME - SO THAT the CHARACTER
CHANGES OVERALL SIZE.

MILT KAHL SAID, "I KEEP the SAME AMOUNT OF MEAT IN A TAKE."

BUT WE CAN PUSH IT AROUND LIKE MAD -



WE SHOULDN'T BE AFRAID OF DISTORTION IN the INTERIOR OF AN ACTION.
OUR DRAWINGS OR IMAGES MAY LOOK STRANGE, BUT WE REALLY ONLY SEE the START and END POSITIONS.
WE FEEL the DISTORTION WITHIN and THAT'S WHAT COUNTS.
THERE IS WILD DISTORTION and LEAN IN LIVE ACTION and WE CAN GO FURTHER—

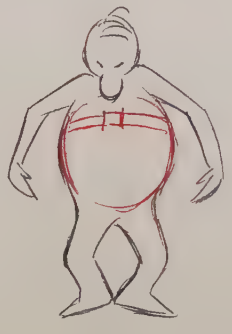
GOING DOWN INTO AN ANTICIPATION YOU'D EXPECT THIS -

ANTIC.

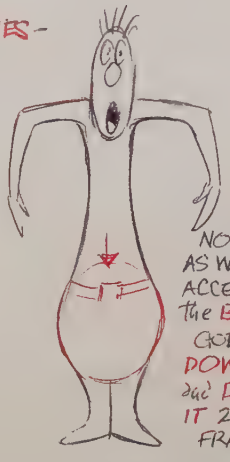
The BELLY GOES DOWN AS the LEGS BEND -

BUT LET'S DELAY the STOMACH AREA
FOR JUST 2 FRAMES OR 3 FRAMES OR 4 FRAMES -

ANTIC.

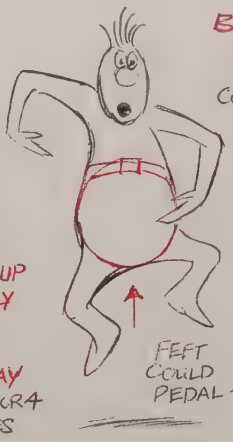


BELLY STAYS PUT -



NOW AS WE ACCENT UP the BELLY GOES DOWN and DELAY IT 2, 3 OR 4 FRAMES

the STOMACH GOES DOWN GIVING INTERNAL STRETCH and COMPRESSION.



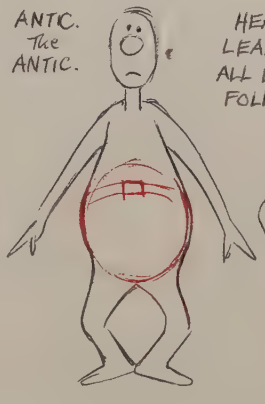
FEET COULD PEDAL -

BELLY CATCHES UP AS HE STARTS TO COME DOWN.

AFTER the HEAD and BODY HAVE SETTLED the ARMS COULD MOVE INTO A POSITION TO TAKE the CURSE OFF the HOLD.

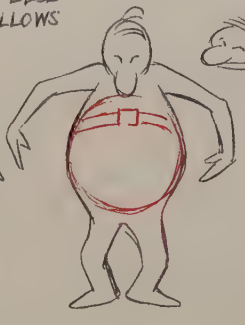
the HEAD COULD GO UP AS the LEGS GO DOWN
WHICH IS AN ANTICIPATION OF AN ANTICIPATION -

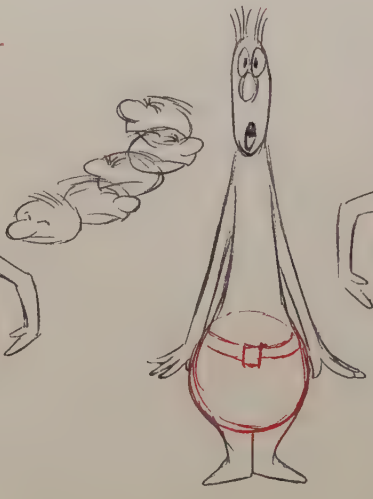
ANTIC.
the ANTIC.

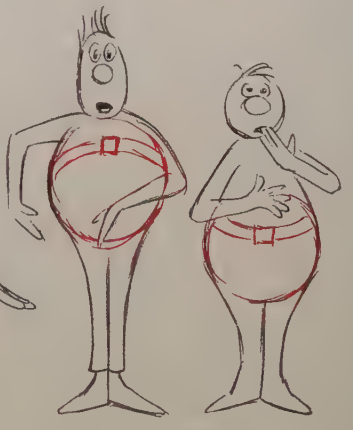


HEAD LEADS - ALL ELSE FOLLOWS

ANTIC.



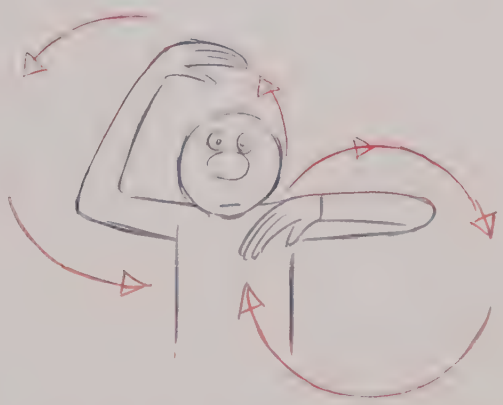




THIS IS HOW TEX AVERY DID HIS WILD, CRAZY TAKES - EXTENDING ON A SERIES OF COMPOUND ACTIONS - DELAYING BITS, OFTEN JUST 2 FRAMES APART - A SERIES OF ACTIONS = A CUMULATIVE RESULT.

ART BABBITT HAD A GREAT EMBELLISHING DEVICE FOR the HANDS AT the END OF A TAKE - WHICH LOTS OF ANIMATORS UTILISED -

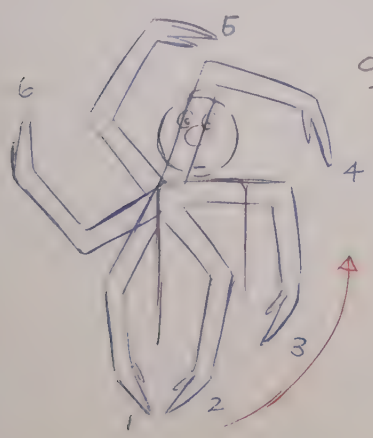
AFTER the TAKE, WHERE HE'S COMING BACK TO NORMAL (IF WE HAVE the TIME FOR IT) HAVE the ARMS MAKE AN ELABORATE FLURRY - ON ONES. VERY FAST.



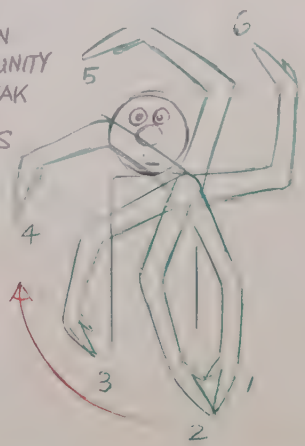
The ARMS EACH SWING AROUND IN A CIRCLE COUNTERING EACH OTHER.

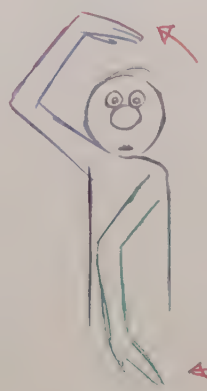
THEY CAN MAKE A FIGURE 8 AS LONG AS THEY COUNTER EACH OTHER.

The LEFT ARM DOES the SAME AS the RIGHT - BUT STARTS LATER and COUNTERS IT.



and IT'S AN OPPORTUNITY TO BREAK the JOINTS



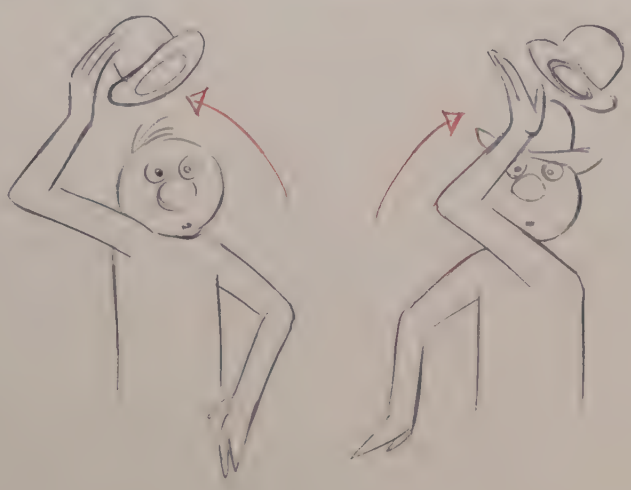


HIS LEFT ARM IS DELAYED WHILE HIS RIGHT ARM IS UP

ANOTHER LITTLE REFINEMENT - The ARM COULD KEEP KNOCKING HIS HAT OFF and ON AGAIN -

KIND OF CHAPLINESQUE...

WE'D NEED A MINIMUM OF 12 FRAMES FOR THIS STUFF -



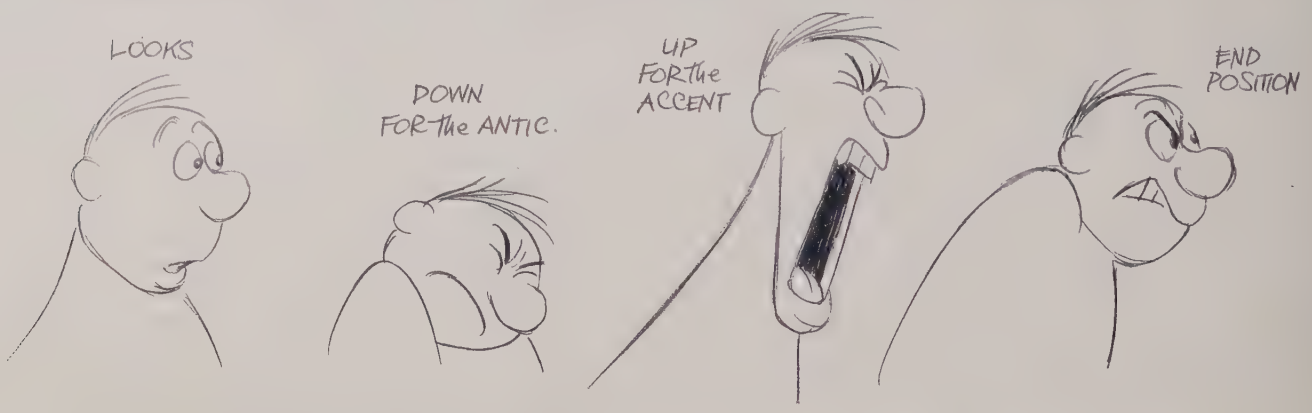
OTHER ARM COMES UP and KNOCKS the HAT the OTHER WAY

- OR PUTS IT BACK ON.

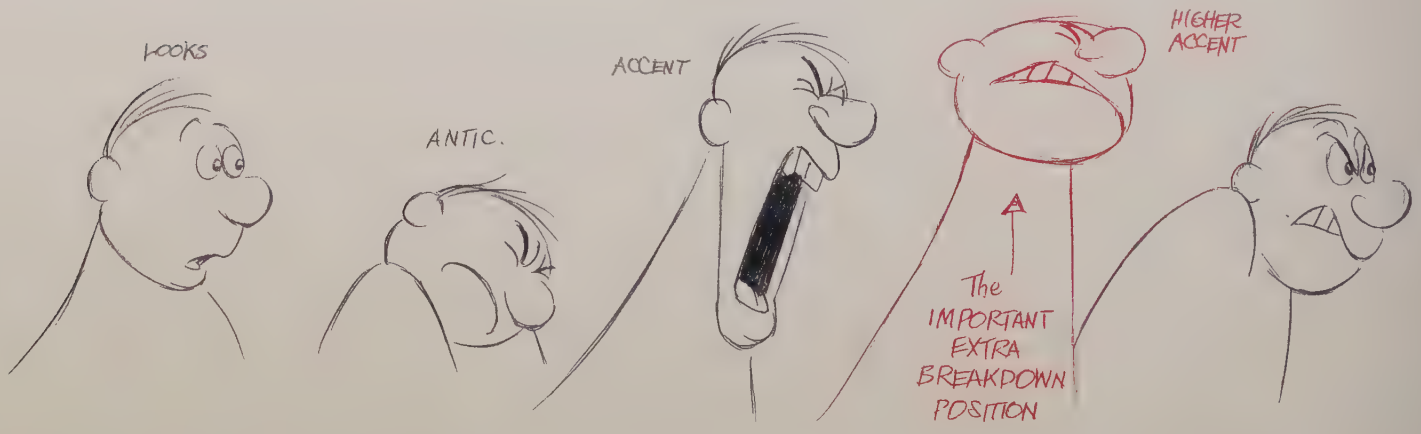
HIS FEET COULD PEDAL IN the AIR.

- ENDLESS VARIATIONS -

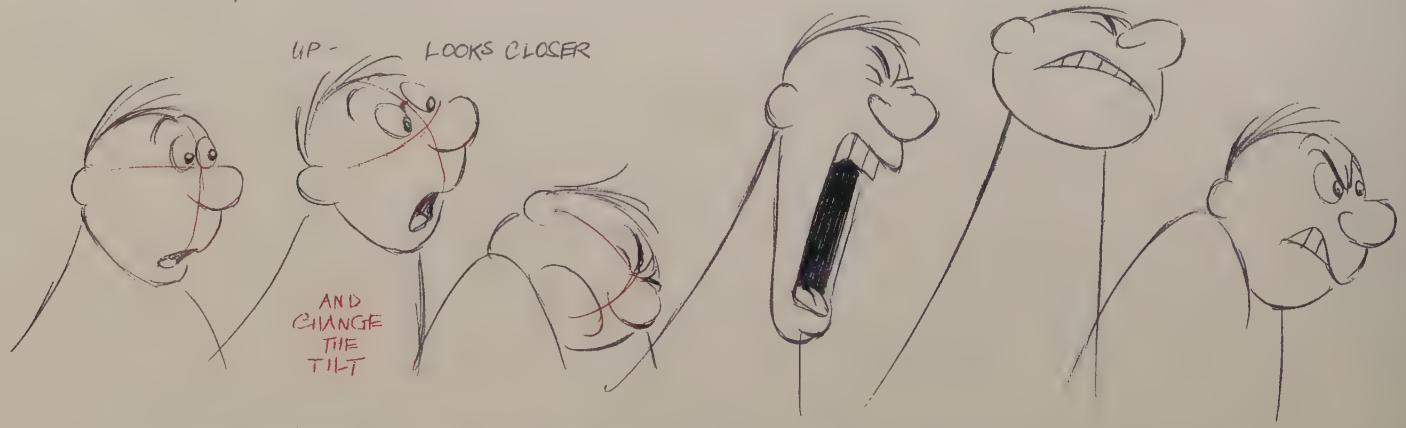
IT'S A GOOD IDEA TO LOOK FOR AN EXTRA 'BREAKDOWN'-
LET'S SAY A MAN SEES SOMETHING OUTRAGEOUS and YELLS "WHAAAAAAT?!!"



THIS WILL DO the JOB OK - BUT LET'S LOOK FOR ANOTHER BREAKDOWN - ANOTHER POSITION THAT WILL STRENGTHEN IT and GIVE US MORE 'CHANGE'- MORE VITALITY.



SO WE LOOK FOR WHATEVER CAN GIVE US MORE CHANGE OF SHAPE WITHIN the ACTION. LET'S PUT IN ANOTHER ONE. HAVE HIM LOOK UP BEFORE the DOWN ANTICIPATION. AGAIN, WE ANTICIPATE the ANTICIPATION.-

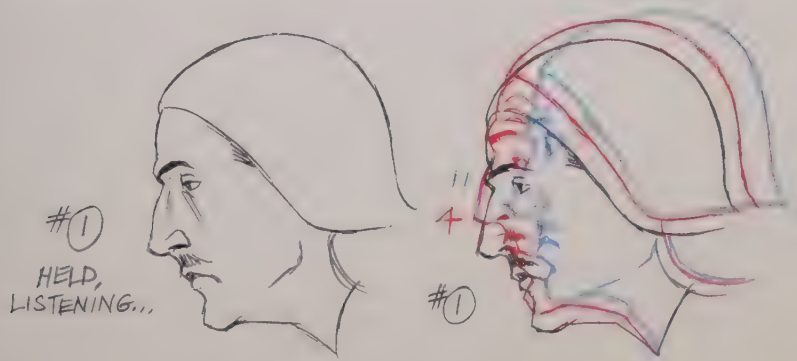


MAYBE WE'RE IN DANGER OF OVERANIMATING - OF GILDING the LILY HERE - BUT ITS ALWAYS WORTH SEEING IF THERES ANOTHER MOMENTARY POSITION POSSIBLE TO CREATE MORE CONTRAST - MORE CHANGE WITHIN. (AGAIN, THERES NOTHING LIKE TRYING IT.)

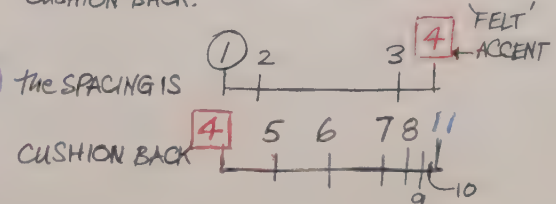
HAVING TOO MUCH ANTICIPATION CAN BE CORNY SOMETIMES and CRAZY TAKES UNNECESSARY. JUST TO CONTRADICT ALL THIS WILD, UP, DOWN and AROUND ACTION, ONE OF the STRONGEST TAKES I'VE EVER SEEN WAS IN A FILM WITH BASIL RATHBONE AS the VILLAIN.

HE'S SMACK IN the MIDDLE OF the CINEMASCOPE SCREEN and HE'S BEING GIVEN INFORMATION BY AN AIDE WHICH SHOCKS HIM.

THERE'S LOTS OF ACTION BEHIND HIM and AROUND HIM WHICH COULD DEFLECT OUR ATTENTION, YET HIS TAKE JUMPS RIGHT OUT AT YOU. HE HARDLY MOVES ANY DISTANCE AT ALL, YET YOU REALLY SEE IT! THERE'S NO ANTICIPATION DOWN and NO STRETCHED ACCENT. PART OF THE REASON WE SEE IT IS BECAUSE HIS HEAD IS FROZEN IN the MIDDLE OF the SCREEN- (the 'SACRED' CENTRAL OVAL.) HIS HEAD MAKES A SHORT, SHARP MOVE UP, THEN CUSHIONS BACK A BIT.



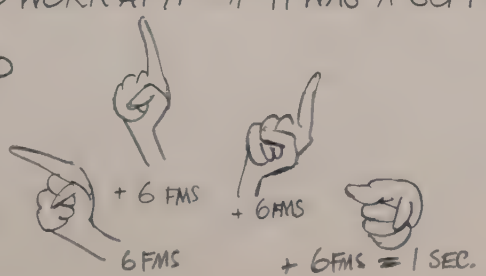
the HEAD GOES UP TO #4 (the ACCENT) IN 3 FRAMES! -THEN CUSHIONS BACK TO #11 IN A VIRTUAL HOLD. THE TAKE, THEN, IS 3 FRAMES LONG WITH A CUSHION BACK.

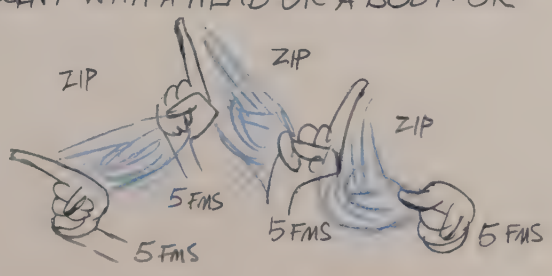


SO, IF WE DEFINE A TAKE AS A STRONG MOVEMENT TO SHOW SURPRISE OR REACTION, HE'S SUCCEEDED WITHOUT ALL OUR ANIMATION DEVICES. HOWEVER USEFUL THEY ARE TO US, LIFE DOESN'T FOLLOW OUR CONVENIENT ANIMATION FORMULAS. (JUST STUDY ANY LIVE ACTION.)

GETTING ACCENTS RIGHT WAS the THING THAT GAVE ME the MOST TROUBLE IN ANIMATING. I REALLY HAD TO WORK AT IT— IF IT WAS A SOFT ACCENT WITH A HEAD OR A BODY-OR A SHARP, HARD ACCENT OF A HAND OR FINGER.

-PLUS HOW LONG TO HOLD A HAND OUT THERE TO READ?



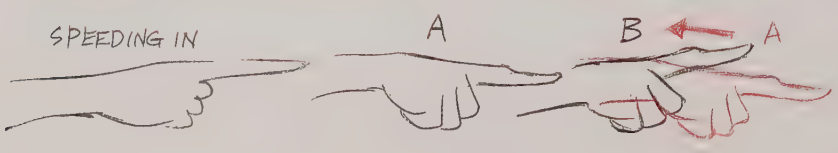


TRY TO POINT 4 TIMES IN A SECOND = 4 ACCENTS. ITS PRETTY HARD TO DO. 4 STATIC HOLDS OF 6 FRAMES EACH - AND HOW DO YOU GET FROM ONE TO the OTHER? ANYWAY, I'VE FOUND THAT YOU NEED AT LEAST 6 FRAMES TO READ ANY ACCENT.

TEX AVERY SAYS IT'S 5 FRAMES. YOU NEED A MINIMUM OF 5 FRAMES TO READ A HOLD. TEX'S STUFF WENT SO FAST THAT I GUESS IT WORKS AS ENOUGH OF A PAUSE IN the CONTEXT OF ALL THAT SPEED.

FINALLY I CAUGHT ON -- AS USUAL, the SECRET IS KIND OF SIMPLE! IT'S JUST GETTING the DIFFERENCE BETWEEN A HARD ACCENT and A SOFT ACCENT.

A HARD ACCENT RECOILS - IT BOUNCES BACK -

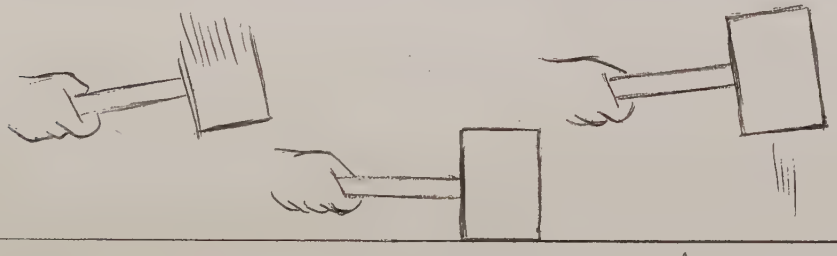


TRY and POINT REALLY HARD and YOUR FINGER HAS TO BOUNCE BACK, OR GO UP OR DOWN OR SHAKE A BIT. IT WON'T STAY STATIC.

and A SOFT ACCENT KEEPS ON GOING.

IF WE POINT MORE GENTLY the HAND WILL CUSHION AS IT SLOWS TO A STOP.

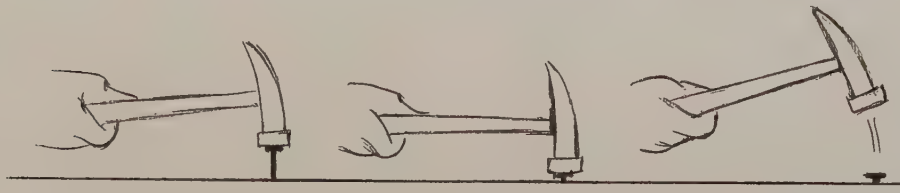
WITH A HARD ACCENT -
IF WE HIT AN ANVIL WITH A STEEL HAMMER, the ANVIL IS OBVIOUSLY NOT AFFECTED BY the HAMMER and WHEN the HAMMER COMES DOWN IT BOUNCES BACK.



THIS BOUNCE BACK IS the ACCENT. The SOUND IS HERE. 1 FRAME AFTER the HIT IS WHERE WE GET the SOUND.

CONTACT FOR 1 FRAME and IT IMMEDIATELY BOUNCES BACK (and SLOWS INTO A HOLD)

SAME WITH A HAMMER HITTING A NAIL - the ACCENT IS NOT WHEN the HAMMER CONTACTS the NAIL.

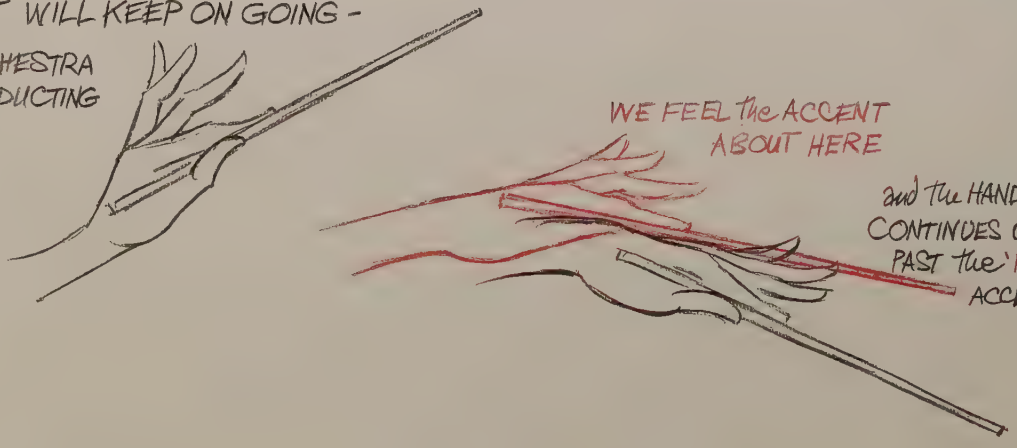


AGAIN, the SOUND IS ON the BOUNCE BACK - ONE FRAME AFTER the CONTACT.

NO. NOT EVEN THIS ONE. IT'S THIS ONE.

A SOFT ACCENT WILL KEEP ON GOING -

THINK OF AN ORCHESTRA CONDUCTOR CONDUCTING WALTZ TEMPO -

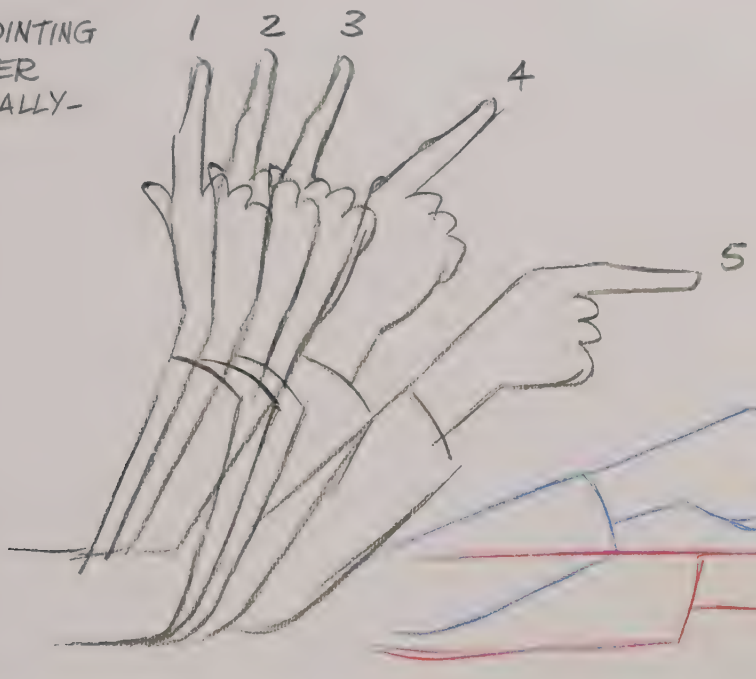


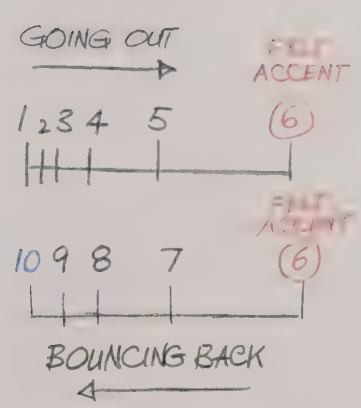
WE FEEL the ACCENT ABOUT HERE

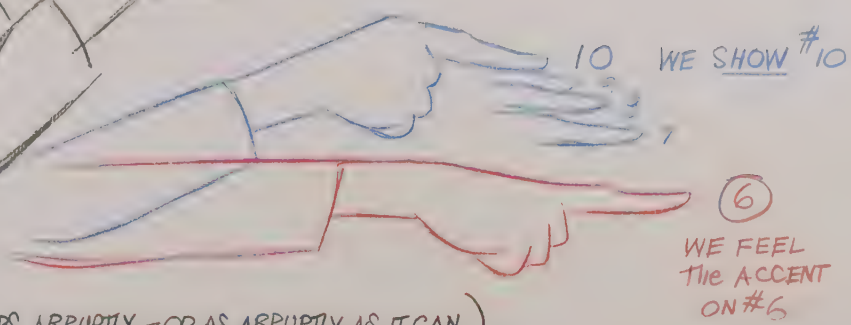
and the HAND CONTINUES ON PAST the 'FELT' ACCENT.

A HARD ACCENT BOUNCES BACK

A MAN POINTING HIS FINGER EMPHATICALLY-



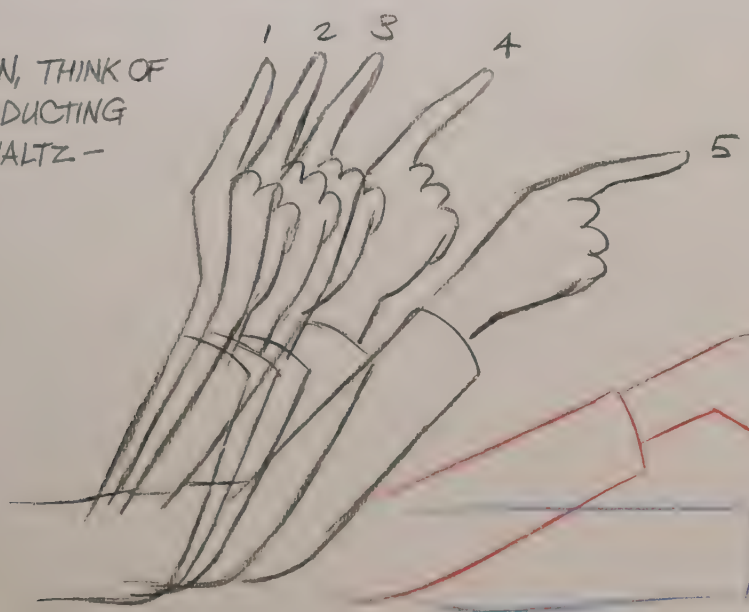


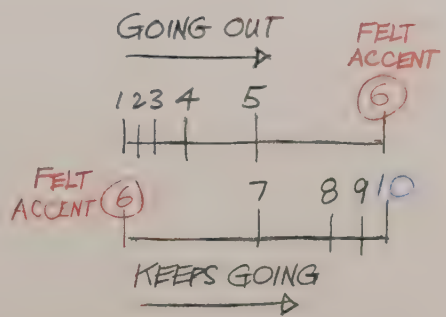


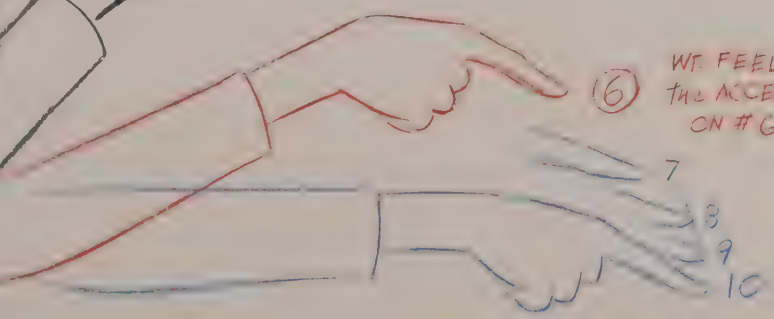
(ALTHOUGH SOMETIMES A HARD ACTION STOPS ABRUPTLY—OR AS ABRUPTLY AS IT CAN.)

A SOFT ACCENT CONTINUES

AGAIN, THINK OF CONDUCTING A WALTZ-



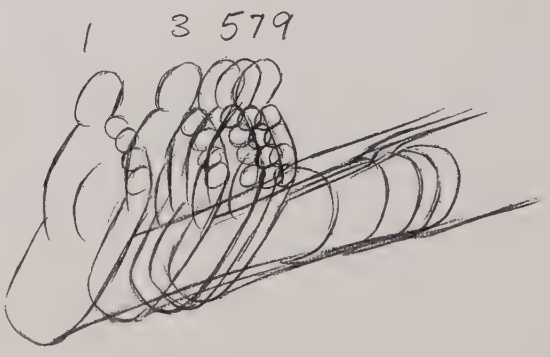




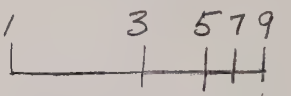
WE STILL SPEED INTO OUR ACCENT BUT THE MOVEMENT CONTINUES.

A KARATE FOOT, AFTER SNAPPING OUT, WILL BOUNCE BACK IN A HARD ACCENT.

AFTER SPEEDING OUT INTO the 'FELT' ACCENT #1



THEN BOUNCES BACK

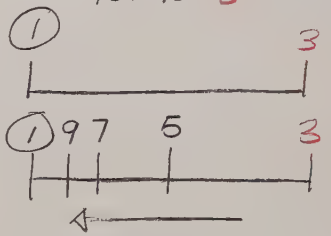


and WE 'READ' #9

TAKE SOMEONE SHOOTING - DISPLACE the GUN FOR IMPACT

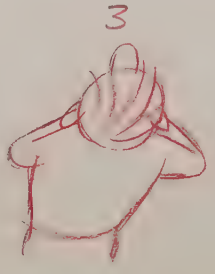
POP TO #3

ON TWOS



BOUNCES BACK TO ORIGINAL POSITION

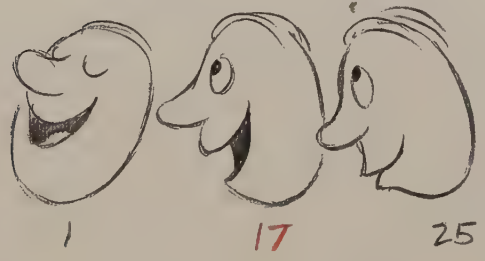
WE GET the SOUND OF the SHOT AS the GUY POPS BACK WITHOUT ANY INBETWEENS and THEN SLOWS BACK TO NORMAL.

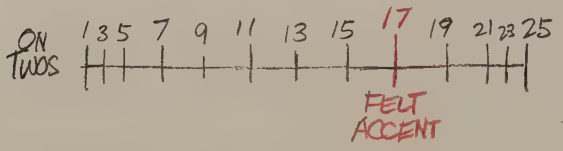


IMPACT BACK

A SOFT ACCENT

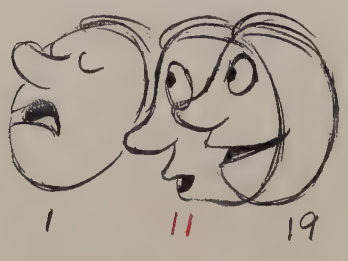
"I'D BE HAPPY TO-"

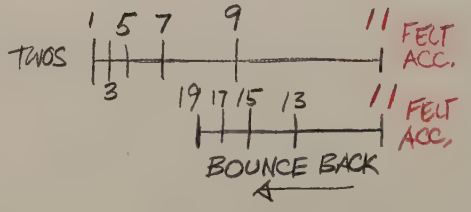




A HARD ACCENT

"WHY CERTAINLY"





COULD BE SOFT OR HARD...

"HI THERE CUTIE-"

(BUT USUALLY HEAD ACCENTS ARE UP SEE 'DIALOGUE!)

TIMING, STAGGERS, WAVE AND WHIP

WE HAVE the ART THAT CAN PLAY MOST FREELY WITH TIME.

WE DON'T HAVE TO USE NORMAL TIME. WE CAN EITHER GO TOO FAST-TO GET SPASTIC HUMOUR and FRANTIC ACTIVITY- OR GO TOO SLOW and GET BEAUTY and DIGNITY.

YEARS AGO A SCIENTIST FRIEND OF MINE SHOWED ME FILM HE MADE AROUND the WORLD OF MEN and ANIMALS - NONE OF IT SHOT AT NORMAL SPEED. IT WAS ALL INTENTIONALLY FILMED TOO FAST OR TOO SLOW. HE HAD ELEPHANTS RUNNING LIKE MICE and VICE VERSA, PEOPLE IN RELIGIOUS RITUALS RACING AROUND AS IF PLAYING TAG, PEOPLE KISSING IN SLOW MOTION, ETC. AFTER AN HOUR OF THIS YOUR MIND TURNED INSIDE OUT — GIVING A KIND OF GOD'S EYE VIEW OF LIFE and ACTION.

THERE WAS A SHOT OF A TRAMP ON A PARK BENCH PUTTING A MATCHSTICK IN HIS EAR. IT WAS FILMED SLIGHTLY IN SLOW MOTION, 30 OR 32 FRAMES A SECOND. AS HE FIDDLED WITH the MATCHSTICK YOU SAW LITTLE RIPPLING MUSCLES OF PLEASURE SPREAD ACROSS HIS FACE WHICH YOU WOULD NEVER SEE AT NORMAL SPEED. STRANGE, BUT COMPULSIVE VIEWING.

SINCE THEN I'VE ALWAYS TRIED TO AVOID NORMAL TIMING. I ALWAYS TRY TO GO JUST A LITTLE TOO FAST and THEN SWITCH TO GOING JUST A LITTLE TOO SLOW — COMBINE IT. GO FOR the CHANGE, the CONTRAST. The SLOW AGAINST the FAST. KEEP SWITCHING BACK and FORTH. IT'S HARD TO DETECT BUT MAKES COMPULSIVE VIEWING.

STAGGER TIMINGS

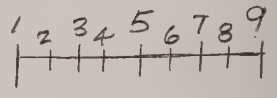
THERE ARE SEVERAL WAYS TO STAGGER DRAWINGS BACK and FORTH TO CAUSE THINGS TO SHAKE OR VIBRATE, TO MAKE HANDS TREMBLE OR HELP WITH LAUGHING OR CRYING.

WE MAKE A SERIES OF DRAWINGS OF NORMAL ACTION and INTERLEAVE THEM BACK and FORTH IN DIFFERENT WAYS TO MAKE THEM SHUDDER and SHAKE.

THE SIMPLEST FORM OF STAGGER VIBRATION IS THIS -

SAY WE WANT A LEAF ON A TREE TO FLUTTER IN THE WIND...

#1 and #9 ARE the 2 EXTREMES and WE JUST MAKE 7 EQUAL IN BETWEENS



THEN WHEN WE EXPOSE IT ON OUR X-SHEETS INSTEAD OF the USUAL-

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

- WE SKIP ONE and GO FORWARD and THEN COME BACK etc. -

1 3 2 4 3 5 4 6 5 7 6 8 7 9

OR SKIP AROUND FOR A MORE VIOLENT EFFECT

1 5 4 2 7 4 3 9 1 5 4 9

AND WE'RE NOT LIMITED TO JUST THAT. FOR VARIETY HOLD SOME FOR 2 OR 3 FRAMES and OTHERS FOR ONE. IT'S AN ERRATIC EXPOSURE - IT DEPENDS HOW VIOLENT WE WANT IT TO BE.

1 3 2 5 4 6 9 7 8

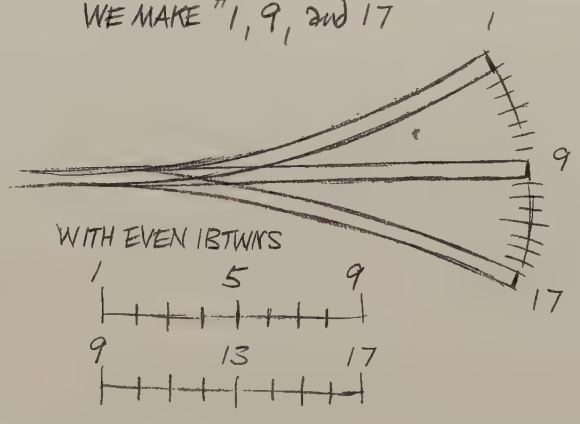
VIBRATIONS ALSO WORK WELL ON TWOS:

1 3 2 4 3 5 4

ANY COMBINATION CAN WORK. THIS is the PRINCIPLE OF STAGGERED EXPOSURE

ANOTHER WAY -
TAKE A DIVING BOARD VIBRATING AFTER the DIVER'S LEFT IT -

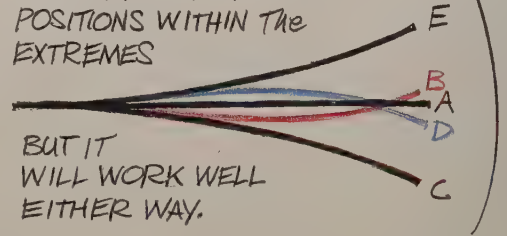
WE MAKE #1, 9, and 17



1 17 2 16 3 15 4 14 5 13 6 12 7 11 8 10 9 etc.

IT'S SURPRISING HOW MUCH YOU CAN REPEAT EACH END, #1 TO #17 ETC. AND WHEN IT SLOWS TO A STOP.

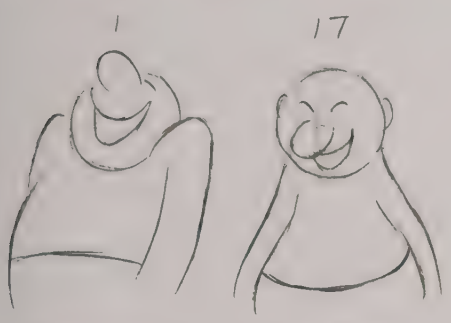
OF COURSE WE CAN MAKE MORE FLEXIBLE PASSING POSITIONS WITHIN the EXTREMES



BUT IT WILL WORK WELL EITHER WAY.

THESE ARE the VIBRATIONS MOST ANIMATORS USE - FOR LACK OF A NAME I CALL IT the 'UP and DOWN' OR 'BACK and FORTH' VIBRATION.

THIS CAN BE USED FOR LAUGHTER OR CRYING:



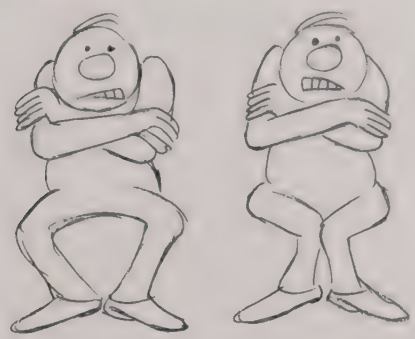
SHOULDERS UP

SHOULDERS DOWN

SHOULDERS UP

SHOULDERS DOWN

OR SHIVERING WITH COLD:



SIMPLY BECAUSE the HEAD EXTREMES ARE CLOSE TOGETHER and the KNEES FAR APART WE GET A VARIETY OF SPACING IN the ACTION.

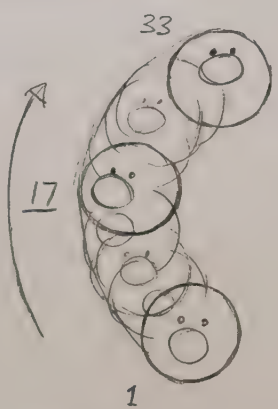
THE ONLY PROBLEM WITH THIS METHOD IS THAT IT TENDS TO BE A BIT MECHANICAL – WE COULD BREAK IT UP BY DOING MORE INTERESTING PASSING POSITIONS WITH IN IT.

BUT the REALLY GREAT METHOD IS the ONE DEVELOPED BY NORMAN FERGUSON AT DISNEY'S. KEN HARRIS SHOWED IT TO ME and KEN GOT IT FROM SHAMUS CULHANE WHO GOT IT FROM FERGUSON. FOR LACK OF A NAME, I'M CALLING IT

the SIDE TO SIDE VIBRATION FORMULA

SAY WE WANTED TO HAVE A HEAD WOBBLE FROM SIDE TO SIDE –

WE MAKE A SERIES OF DRAWINGS FROM 1 to SAY, 33 –



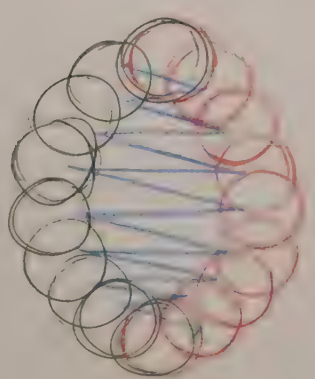
THEN WE MAKE A CAREFUL TRACING OF #1 and #33 JUST SLIGHTLY OFFSET –

and WE MAKE A NEW SERIES OF DRAWINGS #1A TO 33A GOING UP the OTHER SIDE.

THEN WE INTERLEAVE THEM

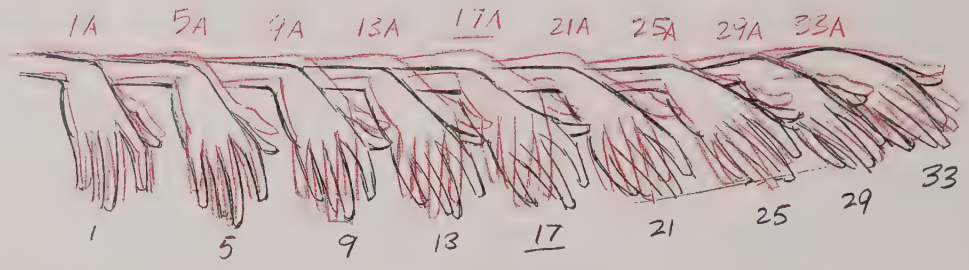
1
1A
2
2A
3
3A
4
4A
5
5A
6
6A
7
7A
8
8A
etc.

AND WE GET A SIDE TO SIDE WOBBLE BY HAVING 2 STRIPS OF ACTION. 2 PATTERNS OF ACTION INTERLEAVED –



INTERLEAVING TWO SERIES OF DRAWINGS GIVES US ALL KINDS OF POSSIBILITIES FOR VIBRATING ACTION.

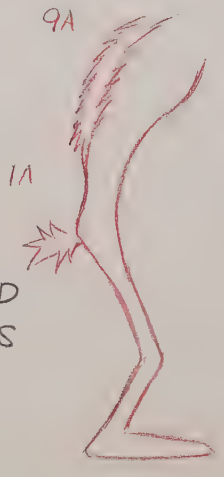
HANDS WITH THE PALSY -



KEN HARRIS ANIMATED A SCENE WHERE THE CHARACTER HAD AN "EARTHQUAKE" VIBRATION GOING UP HIS BODY FROM HIS TOES, TO HIS LEGS, AND HIS BACK. USING THIS SYSTEM IT WORKS LIKE THIS -

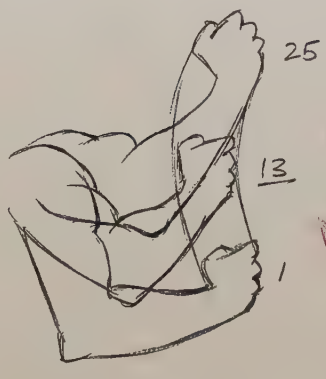
SERIES 1 TO 9

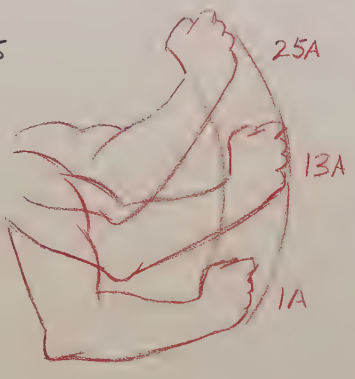
INTERLEAVED WITH SERIES 1A to 9A

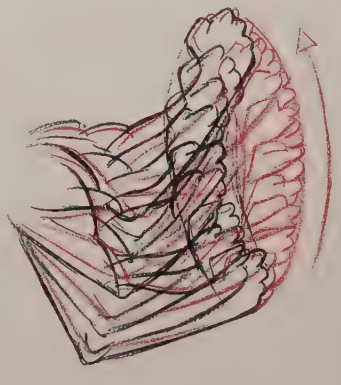


(WORKS NICELY ON TWOS OR ONES)

SAY WE WANT AN ARM RAISING IN TRIUMPH OR IN RAGE, VIBRATING AS IT GOES UP.



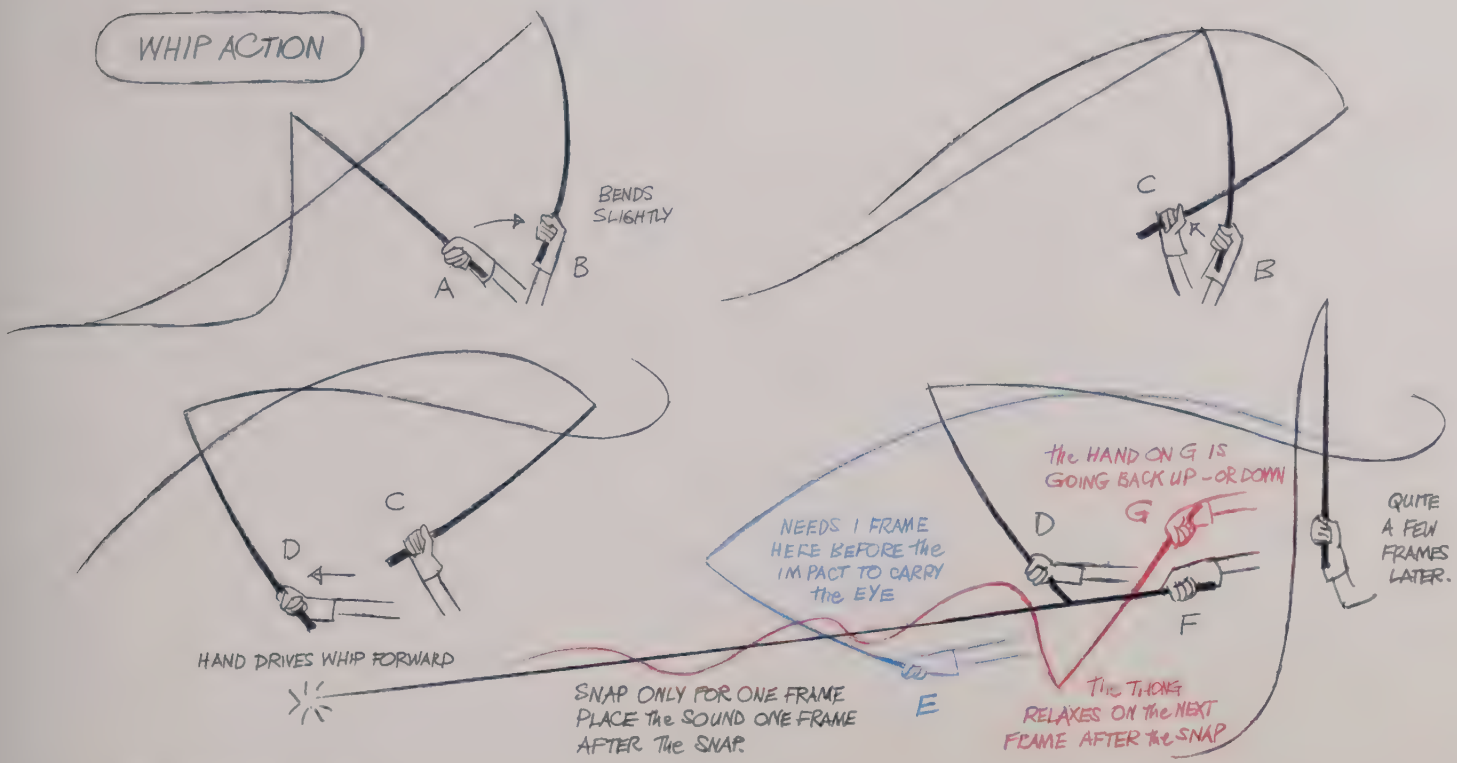




(AND OF COURSE WE CAN BE MORE INVENTIVE WITH OUR PASSING POSITIONS and BREAKDOWNS WITHIN the ACTION)

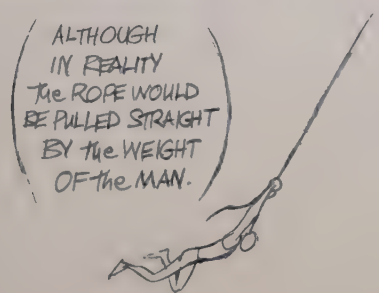
SO, BASICALLY IT'S JUST TWO SERIES OF DRAWINGS DONE SEPARATELY and INTERLEAVED WITH EACH OTHER – GIVING ENDLESS POSSIBILITIES OF WOBBLES, JUDDERS, QUIVERS and SHAKES.

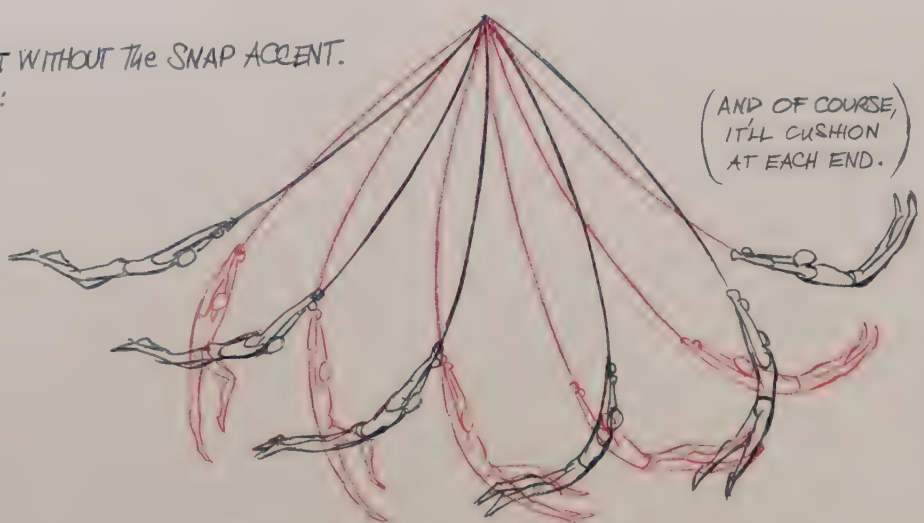
WHIP ACTION

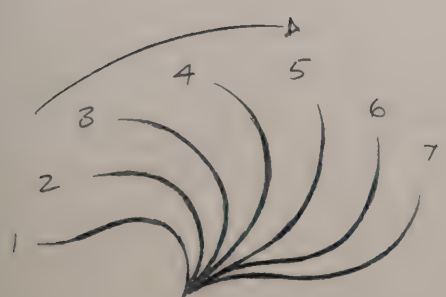


WAVE ACTION

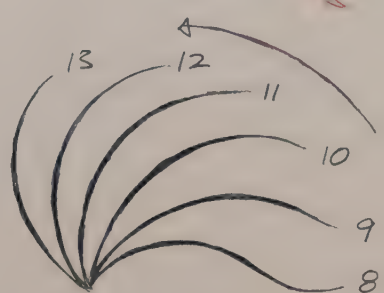
SAME KIND OF THING AS THE WHIP BUT WITHOUT THE SNAP ACCENT.
KEN HARRIS USED THIS EXAMPLE:
A MAN SWINGING ON A ROPE -



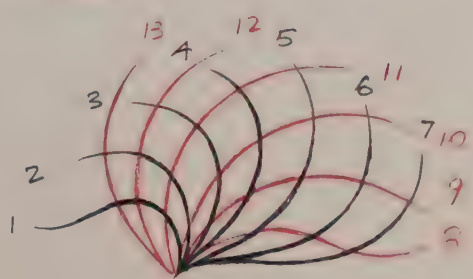




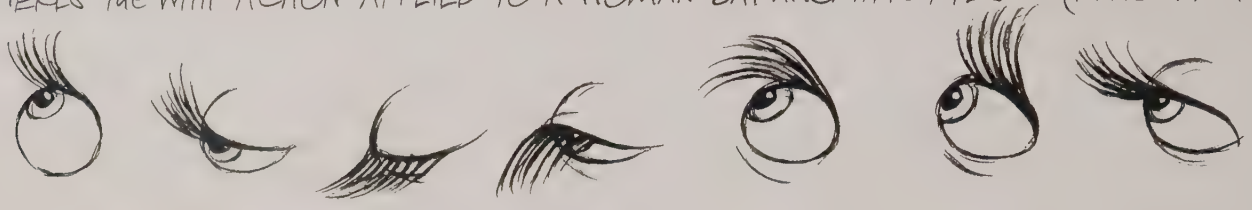
GOING OVER



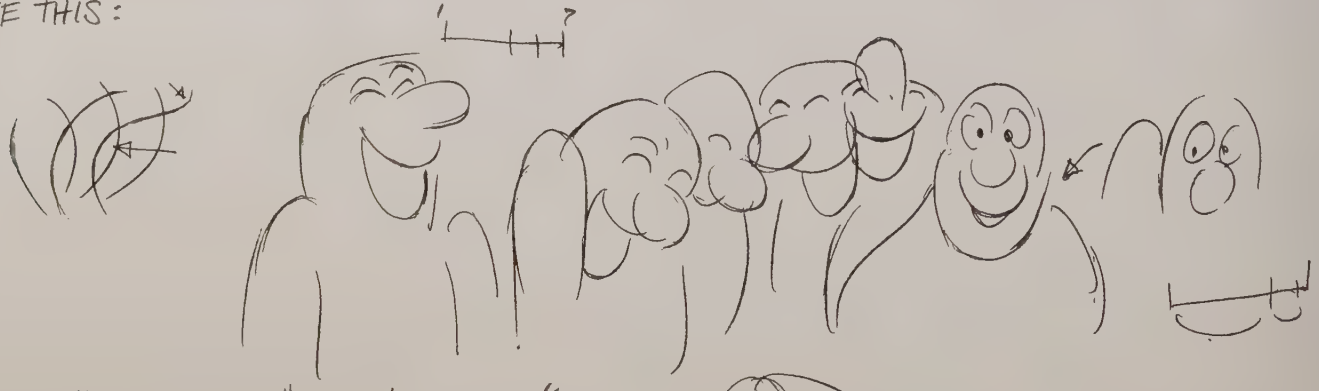
2nd COMING BACK.



HERE'S the WHIP ACTION APPLIED TO A WOMAN BATTING HER EYES - (EXAGGERATED)



HELPING US OUT ON the LAST 2 MONTHS OF 'A CHRISTMAS CAROL', ABE LEVITON ANIMATED A WONDERFUL LITTLE LAUGH ON TINY TIM. AT DINNER ABE and I WERE DEMOLISHING the WINE and I RATTLED ON ABOUT HIS WORK and the GREAT LAUGH HE'D JUST DONE. ABE SAID, "WELL, I'M AWFULLY GLAD THAT YEARS AGO KEN HARRIS SHOWED ME THAT WHIP PRINCIPLE AS A PATTERN FOR A LAUGH."
"WHAT? SHOW ME, SHOW ME!" WE STUMBLED BACK TO the STUDIO and ABE SCRIBBLED SOMETHING LIKE THIS:



"WHAT?" I BURBLED, "I DON'T GET IT."
"COME ON, DICK, IT'S A WHIP PATTERN. - LOOK, LIKE THIS..."

"THAT'S WHAT YOU DID ON TINY TIM?"
"YEAH, YOU KNOW, the WHIP ACTION - LIKE THIS..."

ABE'S LAUGH IS ON the NEXT PAGE and I'M INCLUDING IT TO SHOW JUST HOW SUBTLY THESE BASIC THINGS CAN BE USED. The SHOULDERS GO UP and DOWN WITHIN the LAUGH and YOU CAN JUST ABOUT SEE the WHIP PATTERN UNDERLYING the ACTION.

1
1 3 5 7

7
7 9 11 13

13
13 15 17 19

19
19 21 23

23
23 25 27

27
27 29 31 33

33
33 35 37

37
37 39 41

41
41 43 45

45
45 47 49

49

51

DIALOGUE

IMAGINE A HANDSOME MAN TALKING TO A BEAUTIFUL WOMAN and THIS IS WHAT HE SAYS:

IT LOOKS LIKE HE'S SAYING, "I LOVE YOU," DOESN'T IT?
HE'S NOT. HE'S SAYING, "ELEPHANT JUICE."
(MY 11 YEAR OLD DAUGHTER BROUGHT THIS HOME FROM SCHOOL.)

TRY IT. IT ILLUSTRATES the POINT THAT WE DON'T HAVE STANDARDISED MOUTH SHAPES FOR EVERY CONSONANT and VOWEL. WE'RE ALL DIFFERENT. OUR MOUTHS ARE ALL DIFFERENT and WE USE THEM DIFFERENTLY. THERE'S NO SET WAY TO FORM INDIVIDUAL LETTERS and VOWELS. The ACTOR, JIM CARREY, MOVES HIS MOUTH DIFFERENTLY THAN The ENGLISH QUEEN.

OF COURSE ALL OUR MOUTHS OPEN FOR The VOWELS A, E, I, O, U. (AY, EE, EYE, OH, YOO.)
AND THEY CLOSE FOR The CONSONANTS B, M, P, F, T, V. (BEE, EM, PEE, EFF, TEE and VEE.)
AND the TONGUE IS UP BEHIND The TEETH FOR N, D, L, TH and T (THOUGH WE DON'T ALWAYS SEE IT.)
BUT A LOT OF the POSITIONS IN REAL LIFE ARE AMBIVALENT and INDIVIDUAL.

HOW NOT TO DO LIP SYNC:

I HAD AN ENTHUSIASTIC 6th GRADE TEACHER WITH A WIDE MOUTH FULL OF VERY LARGE TEETH SET OFF BY BRIGHT RED LIPSTICK.

EVERY MORNING SHE HAD US ALL STAND UP and VERY SLOWLY EE - NUNN - SEE - AYTEH :

"MOO VAH BULL LIPSSSSSS,
MOO VAH BULL LIPSSSSSS,
ARR THUH VEHREE BEHSSST LIPSSS
TOO TAWK ANNND SSSING WITHTHTH."

FOLLOWED BY -

"GOOOD MOHRRNNING TOO YOOO,
GOOOD MOHRRNNING TOO YOOO-
WEER OLL INN OWRR PLAYYSEZZ
WITH SSUNNSHEYENEE FAYSSEZZ.
OHHH, THISSS IZZ THUH WAYEE
TOO STAHRRT AHH NEEYOO DAYEE."

SOMETIMES SHE'D HAVE US SIT and SAY "P" - (PUH) FOR A MINUTE and I KIND OF ENJOYED HEARING the LITTLE EXPLOSIONS OF AIR.

PEOPLE DON'T TALK LIKE THIS!

WE SMUDGE FROM ONE WORD SHAPE to the OTHER.
The ANIMATORS CALLED IT

(PHRASING.)

LIKE IN MUSIC - YOU SMUDGE OVER A FAST COMPLEX PASSAGE HITTING JUST the MAIN THINGS — YOU DON'T HAVE TO MACHINE GUN EVERY NOTE EQUALLY — YOU BLUR OVER IT.

WHEN WE SPEAK WE DON'T ARR TICK YOO LATEH EVERY LITTLE SIL AH BULL and LETTER and POP. SOME PEOPLE HARDLY MOVE THEIR LIPS WHEN THEY TALK.

The THING IS TO THINK OF the WORDS, WORD SHAPES and PHRASES - NOT OF LETTERS.

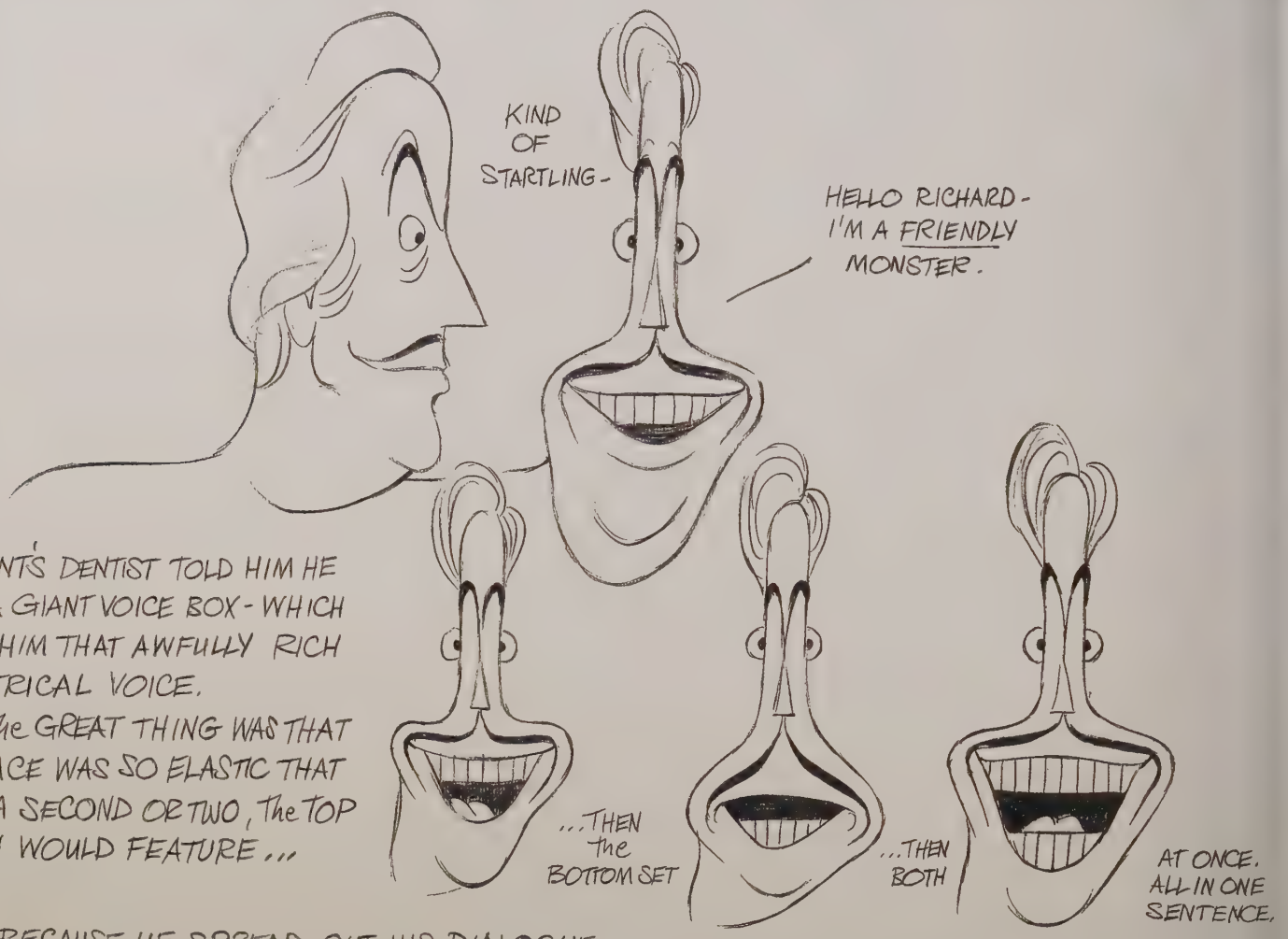
OUR MOUTHS ARE ALL DIFFERENT.

MOST PEOPLE HAVE EITHER the TOP TEETH VISIBLE MOST OF The TIME -

(OR)

The BOTTOM TEETH ARE FEATURED MOST OF the TIME.

The MOST FUN I'VE HAD WITH LIP SYNC SO FAR WAS WITH VINCENT PRICE'S VOICE - BECAUSE HE HAD SUCH A MOBILE FACE, MOUTH, JAWS and THROAT. FROM the SIDE HE LOOKED AS YOU'D EXPECT, BUT WHEN HE TURNED TO the FRONT HE LOOKED LIKE A FISH!



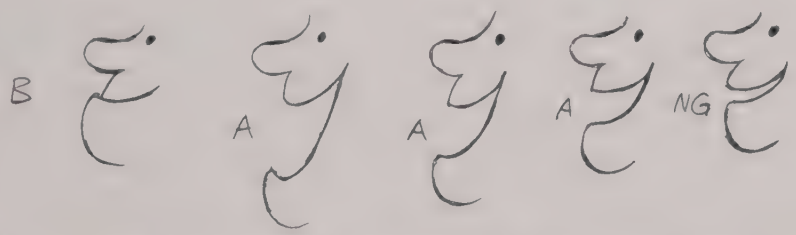
VINCENT'S DENTIST TOLD HIM HE HAD A GIANT VOICE BOX - WHICH GAVE HIM THAT AWFULLY RICH THEATRICAL VOICE.
BUT the GREAT THING WAS THAT HIS FACE WAS SO ELASTIC THAT FOR A SECOND OR TWO, the TOP TEETH WOULD FEATURE ...

AND BECAUSE HE SPREAD OUT HIS DIALOGUE YOU HAD the TIME TO ARTICULATE ALL the POPS, CRACKLES, SLOW VOWELS and CONSONANTS — (LIKE BEING BACK IN GRADE SIX.) YOU COULD OVERANIMATE IT and IT STILL LOOKED NATURAL. MOSTLY WE HAVE TO HOLD DOWN OUR MOUTH ACTION, UNLESS WE'RE SHOUTING OR SINGING.

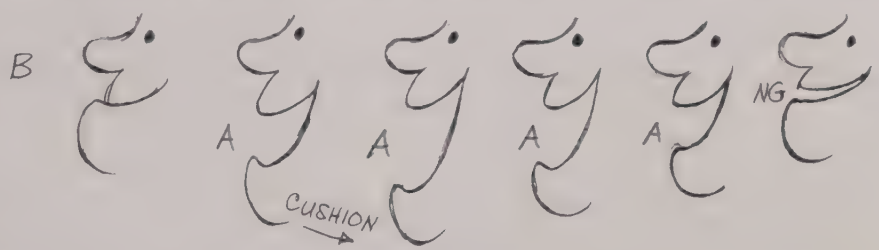
The IMPORTANT CONSONANTS ARE the CLOSED MOUTH ONES -

IN ORDER TO READ THESE POSITIONS WE NEED AT LEAST TWO FRAMES. ONE ISN'T ENOUGH. (IF WE DON'T MAKE THESE POSITIONS the VOWEL THAT FOLLOWS WILL BE VITIATED.)

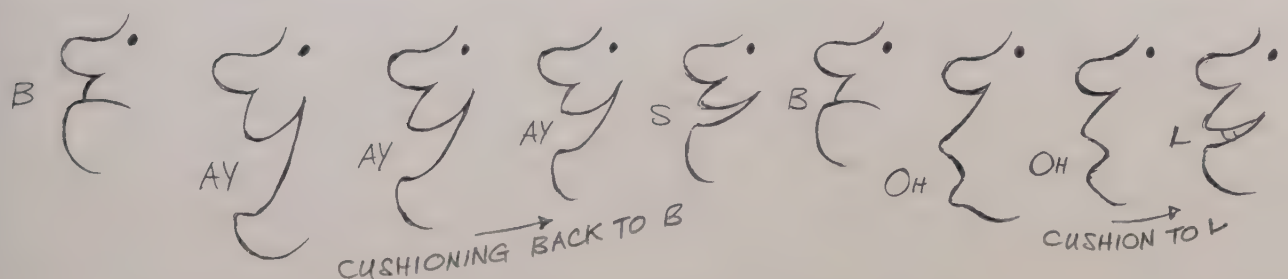
FOR GOOD CRISP DIALOGUE WE SHOULD POP INTO OUR VOWELS - (NO INBETWEENS) DON'T CUSHION INTO IT. CUSHION BACK AFTER the ACCENT. HIT IT BIG, THEN SOFTEN IT. HIT the DIALOGUE ACCENT - i.e. "B A NG!"



(OR) WE COULD CUSHION A BIT AT the BOTTOM OF the POP - and HAVE A SMALL POP TO the "NG"

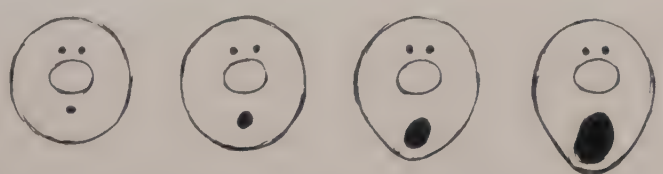


TAKE the WORD "BAYS BOLL" WITH TWO VOWELS - HIT the FIRST VOWEL HARDER THAN the 2nd.



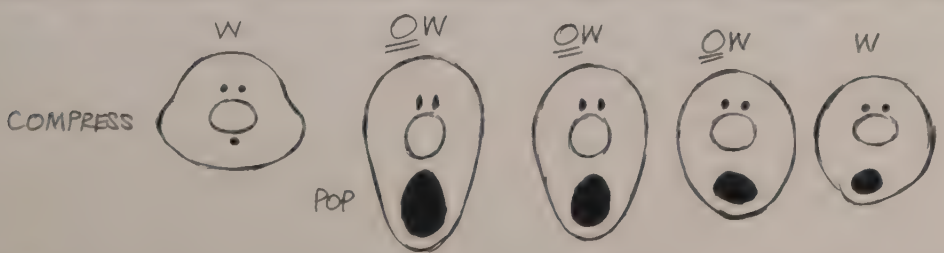
AGAIN, IF SOMEONE SAYS A BROAD VOWEL LIKE "HEY!" OR "WOW!" - DON'T EASE INTO the VOWEL FROM the "W" WITH SEVERAL DRAWINGS.

I. E.



= VERY MUSHY and SOFT
(CRITICISM AMONG ANIMATORS "HE/SHE'S OK, BUT IT'S ALL A BIT SOFT...")

LOSE the MIDDLE POSITIONS. SMACK RIGHT INTO IT and GET MUCH MORE VITALITY.



and DON'T FORGET TO DISTEND the FACE - STRETCH IT.

A PREVALENT FAULT IN DIALOGUE IS THAT the BOTTOM OF the FACE DOESN'T STRETCH and COMPRESS ENOUGH, WHICH MAKES OUR ANIMATION STIFF and STILTED.

THE KEY TO LIP SYNC IS GETTING THE FEELING OF THE WORD AND NOT THE INDIVIDUAL LETTERS

THE IDEA IS NOT TO BE TOO ACTIVE - GET THE SHAPE OF THE WORD AND MAKE SURE WE SEE IT. SELECT WHAT'S IMPORTANT AND AVOID FLAPPING THE MOUTH AROUND ANIMATING EVERY LITTLE THING.

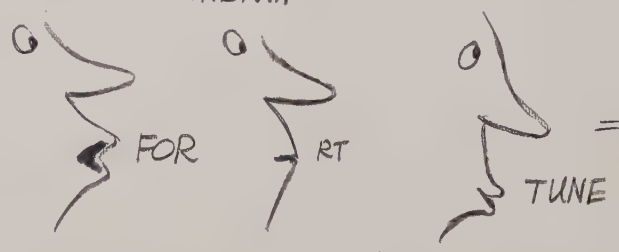
ACTORS FITTING DIALOGUE OVER FOREIGN FILMS HIT ONLY THE ACCENTS AND GLOSS OVER THE MIDDLE STUFF. THEY MATCH THE FIRST VOWEL AT THE START OF THE SENTENCE AND THE LAST ACCENT OF THE SENTENCE - AND WHAT'S IN BETWEEN WILL WORK (OR TEND TO WORK.)

THINK OF IT THIS WAY:

TAKE THE WORD "FORTUNE" -

INBTWN

DON'T DO THIS -



= DON'T OPEN IT TWICE.

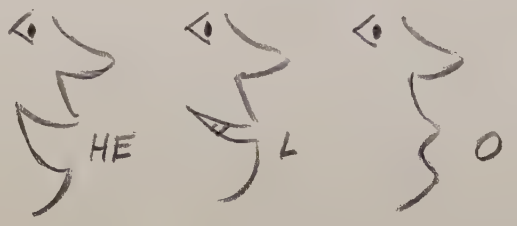
DO THIS:

JUST USE 2 POSITIONS. GO FROM ONE TO THE OTHER -

BOIL IT DOWN SO IT'S SIMPLE.

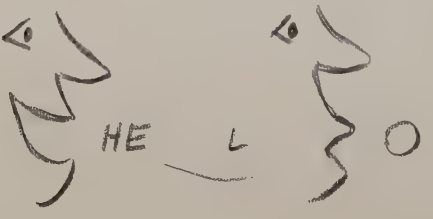
LET'S TAKE "HELLO" -

SAME THING -



= DON'T OPEN IT TWICE.

GO STRAIGHT FROM ONE TO THE OTHER -



HE L O.

WE CAN'T BE LITERAL IN READING OUR SOUND TRACK.

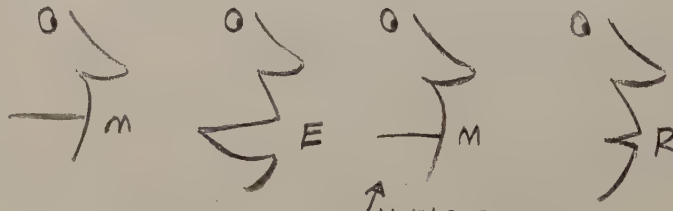
"MEMORY" IS NOT 2 OPENS - IT'S ONE

IT'S NOT:

OPEN OPEN
MEM OH REE

UNLESS THEY'RE SINGING
♪ MEM - OH - REES ♪

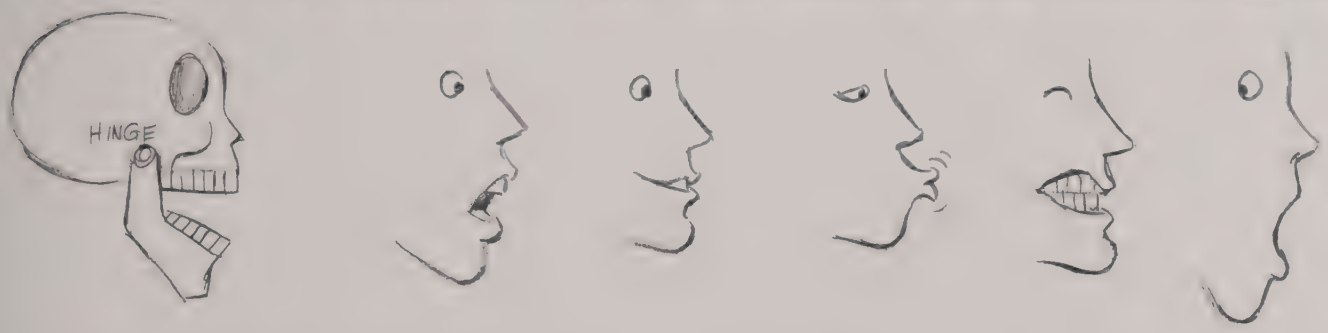
IT'S "MEM-REE"
↑
OPEN



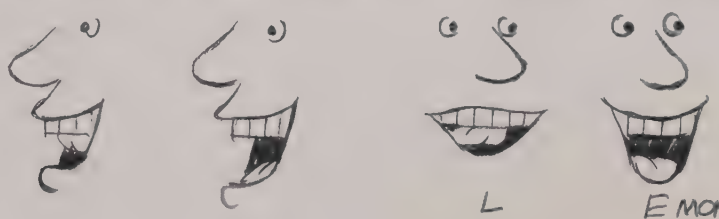
↑ IN THIS CASE I'D CLOSE THE MOUTH EN ROUTE TO 'REE'

WE DON'T ANIMATE EVERY SINGLE VOWEL.

REMEMBER The UPPER TEETH ARE ANCHORED TO The SKULL and DO NOT ANIMATE and The LOWER JAW'S ACTION IS MOSTLY UP and DOWN — WITH The LIPS and TONGUE FORMING The SOUNDS.



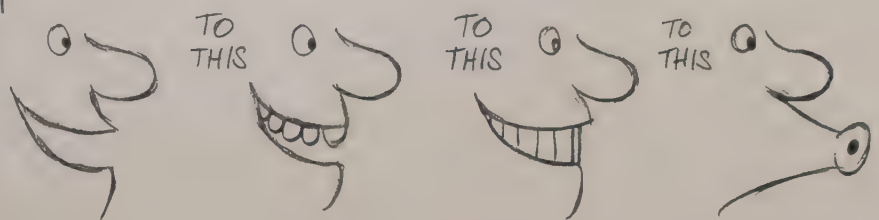
A RULE: NEVER INBETWEEN The TONGUE IN SPEECH. OUR TONGUES WORK SO FAST, THAT IT'S JUST UP OR JUST DOWN — NEVER SEEN EN ROUTE (OF COURSE IT PAUSES.)



ISN'T THERE A SAYING - The TONGUE WEIGHS NOTHING - YET SO FEW OF US CAN HOLD IT - ?

The TONGUE IS HOOKED ON The BACK OF The LOWER JAW and IS NOT FLOATING AROUND IN LIMBO OR STUCK IN The THROAT. ALSO THE JAWS and TEETH AREN'T RUBBER. BE CONSISTENT ABOUT TEETH.

HOWEVER, THERE'S SOME AWFULLY FUNNY STUFF BEING DONE THESE DAYS WHERE THEY JUST SAY, "HELL, IT'S A CARTOON - LET'S HAVE IT BE A CARTOON." AND THEY TREAT The TEETH AS RUBBER and POP FROM THIS

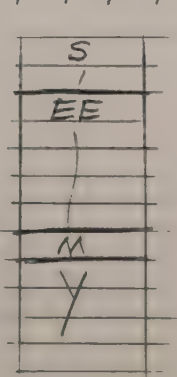


(IT'S VALID and OFTEN HILARIOUS - BUT NOT WHAT WE'RE ON ABOUT HERE.)

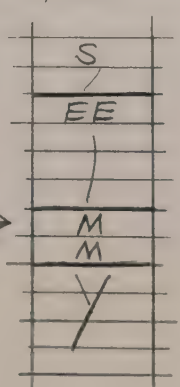
ANOTHER RULE: WE SAID WE NEED AT LEAST 2 FRAMES TO READ IMPORTANT CONSONANTS - LIKE M, B, P, F, V OR T (OR 'TH') IF WE DON'T, The VIEWER WON'T SEE IT.

IF, ON The SOUND READING WE ONLY HAVE ONE FRAME INDICATED FOR AN "M" SOUND -

- IT'S NOT ENOUGH.



SO WE STEAL IT FROM The PRECEEDING SOUND. GIVE IT ANOTHER EXTRA FRAME IN FRONT OF IT TO REGISTER - - NEVER AFTER...

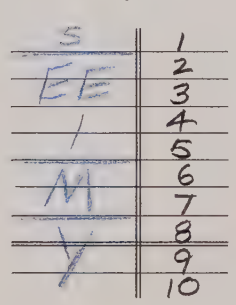


... BECAUSE WE NEED TO HIT The INCOMING "Y" VOWEL ON The NOSE.

PICTURE and SOUND SYNC

THIS BRINGS US TO the THORNY PROBLEM OF: DO WE ANIMATE LEVEL SYNC OR ANIMATE the PICTURE ONE FRAME AHEAD OF the SOUND MODULATION OR TWO FRAMES AHEAD OF the SOUND, OR WHAT?

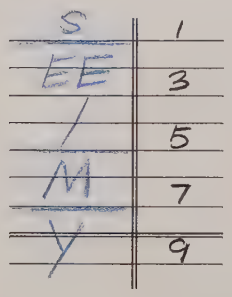
ANSWER: WORK LEVEL.



← PUT OUR 'M' DRAWINGS #6 and 7
← RIGHT ON the 'M' SOUND.

OR IF WE'RE ON TWOS –
and IT WORKS OUT THAT WAY –

WORK ONE FRAME AHEAD.

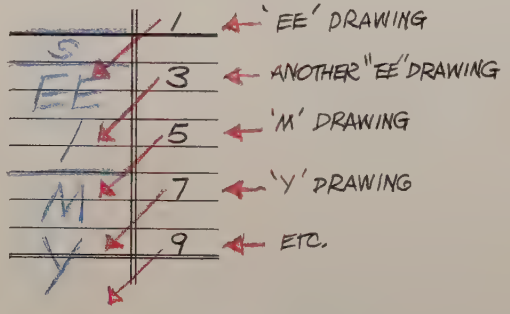


← PUT OUR 'M' DRAWING #5
ONE FRAME AHEAD OF the 'M' SOUND
← (and #7 'Y' DRAWING 1 FRAME AHEAD OF the 'Y' SOUND etc.)

THERE IS A CRUDE RULE OF THUMB THAT IT LOOKS BETTER WITH the PICTURE LEADING the SOUND BY 2 FRAMES. BECAUSE OF THIS, A DISEASE SPRANG UP WHERE SOME EDITORS SET UP the TYRANNY THAT ANIMATORS MUST ANIMATE EVERYTHING 2 FRAMES AHEAD OF the SOUND SO THEY COULD JUST PLOP IN the RESULT and GO HOME.

WRONG. THERE ISN'T JUST ONE RULE. SOMETIMES LEVEL SYNC WORKS BEST – SOMETIMES IT'S BETTER WITH the PICTURE ONE FRAME ADVANCED, OFTEN IT IS BETTER 2 FRAMES AHEAD (HENCE the DISEASE) and SOMETIMES ITS BETTER WITH the PICTURE EVEN 3 FRAMES AHEAD OF the SOUND.

IF YOU ALWAYS ANSWER,
"It's 2 FRAMES AHEAD"
YOU GET A CRAZY SITUATION
WHERE YOU'RE THINKING SIDEWAYS –



WHY?

CONCLUSION:

THERE IS ONE REAL SYNC and THAT IS LEVEL. RIGHT ON the MODULATION IS 100% PERFECT, LOGICALLY. IT JUST DEPENDS WHAT <u>LOOKS</u> BEST WHEN WE PLAY WITH IT. SO WE EXPOSE RIGHT ON the NOSE – OR ONE FRAME AHEAD – IF IT'S CONVENIENT — <u>NEVER LATE</u>.

THEN WE CAN RUN OUR TESTS AT LEVEL SYNC, THEN ADVANCE the PICTURE ONE OR TWO OR THREE FRAMES — DEPENDING ON WHAT LOOKS RIGHT TO US. WE LEARN THINGS THIS WAY. IT ALL DEPENDS ON the CHARACTER and TYPE OF VOICE and HOW WE'VE DONE the JOB.

ACCENTS

The OLD MASTERS PUT SHARP PHYSICAL ACTIONS and HEAD MOVES 3 OR 4 FRAMES AHEAD OF the MODULATION — THEN PUT the MOUTH ACTION ON the NOSE – (IN A MANNER OF SPEAKING)

IF ON ONES –

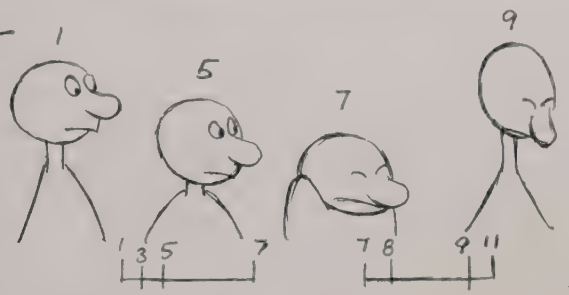
		1
		2
		3
HEAD ACCENT X 3 FRAMES AHEAD	N	4
		5
		6
SOUND ACCENT X		7
	O W	8
		9
		10
		11

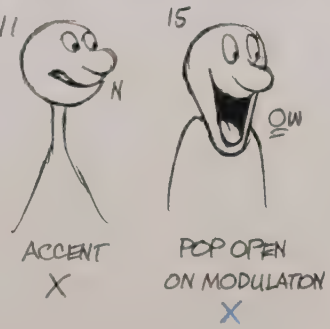
IF ON TWOS –

		1
HEAD ACCENT X 4 FRAMES AHEAD		3
	N	5
SOUND ACCENT X		7
	O W	9
		11

THEY GET UP THERE (OR DOWN THERE) FOR the ACCENT 3 OR 4 FRAMES EARLY – THEN the MOUTH OPENS ON the SOUND.

PUT SIMPLY –





ACCENT X

POP OPEN ON MODULATION X

THIS DEVICE GIVES A BEAUTIFUL RESULT. MUCH BETTER THAN HITTING IT ALL AT ONCE.

MOST OF the TIME the HEAD ACCENT IS UP.

1. ANTICIPATE DOWN
2. THEN HEAD ACCENTS UP
3. THEN LIPS ON the VOWEL (IT'S USUALLY A VOWEL THAT WE'RE HITTING.)

WE CAN DO IT IN REVERSE, BUT MOSTLY IT'S STRONGER GOING UP. (BUT DOWN IS FINE, TOO.)

ANYWAY, THERE IS ALWAYS AN ACCENT — UNLESS IT'S AN UTTERLY BORING PERSON SPEAKING.

TAKE: "WELL, AT LAST YOU'RE HOME!" = 3 ACCENTS

(VOWEL) (VOWEL) (VOWEL)

HIT ONLY the VOWELS WHICH ARE IMPORTANT. GLOSS OVER the OTHERS. WE HIT CERTAIN ACCENTS WHEN SPEAKING and WE SLUR OVER the REST.

(OR) "WELL, AT LAST YOU'RE HOME!"

(BIG ACCENT)

(OR) "WELL, AT LAST YOU'RE HOME!"

(SMALL ACCENT) (BIG ACCENT)

JUST HIT the MAIN ACCENTS. SELECT WHAT'S IMPORTANT – WHETHER IT'S A SOFT OR HARD ACCENT.

HARD ACCENT: "NO!" GO DOWN (OR UP) and YOU BOUNCE BACK.

SOFT ACCENT: "NOOOO..." GO DOWN (OR UP) and CONTINUE.

HERE'S AN EXAMPLE OF BODY ACTION PREDOMINATING. SHE'S SAYING, "I'LL SLIP INTO SOMETHING COOLER."

ACCENT

SHE DOES IT WITH HER SHOULDER.
IT'S UP AS SHE TURNS TOWARD US, ANTICIPATES DOWN and GOES UP FAST FOR the MAIN ACCENT ON COOLER.
ALSO AT the SAME TIME HER HEAD ACCENT GOES DOWN ON the "OO": THE ONLY MOUTH ACCENT ALSO ON the "OO."
SHOULDER UP, HEAD DOWN, MOUTH EXAGGERATED — ALL TO HIT the ONLY ACCENT IN the SENTENCE.

HERE ARE the MAIN EXTREMES: KEYS #(1) (37) and (55) TELL the STORY.

THIS WORKS FINE, BUT WOULD HAVE BEEN EVEN BETTER IF the HEAD and SHOULDER ACCENT HAD COME 3 or 4 FRAMES AHEAD of the "OO" MODULATION.

ACTION	DIAL	
0 TURNS	I	1
	LL	3
		5
HEAD ANTIC. DOWN X	S	7
	L	9
	E	11
HEAD UP X	P	13
	E N T	15
1		17
	EH	19
SHOULDER GOES DOWN TO ANTIC. ACCENT	S	21
		23
BLINK X	U	25
	M	27
	TH.	29
	ING	31
2 HEAD GOING DOWN SHOULDER GOES UP		33
	C	35
ACCENT X	O	37
	O	39
		41
HEAD GOING UP / SHOULDER DOWN	L	43
	EH	45
	R	47
3		49
		51
		53
		55
		CUT

ATTITUDE

MAKE the POINT OF the SHOT CLEAR WITH BODY ACTION FIRST. The BODY ATTITUDE SHOULD ECHO the FACIAL ATTITUDE. IT'S ALL ONE. The EXPRESSION OF the BODY and FACE IS MORE IMPORTANT THAN the MOVEMENT.

IF WE GET the BODY and HEAD IN the RIGHT ATTITUDE WE CAN ALMOST GO WITHOUT the MOUTHS. The MOUTH ACTION CAN GO ON LAST – THEY CAN BE the LAST THING TO WORK ON.

KEN HARRIS SAID HE LEARNED the MOST ABOUT LIP SYNC WHEN HE HAD TO ANIMATE A MARTIAN CHARACTER WHO HAD NO MOUTH. THIS MEANT HE HAD TO GET the HEAD ACCENTS RIGHT TO MAKE IT CONVINCING.

IN PLANNING WE SHOULD MAKE SURE WE DON'T HAVE TOO MUCH GOING ON. HOW MANY POSES FOR THIS SENTENCE - FOR THIS THOUGHT? ACT IT OUT and BOIL IT DOWN SO ITS SIMPLE and KEEP IT SIMPLE.

WE CAN ONLY PUT OVER ONE THING AT A TIME. JUST AS WE CAN ONLY SAY ONE WORD AT A TIME, WE CAN ONLY PROJECT ONE GESTURE AT A TIME. The WHOLE POSE SHOULD WORK TOWARD THAT ONE THING.

The SECRET

ONE EVENING IN the EARLY 70'S I WAS TALKING TO MILT KAHL ABOUT the SUPERB MOUTH SHAPES HE ALWAYS GOT IN HIS ANIMATION. HE SAID, "WATCH SINGERS FOR MOUTH SHAPES."

I ASKED, "IS THERE ANY REAL SECRET TO LIP SYNC?"

HE LIT UP. "YOU WANT the SECRET? I'LL TELL YOU the SECRET! YOU KNOW THAT JIM HENSON WITH HIS FROG MUPPET? WELL, HE'S A GENIUS! HE UNDERSTANDS SOMETHING THAT PUPPETEERS NEVER DID BEFORE. HERE HE'S JUST GOT A SOCK OVER HIS HAND and THOUGH HE CAN NEVER MATCH the SOUND EXACTLY, HE DOES A FAR BETTER JOB THAN MOST OF US ANIMATORS WITH ALL OUR TECHNICAL RESOURCES. YOU WATCH WHAT HE'S DOING! HE'S PROGRESSING the ACTION. HE'S GOING SOMEWHERE WITH THAT FROG WHEN HE'S TALKING.

"I LEARNED THIS BACK ON 'SONG OF the SOUTH' WHEN I HAD the FOX SAYING TO the RABBIT, 'I'M GOING TA ROAST YUH, ETC, ETC.' I HARDLY MOVED the MOUTH AT ALL. HE WAS SPEAKING THROUGH HIS TEETH WHEN HE PUSHED FORWARD TOWARDS the RABBIT. HE PROGRESSED TOWARDS the RABBIT! I PROGRESSED IT AS HE SPOKE and THAT'S the SECRET. GO SOMEWHERE, ANYWHERE, AS YOU SPEAK."

WHEN I GOT BACK TO ENGLAND I RUSHED IN TO KEN HARRIS and JUMPED UP and DOWN, "I'VE GOT the SECRET! The SECRET OF LIP SYNC! MILT KAHL TOLD ME the SECRET!"

KEN LOOKED UP QUIZZICALLY.

"the SECRET!" I BURBLED, "THE SECRET IS TO PROGRESS the ACTION AS YOU SPEAK!"

KEN'S EYES ROLLED HEAVENWARD. "WHAT DO YOU THINK I'VE BEEN TRYING TO TELL YA?"

WELL, the PENNY DROPPED (FINALLY) AND I NEVER LOOKED BACK. THAT'S IT.

ACTING

IN the 1930's SOMEBODY ASKED LOUIS ARMSTRONG, "WHAT IS SWING?" LOUIS ANSWERED, "MAN, IF YOU HAVE TO ASK, YOU'LL NEVER KNOW."

BUT WE ALL KNOW ABOUT ACTING! WE DO IT ALL DAY. WE'RE ACTING DIFFERENT PARTS ALL the TIME. THERE ARE SEVERAL OF US IN HERE.

DO YOU ACT the SAME WAY WITH YOUR WIFE/HUSBAND/LOVER AS WHEN A TRAFFIC COP PULLS YOU OVER? OR WITH the BANK MANAGER? OR WITH YOUR CHILDREN? WITH YOUR BOSS? WITH CO-WORKERS? FRIEND? WITH YOUR SUBORDINATES? YOUR ENEMIES?

WE'RE ACTING ROLES ALL the TIME, DEPENDANT ON the SITUATION WE'RE IN and WE KNOW IT. WE TROT OUT the PERSONALITY APPROPRIATE TO WHAT'S REQUIRED IN OUR SITUATION.

THERE'S: The AUTHORITARIAN
The CHILD
The STUDENT
The RESPONSIBLE ADULT
The LOVER
The FRIEND
The CLOWN
The EMPATHETIC, KINDLY PERSON
The HUNTER
The POWER-CRAZY MANIAC etc.

The THING IS TO BE AWARE OF IT and USE IT TO EXPRESS THINGS-TO DEVELOP the ABILITY TO PROJECT IT THROUGH OUR DRAWINGS OR INVENTED IMAGES BY GETTING INTO the CHARACTER WE'RE DEPICTING, IN the SITUATION THEY'RE IN, KNOWING WHAT IT IS THEY WANT - and WHY THEY WANT IT - THAT'S ACTING.

WE WANT TO PUT SOMETHING OVER CLEARLY THROUGH A PARTICULAR CHARACTER– CLEAR DEPICTIONS OF WHAT'S GOING ON WITH the CHARACTER.

DO ONE THING AT A TIME and BE CRYSTAL CLEAR.

IF WE START WITH THAT, THEN WE CAN DEEPEN OUR PERFORMANCE AS MUCH AS WE ARE CAPABLE OF.

WE CERTAINLY ALL KNOW the BASIC EMOTIONS.

AND WE ALL KNOW ABOUT FEAR
GREED
HUNGER
COLD
LUST
VANITY
LOVE
and the NEED TO SLEEP.

KNOWING THESE, IT'S JUST ABOUT HOW DIFFERENT PEOPLE HANDLE THEM.

SO IT'S JUST A QUESTION OF WIDENING OUR RANGE TO ACCOMMODATE MORE ROLES – WHICH WE DO NATURALLY BY OBSERVATION and EXPERIENCE –

(AND) HAVING and DEVELOPING the ABILITY TO PROJECT IT INTO the CHARACTER WE'RE WORKING ON.

MILT KAHL ALWAYS SAID, "I THINK YOU JUST DO IT. IF YOU HAVE A PROBLEM YOU HAVE TO PUT IT OVER. GOT TO HAVE A THOROUGH UNDERSTANDING OF WHAT YOU'RE AFTER. AND IF YOU KNOW WHAT YOU'RE AFTER – YOU JUST KEEP AFTER IT TILL YOU GET IT."

AND, "GIVE IT A LOT OF THOUGHT HOW YOU'RE GOING TO DO the BEST JOB OF PUTTING the PERFORMANCE ON the SCREEN – PUTTING OVER WHAT YOU HAVE TO PUT OVER."

GOT TO GET INSIDE the CHARACTER. WHAT DOES HE/SHE/IT WANT? AND EVEN MORE INTERESTING – WHY DOES the CHARACTER WANT?

WHAT AM I DOING and WHY AM I DOING IT?

The PEOPLE WHO REALLY KNOW HOW TO ACT ALL SAY, "YOU DONT ACT, YOU BECOME."

The MOVIE STAR, GENE HACKMAN SAID SOMETHING LIKE, "I WORK LIKE MAD AT NEVER BEING CAUGHT ACTING."

The GOOD ACTORS DO A LOT OF RESEARCH SO the REALITY THEY'RE DEPICTING BECOMES THEIR REALITY.

The FINE CHARACTER ACTOR, NED BEATTY SAID, "SOME ACTORS HYPNOTISE THEMSELVES INTO BECOMING the PART – BUT A VERY SMALL GROUP OF ACTORS ACTUALLY HYPNOTISE the AUDIENCE.

SO the IDEA IS TO HYPNOTISE the AUDIENCE.

FRANK THOMAS USES the WORD 'CAPTIVATE!' "YOU'RE TRYING TO GRAB the AUDIENCE'S ATTENTION and HOLD IT— HOLD IT WITH SOMETHING REAL THAT THEY CAN IDENTIFY WITH."

CONCLUSION:

WE TRY TO MAKE IT SO REAL, SUPER-REAL, THAT IT'S COMPULSIVE VIEWING. WE EXPERIENCE the EMOTION and MAGNIFY the RESULT.

I'VE ALWAYS BEEN EMBARRASSED BY ANIMATORS HANGING AROUND the WATER COOLER TALKING ABOUT "THE ACTING!"

IT'S WELL KNOWN THAT A LOT OF ARTISTS CAN TALK A TERRIFIC FIGHT, BUT WHEN YOU SEE THEIR DRAWINGS, IT'S A DEAD GIVEAWAY OF WHAT THEY'RE REALLY LIKE. AND HOW MUCH MORE SO WHEN THEIR DRAWINGS ARE ACTUALLY MOVING AROUND. YOU CAN SEE A PERSON'S STRENGTHS and WEAKNESSES RIGHT AWAY.

IF WE'RE A COLD FISH, SUPERFICIAL PERSON OR EMOTIONAL WRECK, THERE IT IS FOR ALL TO SEE. SO WE CAN ONLY EXPRESS OURSELVES AS BEST WE CAN WITH WHAT WE HAVE TO OFFER EMOTIONALLY and TECHNICALLY.

(BUT) A REALLY GOOD PROFESSIONAL SHOULD BE ABLE TO HANDLE A WIDE RANGE OF ACTING MATERIAL, WHATEVER HIS/HER EMOTIONAL STATE OF MIND.

THERE'S THIS STORY ABOUT A SERIOUSLY DEPRESSED MAN IN GERMANY WHO WENT TO SEE A PSYCHIATRIST:

The PSYCHIATRIST SAYS, "YOU'VE LOST YOUR SENSE OF HUMOUR IN LIFE YOU NEED TO HAVE A REALLY GOOD LAUGH. GO TO the CIRCUS – THERE'S THIS GREAT CLOWN, GROCK, the FUNNIEST MAN YOU'VE EVER SEEN."

The ANSWER COMES BACK, "I AM GROCK."

FRANK THOMAS, A MASTER OF ANIMATING EMPATHY and PATHOS, ALWAYS CRITICISED ME (CONSTRUCTIVELY) FOR SPENDING TOO MUCH TIME ON SPECTACULAR SURROUNDING ANIMATION and NOT ENOUGH OF GOING STRAIGHT FOR the EMOTIONAL CENTRE.

PART OF the REASON WAS THAT I FELT WE WEREN'T YET GOOD ENOUGH AT IT, SO WE'D WORK ON the "WORLD" OF the PIECE and LEAVE the "HAMLET" STUFF TILL LAST – BUT FRANK'S CRITICISM IS VALID.

ANIMATION WAS KIND OF IN THE DOLDRUMS WHEN WE STARTED MAKING 'WHO FRAMED ROGER RABBIT' and FRANK WROTE ME A WONDERFULLY ENCOURAGING LETTER INCLUDING, "IF YOU BRING THIS OFF, YOU'LL BE A HERO."

I CARRIED FRANK'S LETTER IN MY CHEST POCKET THROUGHOUT the 2½ YEARS OF PRODUCTION PRESSURE and WOULD REREAD IT EVERY TIME THINGS GOT ROUGH.

WHEN the PICTURE CAME OUT and WAS A HIT, NOTHING FROM FRANK.
2 MONTHS LATER IT'S the BIGGEST PICTURE OF the YEAR, NOTHING FROM FRANK.
3 MONTHS LATER I RANG HIM UP.

"HI, FRANK, IT'S DICK."
"....YEAH..."
"HI, FRANK, WELL, WE MADE IT! IT'S A HIT, FRANK! IT'S A HIT!"
"....YEAH..."
"I MEAN, WELL, WE DID the BEST WE COULD and IT'S A HUGE SUCCESS! ENORMOUS!"
"....YEAH."
"WELL, I KNOW, FRANK, IT COULD HAVE BEEN BETTER, BUT WE REALLY WORKED HARD and EVERYBODY LOVES IT!"
"...YEAH."
"WELL, ER, UM, I GUESS THAT YOU COULD SAY THAT WE RAISED A GIMMICK TO the LEVEL OF A NOVELTY, BUT IT'S A HIT!"
"....YEAH."
"AW, COME ON FRANK, I KNOW YOU ALWAYS CRITICISE ME FOR NOT GRABBING the AUDIENCE EMOTIONALLY – BUT YOU'VE GOT TO GIVE IT TO ME, WHEN the VILLAIN'S GOING TO KILL THE RABBIT BY DIPPING HIM IN the VAT OF ACETONE, ALL the KIDS IN the AUDIENCE YELL, "DON'T DO IT! DON'T DO IT!"
(LONG PAUSE)..."I WISH THEY HAD."

WELL, I KNOW WHAT FRANK MEANS. IN MY DEFENSE, I HAD TO PUSH VERY STRONGLY FOR SOME ANIMATION I DID AT the FRONT OF the OPENING CARTOON WHERE WE COULD AT LEAST SEE WHAT the RABBIT LOOKED LIKE BEFORE HE STARTED SHOOTING AROUND LIKE A CROSS BETWEEN CHEWING GUM and A FIREWORK.

BUT THERE WAS A REAL OPPORTUNITY FOR PATHOS THAT WE MISSED.

THERE WAS A SHOT OF ROGER SITTING ON A GARBAGE CAN IN A BACK ALLEY CRYING ABOUT WHAT HE THOUGHT WAS HIS WIFE'S INFIDELITY.

LIKE GROCK, I WANTED TO SHOW A COMPLETELY DIFFERENT SIDE OF the RABBIT'S PERSONALITY BEHIND HIS PROFESSIONAL MASK. I WANTED TO ANIMATE IT MYSELF, BUT I HAD TOO MUCH ELSE TO DO. WE HAD A FINE LEAD ANIMATOR WHO WAS AT the TIME VERY LONELY and I KNEW HE WAS the MAN FOR the JOB.

A TOP EXECUTIVE COMES IN and SAYS, "BY the WAY, DICK, SO and SO REALLY WANTS TO DO THAT SCENE. I SAID, "OH NO, HE'S A SUPERB BROAD ANIMATOR and INVENTIVELY FUNNY, EXCELLENT, BUT I THINK HE'S WRONG FOR THIS SCENE. HE'S GOT A GREAT GIRLFRIEND, HE'S VERY UP and NOT the PERSON FOR THIS JOB." "BUT HE REALLY WANTS TO DO IT, DICK, HE'S BEEN PHONING ME UP ABOUT IT." "BUT HE'S WRONG - IT'LL BE OK - BUT IT WON'T HAVE THIS OTHER SIDE TO IT. the OTHER GUY SHOULD DO IT." "BUT HE'S DYING TO DO IT.".

I LOSE the ARGUMENT. OUTVOTED. IT'S WRONG, BUT the PICTURE FEELS LIKE A HIT and ANYWAY I CANT AFFORD TO BE FIRED. OF COURSE the RESULT WAS JUST LIKE ALL the OTHER MANIC SCENES - and WE MISSED HAVING ANOTHER DIMENSION TO the CHARACTER WHICH WOULD HAVE GIVEN A MUCH STRONGER EMOTIONAL PULL WITH the AUDIENCE.
WIN SOME, LOSE SOME.

IN AN INTERVIEW IN 1972 AT the ZAGREB FILM FESTIVAL, FRANK THOMAS TALKED ABOUT A MAN "WHO NEVER HAD TALENT FOR ENTERTAINMENT. HE WAS ONE OF the BEST ASSISTANTS WE EVER HAD. HE KNEW EVERYTHING YOU COULD TEACH ABOUT MOVEMENT, MOVING the CHARACTER and WEIGHT and DEPTH and BALANCE and ALL THESE THINGS. HE COULD DRAW THEM LIKE ANYTHING, BUT HE HAD A VERY WEAK SENSE OF ENTERTAINMENT and HE HAD A VERY POOR CHOICE OF WHAT TO DO IN ANIMATION — SO HIS ANIMATION WAS ALWAYS FLAT. IT ALWAYS MOVED NICELY, BUT NOBODY WANTED TO LOOK AT IT."

MILT KAHL ALWAYS SAID, "IT'S A MATTER OF PICKING the RIGHT THING TO DO and MAKING UP YOUR MIND ABOUT THAT. AND THEN NOT LETTING ANY OTHER IDEAS INTERFERE WITH IT. DON'T LET YOUR MAIN IDEA GET BURIED OR INTERFERED WITH BY SOMETHING ELSE."

CONCLUSION:
WE THINK ABOUT IT IN the OVERALL, JUST AS IF WE WERE AN ACTOR DOING IT. HOW DO WE DO IT the BEST WAY TO PUT the BUSINESS OVER the BEST? BEFORE WE ANIMATE WE FIGURE OUT IN ADVANCE EXACTLY WHAT WE'RE GOING TO DO.

KNOW WHERE WE'RE GOING. IN PLANNING LOCK DOWN the IMPORTANT POSES.

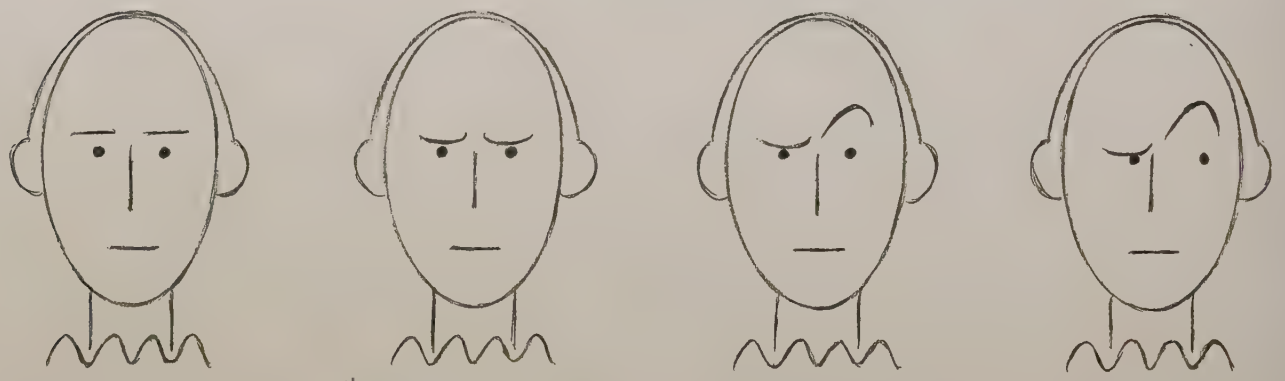
ART BABBITT SAID THAT the GREAT BILL TYTLA (RENOWNED FOR the EMOTIONAL POWER and HEARTFELT PASSION IN HIS WORK) SPENT DAYS WORKING ON TINY THUMBNAILS. HE HAD EVERYTHING ALL WORKED OUT IN MINIATURE BEFORE ANIMATING. (AND the END RESULT STILL CAME OUT JUST AS QUICKLY AS OTHER ANIMATORS.) GRIM NATWICK ALSO TOLD ME, "TYTLA WAS A VERY, VERY CAREFUL PLANNER."

CHANGE OF EXPRESSION

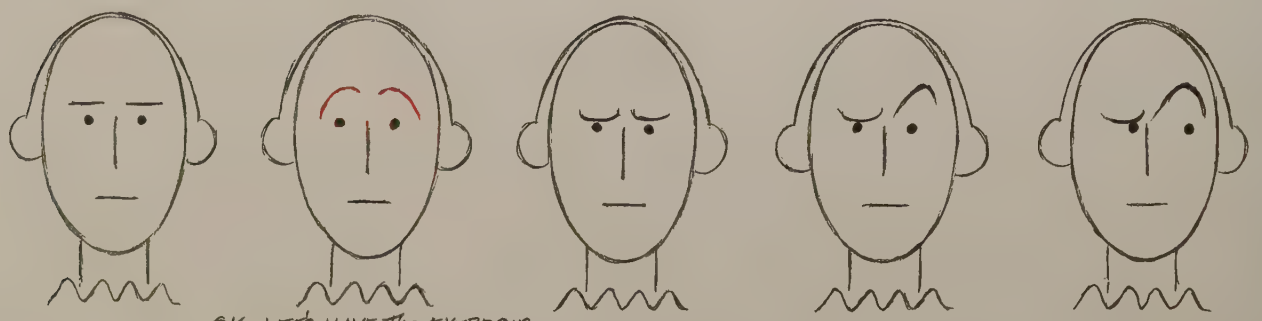
I WAS VERY TAKEN WITH WHAT DISNEY MASTER ANIMATOR/TEACHER ERIC LARSON HAS TO SAY IN FRANK THOMAS and OLLIE JOHNSTON'S "THE ILLUSION OF LIFE!" HE SAID IN The EARLY MICKEY MOUSE SHORTS THEY DISCOVERED THIS PRINCIPLE: IF YOU WERE LOOKING AT A PORTRAIT AND -

> "THE SUBJECT GRADUALLY LOWERED HIS BROWS INTO A FROWN - PAUSED - AND THEN LIFTED ONE BROW AND GLANCED TO THE SIDE, YOU IMMEDIATELY WOULD SENSE A CHANGE FROM ONE THOUGHT TO ANOTHER. SOMETHING VERY IMPORTANT HAPPENED! THROUGH A CHANGE OF EXPRESSION the THOUGHT PROCESS WAS SHOWN."

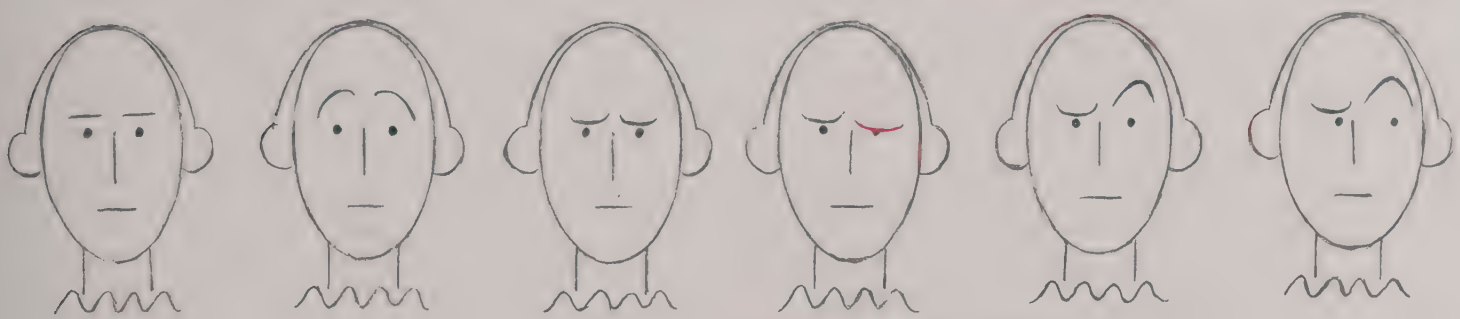
I THOUGHT, OK, LET'S JUST SKETCH THIS OUT IN ITS SIMPLEST FORM and SEE WHAT IT LOOKS LIKE -



GREAT. HE'S THINKING! THEN I WONDERED - IS THERE ANY WAY TO STRENGTHEN THIS FURTHER?

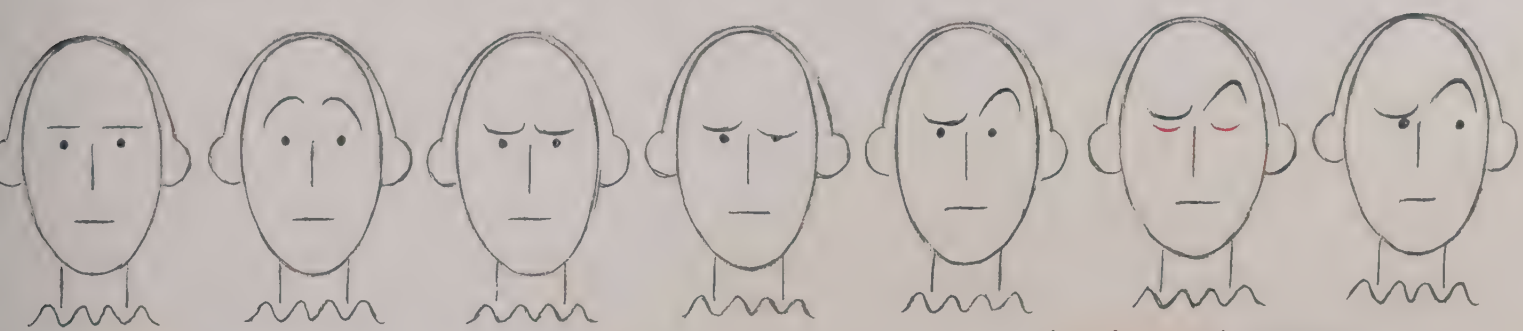


THAT WORKS. CAN WE STRENGTHEN IT FURTHER STILL?
WHY DON'T WE ANTICIPATE the RAISED EYEBROW BY LOWERING IT FURTHER?



GO DOWN BEFORE IT GOES UP

THAT WORKS TOO. ANYTHING ELSE WE CAN DO?



A SLOW BLINK ENROUTE MIGHT HELP IT-

MAYBE WE'VE OVERANIMATED IT BY NOW and MAYBE IT'S A BIT CORNY - BUT IT SHOWS WHAT WE CAN DO BY LOOKING FOR EXTRA POSITIONS - MORE CHANGE - MORE BANG FOR the BUCK.

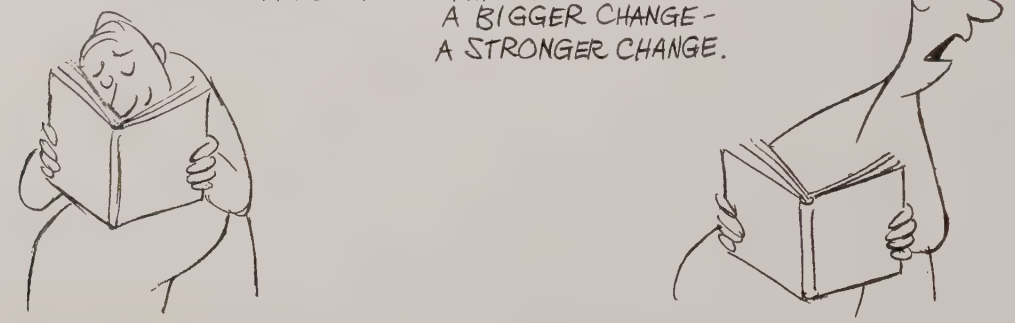
LOOK FOR the CONTRAST

MILT KAHL ALWAYS SAID DON'T CHANGE the EXPRESSION DURING A BROAD MOVE.
HE'D USE THIS EXAMPLE:
SAY WE HAVE A PERSON READING A BOOK -

HE HEARS A NOISE WHICH STARTLES HIM - - FRIGHTENS HIM - and HE SWINGS ROUND.

FOR A START WE'D NEED SOMETHING TO CHANGE FROM - SOMETHING OPPOSITE - SOMETHING THAT'S A LOT DIFFERENT FROM WHAT WE'RE GOING TO CHANGE TO.

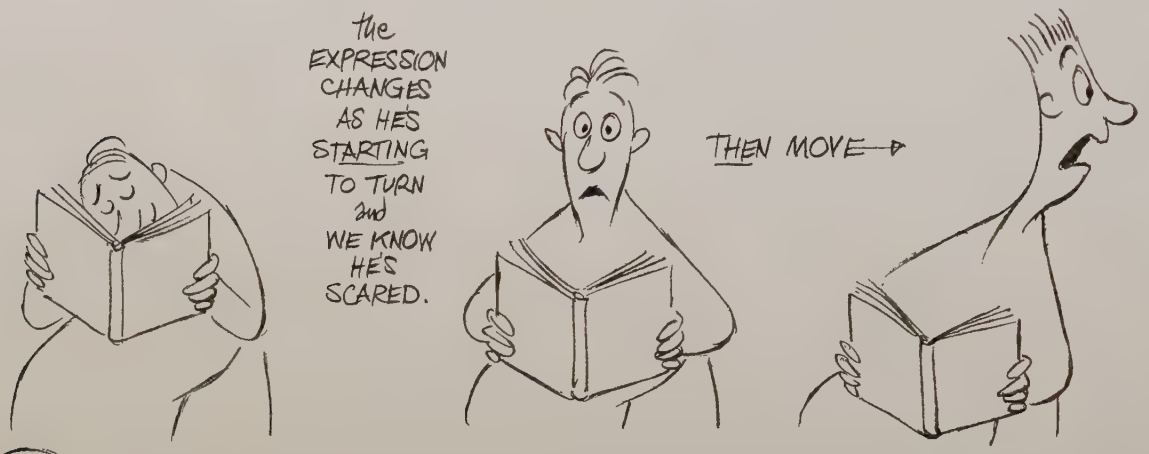
LET'S LIFT the BOOK UP and PUSH HIM DOWN DEEPER INTO IT. - GIVE HIM A COMPLACENT OR AMUSED EXPRESSION — THEN WE'VE GOT A BIGGER CHANGE - A STRONGER CHANGE.



BUT WE DON'T WANT TO CHANGE HIS EXPRESSION DURING the MOVE WHERE WE CAN'T SEE IT. SO WE INSERT A POSITION WHERE WE SEE the CHANGE BEFORE the MOVE.

the EXPRESSION CHANGES AS HE'S STARTING TO TURN and WE KNOW HE'S SCARED.

THEN MOVE →



(OR) HAVE HIM MOVE and CHANGE the EXPRESSION AT the END OF HIS MOVE WHERE WE CAN SEE IT.

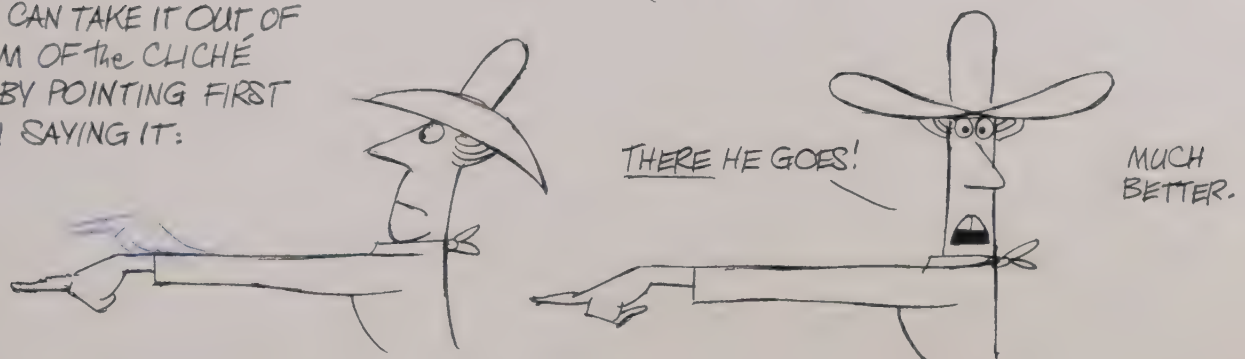
EITHER WAY IS MUCH MORE EFFECTIVE.

The IDEA IS TO PUT the CHANGE WHERE YOU CAN SEE IT - NOT DURING the BROAD MOVE - UNLESS the MOVE IS QUITE SLOW - THEN WE COULD READ IT.
AGAIN, the MIND IS the PILOT. WE THINK OF THINGS BEFORE the BODY DOES THEM. THERE'S ALWAYS A SPLIT SECOND OF "THINKING TIME" BEFORE the CHARACTER DOES the ACTION.

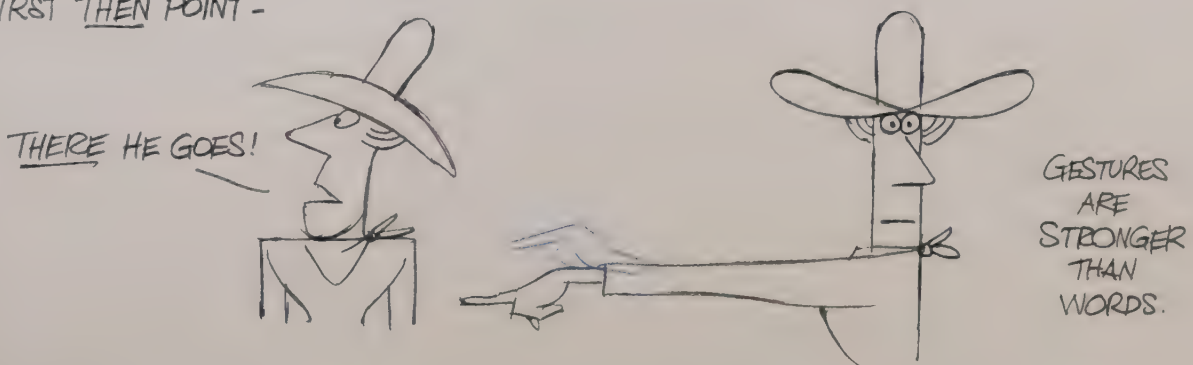
AN ACTING POINT

A BAD ACTOR WILL POINT AT THE SAME TIME AS SAYING -

BUT WE CAN TAKE IT OUT OF THE REALM OF THE CLICHÉ SIMPLY BY POINTING FIRST AND THEN SAYING IT:

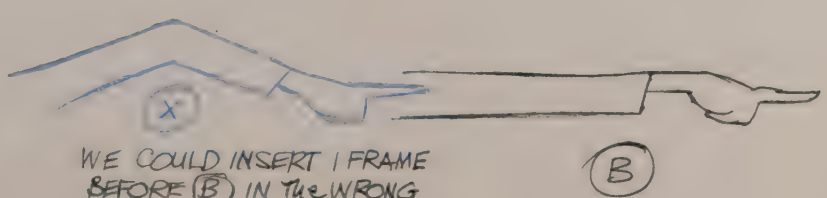


OR, SAY IT FIRST THEN POINT -



INCIDENTALLY, WITH POINTING - IT'S A GOOD IDEA TO LEAD WITH THE WRIST - AND HAVE THE HAND AND FINGERS COME UP LAST.

AND - A VERY MINOR THING - IN A FAST MOVEMENT - IF WE'RE GOING FROM (A) TO (B):



WE COULD INSERT 1 FRAME BEFORE (B) IN THE WRONG DIRECTION. TOO FAST TO SEE BUT WE FEEL THE 'SNAP'.

BODY LANGUAGE

The BRILLIANT DISNEY ART DIRECTOR/DESIGNER, KEN ANDERSON SAID,

"PANTOMIME IS the BASIC ART OF ANIMATION.
BODY LANGUAGE IS the ROOT and FORTUNATELY IT IS UNIVERSAL."

I WAS WITH KEN IN TEHRAN JUST BEFORE the REVOLUTION and I HAD A NASTY SHOCK and A BIG LESSON WHEN THEY RAN MY ½ HOUR OSCAR-WINNING 'A CHRISTMAS CAROL' FOR AN IRANIAN AUDIENCE.

WE HAD TRIED TO HAVE AS MUCH BODY LANGUAGE IN the FILM AS WE COULD BUT WE STILL WERE LEFT WITH DICKENS' LITERATE STORY. OF COURSE the AUDIENCE DIDN'T UNDERSTAND A WORD. A CHUCK JONES CARTOON CAME ON AFTER and BLEW US OUT OF the WATER.

SO FOR US, WE SHOULD KEEP WORDS TO A BARE MINIMUM and MAKE EVERYTHING AS CLEAR AS WE CAN THROUGH PANTOMIME. WE SHOULD FEEL WE HAVE ONLY the BODY TO TELL the STORY.

IT'S A GREAT IDEA TO STUDY SILENT MOVIES. ALTHOUGH MUCH OF the ACTING IS LAUGHABLY HAMMY and CORNY— IT'S ALL VERY CLEAR. ALMOST A LOST ART.

AN ACTOR HAS TO BE SPONTANEOUS TO A DEGREE - BUT IT'S NOT SPONTANEOUS FOR US- IT'S ANYTHING BUT. WE CAN SIT DOWN and GIVE IT A LOT OF THOUGHT. WE CAN TRY THINGS, TEST THEM and MAKE CHANGES. WE'VE GOT the BODY CONTROL and WE'RE NOT LIMITED BY PHYSICAL DEXTERITY, OR GRAVITY, OR AGE, OR RACE, OR SEX. AGAIN, WE CAN INVENT WHAT DOESN'T EXIST IN REALITY and STILL MAKE IT APPEAR BELIEVABLE.

SYMMETRY OR 'TWINNING'

I FEEL THAT SYMMETRY HAS GOTTEN A BAD PRESS BECAUSE OF BAD ANIMATION ACTING. PEOPLE SAY 'AVOID TWINNING' — WHERE BOTH ARMS and HANDS ARE DOING the SAME THING.

BUT JUST WATCH ANY POLITICIAN, PREACHER OR LEADER OF WHATEVER, OR EXPERT ON TELEVISION, WHEN THEY'RE LAYING DOWN the LAW THEIR ARMS and HANDS WILL TWIN SYMMETRICALLY.

HERE'S the BROAD PATTERN -

(THEN THEY BREAK IT UP)
"WE NEED BALANCE, HARMONY, ABUNDANCE,
— HAPPINESS FOR ALL.
AND IT'S UP TO YOU TO VOTE FOR ME OR TO SEND MONEY
SO THAT I CAN DELIVER GLORIOUS
SUCCESS ENLIGHTENMENT HARMONY PROSPERITY ABUNDANCE BALANCED LIVING etc.

THEY MAY DO IT IN A REDUCED VERSION -

AND WATCH YOURSELF WHEN YOU'RE LAYING DOWN the LAW ABOUT SOMETHING. WE JUST DO IT NATURALLY. I THINK SYMMETRY IS AN EXPRESSION OF HARMONY, BEAUTY, BALANCE, ORDER and AUTHORITY and PEOPLE USE IT ALL the TIME (BREAKING IT UP TO POINT OR WHATEVER) and THEN RETURN TO IT TO EXPRESS the WHOLENESS THEY'RE TRYING TO CONVEY.
SO, A JUDICIOUS USE OF TWINNING IS EFFECTIVE BECAUSE IT'S EVERYWHERE. IT'S ALL TO DO WITH HOW WE USE IT.

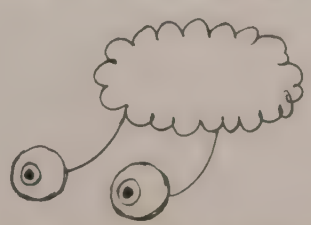
A WAY TO TAKE the CURSE OFF TWINNING IS JUST TO DELAY ONE OF the HANDS OR ARMS BY 4 OR 6 FRAMES

STEAL IT!

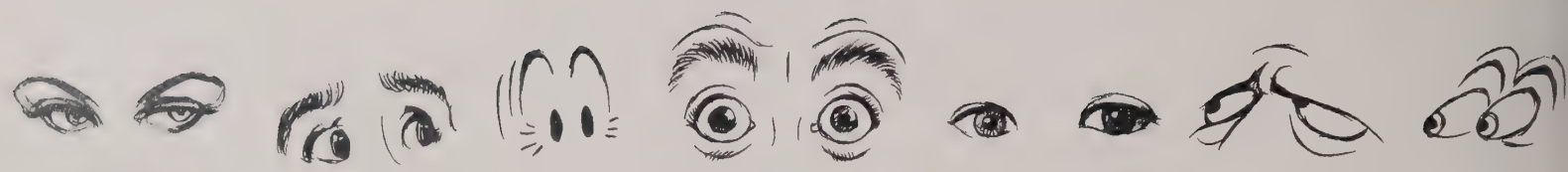
IN A MARVELLOUS TV MASTERCLASS ON ACTING, MICHAEL CAINE SHOCKED EVERYONE BY SAYING,
"IF YOU SEE SOME ACTOR DOING A PIECE OF BUSINESS THAT YOU ADMIRE – STEAL IT."
(PAUSE FOR EFFECT) "STEAL IT!" (AUDIENCE SHOCK, HORROR) "BECAUSE ... THEY DID."

EYES

SOUND ADVICE CAME FROM the DISNEY STUDIO EARLY ON:
IF YOU'RE SHORT OF TIME, SPEND IT ON the EYES. THE EYES ARE WHAT PEOPLE WATCH.
OF COURSE THIS IS TRUE. The EYES ARE the VISIBLE PART OF the BRAIN – DIRECTLY CONNECTED TO IT.



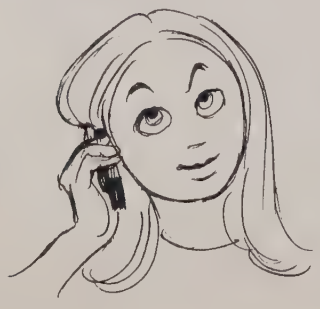
I THINK THAT'S WHY WE SEE the 'SOUL' OR PERSON REVEALED IN the EYES. IT'S SCARY. WE'RE LOOKING INSIDE EACH OTHER.



OUR EYES ARE SUPREMELY EXPRESSIVE and WE EASILY COMMUNICATE WITH the EYES ALONE. WE CAN OFTEN TELL the STORY JUST WITH the EYES.

AND HOW MUCH MORE DRAMATIC IT IS TO JUST TURN the EYES INSTEAD OF the WHOLE BODY!

HERE'S SOMETHING WE SEE ALL DAY EVERY DAY—and I'D NOT SEEN IT ANIMATED UNTIL I STARTED RANTING ABOUT IT TO ANIMATORS 5 YEARS AGO:

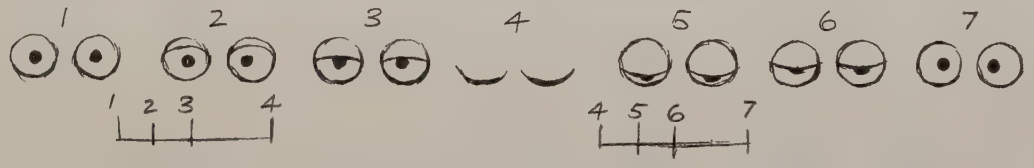


WHEN LISTENING ON the PHONE the EYES FLICKER AROUND IN A STACCATO FASHION REFLECTING the LISTENER'S SHIFTING THOUGHTS IN REACTION. OUR EYES ARE RARELY STILL.

IT'S GOOD TO DISTEND the PUPIL TO SHOW FORM—FEEL PART OF the EYE.

MOVE PUPIL DOWN WITH LID AS IF IT'S HEAVY - FORCING IT DOWN.

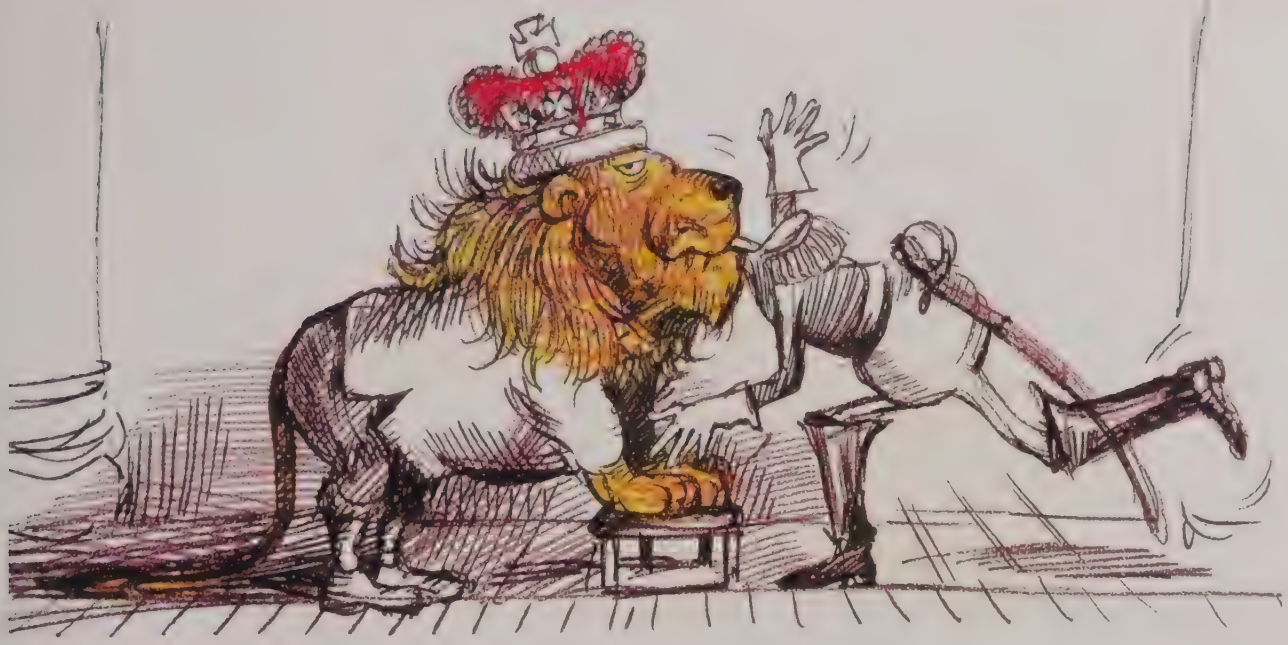
THERE'S AN INFINITE VARIETY OF BLINKS, BUT HERE'S A SIMPLE FORMULA.



THIS IS CRUDE, BUT EFFECTIVE — WORKS WELL ON ONES OR TWOS.

WE CAN GO ON FOREVER ABOUT ACTING (and WE DO) BUT OUR JOB IS-

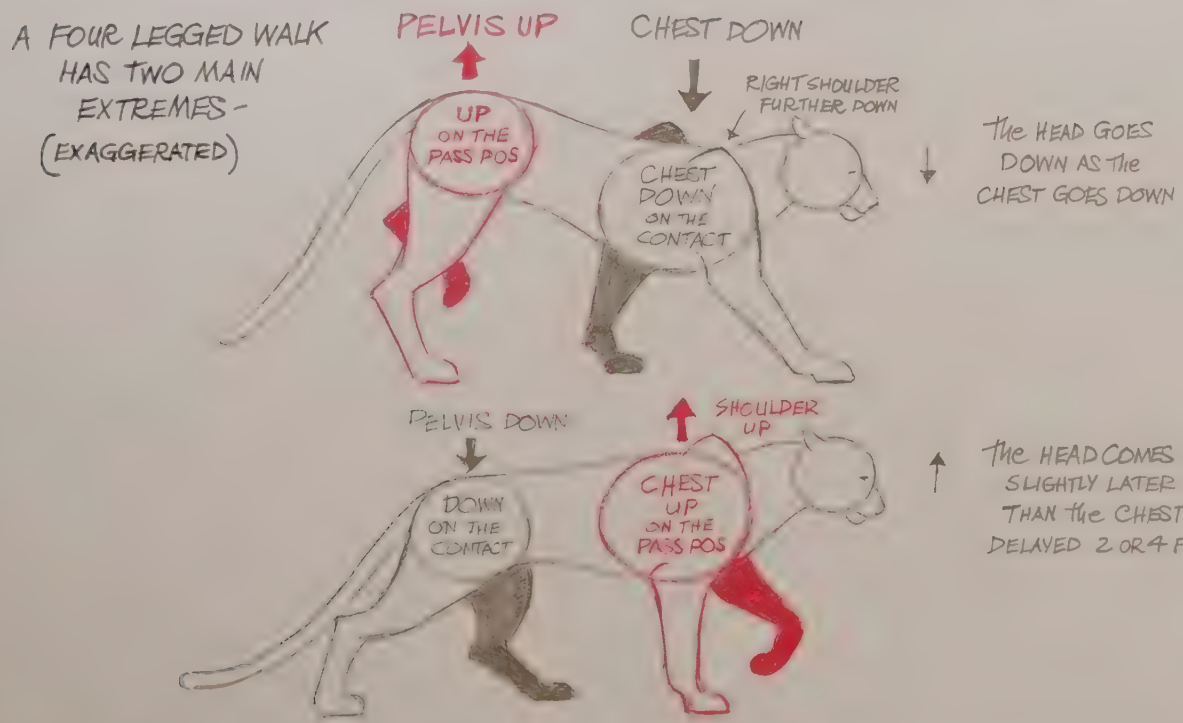
1. PUT OVER the POINT OF the SCENE CLEARLY.
2. GET INSIDE the CHARACTER OR CHARACTERS. (and EVERYBODY'S REALLY DIFFERENT.)
3. SHOW CLEARLY WHAT THEY'RE THINKING.



ANIMAL ACTION

FOUR LEGGED ANIMALS WALK LIKE TWO OF US JOINED TOGETHER - ONE SLIGHTLY AHEAD OF THE OTHER — TWO SETS OF LEGS SLIGHTLY OUT OF PHASE.

WE LOOK FOR ALL THE SAME THINGS AS WE DO WITH A HUMAN. START WITH THE CONTACT POSITIONS (PROBABLY STARTING ON THE FRONT FOOT.) WHERE ARE THE UPS and DOWNS? WHERE IS THE WEIGHT? WHATS THE SPEED? CHARACTER? DIFFERENCES IN BUILD?

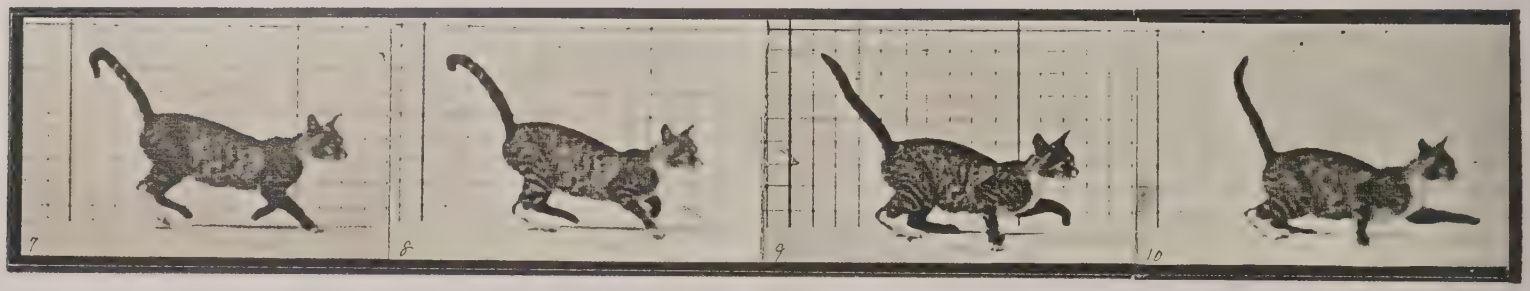

A FOUR LEGGED WALK HAS TWO MAIN EXTREMES - (EXAGGERATED)
PELVIS UP
CHEST DOWN
RIGHT SHOULDER FURTHER DOWN
UP ON THE PASS POS
CHEST DOWN ON THE CONTACT
THE HEAD GOES DOWN AS THE CHEST GOES DOWN
PELVIS DOWN
SHOULDER UP
DOWN ON THE CONTACT
CHEST UP ON THE PASS POS
THE HEAD COMES UP SLIGHTLY LATER THAN THE CHEST DELAYED 2 OR 4 FR.

BUT WITH TWO SETS OF LEGS WORKING, THERE'S A LOT OF WEIGHT TRANSFERENCE GOING ON - WHERE THE WEIGHT IS COMING FROM, WHERE IT IS and WHERE ITS GOING TO.

IF WE'RE GOING TO BE "REALISTIC" IN OUR ACTION WE'RE GOING TO HAVE TO DO THE RESEARCH: HOW THE ANIMAL IS BUILT, IT'S SIZE AND TYPE - WATCHING AND WATCHING UNTIL WE KNOW IT.

LIVE ACTION REFERENCE

STUDY FILM AND VIDEO AND THE EXTRAORDINARY MUYBRIDGE PHOTOS OF ANIMALS WHERE THE HIGHS AND LOWS AND CHANGING MUSCLE SHAPES ARE CLEARLY DISPLAYED AGAINST BACKGROUND GRIDS.

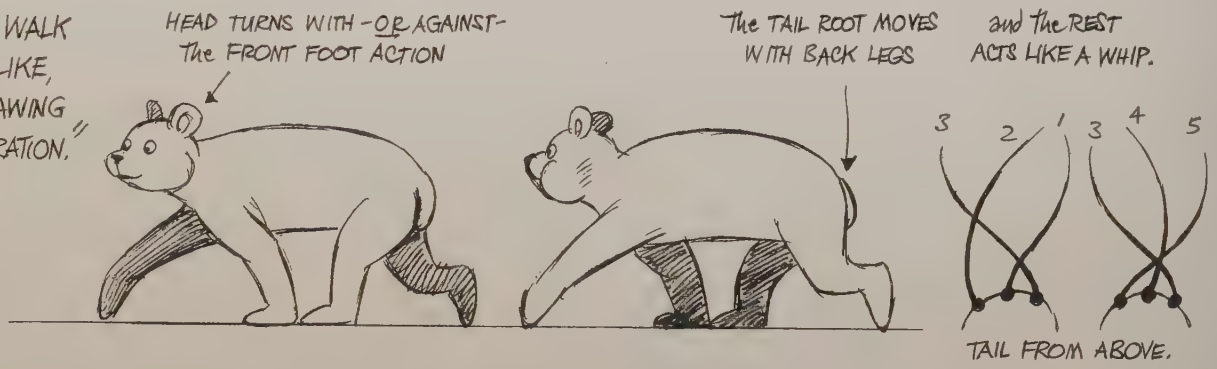


A MAESTRO OF ANIMAL ACTION, MILT KAHL SAID HE DID THOROUGH RESEARCH ON ANIMALS AND ALWAYS DID. HE SAID HE SPENT HUNDREDS OF HOURS STUDYING ACTIONS OF VARIOUS ANIMALS AND WALKS AND RUNS - WHATS HAPPENING - WHERE THE WEIGHT IS AND HOW YOU DRAW THEM. HE SAID HE DIDN'T THINK THERE WAS AN EASY WAY OF ARRIVING AT THESE THINGS: WE JUST HAVE TO GO THROUGH IT.

MILT SWORE BY THE MUYBRIDGE BOOKS - FOUND THEM EVEN BETTER THAN FILM, BECAUSE OF THE GRIDS.

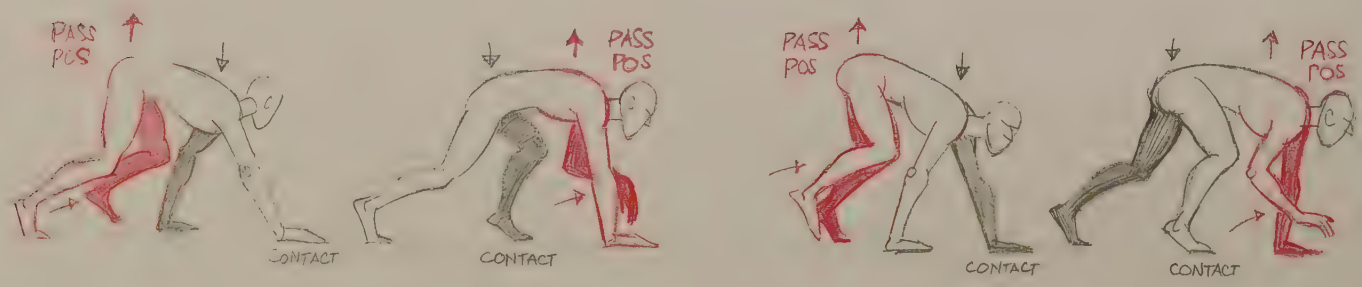
KEN HARRIS ALSO SWORE BY MUYBRIDGE. HE BOILED DOWN A SIMPLE FORMULA - SOMETHING LIKE THIS -

"ANIMALS ALL WALK BASICALLY ALIKE, BUT TAKE DRAWING INTO CONSIDERATION."


HEAD TURNS WITH - OR AGAINST - THE FRONT FOOT ACTION
THE TAIL ROOT MOVES WITH BACK LEGS
AND THE REST ACTS LIKE A WHIP.
3 2 1 3 4 5
TAIL FROM ABOVE.

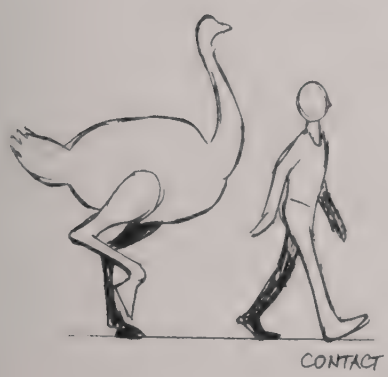
SINCE MOST ANIMAL WALKS ARE PRETTY SIMILAR, IF WE UNDERSTAND THE WALK OF A MEDIUM BUILT ANIMAL LIKE A HORSE, DOG OR LARGE CAT WE CAN APPLY THE SAME KNOWLEDGE TO OTHER ANIMALS DEPENDING ON THEIR SIZE, WEIGHT, DESIGN AND THEIR TIMING - THE INTERVALS OF THEIR FEET LANDING.

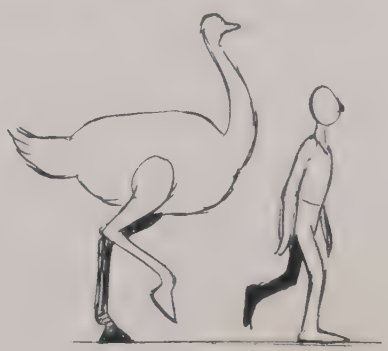
IF WE GET DOWN ON ALL FOURS WE CAN FEEL HOW THEY WALK.

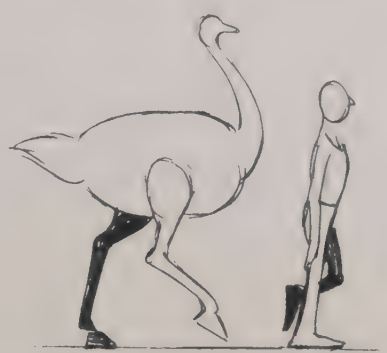


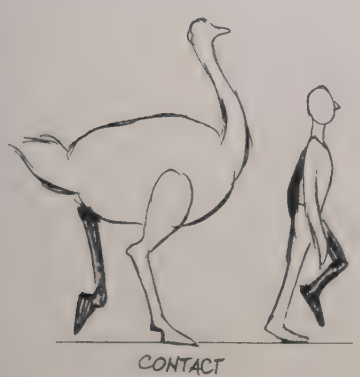
ABE LEVITOW ASKED
AN INTERESTING QUESTION –

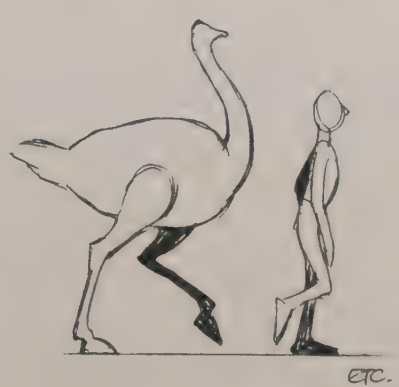
DOES A HORSE WALK LIKE AN OSTRICH AND A MAN?











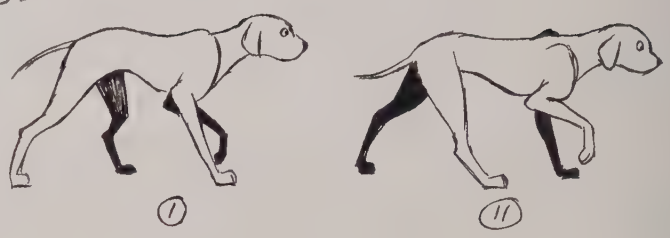
OR

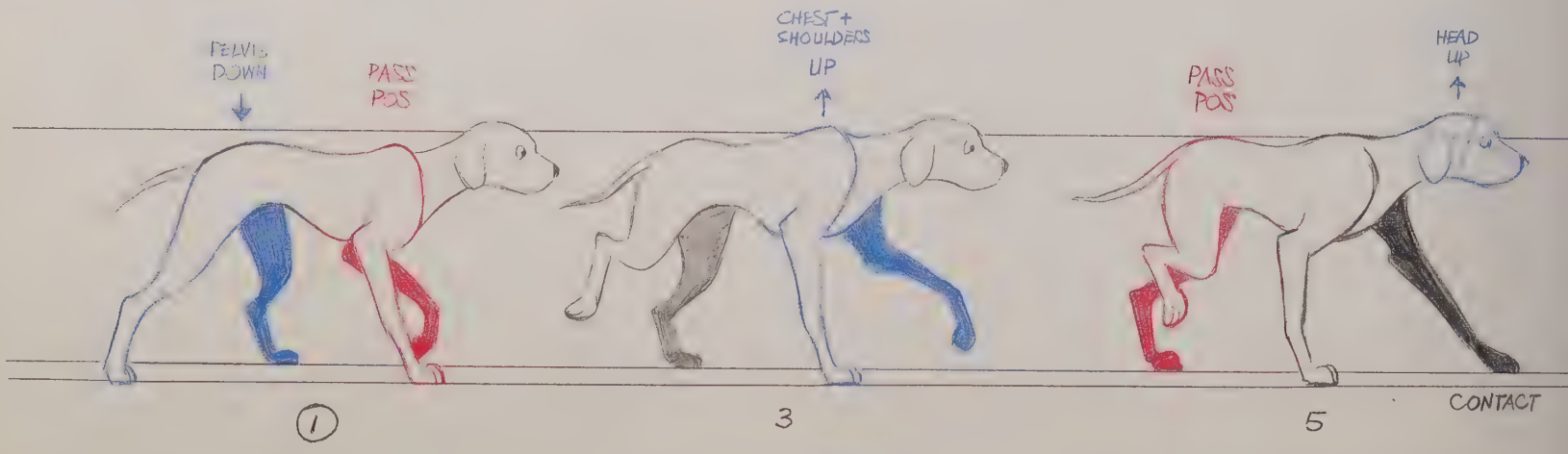
DOES AN OSTRICH AND A MAN WALK LIKE A HORSE?

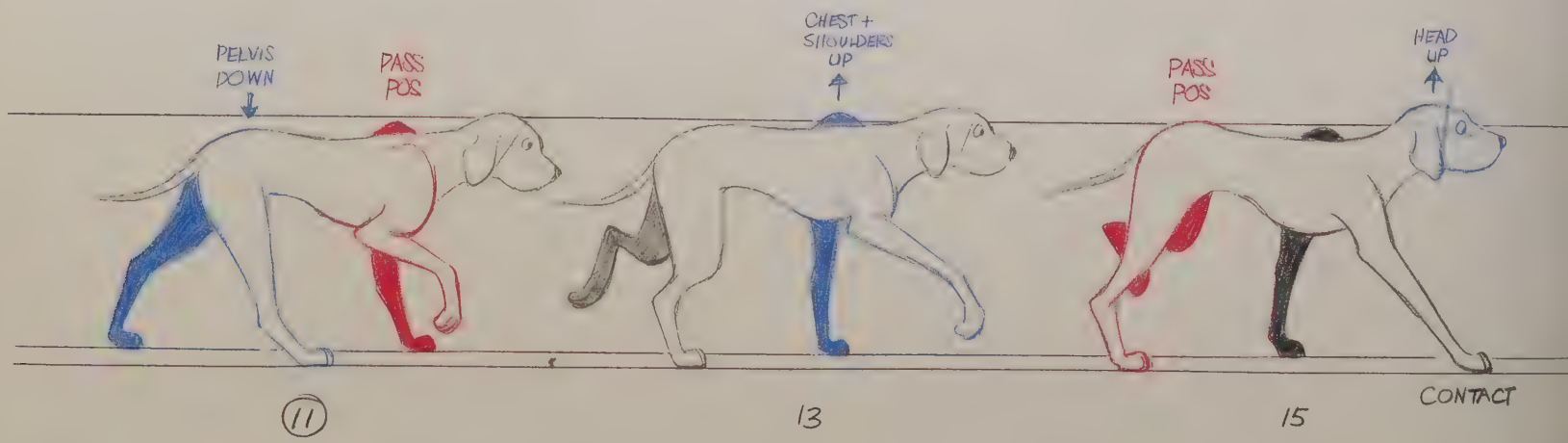
BASIC ANIMAL WALK PATTERN

APPLYING TO MOST ANIMALS - USING A MEDIUM SIZE DOG.
THERE'S SO MUCH GOING ON THAT COLOURS HELP -

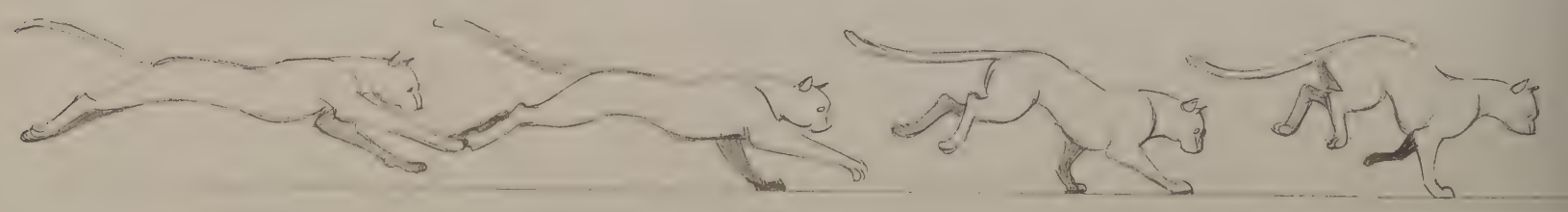
2 MAIN EXTREMES -

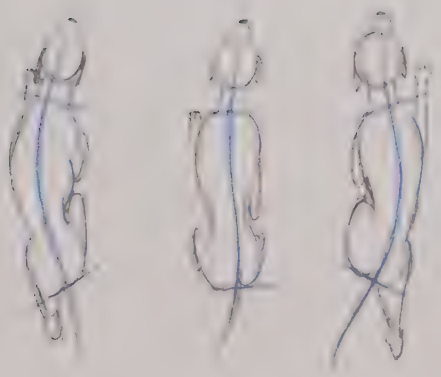




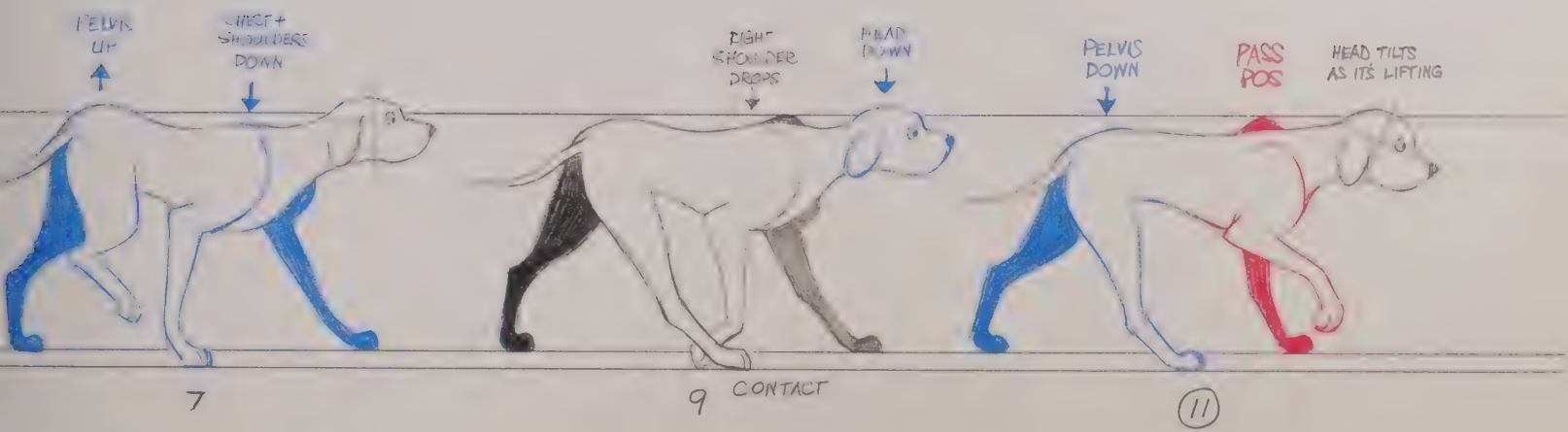


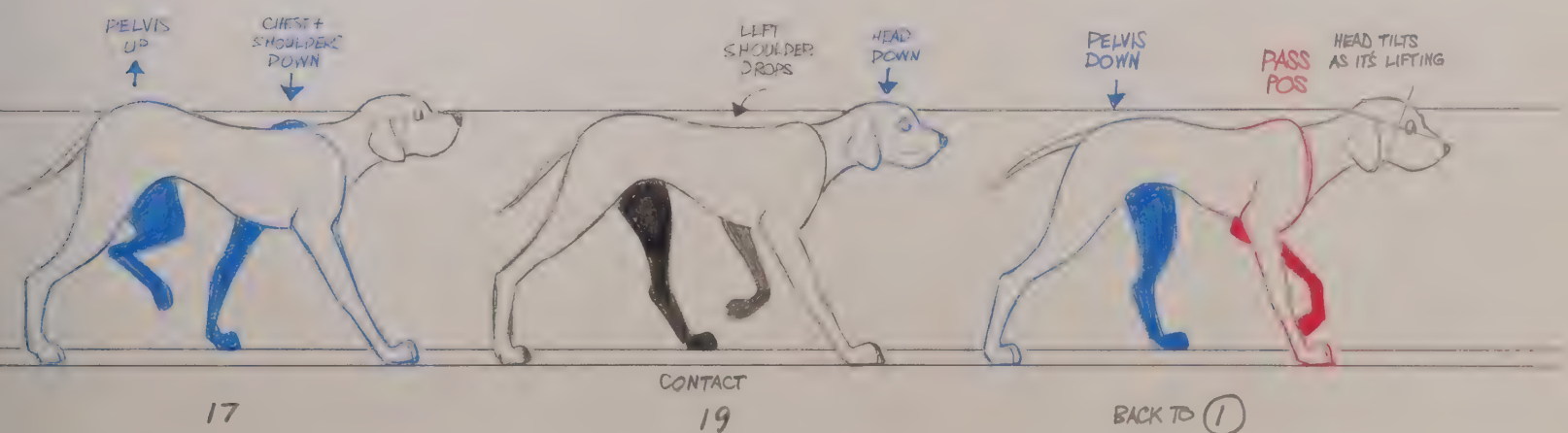
FOLDING and UNFOLDING -



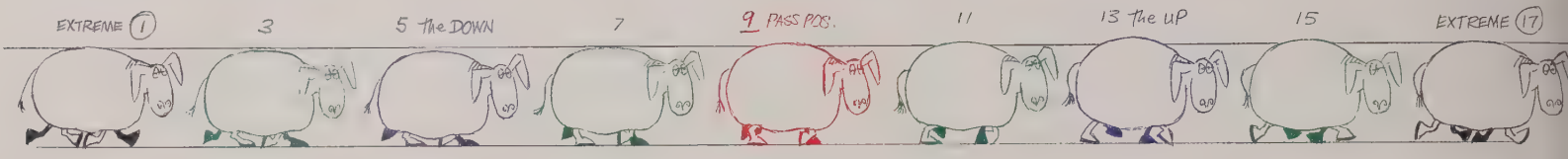


The SPINE TWISTS SIDE to SIDE DURING the WALK.





HERE'S A FUNNY 'INVENTED' WALK ON A DONKEY - ON TWOS - WALKING ON 16's. IT'S PLANNED WITH THE FRONT LEG and THE OPPOSING BACK LEG 'TWINNING' - TAKING THE STEP TOGETHER. THE EXTREMES #1 and #17 ARE LEVEL and THE PASSING POSITION #9 BODY and HEAD ARE RAISED SLIGHTLY. THE DOWN IS ON #5 and THE UP IS ON #13. SIMPLE, BELIEVABLE, BUT NO ANIMAL WALKS LIKE THIS.



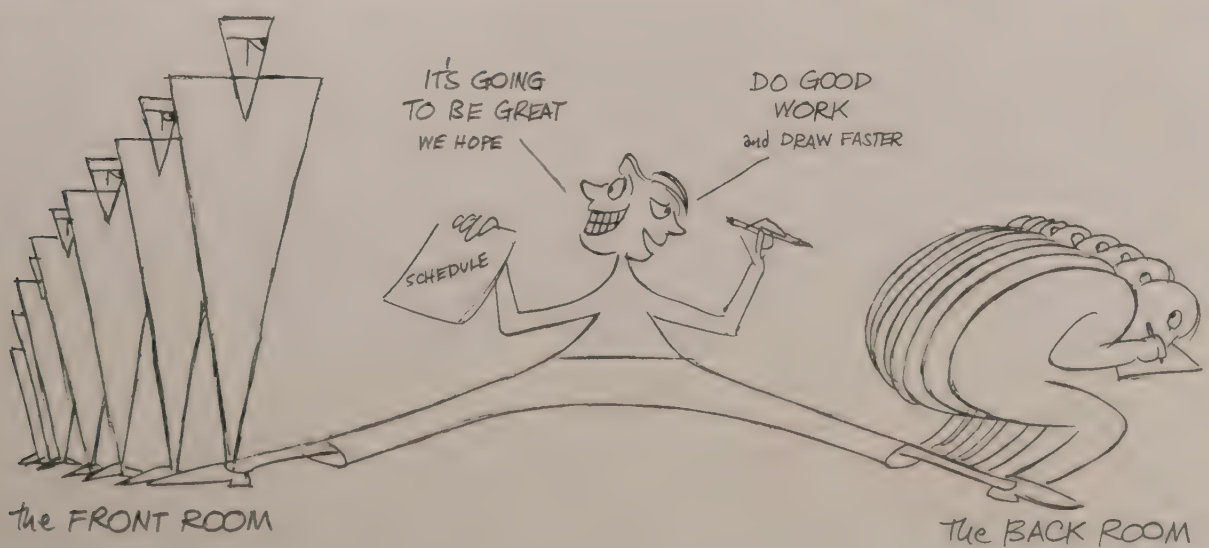
DIRECTING

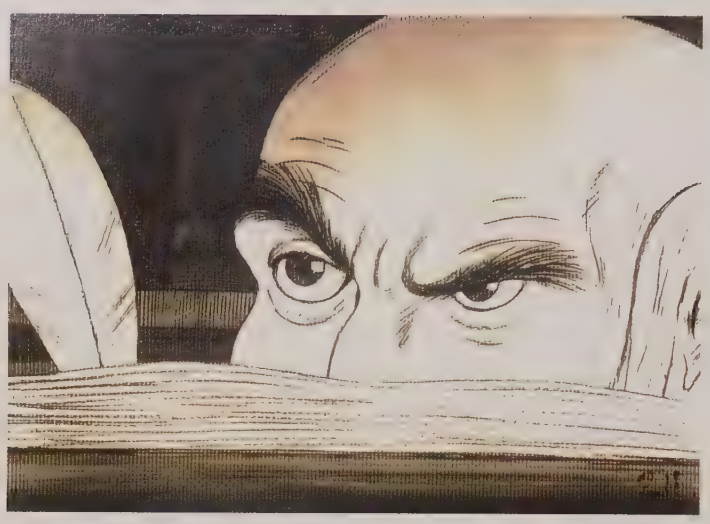
I THINK THERE ARE ONLY A FEW IMPORTANT THINGS TO KNOW ABOUT DIRECTING - BUT WE'VE GOT TO KNOW THOSE.

The DIRECTOR'S JOB IS TO MAKE IT ALL WORK. I HAVE THREE RULES:

1. BE SIMPLE.
2. BE CLEAR.
3. PUT EVERYTHING WHERE YOU CAN SEE IT.

The DIRECTOR IS A 2 FACED CREATURE WITH A FOOT IN 2 CAMPS. The SITUATION DEMANDS IT.





"IT'S A BUSINESS, GOD DAMN IT!"
(ANON. EXECUTIVE)

"IT'S NOT A BUSINESS IT'S AN EXPRESSION!"
EMERY HAWKINS (ANIMATOR)

OF COURSE IT'S BOTH - BUT DO YOU KNOW THE GOLDEN RULE?

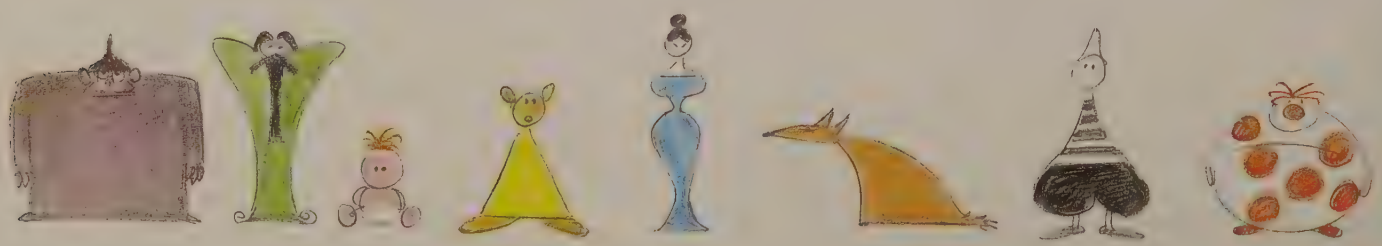
WHOEVER HAS THE GOLD MAKES THE RULES.

WE'RE BEING HIRED TO DO A JOB and WE SHOULD DO WHAT WE'RE BEING HIRED TO DO. WE SHOULD FOLLOW THE RULES. IF WE WANT ARTISTIC FREEDOM THEN WE PROVIDE OUR OWN GOLD.

THE 'BRIEF' IS SO IMPORTANT! I ALWAYS WRITE ON ONE SHEET OF PAPER WHAT THE GOALS ARE – WHAT WE'RE SUPPOSED TO DO. FOR EXAMPLE, THE "WHO FRAMED ROGER RABBIT" FILM:
FIRST, MAKE THE MARRIAGE OF LIVE ACTION and CARTOON REALMS BLEND TOGETHER CONVINCINGLY.
SECOND, USE (A) DISNEY ARTICULATION
(B) WARNER TYPE CHARACTERS
(C) TEX AVERY HUMOUR (BUT NOT SO BRUTAL.)
OUR JOB IS TO ALLAY THE FEARS OF THE EXECUTIVES and INCITE GREED BY OUR TALENT DISPLAY - SOLVING THE PROBLEMS UP FRONT. DESIGN THE STUFF OR SELECT WHAT'S GOOD and SHOW IT WORKS.

THE LEICA REEL OR ANIMATIC, OR FILMED COLOUR STORYBOARD WILL SHOW WHATS WORKING – (AND WHAT ISN'T) IT'S SOMETHING FOR EVERYONE TO HANG THEIR HAT ON and CALM DOWN. THEN WE MAKE THE CHANGES TO THAT LEICA REEL - NOT TO THE ANIMATION. THIS WAY THE ANIMATORS CAN GET ON WITH THEIR WORK IN SOME KIND OF PEACE.

SEPARATE THE CHARACTERS SHOW THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN THEM. IT'S ALL TO DO WITH CONTRAST: SIZES, SHAPES, COLOURS, VOICES. PUT OPPOSITES TOGETHER: BIG and LITTLE, FAT and THIN, TALL and SHORT, ROUND and SQUARE, OLD and YOUNG, RICH and POOR etc.



THIS IS SO VERY IMPORTANT! A SUCCESSFUL EXAMPLE IS DISNEY'S 'LION KING' WHERE ALL THE CREATURES SOUND, LOOK AND BEHAVE QUITE DIFFERENTLY FROM EACH OTHER.

BEST FOOT FORWARD PUT THE BEST ANIMATORS ON THE OPENING, ENDING AND AS PILLARS SPOTTED THROUGH THE MIDDLE – LIKE ACTORS WHO KNOW THE IMPORTANCE OF STAGE ENTRANCES AND EXITS. PUT THE BEST PEOPLE ON CLOSE UPS AND LONG SCENES, LESS EXPERIENCED PEOPLE ON 3 FOOT LONG-SHOTS AND MIDDLE PEOPLE IN THE MIDDLE.

CASTING ANIMATORS EVERYBODY HAS THEIR 'THING' THEY DO WELL. IT'S OUR JOB TO CAST THEM FOR WHAT THEY CAN DO AND NOT WHAT THEY CAN'T DO.

MAKING CHANGES UNLESS THEY'RE ASKING FOR HELP, ALLOW THE ANIMATOR TO GIVE BIRTH UNIMPEDED. ONCE THEY'RE PREGNANT WITH A NEW SCENE THEY WON'T MIND MAKING CHANGES TO A PREVIOUS ONE. WE'RE ALL THE SAME.

"SAY! SAY!" KEEP THE DOOR OPEN FOR CONTRIBUTIONS FROM EVERYONE ON THE TEAM. IF YOU CATCH THEM MUTTERING, ASK THEM TO "SAY! SAY!" THEY MIGHT BE RIGHT ABOUT SOMETHING.

VOICE RECORDING IF YOU CAST THE RIGHT ACTOR FOR THE JOB IT'S THE EASIEST THING IN THE WORLD. THEY'LL USUALLY GIVE IT TO YOU ON TAKE ONE. THEN JUST GET ANOTHER TAKE FOR INSURANCE. ACTUALLY THEY'LL USUALLY GIVE IT TO YOU ON THE REHEARSAL – SO TELL THE RECORDIST TO RECORD EVERYTHING. IT'S ONLY IF YOU HAVEN'T MADE CLEAR WHAT'S REQUIRED THAT YOU CAN END UP WITH FIFTY TAKES.

HOOK-UPS IT'S OUR RESPONSIBILITY TO ENSURE THAT ONE ANIMATOR'S SHOT HOOKS UP PERFECTLY TO THE NEXT PERSON'S SHOT. THERE'S NO EXCUSE FOR AN ANIMATION DIRECTOR TO GET THIS WRONG AS WE CAN DRAW PERFECT MATCH-UPS.

RESEARCH VERY, VERY, VERY IMPORTANT. RESEARCH EVERYTHING TILL YOU KNOW THE SUBJECT INSIDE OUT. DON'T WING IT.

EDITING WE SHOULD KNOW EDITING TECHNIQUES. I STUDY AKIRA KUROSAWA THE JAPANESE DIRECTOR, WHO I THINK IS THE WORLD'S GREATEST EDITOR AS WELL AS DIRECTOR.

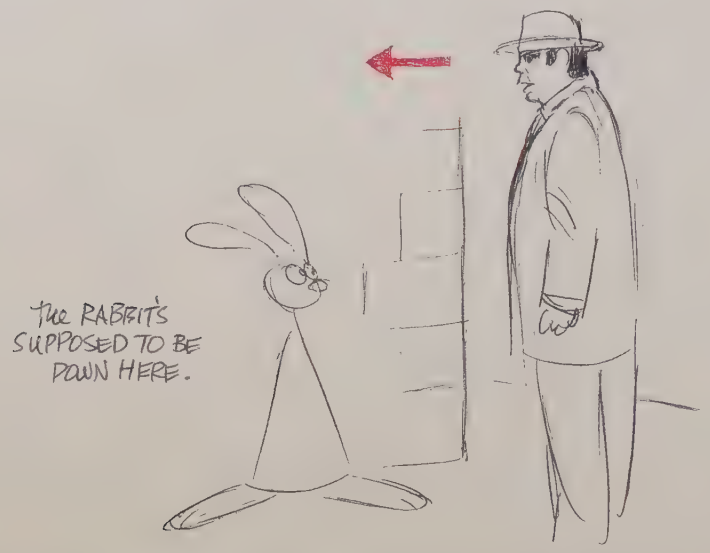
BELIEVE IN YOUR MATERIAL ANOTHER GREAT THING ABOUT KUROSAWA IS THAT HE BELIEVES IN HIS MATERIAL. HE TRUSTS THE AUDIENCE AND TRUSTS HIMSELF TO TELL HIS STORY AND ALLOWS THE AUDIENCE TO COME TO THE FILM. SO AS A DIRECTOR YOU HAVE TO BELIEVE IN YOUR MATERIAL.

IT'S AMAZING WHAT YOU CAN GET AWAY WITH.

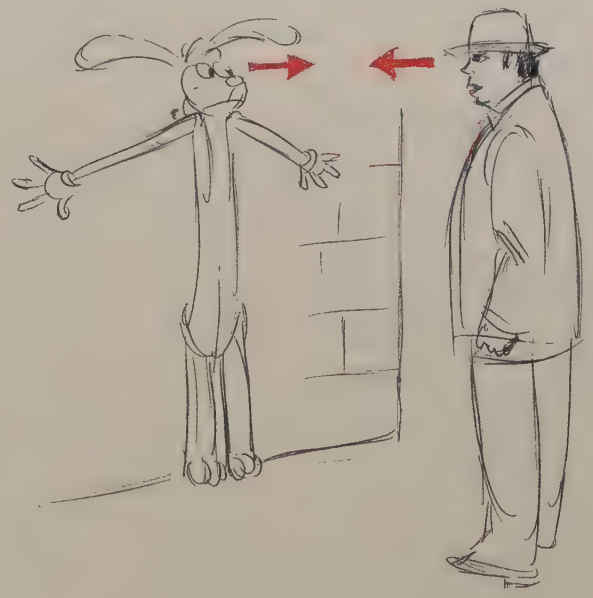
AN INTERESTING THING HAPPENED ON "WHO FRAMED ROGER RABBIT."

THE ACTOR, BOB HOSKINS HAD A GREAT ABILITY TO CONCENTRATE ON A NON-EXISTANT RABBIT WHO WAS 3 FEET HIGH. UNLIKE MOST ACTORS WHO LOOK THROUGH OR PAST THE INVISIBLE CHARACTER, BOB COULD STOP HIS EYES RIGHT AT THE 3 FOOT LINE WHERE THE RABBIT'S EYES WOULD BE.

ONE DAY ANIMATOR SIMON WELLS (NOW A TOP DIRECTOR) CAME IN TO ME AND SAID, 'WE'VE GOT A PROBLEM - HOSKINS IS LOOKING AT A 6 FOOT HIGH RABBIT - WHAT DO WE DO? HE WAS RIGHT. HOSKINS HAD TEMPORARILY LAPSED AND WAS LOOKING and TALKING TO A WALL ABOUT 6 FEET OFF THE GROUND.



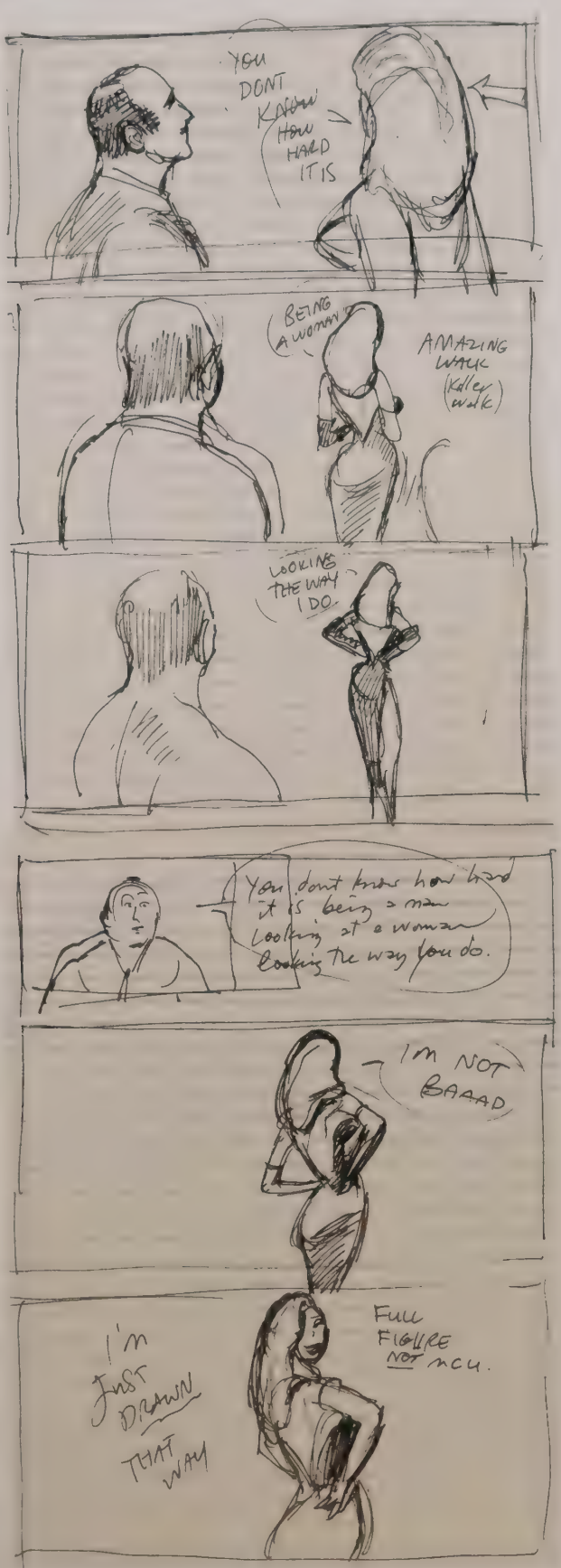
I THOUGHT, 'WELL, THE RABBIT'S GOT THESE HUGE FEET - LET'S JUST STRETCH HIM UP ON HIS TOES AGAINST THE WALL'. 'FOR NO REASON?' 'WHAT ELSE ARE WE GOING TO DO? THE RABBIT'S NEUROTIC - IT SHOULD WORK.'



THEY EVEN USED THE SHOT IN THE PROMOTIONAL TRAILERS AND NO ONE EVER QUESTIONED IT.

Roger Rabbit © Touchstone Pictures and Amblin Entertainment, Inc.
Used by permission from Touchstone Pictures and Amblin Entertainment, Inc.

I ALWAYS SKETCH EVERYTHING OUT SMALL FIRST. THE LITTLE DRAWINGS, BECAUSE THEY'RE 'THINKING' DRAWINGS, SEEM TO SHOW IF THE IDEA IS WORKING CLEARLY OR NOT:


YOU DONT KNOW HOW HARD IT IS
BEING A WOMAN
AMAZING WALK (killer walk)
LOOKING THE WAY I DO.
You dont know how hard it is being a man looking at a woman looking the way you do.
I'm NOT BAAAD
I'm JUST DRAWN THAT WAY
FULL FIGURE NOT NCU.

Jessica Rabbit © Touchstone Pictures and Amblin Entertainment, Inc.
Used by permission from Touchstone Pictures and Amblin Entertainment, Inc.

AND IN CONCLUSION: the REVIEW

The PROCEDURE

TO MAKE The SOUP:

PLANNING STRUCTURE

STORYBOARD (DESIGNED ALREADY? OR ROUGH)

LEADS TO

TEST The 'LEICA' REEL OR 'ANIMATIC' OR FILMED STORYBOARD

LEADS TO

CAN EVEN TEST THESE PLANNING DRAWINGS (USUALLY SMALL THUMBNAILS)

THEN

CLEAR UNDERSTANDING OF SHOT

MAN BITES DOG

TEST (KEY) POSITIONS

The BIG DRAWINGS OR POSITIONS THAT HAVE TO BE THERE.

TEST EXTREMES = ANY OTHER POSITIONS THAT HAVE TO BE THERE.

-USUALLY 'CONTACTS'

TEST PASSING POSITIONS (PERHAPS JUST IN ROUGH)

SPONTANEOUS FLOW

DO SEVERAL STRAIGHT AHEAD RUNS -

The PRIMARY THING

The SECONDARY THING

The THIRD THING

The FOURTH THING

ANY OTHER BITS - LIKE DRAPERY

HAIR

FAT

TAILS etc.

and WE CAN KEEP ON TESTING.

The INGREDIENTS

AND TO DO THIS WE'RE USING:

GOOD KEYS FOR CLARITY

WEIGHT = 'CHANGE' and ANTICIPATION.

TO GET FLEXIBILITY:

WE'RE USING OVERLAPPING ACTION (DELAYING THINGS and MOVING THINGS IN PARTS)

and WE'RE USING SUCCESSIVE BREAKING OF JOINTS

ACCENTS - HEAD, BODY, HANDS, FEET
(GET THERE EARLY)

STAGGER VIBRATIONS

COMPRESSION and DISTENTION (SQUASH and STRETCH)

DIFFERENT WALKS and RUNS = WE'RE STRESSING the DIFFERENCE BETWEEN THINGS and PEOPLE.

'INVENTED' MOVES THAT CAN'T HAPPEN IN the REAL WORLD BUT WE MAKE LOOK BELIEVABLE.

FOR DIALOGUE WE'RE PROGRESSING IT SOMEWHERE.

WE'RE USING ALL THESE THINGS BROADLY OR VERY SUBTLY.

ALL THIS is the ANATOMY TO ENABLE US TO GIVE the PERFORMANCE, SUSTAIN IT and MAKE IT COMPULSIVE VIEWING.

AND ONCE IT'S ALL ABSORBED INTO the BLOODSTREAM -
TO FREE US TO EXPRESS!

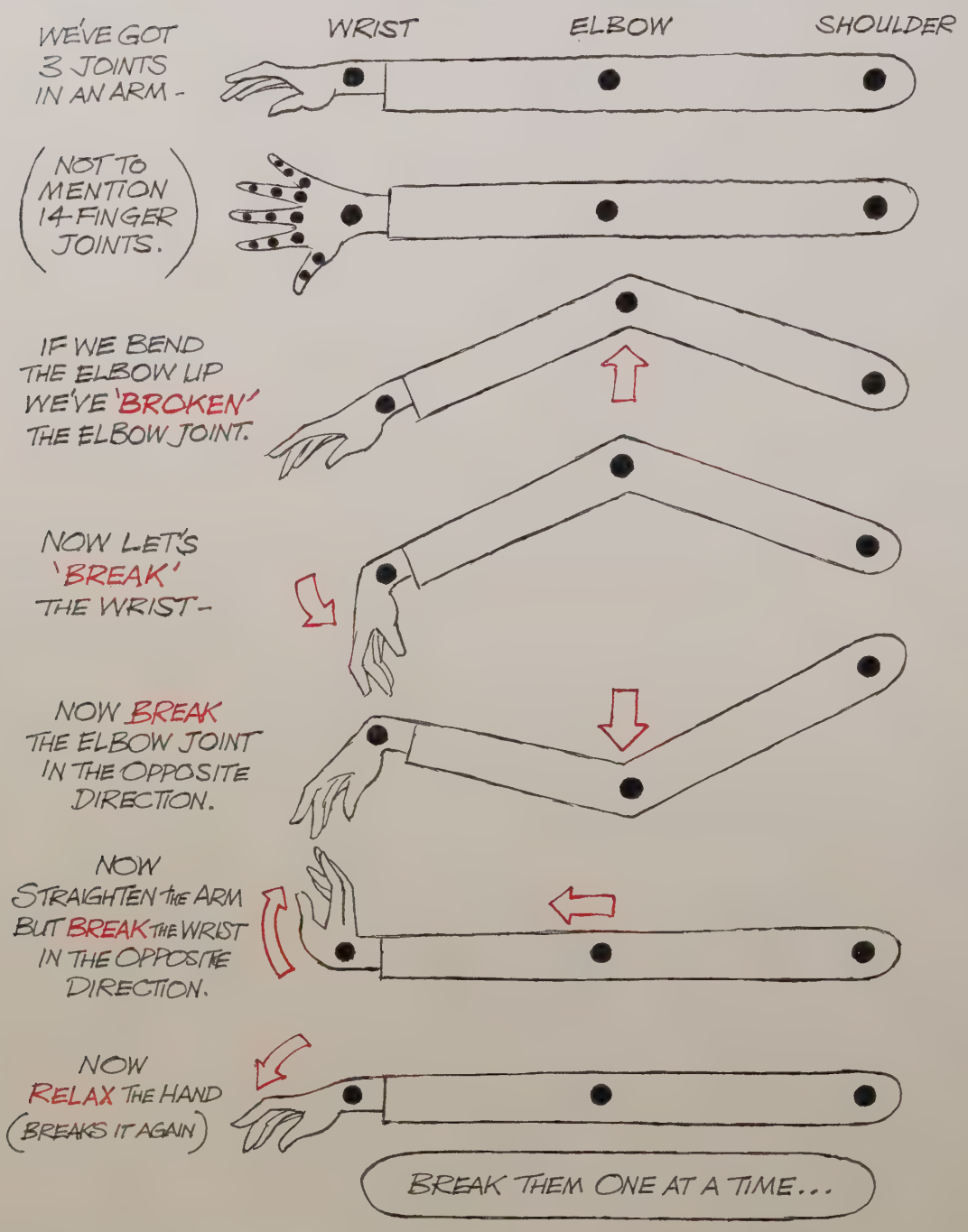
'THE PLAY'S THE THING.'

THIS ENLARGED EDITION LETS ME ADD THINGS I DIDN'T HAVE ROOM TO GET IN LAST TIME...

BUMPER
EDITION
MORE
ON
AND
LIVE
WELCOME
TO THE
ANNEX
EXTRA
BITS
PLUS
ANIMAL

SOMEHOW I LEFT THIS OUT OF THE 1ST EDITION—

IT'S REALLY "LESSON ONE" ON FLEXIBILITY


WE'VE GOT 3 JOINTS IN AN ARM -
WRIST
ELBOW
SHOULDER
(NOT TO MENTION 14-FINGER JOINTS.
IF WE BEND THE ELBOW UP WE'VE 'BROKEN' THE ELBOW JOINT.
NOW LET'S 'BREAK' THE WRIST -
NOW BREAK THE ELBOW JOINT IN THE OPPOSITE DIRECTION.
NOW STRAIGHTEN THE ARM BUT BREAK THE WRIST IN THE OPPOSITE DIRECTION.
NOW RELAX THE HAND (BREAKS IT AGAIN)
BREAK THEM ONE AT A TIME...

IF ALL THE JOINTS DO NOT BREAK AT THE SAME TIME, WE CAN ACHIEVE ALL THE FLUIDITY AND FLEXIBILITY WE'LL EVER NEED IN ANIMATION!

DELAYING PARTS AND PROGRESSING THE ACTION

THIS WAS A VERY BIG LESSON FOR ME!

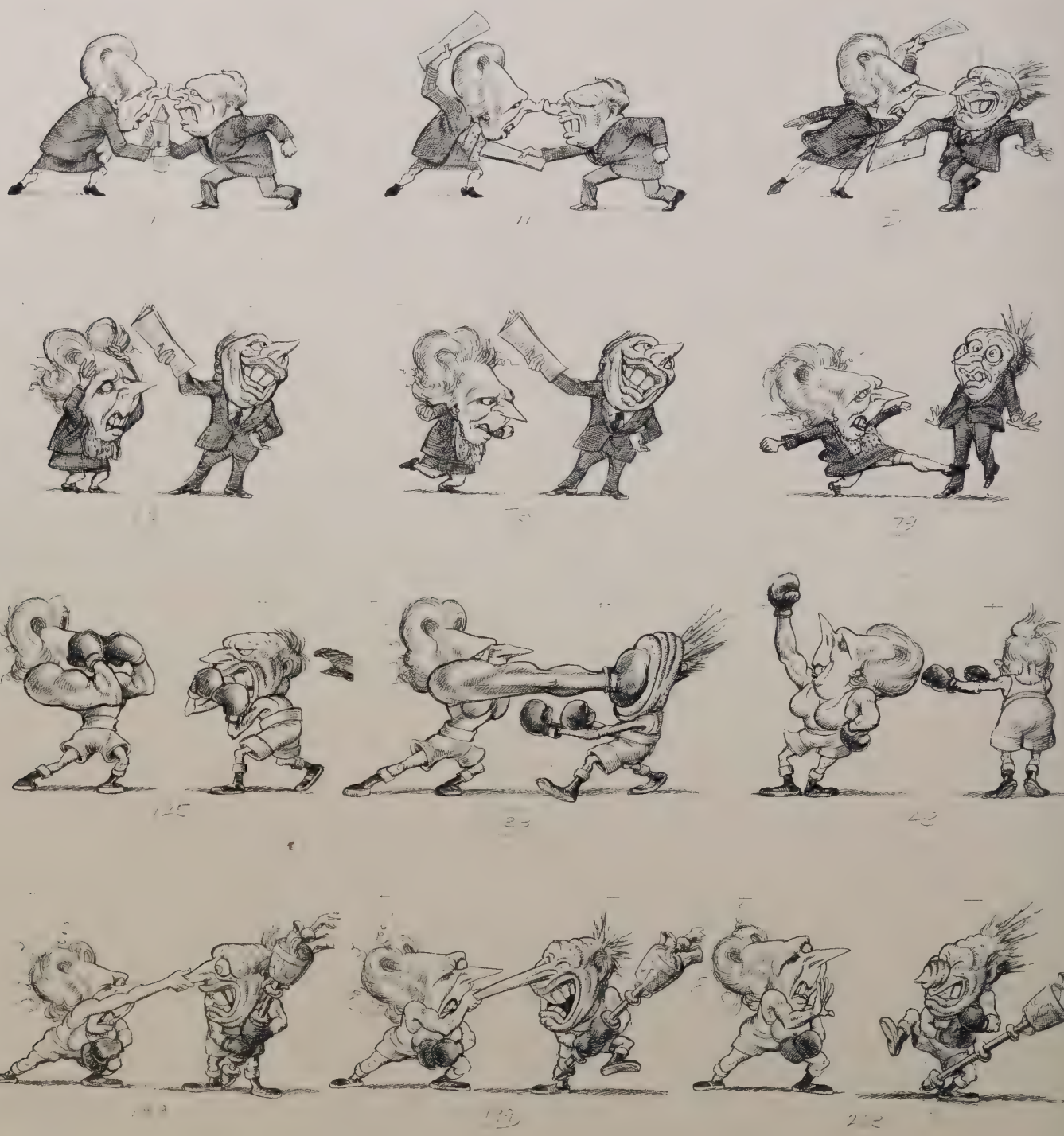
YEARS AGO ONE OF MY BETTER EFFORTS WAS A SCENE OF A WITCH SAYING, "I'M GOING TO GIVE YOU THE ELIXIR." I HAD HER HANDS WORKING BACKWARDS AND FORWARDS LIKE AN ITALIAN WAITER. (I'M JUST SHOWING RANDOM DRAWINGS HERE)

PLEASED WITH IT, I RAN IT FOR ART BABBITT, WHO GRUNTED, "WELL, OK, BUT YOU'RE 'TWINNING' THE HANDS. HOW MUCH BETTER IT WOULD BE IF YOU WERE TO DELAY JUST ONE OF HER HANDS FOR 4 FRAMES. TO BREAK IT UP." I DID IT. THE REST OF THE FIGURE WAS THE SAME - BUT THE DELAYED HAND MADE IT!
(AGAIN - JUST RANDOM DRAWINGS HERE)

DELIGHTED WITH THE RESULT, I PROUDLY RAN IT FOR KEN HARRIS. "YEAH, ALRIGHT," KEN GROWLED, "BUT WHY DIDN'T YOU PROGRESS THE ACTION? MOVE HER FORWARD AS SHE GESTURES." (See 'THE SECRET' OF LIP SYNC ON PAGE 314.) SO I DREW THE WHOLE THING ALL OVER AGAIN, 'PROGRESSING' HER. THE ACTION WAS EXACTLY THE SAME BUT I MOVED HER ACROSS THE PAGE - GOING SOMEWHERE. THE WHOLE THING WAS TRANSFORMED. (THIS IS THE BEST I CAN DO TO SHOW IT HERE.)

PUT IT WHERE YOU CAN SEE IT.

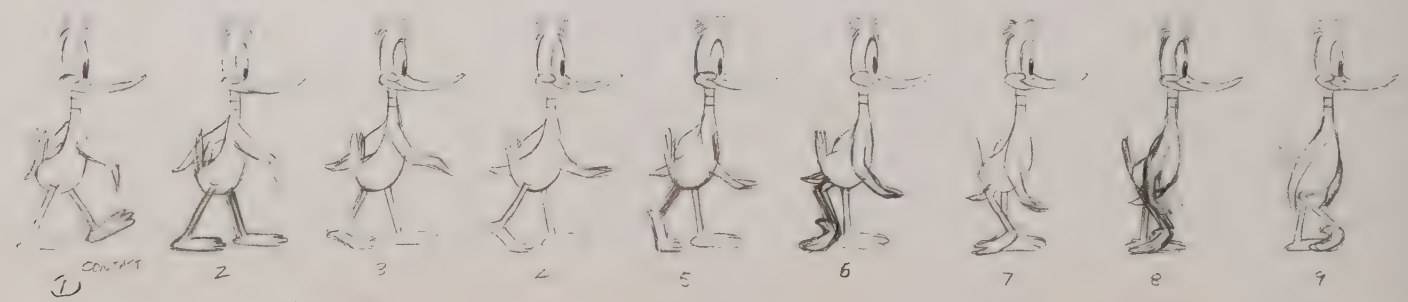
THIS IS A FAST ACTION SCENE DRAWN IN THE STYLE OF KAL -A TOP POLITICAL CARTOONIST.

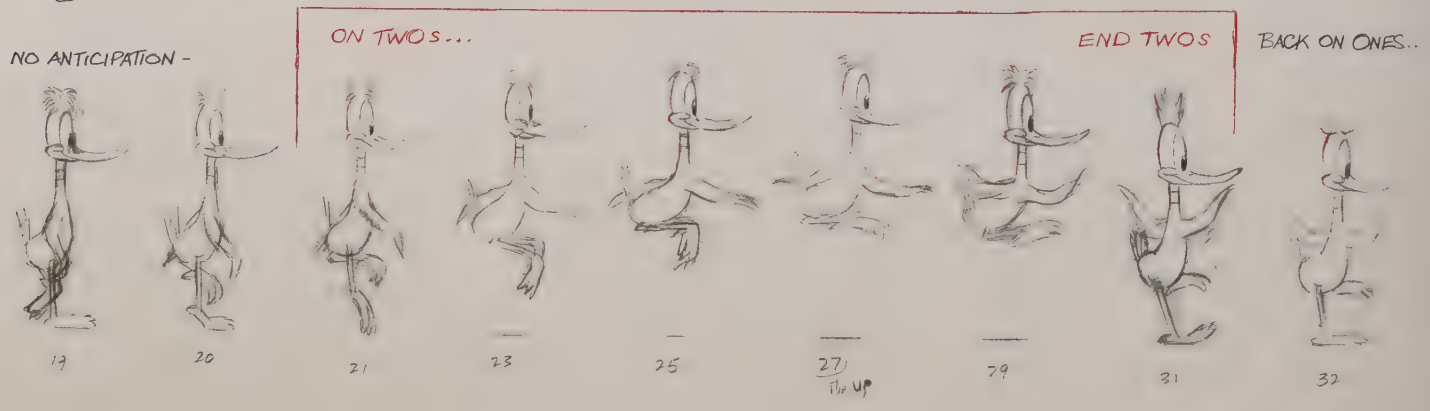


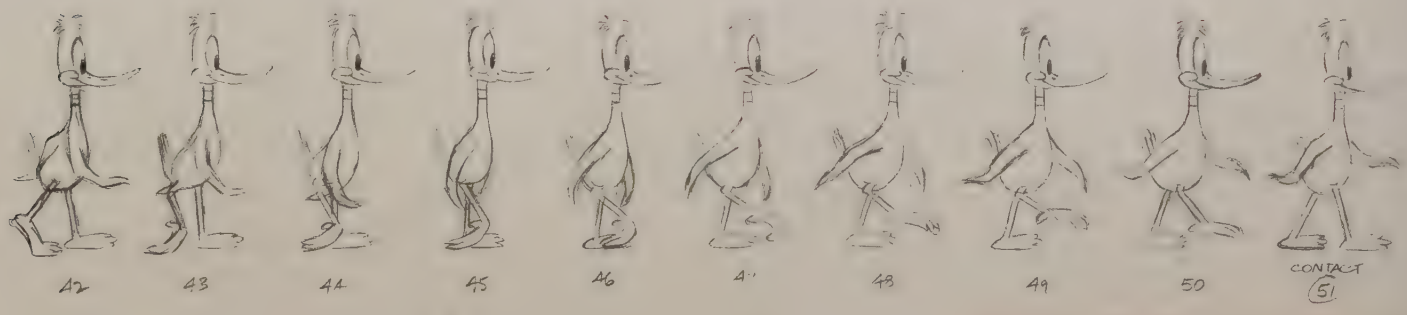
THE THEN BRITISH PRIME MINISTER, MARGARET THATCHER, CLASHES WITH NEIL KINNOCK - THE LEADER OF THE OPPOSITION. [WE ANIMATED THIS WITH INK ON PAPER - JUST AS THE CARTOONIST DID.] I MADE THE KEYS AND EXTREMES AS READABLE AND AS CLEAR SILHOUETTES AS I POSSIBLY COULD.

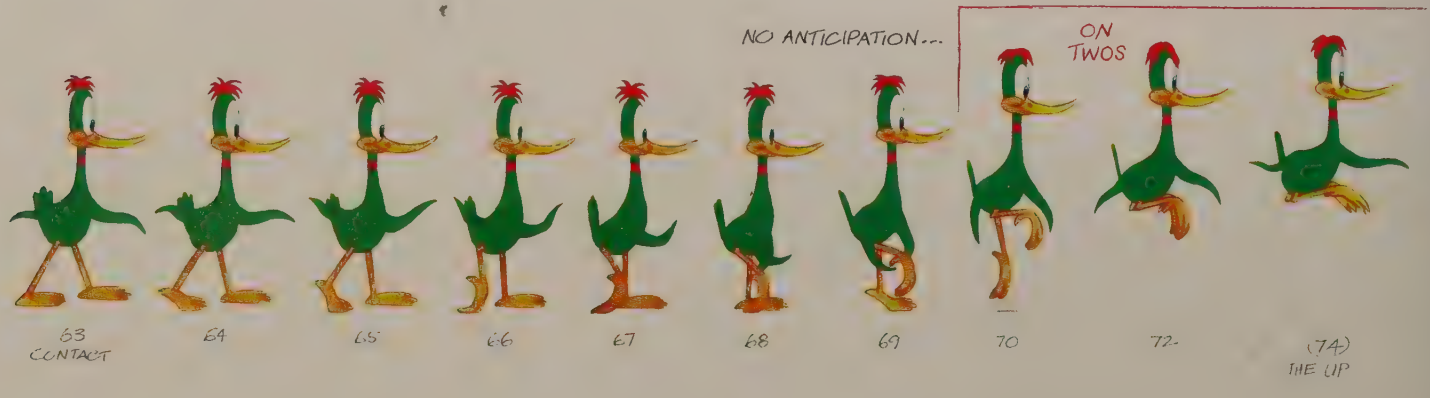
A HOLLYWOOD HOP

HERE'S THE ANIMATED DUCK FROM THE FRONT COVER.
HE'S WALKING ACROSS THE SCREEN ON 12's.
HE HAD TO BE ON ONES OR HE WOULD STROBE (JITTER.)

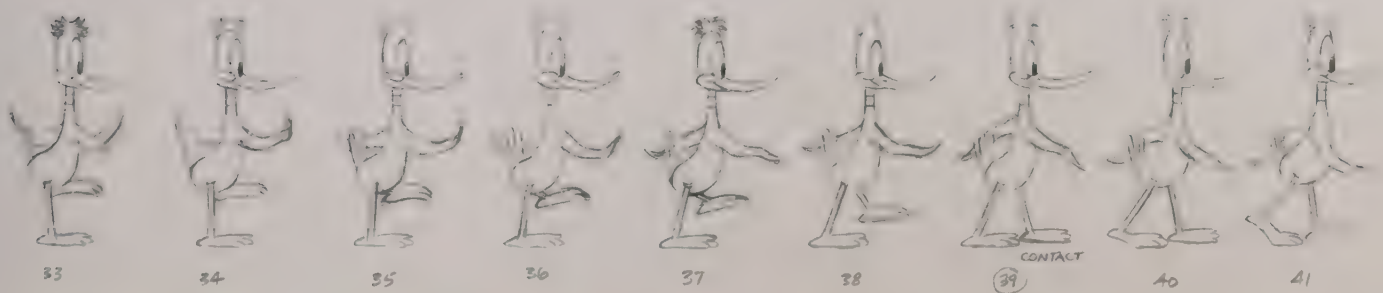




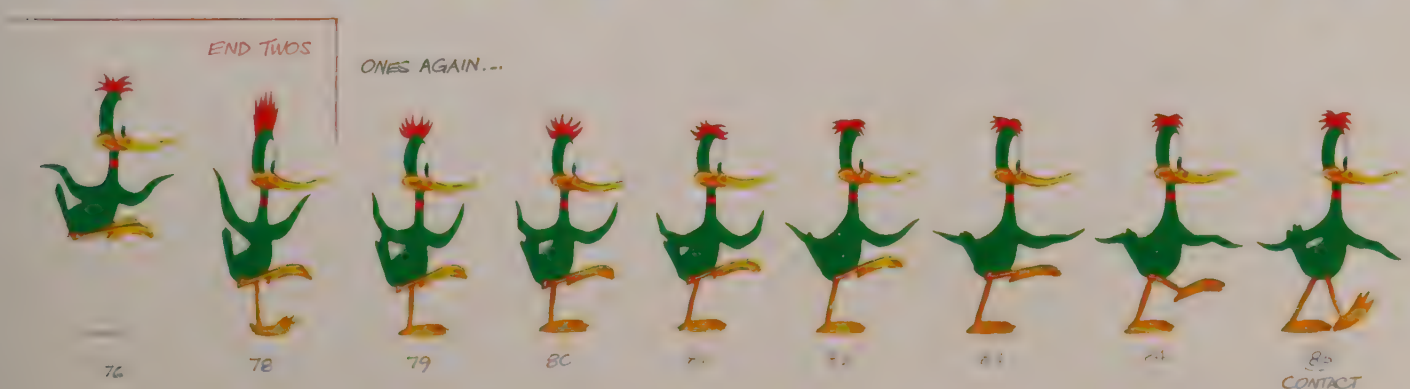




BUT WHEN HE DOES HIS UNEXPECTED HOPS - HE'S ON TWOS. THIS GIVES IT A DIFFERENT TEXTURE. THE "TWOS SPARKLE" AS FRANK THOMAS SAYS. THEN WE GO BACK TO SMOOTH ONES. I GAVE HIM A SILLY ARM SWING AND THOUGH HIS HEAD IS RIGID - HIS BUTT AND TAIL SUBTLY SWINGS BACK + FORTH.



CONTINUING WITH FINISHED CELS -



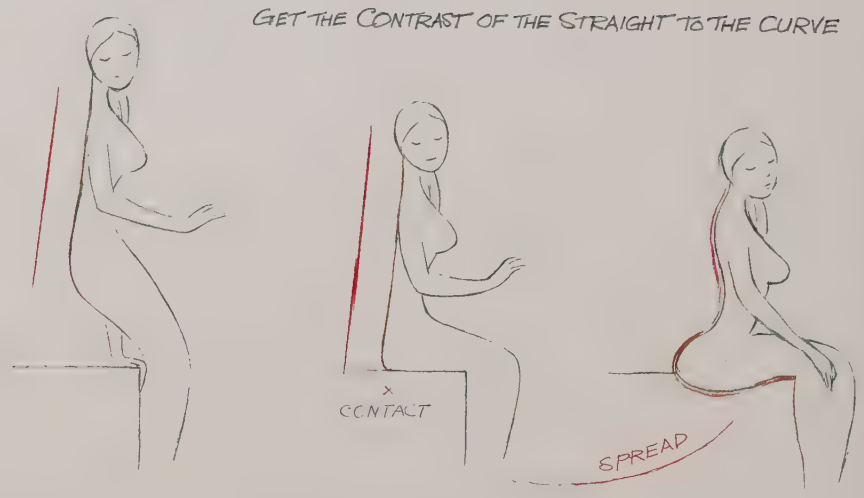
CONTRAST AND "CHANGE"

TRY TO START WITH SOMETHING OPPOSITE FROM WHERE YOU WANT TO GO. GET THE DIFFERENCE FROM WHERE YOU'RE GOING TO END UP.

MILT KAHL SAID HE WOULD MAKE A WOMAN'S BACK STRAIGHTER THAN IT WOULD BE IN REALITY - IN ORDER TO MAKE A BIGGER CHANGE WITH "A BIG ASS SAG OUT."

"I ALWAYS LOOK FOR THAT CONTRAST IN EVERYTHING."

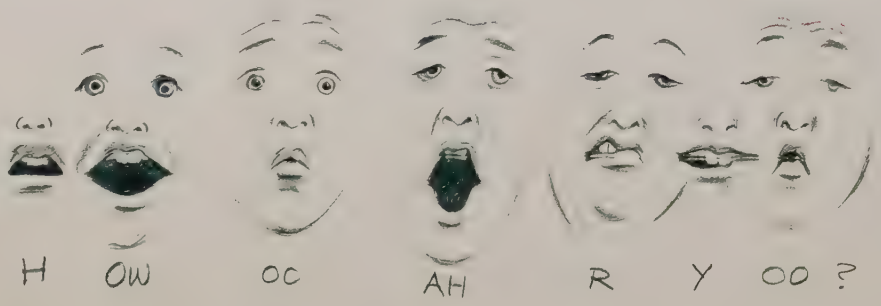
GET THE CONTRAST OF THE STRAIGHT TO THE CURVE



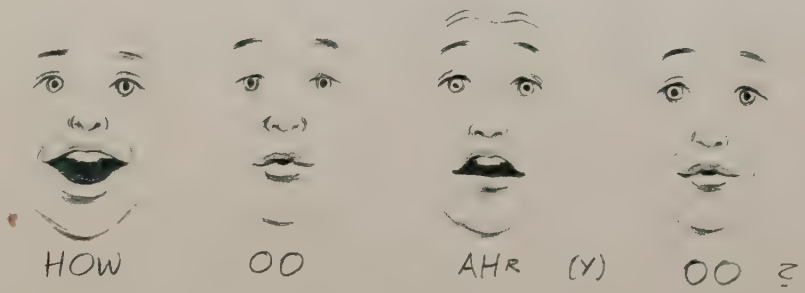
"PHRASING" DIALOGUE

IF WE'RE SAYING "HOW ARE YOU?" DON'T DO THIS! DON'T ARTICULATE EVERY SNAP AND POP.

THE SOLUTION IS TO MAKE FEWER MAIN POSITIONS.

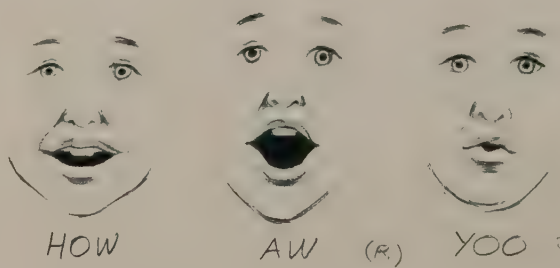


CAN WE DO IT IN JUST 4 POSITIONS? 'SMUDGING' FROM ONE POSITION TO ANOTHER. THIS WORKS MUCH BETTER!



BUT

CAN WE DO IT IN JUST 3 POSITIONS? THIS WORKS BEST - SIMPLE AND NATURAL - THIS IS WHAT THEY MEAN BY 'PHRASING' DIALOGUE.



WE DON'T OVERANIMATE - KEEP THE MAIN POSITIONS CLEAR AND SIMPLE.

USING LIVE ACTION FOR REFERENCE-

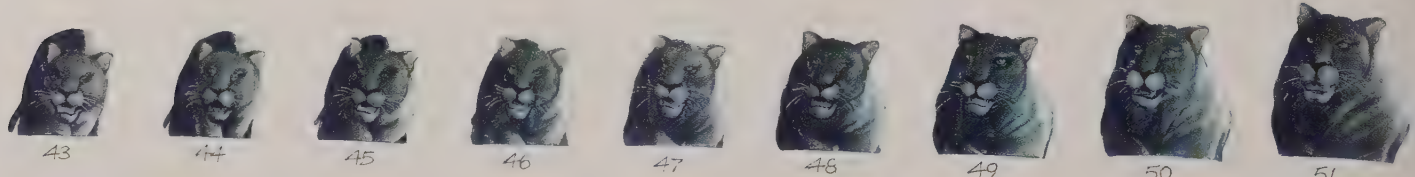
IN ANIMATING THE PANTHER ON THE NEXT TWO PAGES, I STUDIED SOME LIVE ACTION TO SEE WHERE THE HIGHS AND LOWS WERE - AND THEN DEPARTED FROM IT AS SHE COMES UP TO CAMERA.

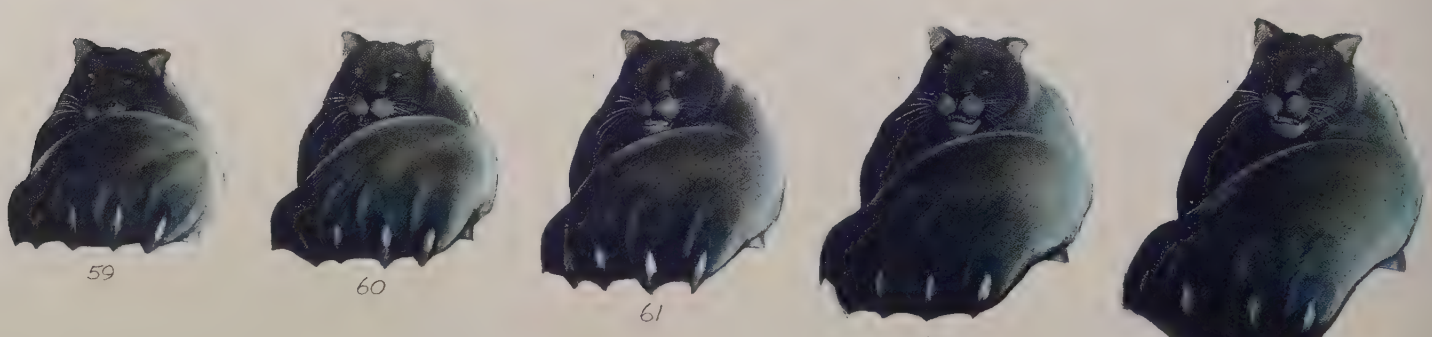
I THINK THE IDEA IS TO USE JUST PARTS OF THE REFERENCE - ANYTHING THAT HELPS YOU GET INTO IT - AND THEN TAKE OFF ON YOUR OWN...

(ON TWOS)

(ON ONES)

TAIL UP

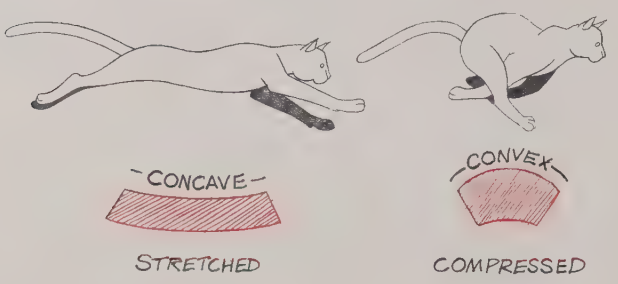




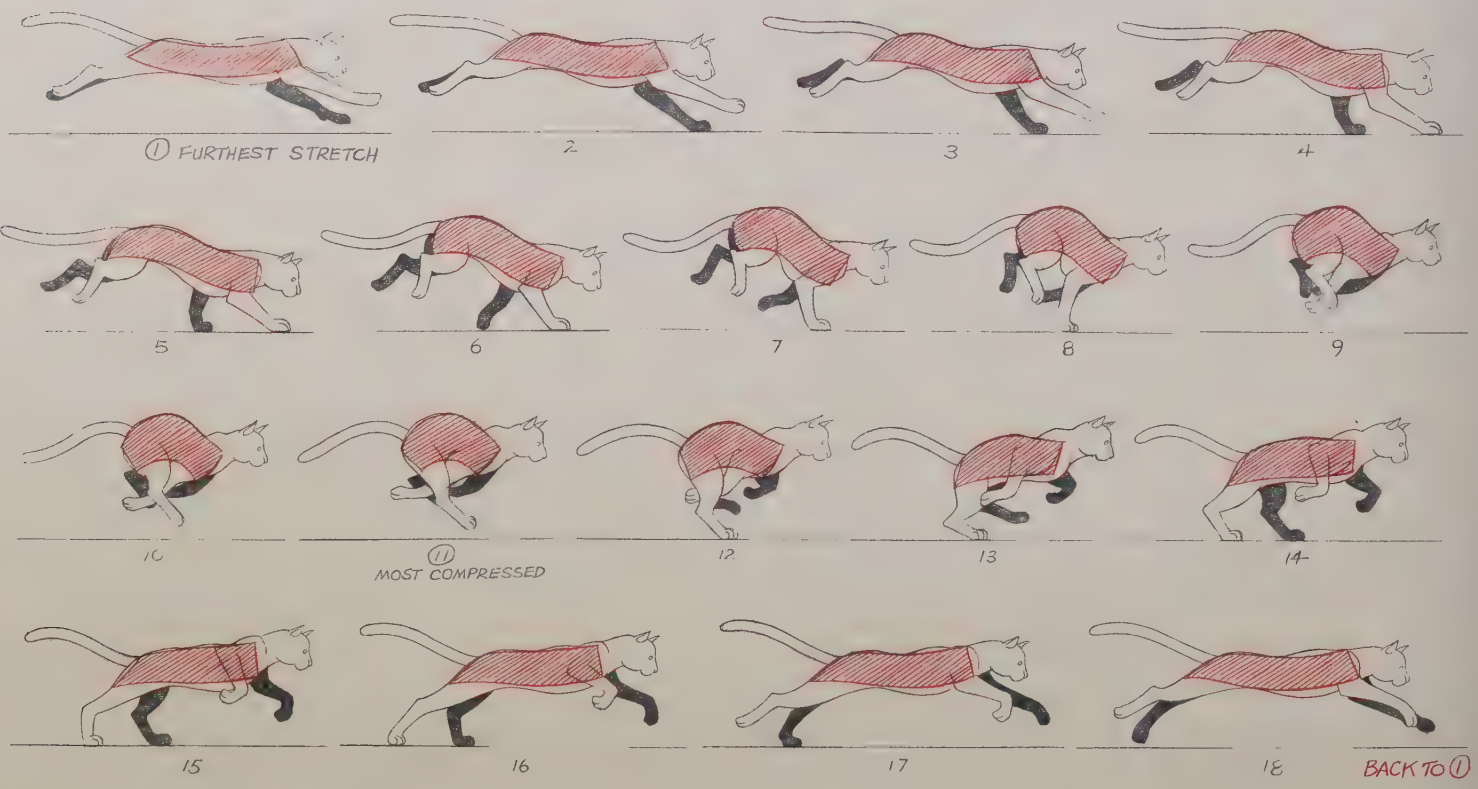
I USED LIVE ACTION REFERENCE UP TO AROUND 45 –
AND OBVIOUSLY INVENTED THE ACTION FROM THEN ON...

ANIMAL FLEXIBILITY

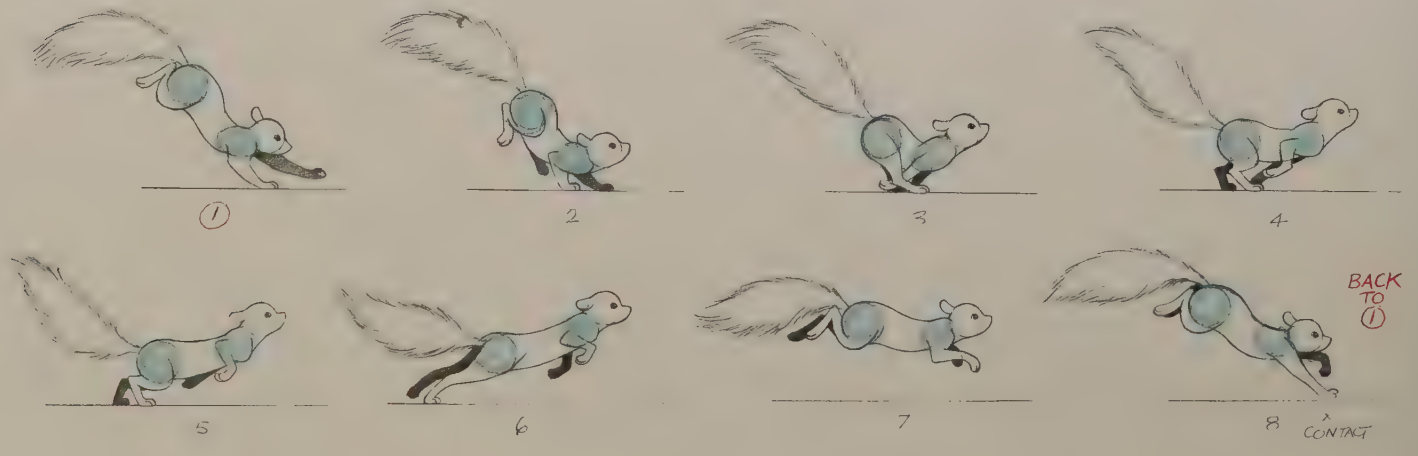
THESE 2 PAGES ARE ABOUT REALISING HOW MUCH FLEXIBILITY THERE IS IN THE SPINE!



HERE'S THE CAT FROM PAGES 330/331 ANIMATED ON ONES. SHOWING THE EXTENT OF STRETCH AND COMPRESSION AND ALSO THE CHANGE FROM CONCAVE TO CONVEX.

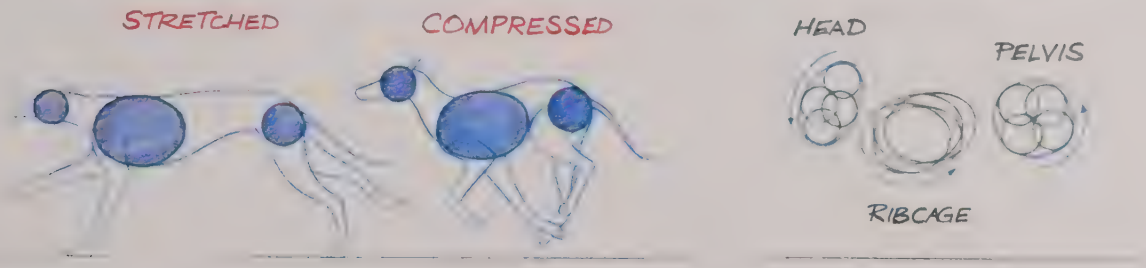


SAME THING WITH A SQUIRREL - FOLDING AND UNFOLDING.

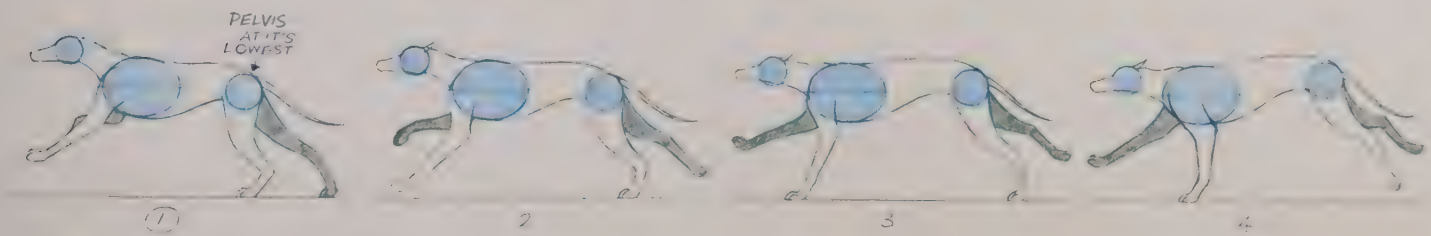


ACTION ON A RUNNING DOG

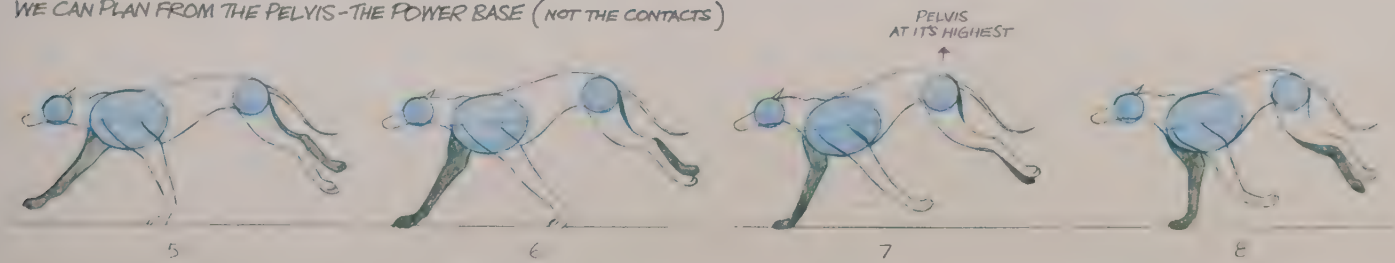
THIS IS TAKEN FROM LIVE ACTION. LOOK HOW MUCH STRETCH + COMPRESSION THERE IS!

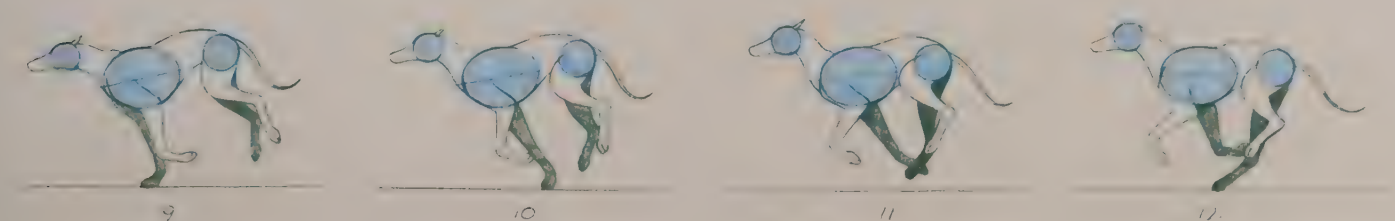


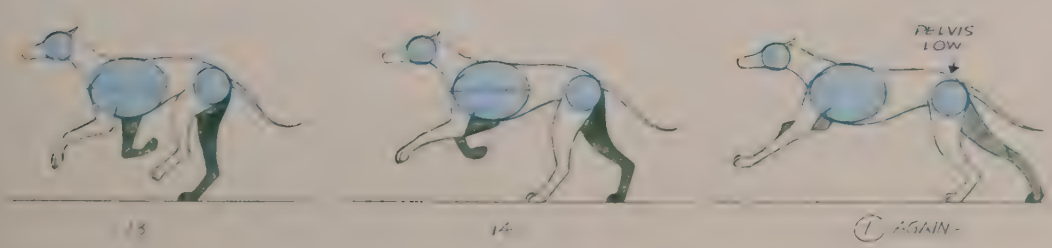
AS WELL AS STRETCHING + COMPRESSING, THE HEAD, RIBCAGE + PELVIS MOVE IN ELIPSES OR ARCS.
IT'S USUALLY THE REAR PELVIS THAT DOES THE MOST WORK. THAT'S WHERE THE POWER IS.
THE RIBCAGE AREA MOVES THE LEAST. IT'S HEAVY AND CARRIES THE MOST DELICATE ORGANS.
THE HEAD TENDS TO COUNTER BALANCE THE RIBCAGE.



ON MOST 4 LEGGED ANIMALS RUNNING
WE CAN PLAN FROM THE PELVIS - THE POWER BASE (NOT THE CONTACTS)

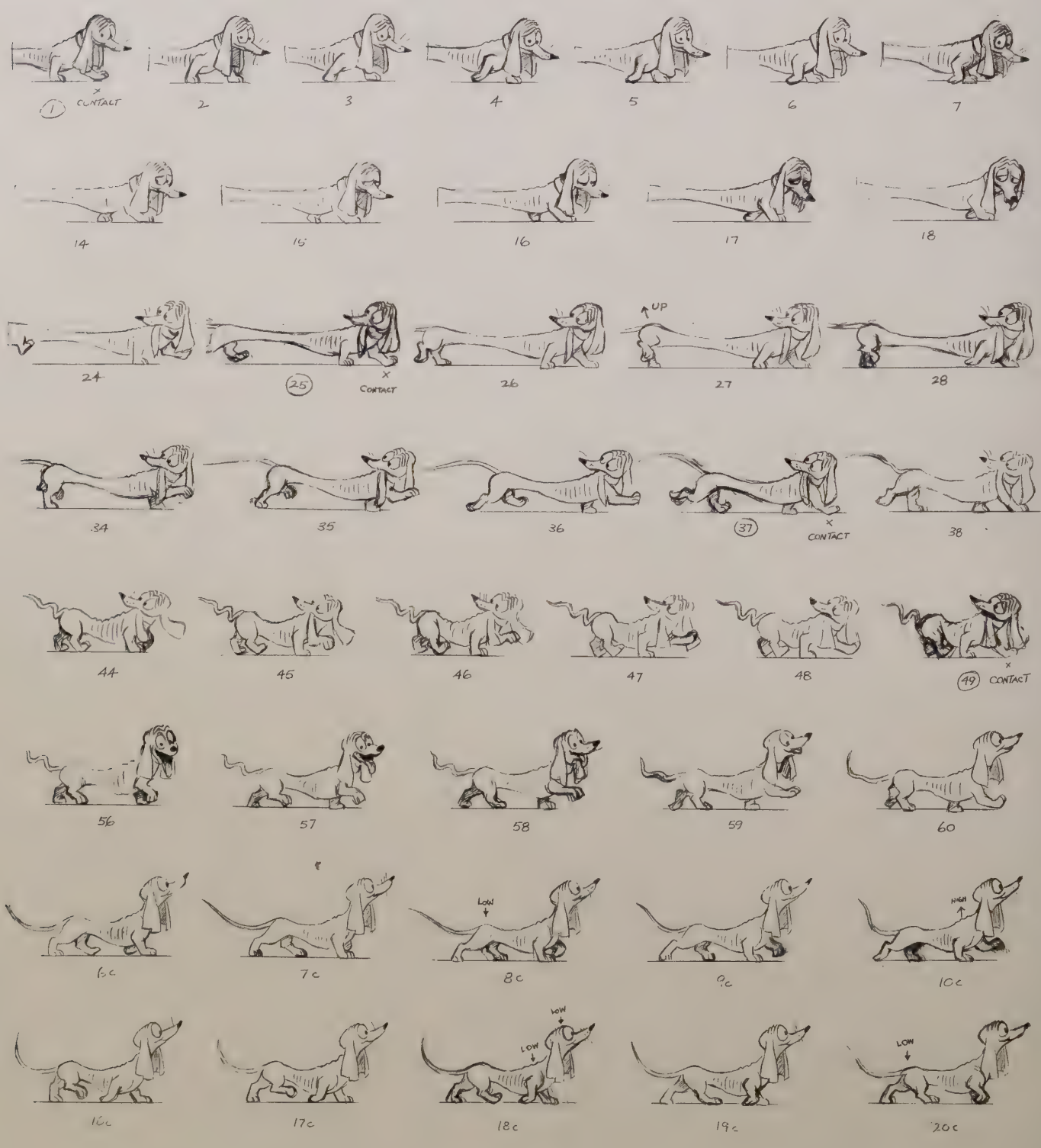




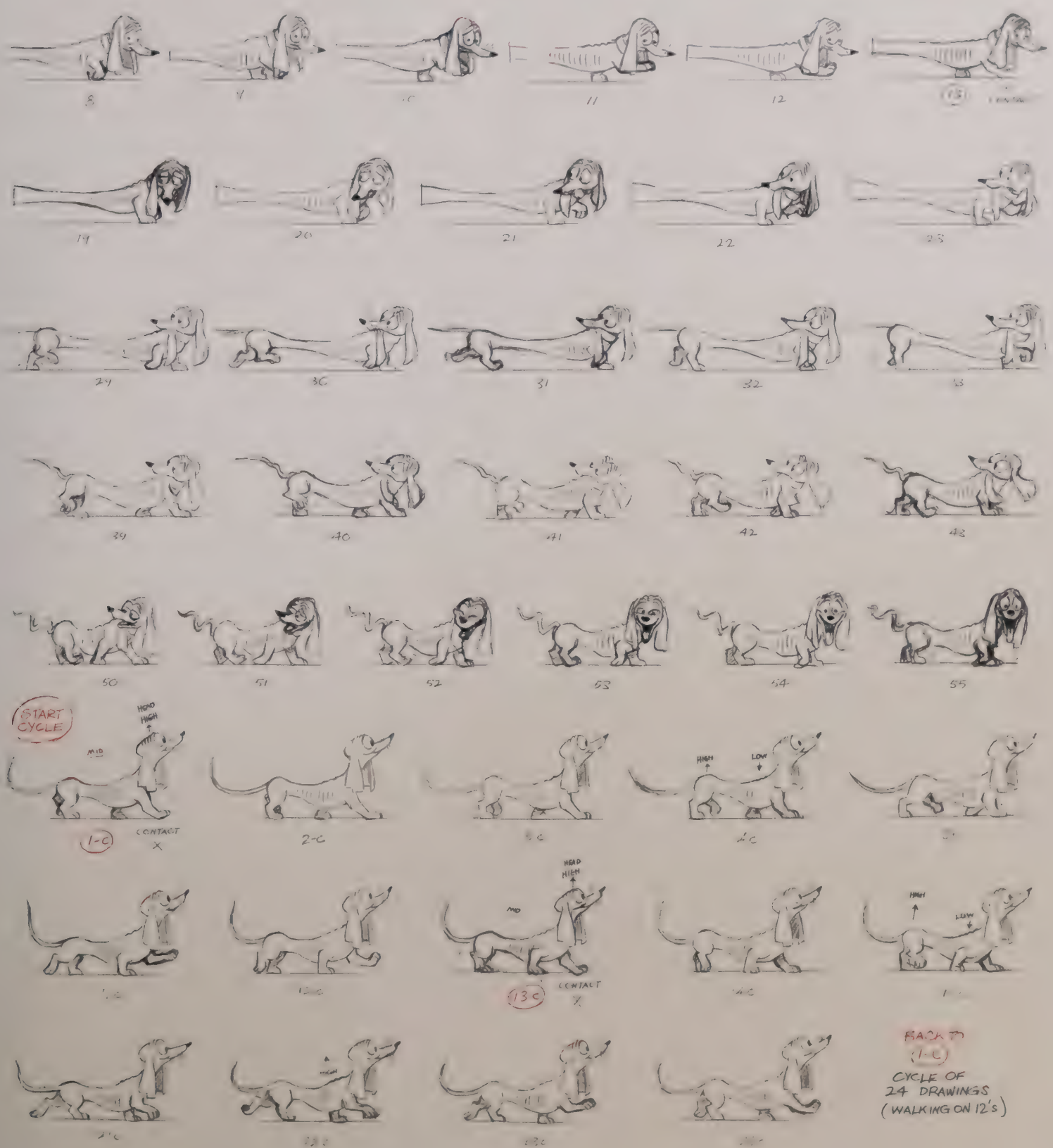


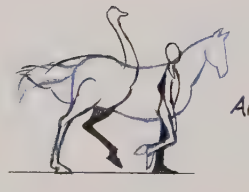
MOST ANIMALS MOVE IN A SIMILAR WAY— DEPENDING ON THEIR SIZE AND SHAPE. ONCE WE UNDERSTAND HOW ONE OF THEM MOVES WE CAN APPLY IT TO OTHER ANIMALS.

AND OF COURSE, WE'LL EXAGGERATE THESE PRINCIPLES WITH A CARTOON DOG. SHE'S WALKING ON 12's



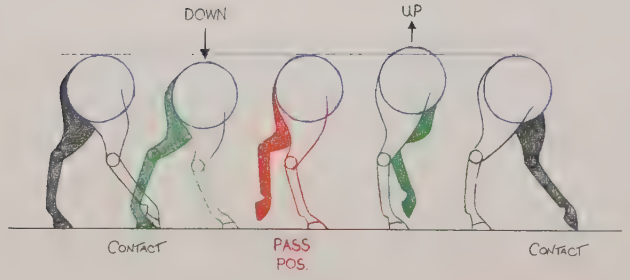
SHE ENDS UP ON A CYCLE OF 24. THE HIGHS + LOWS ARE THE BASIC DOG WALK SHOWN ON PAGE 330 AND 331.



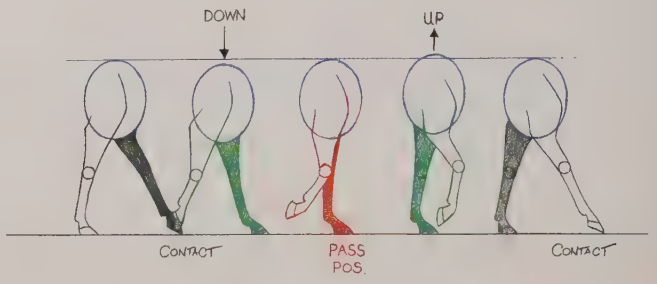
DOES A HORSE WALK LIKE  AN OSTRICH AND A MAN? (PAGE 329)

ANSWER: WELL, ALMOST!

HOW DOES A HORSE REALLY WALK?



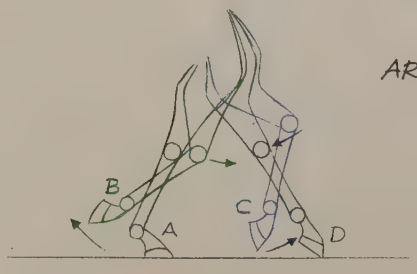
HERE ARE THE UPS + DOWNS ON THE REAR LEGS



AND HERE ARE THE UPS + DOWNS ON THE FRONT LEGS

HOW DO YOU PUT THEM TOGETHER? HERE'S HOW THEY COMBINE: (THIS IS PLANNED FROM THE BACK LEG CONTACTS WHERE THE POWER COMES FROM.)

THE BACK LEGS (THE POWER DRIVE) ARE KIND OF CLUMSY...

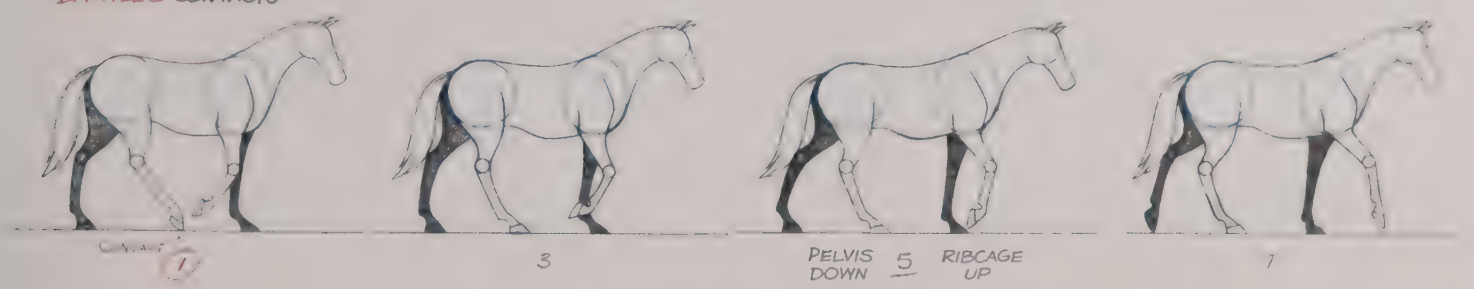


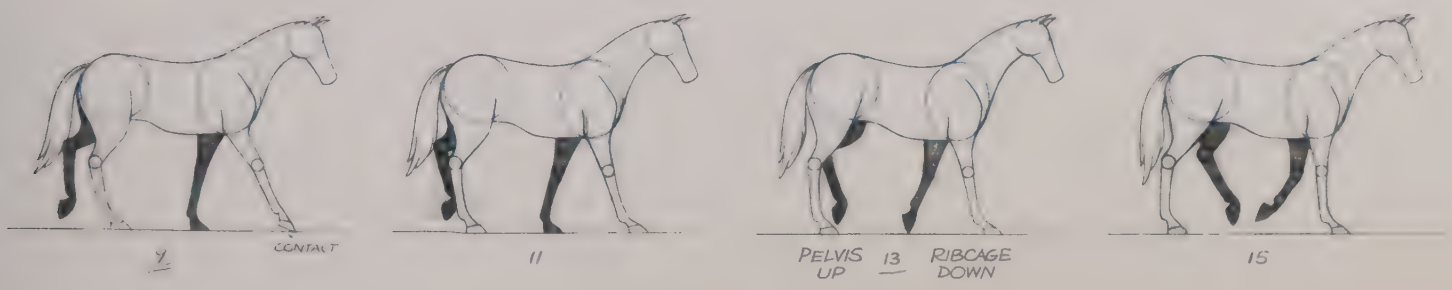
FRONT LEGS

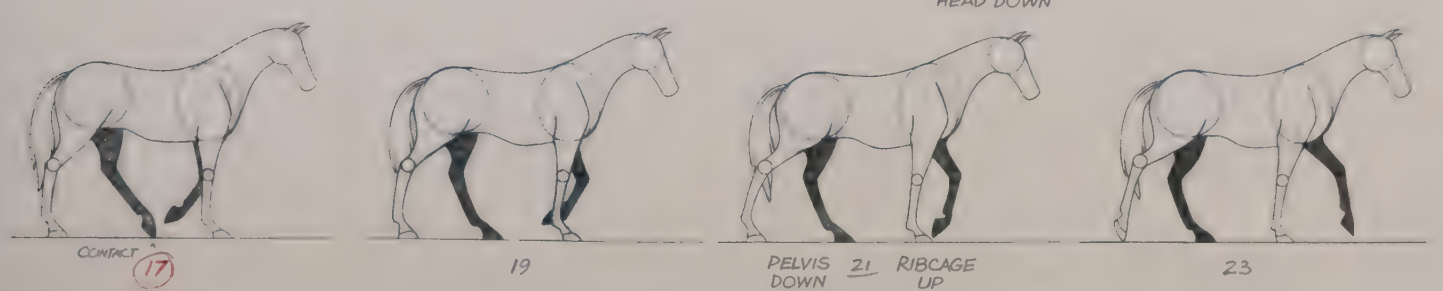
BUT THE FRONT LEGS ARE WHERE THE ELEGANCE COMES FROM. IT'S LIKE A BALLET DANCER "BREAKING THE JOINTS"

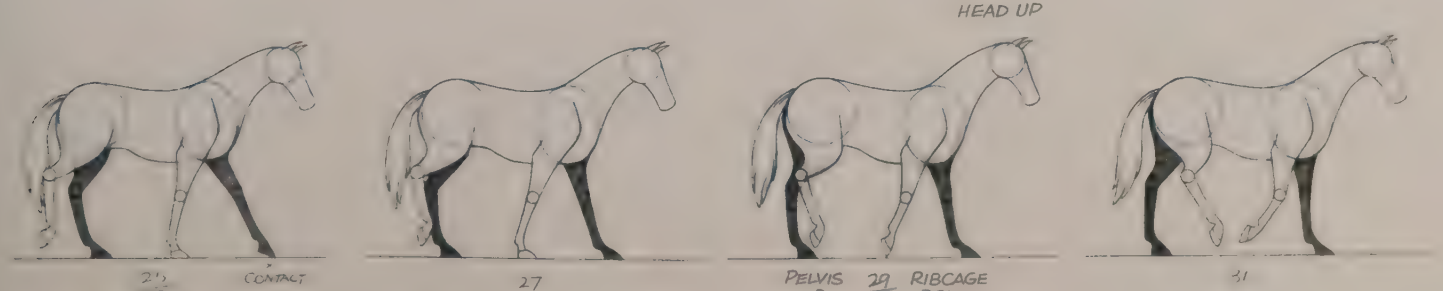
HERE IT IS ON TWO'S (WHICH WORKS.) OBVIOUSLY IT FUNCTIONS BETTER WITH ONES ADDED FOR FLUIDITY.
THE EXTREMES ARE CIRCLED AND THE BREAKDOWNS UNDERLINED FOR CLARITY.

PLANNED FROM THE BACK LEG CONTACTS -



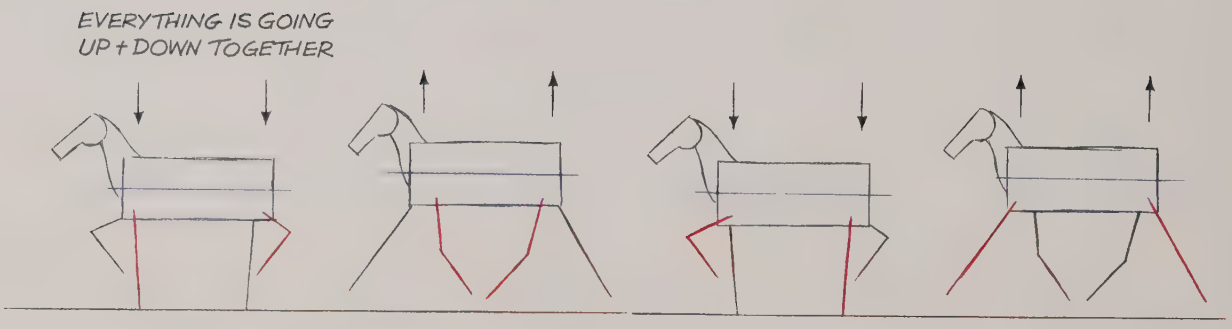




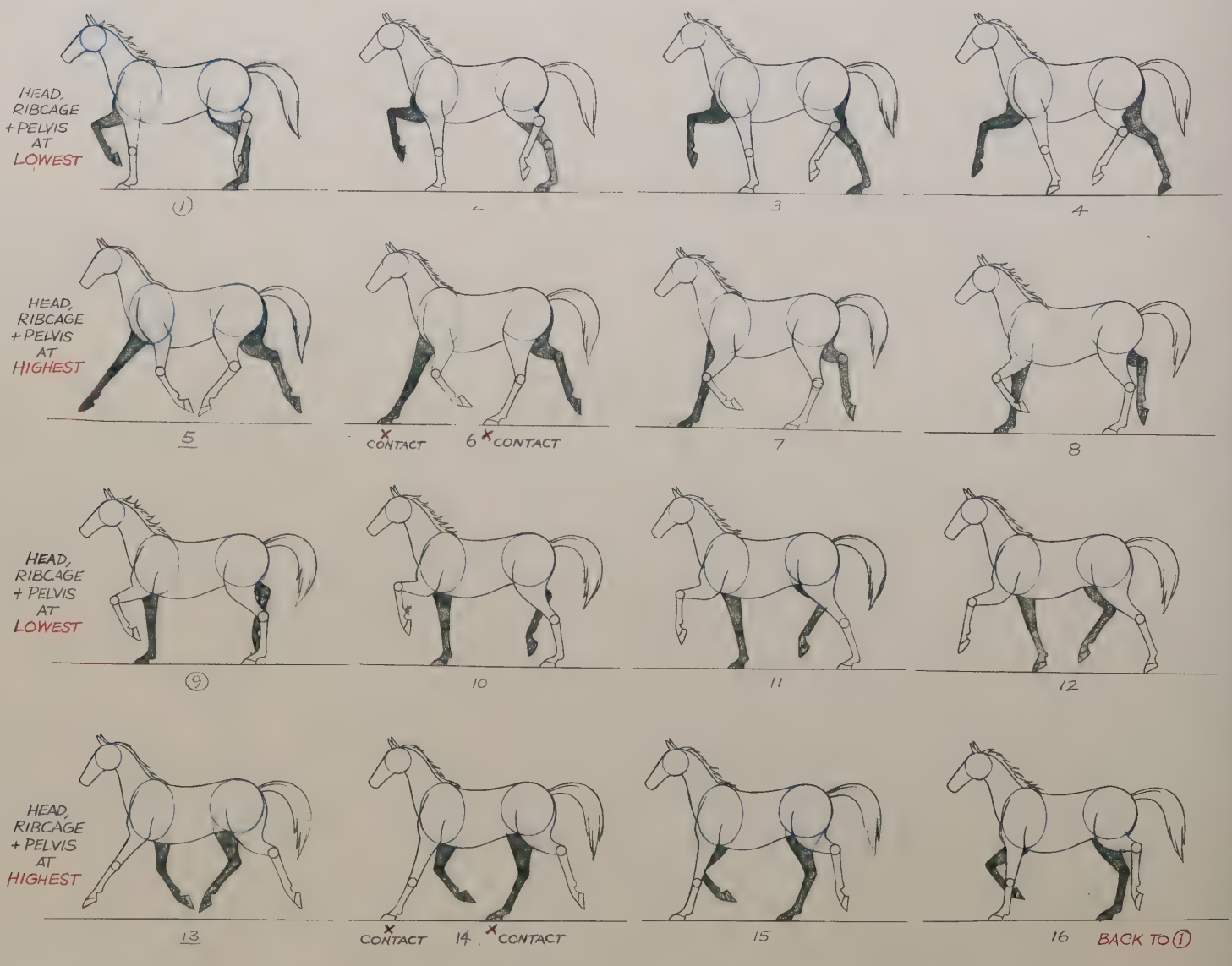


BACK TO 1

HORSE TROTTING


EVERYTHING IS GOING UP + DOWN TOGETHER
1
5
9
13
FRONT AND REAR GO DOWN TOGETHER
FRONT AND REAR GO UP TOGETHER
OPPOSITE LEGS LIFT AND CONTACT AT THE SAME TIME!

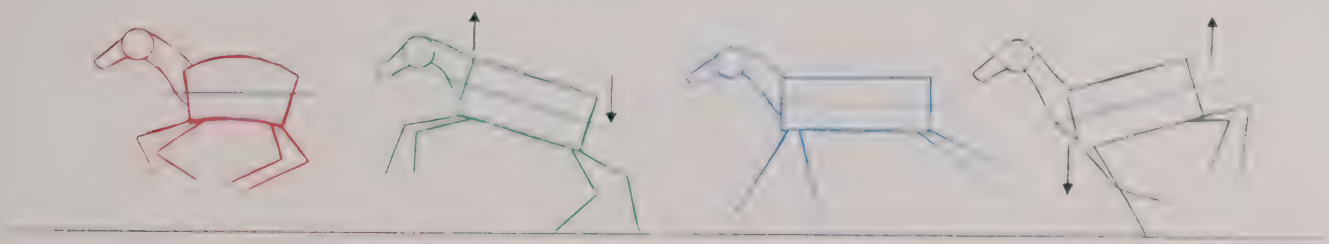
ALL THESE QUICK ACTIONS ARE PLANNED FROM THE UPS + DOWNS OF THE BODY MASS - NOT THE LEG CONTACTS.



HORSE GALLOPING

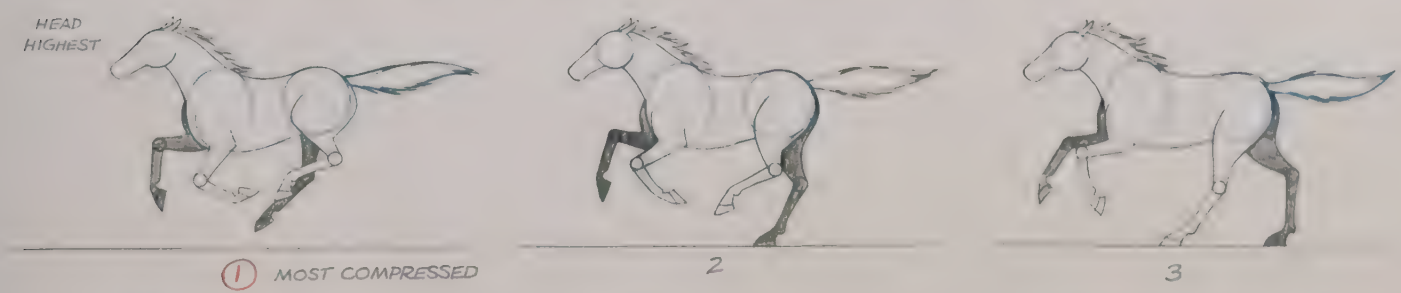
THE HORSE'S SPINE IS MUCH LESS FLEXIBLE THAN MANY OTHER ANIMALS. (IS THAT WHY WE CAN SIT ON THEM?)

EXAGGERATED GALLOP PATTERN

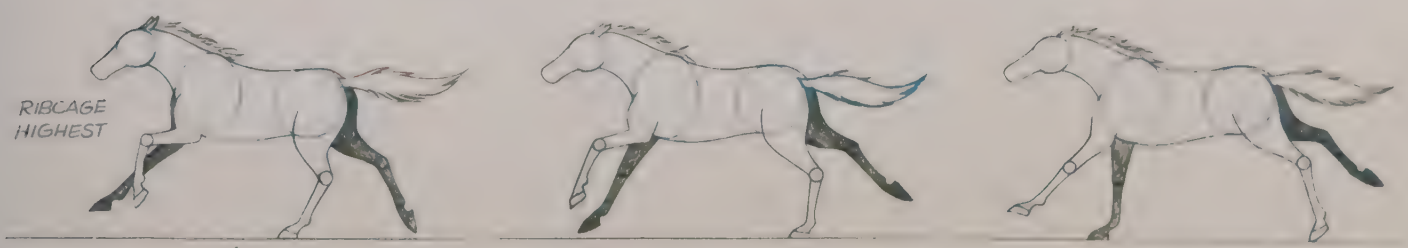


1 MOST COMPRESSED — 4 TILTED SEE-SAW — 7 MOST STRETCHED — 10 TILTED SEE-SAW

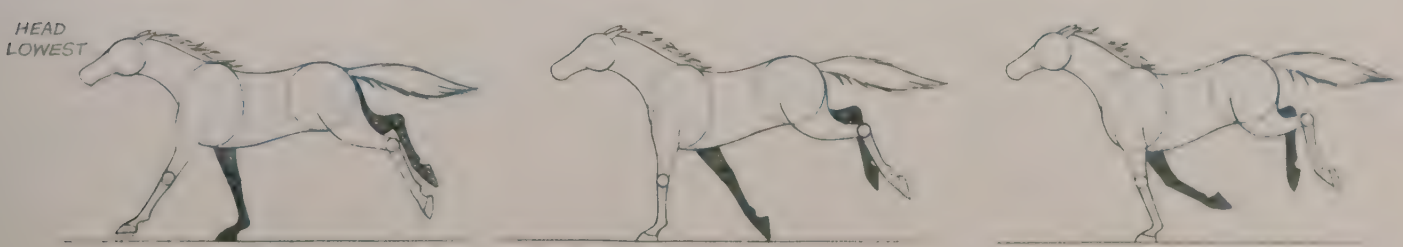
THE FASTER A FIGURE GOES - THE MORE WE PLAN FROM THE BODY AND NOT FROM THE LEG CONTACTS.



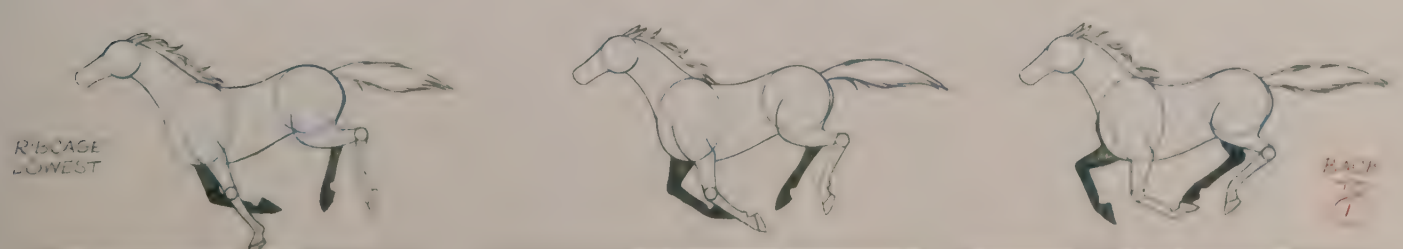
1 MOST COMPRESSED — 2 — 3



4 PELVIS LOWEST — 5 — 6



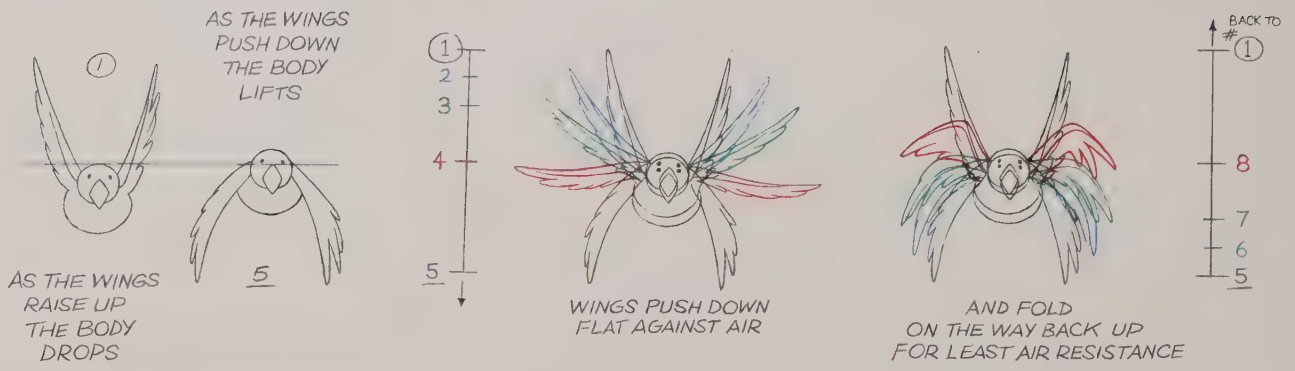
7 MOST STRETCHED — 8 — 9



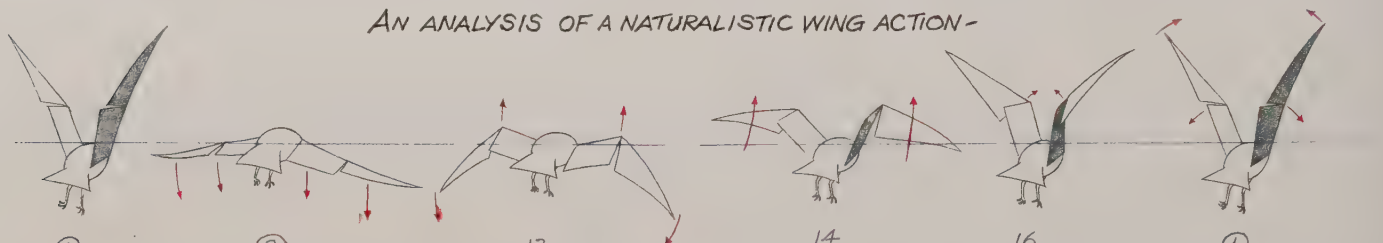
10 PELVIS HIGHEST — 11 — 12

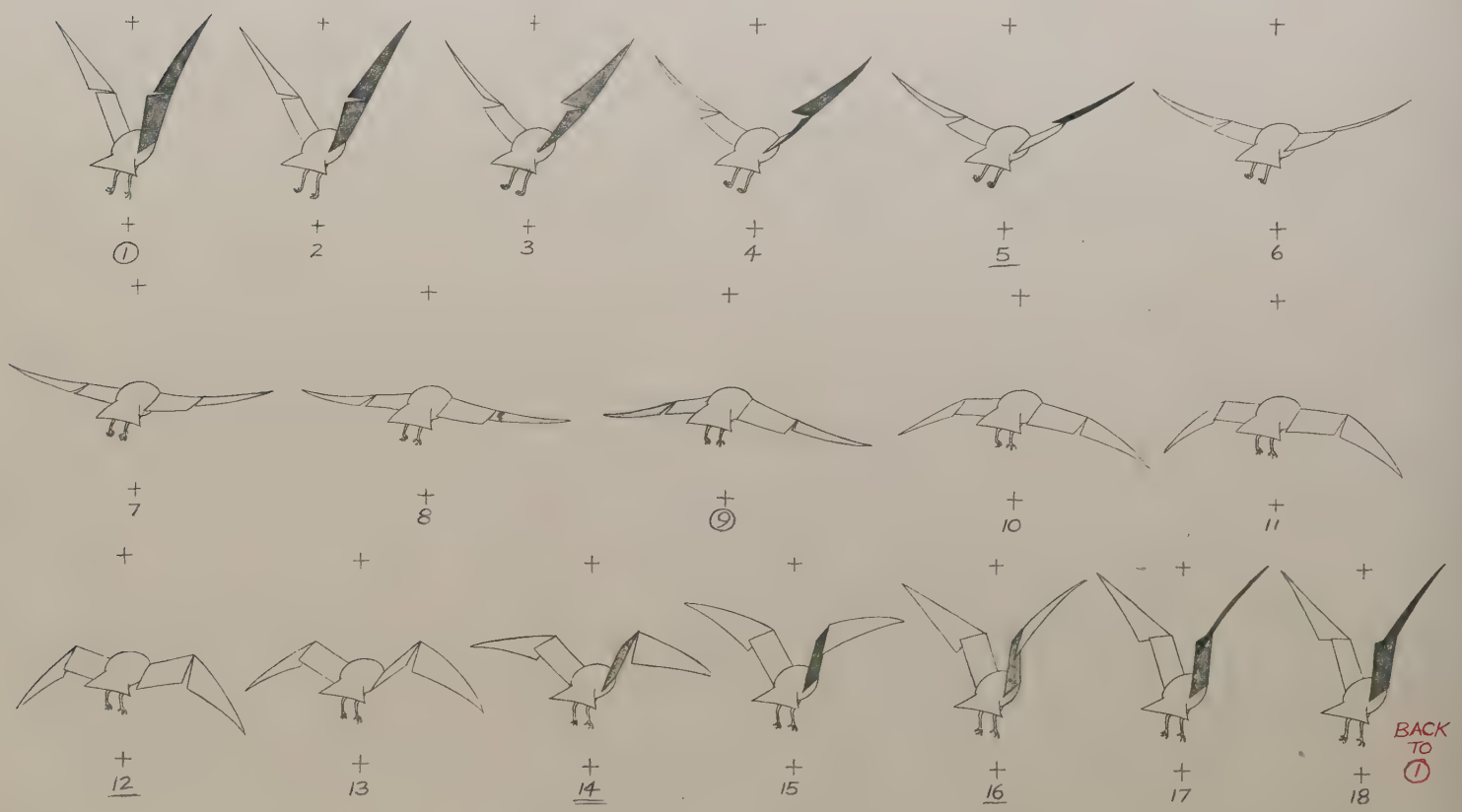
BIRDS

CARTOON FORMULA FOR A WING FLAP



AN ANALYSIS OF A NATURALISTIC WING ACTION -

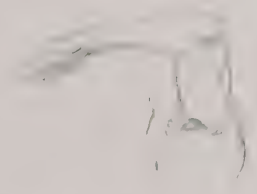

1
9
WINGS FLAT-PUSHING DOWN AGAINST AIR - WHICH PUSHES THE BODY UP.
12
INNER WINGS GO UP AS THE OUTER WINGS CONTINUE DOWN
14
OUTER WINGS SLICE UP FOR MINIMUM AIR RESISTANCE
16
INNER WINGS REACH THEIR HIGHEST POINT
1
INNER WINGS START DOWN AGAIN AS OUTER WINGS CONTINUE UP

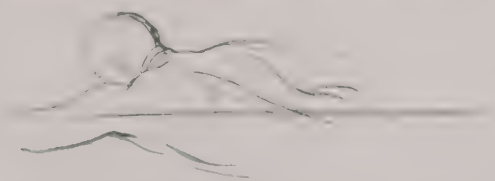


A CHALLENGING ASSIGNMENT IN "REALISM" AND WEIGHT

WHEN I ANIMATED THE "LIFE DRAWING" MAN ON THE COVER OF THIS BOOK (FOR OUR DVD BOX SET) I DECIDED TO HAVE HIM 'SWIM' INTO THE SCREEN AND THEN GET OUT OF THE IMAGINARY POOL AND START WALKING.

MANY PEOPLE SAW IT AND SAID I HAD 'ROTOSCOPED' IT – TRACED SOME LIVE ACTION. WRONG. I MADE IT ALL UP. ACTUALLY, I DID TRY TO FIND SOME FILMED REFERENCE BUT THERE WAS NOTHING I COULD USE.

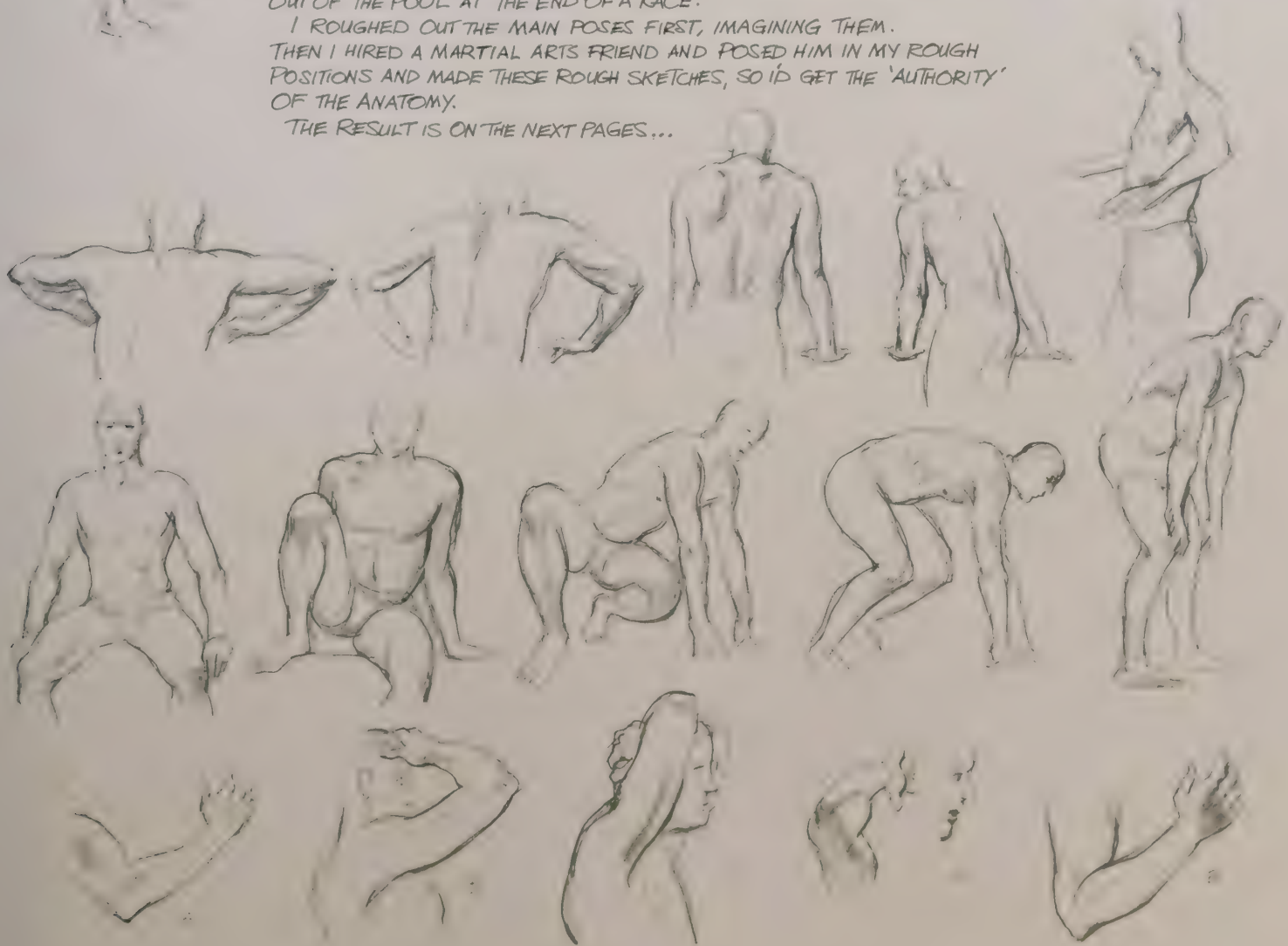




IT'S EASIER FOR US TO ANIMATE ANY SPORT THAT WE'RE GOOD AT - OR ARE FAMILIAR WITH, SINCE WE "KNOW" THE POSITIONS INSTINCTIVELY. I USED TO BE A COMPETITIVE SWIMMER - SO I DECIDED TO JUST TRY TO REMEMBER THE SWIMMING POSITIONS AND HOW WE USED TO GET OUT OF THE POOL AT THE END OF A RACE.

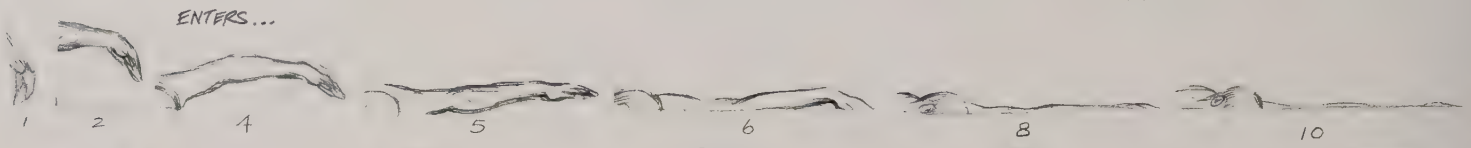
I ROUGHED OUT THE MAIN POSES FIRST, IMAGINING THEM. THEN I HIRED A MARTIAL ARTS FRIEND AND POSED HIM IN MY ROUGH POSITIONS AND MADE THESE ROUGH SKETCHES, SO I'D GET THE 'AUTHORITY' OF THE ANATOMY.

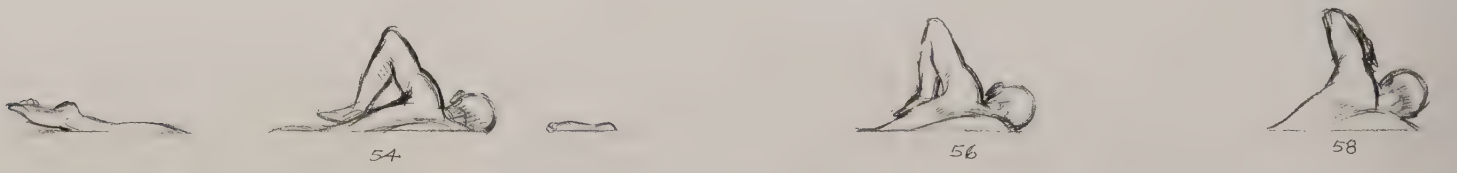
THE RESULT IS ON THE NEXT PAGES...



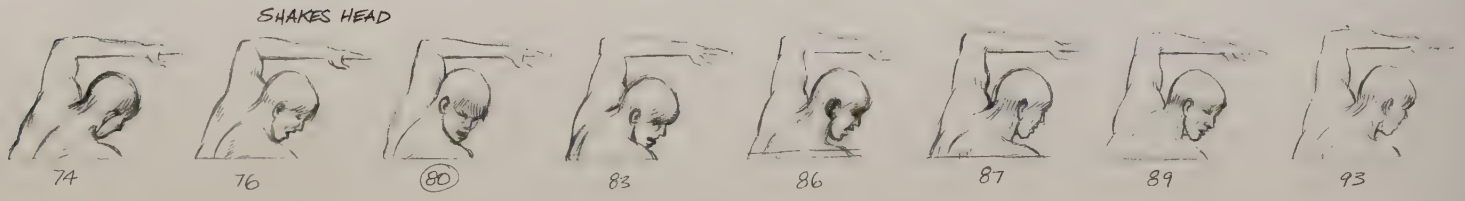
ALSO, MOST OF THIS HAD TO BE ON ONES—TO GIVE IT THE 'LIVE ACTION' FEEL. NATURALLY, I EASED IN AND EASED OUT AND BROKE THINGS UP INTO DIFFERENT BITS SO THAT EVERYTHING IS NOT HAPPENING AT THE SAME TIME.

ENTERS...



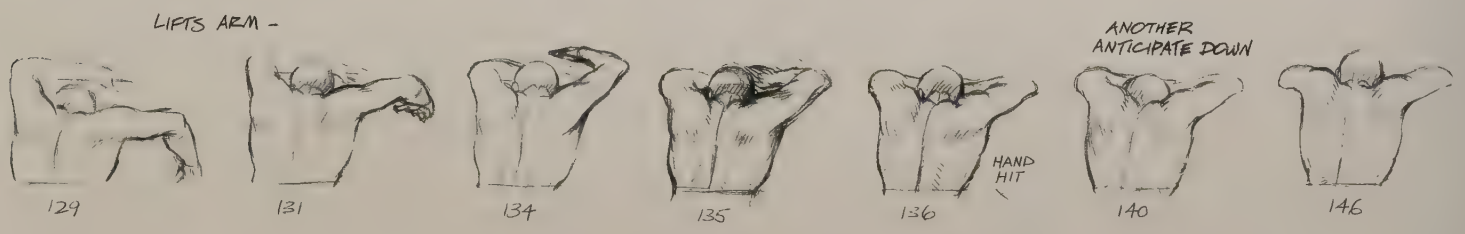


SHAKES HEAD

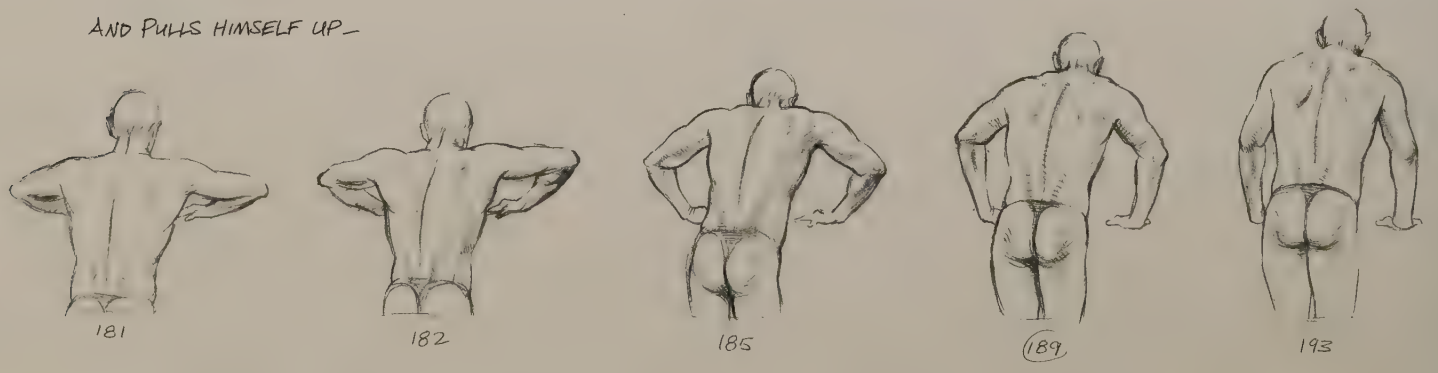


LIFTS ARM -

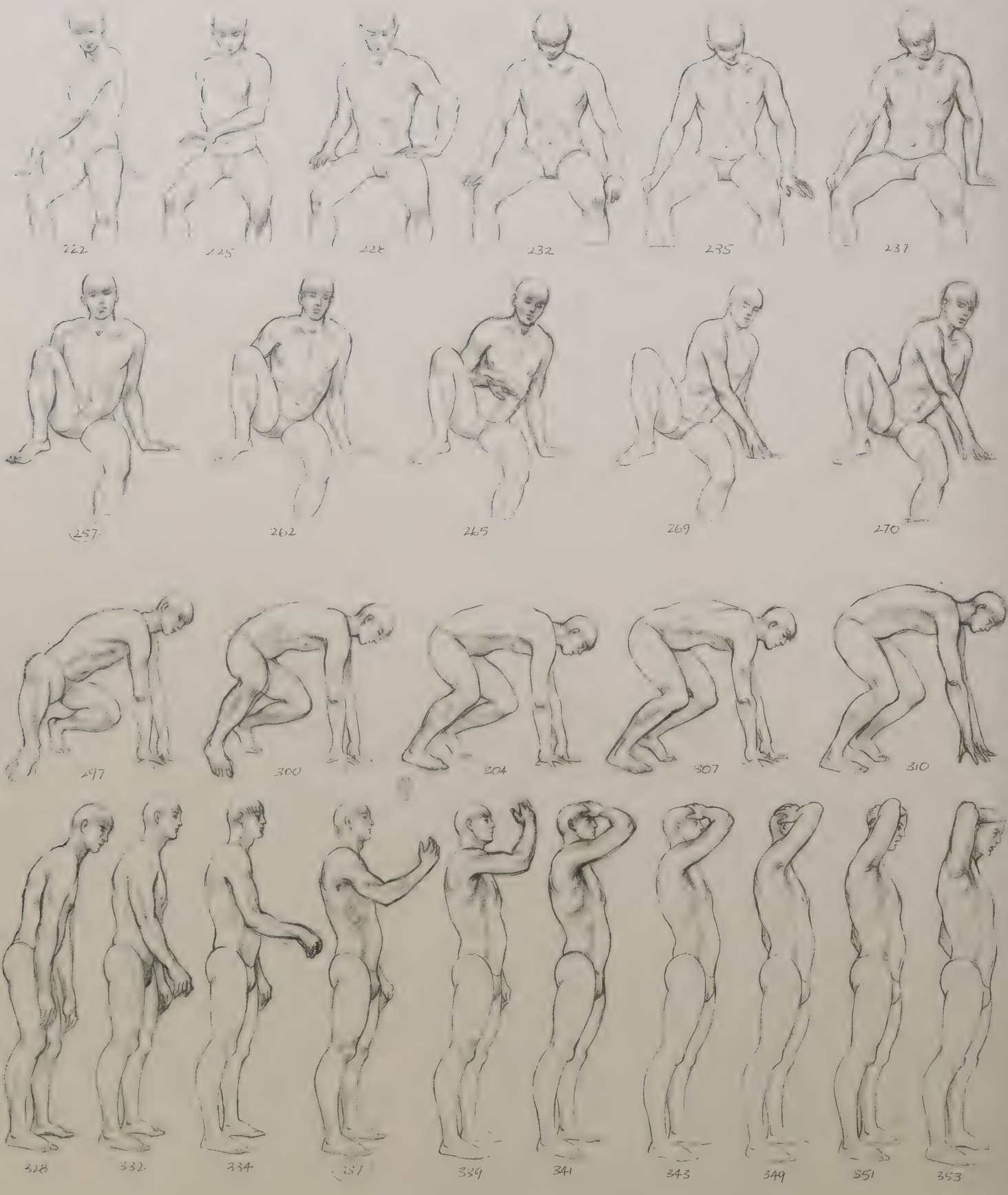
ANOTHER ANTICIPATE DOWN



AND PULLS HIMSELF UP—

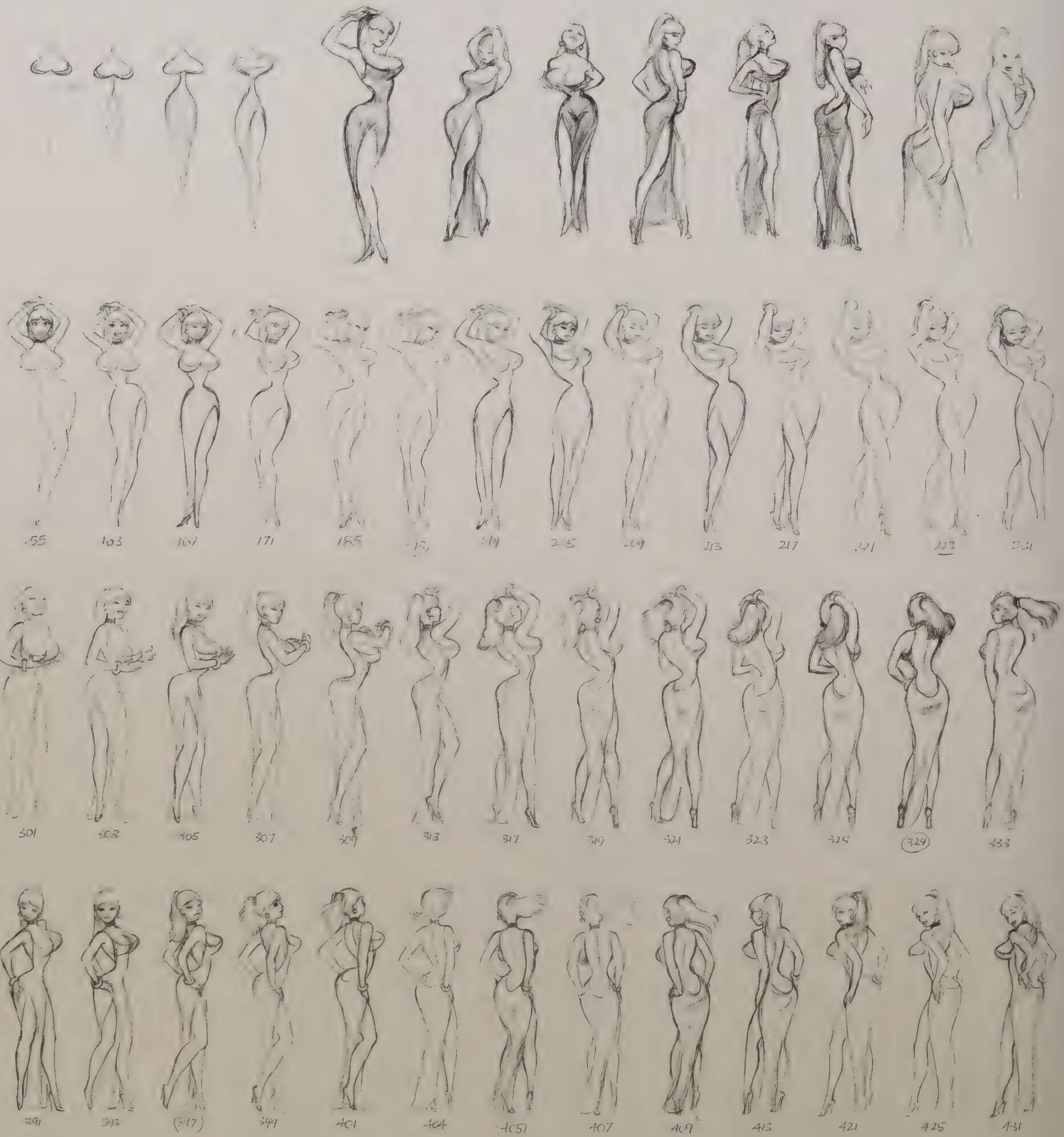


THERE WERE ROUGHLY 400 DRAWINGS. THESE ARE MY ROUGHS. UNFORTUNATELY BECAUSE OF THE 'OLD' CEL SYSTEM I CHOSE TO ANIMATE MOST OF THE 12-LOGO CHARACTERS, I HAD TO REDRAW ALL THESE PENCIL DRAWINGS ONTO FROSTED CELS SO THEY COULD BE PAINTED.


222
225
228
232
235
237
257
262
265
269
270
297
300
304
307
310
328
332
334
337
339
341
343
349
351
353

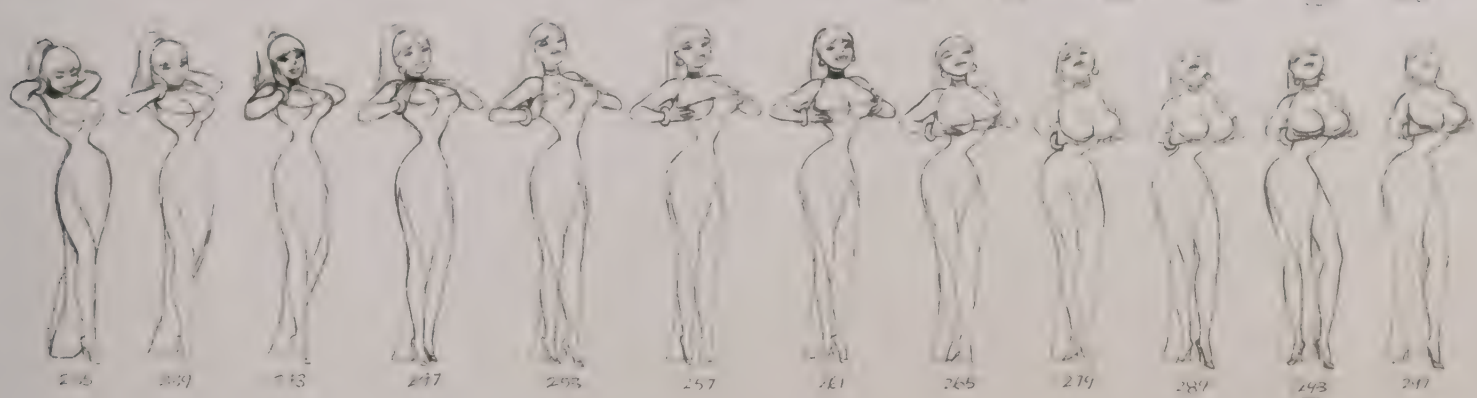
AND
STEPS INTO
A WALK CYCLE

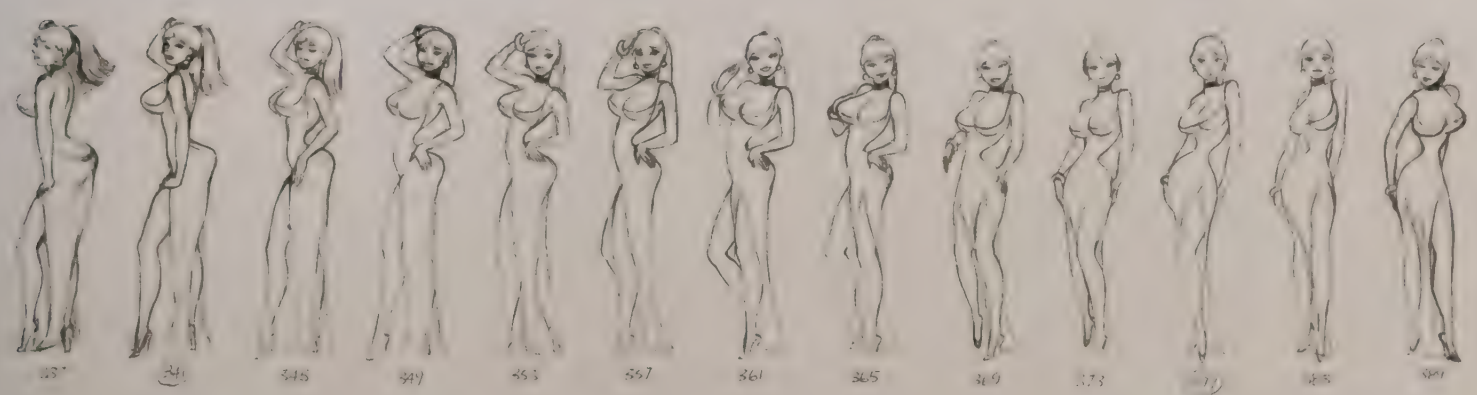
HERE'S MY "VERONIQUE" CHARACTER FROM THE COVER OF THIS BOOK- ANIMATED FOR OUR 16 DVD BOX SET.
NATURALLY I STARTED WITH PRELIMINARY SKETCHES- TO GET TO KNOW HER BETTER...

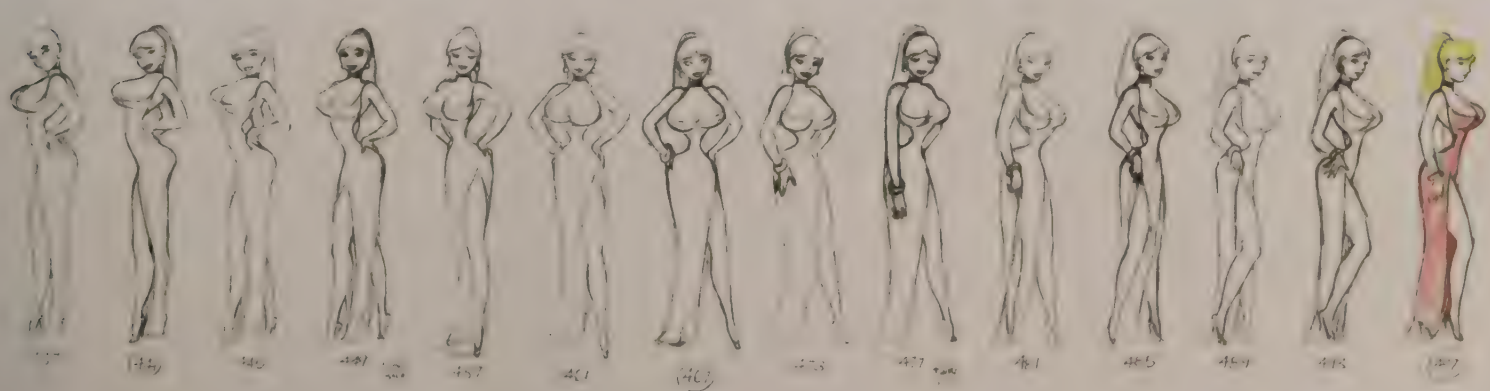


THEN I MADE THE (KEYS) WHICH ARE CIRCLED. THE REST ARE THE EXTREMES-AS THERE'S NO [illegible] FOR ALL THE DRAWINGS. UNFORTUNATELY FOR ME SHE HAD TO BE MOSTLY ON ONES BECAUSE SHE'S [illegible] ACROSS THE SCREEN AND IF SHE WAS ON TWOS SHE WOULD STROBE (JITTER). SHE'S ON TWOS WHEN SHES "STATIC."

SHE APPEARS AS IF BEHIND A CURTAIN—





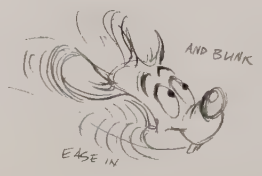


HOLDS

VERY OFTEN A HOLD IS THE STRONGEST STATEMENT WE CAN MAKE!

BUT HOW TO AVOID THE CLUNK OF COMING TO A DEAD STOP? HOW DO WE GET IN AND OUT OF HOLDS? OBVIOUSLY WE'D EASE IN AND EASE OUT OF A HOLD. BUT IT'S IMPORTANT TO NOT HAVE EVERYTHING STOP (OR START) ALL AT THE SAME TIME. ONE OR ANOTHER PART WILL TEND TO KEEP GOING SLIGHTLY = OVERLAPPING ACTION. TRY TO ACT OUT A STRONG HOLD AND SOME BITS, HANDS, HAIR, DRAPERY WILL KEEP GOING FOR A LITTLE BIT.

AN OFTEN-USED DEVICE TO TAKE THE CURSE OFF COMING TO A STOP—

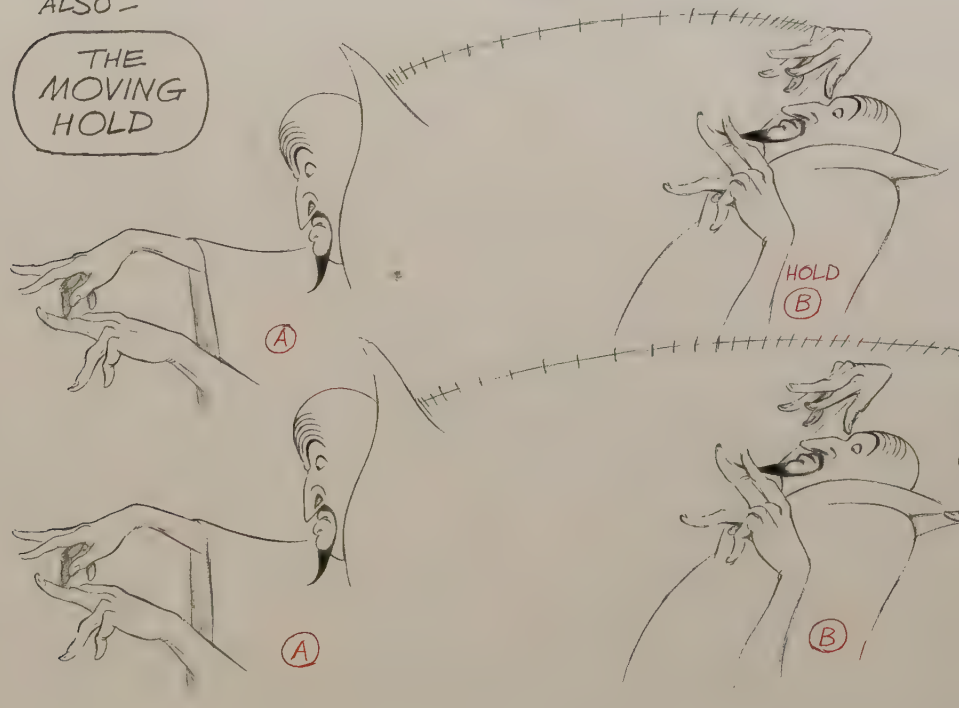


—HAVE THE CHARACTER BLINK AS SOON AS IT STOPS.

(ALSO) IT'S EFFECTIVE TO HAVE A DEAD HOLD WITH JUST ONE SMALL PART MOVING:

ALSO—

THE MOVING HOLD



INSTEAD OF JUST CUSHIONING BACK FROM (A) TO (B)— MAKE AN EVEN STRONGER POSITION (C) AND CUSHION INTO THIS. WE CAN ALSO KEEP A HAND MOVING— AN EYE BLINK— AND DRAPERY SETTLING etc.

KEEPS IT ALIVE—

THE GREAT "REALISM" DEBATE

THE BIG QUESTION IS:

HOW MUCH REALISM DO WE WANT TO ACHIEVE?

THIS HAS BEEN GOING ON FOR NEARLY 100 YEARS BUT IT IS ALL BEING BROUGHT TO A HEAD BY TODAY'S TREMENDOUS 'REALISM' ADVANCEMENTS IN COMPUTER GENERATED IMAGERY AND MOTION CAPTURE TECHNOLOGY. SINCE THIS BOOK WAS PUBLISHED THIS HAS BECOME A REAL DEBATE.

PRODUCERS NOWADAYS SAY:

"ALL WE HAVE TO DO IS DECIDE WHAT TO DO BECAUSE NOW THAT THE TECHNOLOGY EXISTS WE CAN DO ANYTHING!"

HERE ARE THE ARGUMENTS (AS I SEE THEM). DRAW YOUR OWN CONCLUSIONS.

LET'S START WITH CLASSICAL 2D HISTORY AND WORK UP TO TODAY'S MOTION CAPTURE.

In 1916 animators already said -
"IF PEOPLE CAN DO IT- DON'T DO IT."

In the 1940's Director Tex Avery said -
"YOU CAN DO ANYTHING IN A CARTOON!"

Director Chuck Jones said -
"ANIMATION, AS I UNDERSTAND IT, IS THE ART OF THE IMPOSSIBLE."

Walt Disney said -
"DO THINGS WHICH HUMANS ARE UNABLE TO DO."

Animator Art Babbitt said -
"WE CAN ACCOMPLISH ACTIONS NO HUMAN COULD POSSIBLY DO. IT'S THE FANTASY/IMAGINATION/CARICATURE WHICH SEPARATES ANIMATION FROM LIVE ACTION."

Animator Preston Blair said -
"ANIMATION MADE FROM THE IMAGINATION - THAT IS THE ART THAT CAN SEND A VIEWER INTO ANOTHER DIMENSION."

Back in 1972 I won my first Oscar for a realistically animated ½ hour version of Dickens' A CHRISTMAS CAROL. Executive Producer Chuck Jones got me the job and insisted that I keep to realistic illustration of the 1850's period. After the Oscar ceremony - top Director-Animator Bill Melendez and Disney animation genius Ward Kimball attacked me in a corner —

THEY FELT I WAS A TRAITOR TO THE MEDIUM BECAUSE I'D GONE TOO CLOSE TO 'REALISM'. (Incidentally, we used very little live action reference. - Just made it all up.)

BACK IN THE 1930s WALT DISNEY WAS DEVELOPING THE MEDIUM BY PUSHING HIS ANIMATORS FOR MORE BELIEVABILITY - NOT REALISM AS SUCH - BUT STRIVING TO HAVE HIS IMAGINATIVE CHARACTERS MOVE BELIEVABLY.

FOR THIS THEY NATURALLY TURNED TO LIVE ACTION FOR STUDY.

Disney said-

"I DEFINITELY FEEL WE CANNOT DO THE FANTASTIC THINGS BASED ON THE REAL - UNLESS WE FIRST KNOW THE REAL."

He also said-

"STUDY LIVE ACTION FOR THE MECHANICS — THEN LOOK AT IT FROM THE ANGLE OF WHAT THESE HUMANS COULD DO IF THEY WEREN'T HELD DOWN BY THE LIMITATIONS OF THE HUMAN BODY AND GRAVITY.
DON'T DUPLICATE REAL ACTION OR THINGS AS THEY ACTUALLY HAPPEN - BUT GIVE A CARICATURE OF LIFE AND ACTION...
OUR WORK IS A CARICATURE OF LIFE."

HE CALLED IT THE "PLAUSIBLE IMPOSSIBLE." THEY COULD DO IMPOSSIBLE THINGS BUT MAKE IT APPEAR CONVINCINGLY REAL.

Great Disney animator Bill Tytla said -

"IT WAS A REVELATION WHEN I SAW LIVE ACTION! RUNNING FILMS IN SLOW MOTION WAS REALLY A LIFE SAVER FOR ME!"

SO

- HOW DO WE USE LIVE ACTION?
- OR DO WE USE IT AT ALL?
- OR DO WE JUST USE BITS?

EARLY ON IN THE 1930's THEY DISCOVERED THAT IF AN ACCOMPLISHED ARTIST EXACTLY TRACED (ROTOSCOPED) THE LIVE ACTION FRAMES OF A WOMAN WALKING - WHEN IT'S RE-FILMED SHE 'FLOATS' WEIGHTLESSLY. RUN THE LIVE ACTION AND SHE HAS BELIEVABLE WEIGHT, OF COURSE. BUT RUN THE PENCIL TRACINGS AND SHE LOSES WEIGHT AND BELIEVABILITY.

THIS IS BECAUSE THERE IS SO MUCH INFORMATION TO READ! OUR BRAIN IS NORMALLY PICKING UP SO MUCH INFORMATION - MORE THAN WE ARE CONSCIOUS OF - AND THE DRAWINGS DON'T PICK ENOUGH OF IT UP. (Also, when you see a traced live action bit of animation you somehow feel cheated. It's not live action and it's not animation.)

THE SOLUTION:

WAS TO SLIGHTLY EXAGGERATE THE UPS AND DOWNS AND EXTREME BITS - AND IT BECAME CONVINCING.

FOR THE REALISTIC CHARACTERS IN HIS ANIMATED FEATURES, DISNEY USUALLY HAD LIVE ACTORS FILMED, ACTING OUT THE MAIN PARTS AS REFERENCE FOR THE ANIMATORS.

THE UNDISPUTED MASTER OF REALISTIC CHARACTERS AT DISNEY'S WAS MILT KAHL. HE COMPLAINED THAT HE WAS USUALLY STUCK WITH THE 'STRAIGHT' CHARACTERS, PRIMARILY BECAUSE NO ONE COULD DRAW AS WELL AS HE COULD.

I OFTEN TALKED TO MILT ABOUT ANIMATING CONVINCING REALISM AND I WOULD WRITE DOWN MANY OF THE THINGS HE SAID.

HERE'S A COMPILATION:

"WE USED TO USE LIVE ACTION A LOT FOR REFERENCE. I USED IT MYSELF BUT NOT BLINDLY. I'D JUST USE PARTS OF IT. PARTS THAT I THOUGHT WERE PRETTY GOOD, AND IT SAVED ME TIME.

TRACING IT CAN BE DEADLY. LIKE TRACING A PHOTOGRAPH. MOST ANIMATORS DON'T KNOW HOW TO USE ROTOSCOPE PROPERLY. THEY USE IT FOR A CRUTCH. IT'S REALLY JUST A TOOL - REFERENCE MATERIAL.

YOU ONLY USE WHAT YOU NEED AND THROW THE REST OF THE STUFF OUT.

BUT GUYS WOULD OFTEN COPY THE DAMNED STUFF BECAUSE THEY DIDN'T HAVE TO THINK. THEY'D DRAW THE CHARACTER OVER THE PHOTOSTATS AND THEN CHANGE IT ACCORDING TO HOW THE CHARACTER'S BUILT. AND THAT'S WHAT YOU'D GET. YOU'D GET A PASSABLE RESULT - BUT IT WON'T BE INTERESTING. THAT'S NO WAY TO WORK!

YOU OWE IT TO YOURSELF AND THE MEDIUM TO KNOW - TO KNOW HOW THINGS WORK - SO YOU CAN DO THEM WITHOUT HAVING THE LIVE ACTION CRUTCH."

MILT THOUGHT THE MUYBRIDGE BOOK PHOTOS WERE MARVELLOUS. HE SAID THAT HE HAD GOTTEN MORE VALUE OUT OF STUDYING MUYBRIDGE THAN ALMOST ANYTHING ELSE IN ANIMATION. BECAUSE THE FIGURES HAVE GRAPHIC CHECK LINE GRIDS BEHIND THEM, WE CAN SEE THE RELATIONSHIP OF HOW HIGH OR LOW THINGS ARE. WE CAN SEE THE MOTION OF THE SKELETON. WE CAN SEE WHERE A SCAPULA IS, WHAT PART IS SAGGING AND WHAT ISN'T. THERE'S NEVER BEEN ANYTHING AS COMPREHENSIVE AS THE MUYBRIDGE HUMAN AND ANIMAL BOOKS.

MILT AGAIN:

"YOU GET SO YOU CAN ANALYSE - LIKE LEARNING A LANGUAGE. YOU GET TO KNOW JUST WHERE THE WEIGHT IS - AND WHERE MUSCULAR EFFORT IS BEING USED - AND WHERE THINGS ARE JUST GOING ALONG WITH MOMENTUM, AND SWINGING THROUGH, - THAT SORT OF THING.

NOT ONLY WHERE THE WEIGHT IS, BUT WHERE THE SWITCH OF WEIGHT OCCURS. A LEG MAKES A FOOT CONTACT WITH NO WEIGHT ON IT AND THEN CHANGES SHAPE WHEN THE WEIGHT GETS ON IT. IT'S DAMNED INTERESTING.

IT'S ALMOST LIKE STUDYING FILM ITSELF EXCEPT YOU HAVE A LOT OF TIME TO RESEARCH IT AND YOU DON'T HAVE TO RUN BACK AND FORTH OVER IT TO GET THE ACTION. AND YOU'VE GOT IT ALL ON ONE PAGE.

YES, BUT...

HOW DO WE SQUARE ALL THIS WITH THE STARTLING AND IMPRESSIVE EXPLOSION OF COMPUTER GENERATED TECHNOLOGY AND MOTION CAPTURE?

OF COURSE, EVERYBODY THESE DAYS (Classical, Digital, Stop motion or Games) USES LIVE ACTION REFERENCE TO SOME DEGREE – AND WITH CONSIDERABLE EFFECT. BUT THE SUCCESSFUL DEVELOPMENT OF MOTION CAPTURE LEADS US INTO STRANGE AND UNKNOWN TERRITORY – WHERE WE CAN LITERALLY CAPTURE REALISM AND MORPH IT ONTO A COMPUTER GENERATED CHARACTER.

PETER LORD, Aardman Animation Director PUTS IT BEAUTIFULLY –

"IN THE COMPUTER WORLD PEOPLE WITH EVER GREATER BRAINS CAN CREATE EVER GREATER REALISM IN EVER GREATER DETAIL –

BUT

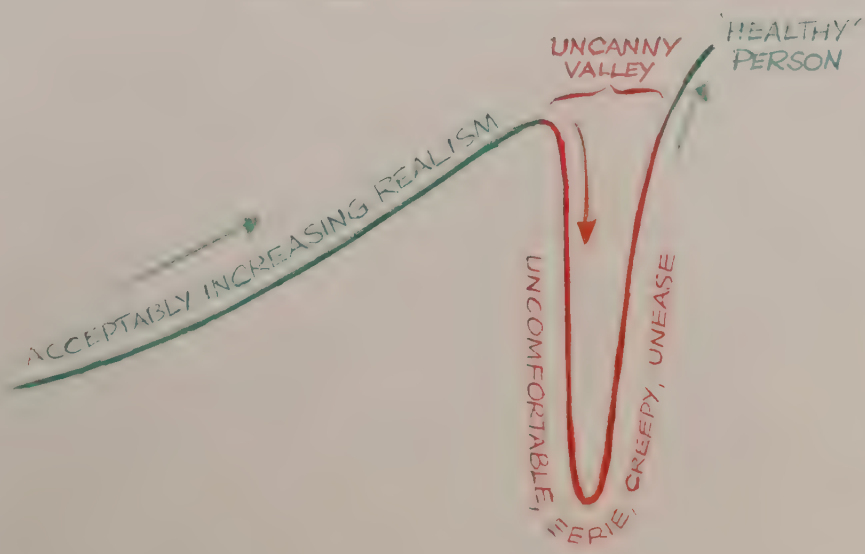
AS LIVING AND BREATHING PEOPLE OUR SENSES ARE SO ACUTE
THAT WE CAN SNIFF A FAKE A MILE OFF!
THE CLOSER THEY GET TO IMITATING REALITY,
THE MORE WE CAN SNIFF A FAKE!
AND AS THEY GET EVER CLOSER IN TO REALITY
TINY THINGS START TO LOOM REALLY LARGE.
IN COPYING LIFE, THE CLOSER AND CLOSER THEY GET
– THE DEEPER THE CHASM."

AT A CERTAIN POINT EVER MORE REALISM CAUSES US CREEPINESS, UNEASE.

THIS IS BEING CALLED THE UNCANNY VALLEY

FRANK ROSSITANO, A TV WRITER IDENTIFIED THIS. HE MADE A GRAPH SHOWING HOW THERE IS CREEPINESS IN THE 'ALMOST' HUMAN.

Simplified, it's this –



I THINK AN ANIMATOR SHOULD BE THOROUGH AND KNOW THESE THINGS. THERE'S NO EASIER WAY TO DO SOMETHING THAN UNDERSTANDING IT. AND IT'S NOT THAT DIFFICULT, EITHER!"

SO WHETHER WE USE THE MUYBRIDGE BOOKS OR LIVE ACTION REFERENCE WE CAN STUDY ACTION THOROUGHLY AND APPLY OUR ANALYSIS TO OUR WORK.

MILT: "I'M IN THE HABIT OF STUDYING THE ACTION IN ANYTHING I SEE AND FIGURING OUT WHY THINGS MOVE AS THEY DO. I ALWAYS TRY TO FIGURE OUT THE MECHANICS OF IT. I THINK IT BECOMES SECOND NATURE TO YOU -AND THOUGH IT'S NOT THE MOST IMPORTANT THING -THE SHOWMANSHIP AND PERSONALITY AND THE THINKING THAT THE CHARACTERS DO ARE THE MOST IMPORTANT THINGS. STILL, IT'S ONE OF THE TOOLS THAT YOU NEED."

AND FINALLY-

"THE WAY TO USE REFERENCE, I THINK, IS TO LEARN SO MUCH ABOUT IT THAT YOU DON'T HAVE TO USE THE REFERENCE ANY MORE".

I TOLD THE 90 YEAR OLD GRIM NATWICK (animator of half of the Princess in SNOW WHITE) THAT I HAD A FAVOURITE SHOT IN SNOW WHITE WHERE THE PRINCESS RUNS DOWN THE STAIRS - WHICH I ALWAYS FELT SOMEHOW OPENED THE DOOR FOR A WAY TO HANDLE REALISM CONVINCINGLY.

"HEY!" GRIM YELLED," I DID THAT SHOT! THAT'S MY FAVOURITE SCENE TOO! AND THAT WAS THE ONLY ONE WHERE I THREW THE LIVE ACTION REFERENCE AWAY AND JUST WENT AHEAD AND DID IT MY WAY-SWOOPING HER DOWN!"

CONCLUSION SO FAR:

WE USE LIVE ACTION REFERENCE AS A LIBRARY OF INFORMATION - EMPHASISE WHAT WE WANT, EDIT OUT - OR IGNORE WHAT WE DON'T WANT - TO MAKE OUR STATEMENT.

AND

WHEN WE GET THE OPPORTUNITY TO INVENT - WE'VE CERTAINLY GOT THE RIGHT MEDIUM FOR IT! THAT'S WHAT SEPARATES US FROM LIVE ACTION.

WE CAN INVENT!

ALMOST ANY BIT OF ANIMATION WE DO CAN BE INVENTIVE. WE'RE NOT OBLIGED TO IMITATE LIFE. FOR THAT WE HAVE CAMERAS.

WE KNOW THAT CARTOON OR SLIGHTLY ABSTRACT FIGURES (the Simpsons, Wallace and Gromit, Mickey Mouse, Bugs Bunny) CREATE IMMEDIATE EMPATHY BUT WE'RE FINDING THAT ANIMATIONS (or robots) THAT ARE VERY SIMILAR TO HUMANS, BUT NOT QUITE IDENTICAL CAUSE US TO FEEL UNEASY, EERIE, QUEASY AND UNCOMFORTABLE.

WE CAN GO INCREASINGLY REALISTIC AND BELIEVABLE WITHOUT LOSING EMPATHY - BUT AT A CERTAIN POINT WHEN IT GETS TOO MUCH LIKE REALITY, THERE IS A SHARP DROP, A PLUNGE INTO EERIE UNACCEPTABILITY AND WE RECOIL UNCOMFORTABLY. WE'RE IN THE 'UNCANNY VALLEY.' IT'S A KIND OF AESTHETIC REVULSION.

AUDIENCES OF 2D CLASSICAL ANIMATION ALWAYS PREFERRED THE MORE CARTOONY CHARACTERS TO THE MORE REALISTIC FIGURES - PRINCES, PRINCESSES.

PIXAR AND OTHER LEADING PRODUCERS TODAY KEEP THEIR HUMAN FIGURES QUITE STYLISED FOR THIS REASON – TO AVOID THE UNCANNY VALLEY.

THE CLASSIC DISNEY FILMS ALWAYS AIMED FOR NATURALISM RATHER THAN REALISM. BAMBI WAS NATURALISTIC - BUT NOT REALISTIC AT ALL.

IT'S BACK TO THE OLD THING -

WHY DO WE LIKE AN ARTIST'S ROUGH DRAWING MORE THAN THE 'FINISHED' RENDERED DRAWING?

WHY DO WE SAY TO SOMEONE ABOUT TO FINISH A PAINTING OR DRAWING, "STOP - DON'T GO ANY FURTHER - YOU'LL SPOIL IT!"?

WHY DO WE LIKE A ROUGH PENCIL TEST MORE THAN A 'CLEANED UP' POLISHED PENCIL TEST?

AND WHY DO WE LIKE A PENCIL TEST MORE THAN THE FINISHED COLOURED SHOT?

I THINK IT'S THE "IMPERFECTION" IN WHAT IS BEING PRESENTED WHICH ALLOWS US, THE AUDIENCE, TO BE DRAWN INTO THE EXPERIENCE – BY LEAVING ROOM FOR OUR CREATIVE IMAGINATION TO FILL IN THE DETAILS.

An experienced CG animator, MIGUEL FUERTES says -

"WHEN ROTOSCOPE OR MOTION CAPTURE IS USED - THE MOVEMENT DEFINITELY RETAINS THE GRACE AND COMPLEXITY OF THE HUMAN MOVEMENT - BUT WEIGHT AND SOME CREDIBILITY ARE LOST.

THIS IS BECAUSE THE BRAIN SEES AND HEARS THINGS THAT THE EYES AND EARS ARE NOT AWARE OF. THE BRAIN REGISTERS EVERYTHING.

THE WAY TO MAKE IT BELIEVABLE IS TO TWEAK THE MOTION CAPTURE INFORMATION — TO EXAGGERATE IT."

Back in 1937 WALT DISNEY predicted —

"SOMEDAY OUR MEDIUM WILL PRODUCE GREAT ARTISTS CAPABLE OF PORTRAYING ALL EMOTIONS THROUGH THE HUMAN FIGURE - BUT IT WILL BE THE ART OF CARICATURE AND NOT A MERE IMITATION OF GREAT ACTING ON STAGE OR SCREEN."

I THINK THE ARTIST'S JOB IS TO EDIT.
YOU'RE GIVING THE AUDIENCE YOUR POINT OF VIEW.

WE DON'T JUST TRY TO TAKE A PENCIL AND TRACE A SUBTLE EXPRESSION OF EMOTION FROM LIVE ACTION (OR USE A MOUSE WITH 'MOCAP') BUT SOMEHOW WE TRY TO FIND THE GRAPHIC EQUIVALENT FOR AN EMOTION.

WE'RE EXAGGERATING WHAT'S IMPORTANT IN THE SCENE
AND LEAVING OUT WHAT ISN'T.

MY CONCLUSION:

YOU WANT ENOUGH REALISM TO BE CONVINCING
BUT YOU DON'T WANT SO MUCH THAT YOU ASK -
WHY DON'T YOU TAKE A PHOTOGRAPH?

OVER TO YOU...

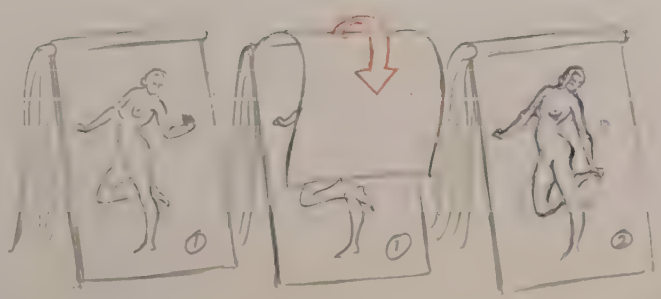
AND FINALLY, LIFE DRAWING FOR ANIMATION

A MODEL SPLATTERED ON THE FLOOR FOR HOURS IS A HELP FOR THE DRAWING AND UNDERSTANDING OF FORM, ETC. BUT FROM AN ANIMATION POINT OF VIEW WE NEED TO MOVE THE FIGURE SO WE CAN SEE THE WEIGHT - THE BALANCE, THE VITALITY, THE TWISTING, THE FORCE, THE WAY THINGS ARE PUT TOGETHER WHEN THE BODY IS IN MOVEMENT. OBVIOUSLY, THE SOLUTION IS TO DO QUICK POSES -

-STARTING OUT FAST WITH 30 SECONDS, THEN 45 SECONDS, THEN 1 MINUTE POSES SLOWING UP AS THE MODEL (PREFERABLY A DANCER, ATHLETE OR ACTOR) AND THE ARTIST'S TIRE FROM THE EFFORT.

MY SUGGESTION:

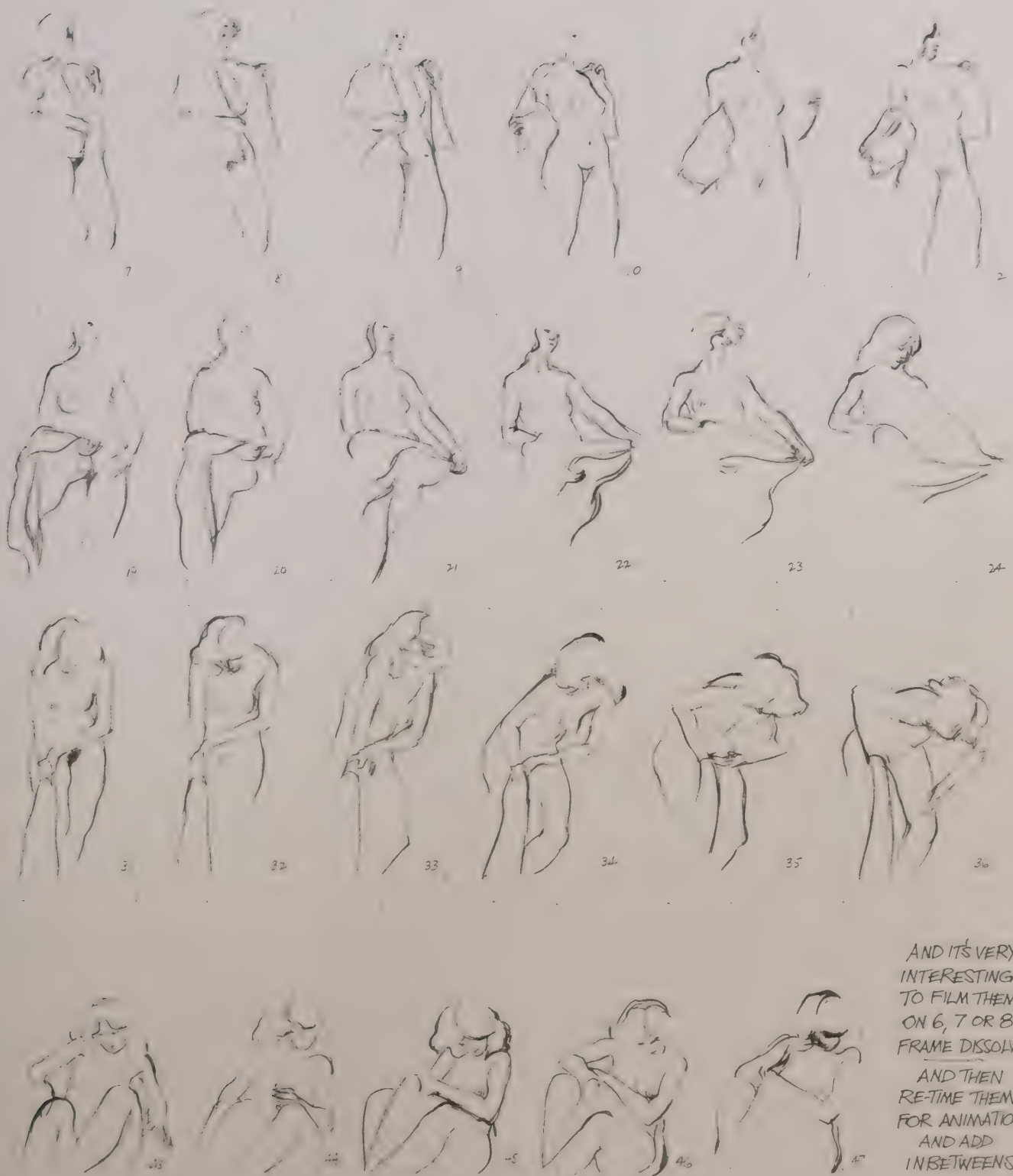
THE MODEL IS DOING THE ANIMATION BY GOING THROUGH AN ACTION IN STOPS. THERE'S NO TIME FOR US TO DO "GOOD" DRAWINGS - (SO IT FREES US FROM THAT CONCERN.) WE GO FOR THE STUDY OF MOVEMENT, WEIGHT AND FORCE. IT'S HARD FOR THE MODEL AND IT'S HARD FOR US, BUT IT'S A WONDERFUL EXERCISE.



START ON THE BOTTOM PAGE OF A PAD WITH PAPER THAT YOU CAN JUST SEE THROUGH. THEN FOR THE NEXT POSE FLOP THE NEXT PAGE OVER THE 1ST DRAWING AND DRAW THE NEXT POSITION, KEEPING THE FEET (OR WHATEVER ANCHORS THE POSE) IN THE SAME POSITION. THEN DO THE NEXT, ETC. ETC. OF COURSE, TIRING, WE SLOW UP TO TRADITIONAL POSES.

THESE POSES CAN BE SET AT 30 SECONDS OR 45 SECONDS OR 60 SECONDS

AS LONG AS THEY'RE QUICK IT'LL DO THE JOB.

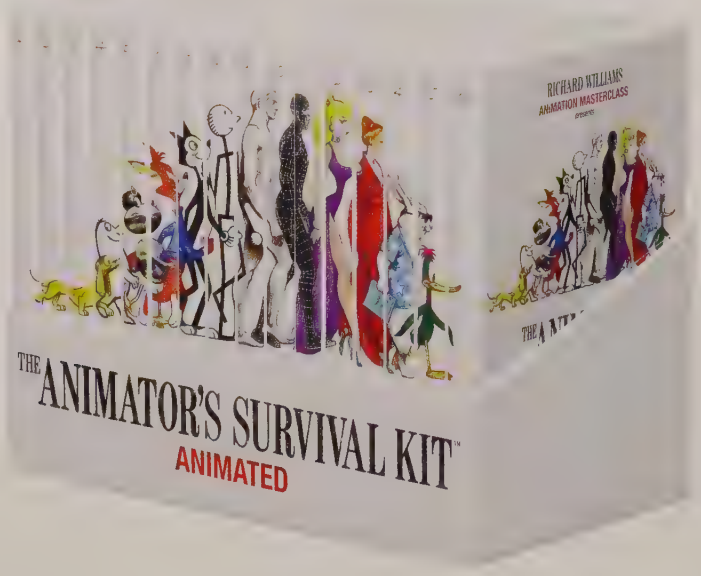


AND IT'S VERY INTERESTING TO FILM THEM ON 6, 7 OR 8 FRAME DISSOLVES

AND THEN RE-TIME THEM FOR ANIMATION AND ADD IN BETWEENS.

Now see 'em move...

YOU'VE READ THE BOOK NOW SEE THE MOVIE!



THE ANIMATOR'S SURVIVAL KIT™
ANIMATED

This 16 DVD Box set combines *The Animator's Survival Kit* book with the film of Richard Williams's legendary Animation Masterclass including over 400 specially animated examples.

"10 out of 10"
"Everything you wanted to know about animation..."
3D WORLD magazine

"It is so wonderful to see Richard Williams demonstrating in live-action: articulate, passionate and humorous. He is a distillation of a dozen master animators each giving you a private tutorial, a uniquely personal way to learn the art and craft of animation."
JOHN CANEMAKER, NYU professor, author, Oscar-winning animation film-maker

"When an animation great like Richard Williams offers you the fruits of his experience – his knowledge, his craft – packed into a box and fully illustrated with moving pictures, just say 'thank you!' and hand over the cash. Then use it."
JAN PINKAVA, Oscar winner *Geri's Game* and Co-Director *Ratatouille*

"What I came out with was a complete re-structuring of animation, how I saw animation, how I analysed motion. It was a revelation."
CHRIS WEDGE, Oscar winner *Bunny* and Director *Ice Age*

"I would absolutely recommend it for everybody...
What's terrific is that those who didn't have the benefit of going to one of Richard's classes can now experience that class by watching these DVDs. The joy of the disks for me was all of the animated examples - to actually see them animated and be able to frame through them forward and backward and to be able to look at them, that was a real treat."
ROB COLEMAN, Animation Director, *Star Wars* episodes 1, 2 and 3. Two time Oscar nominee.
IMAGINE magazine

for more information

www.theanimatorssurvivalkit.com

Start with the things that you know and the things that are unknown will be revealed to you.

Rembrandt, 1606–1669

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Now I know why authors profusely thank their editors! So thanks to Walter Donohue at Faber and Faber for daring to think there might be a useful book here and for his enthusiasm and patience as I struggled endlessly to complete.

And thanks to the production team: Nigel Marsh, Kate Ward and Ron Costley for coping with my unorthodox format and crazy demands. Linda Rosenberg of Farrar, Straus and Giroux has been an energetic enthusiast and supporter of the book all the way along.

I'm also very grateful to Roy E. Disney who has helped me in many different ways.

The Disney Studio has been very generous and co-operative as they always have been during my life-long one-foot-in and one-foot-out relationship with them. Special thanks to Howard Green for his consistent help and encouragement.

I think the book already shows how much I owe to my teachers and friends: Ken Harris, Art Babbitt, Milt Kahl, Emery Hawkins and Grim Natwick. But I want to especially thank Frank Thomas and Ollie Johnston for their kindness and advice over the years. It's been a privilege to have these men as allies and friends.

Thanks to author/animator John Canemaker for his advice and long term support. My 25 year collaborator Roy Naisbitt saved the old artwork I would have thrown out and that's why we have the illustrations. Thanks Roy. Animator/director Neil Boyle started out as my protege and ended up giving me sound advice over the three and a half years it's taken. Catharine and Andy Evans at Dimond Press went far beyond the call of duty as we pushed their laser copier to its limits. Thanks to Chris Hill for his help with the computer images on the cover.

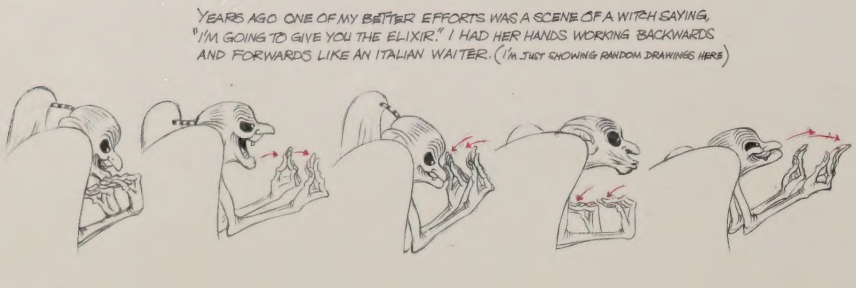
I want to thank my son, animator Alex Williams for constantly telling me the book will be useful. My old school friend, animator Carl Bell has been helping me with stuff for years. Also my friend, author Ralph Pred, has been extremely stimulating and encouraging.

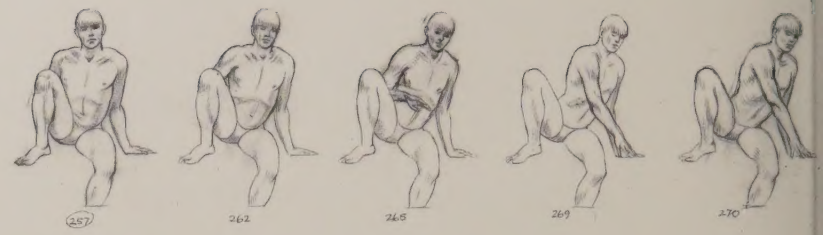
My photographer friend Frank Herrmann took the early photographs. Thanks Frank. The 'old man' photos are by Jacob Sutton. Thanks, Jake. Thanks to builder Dennis Nash for building me an inventive place to work on the book.

And thanks go to the following who all helped in different ways – Chris Wedge, Tom Sito, Morten Thorning, Miguel Fuertes, Jane Miller, Nicola Solomon, Sue Perotto, Dean Kalman Lennert, Di McCrindle, Lyn Naisbitt, Julie Kahl, Heavenly and Scott Wilson, Phil and Heather Sutton, John Ferguson, Ted and Jill Hickford, Marilyn and David Dexter, Ellen Garvie, Mallory Pred, Saskia and Rebekah Sutton.

The cover on page x appears by kind permission of *Animation Magazine*. Roger Rabbit © Touchstone Pictures and Amblin Entertainment, Inc. used by kind permission of Touchstone Pictures and Amblin Entertainment, Inc. The photograph is by Jacob Sutton; The photographs on pages 2, 6, 8 and 45 are by Frank Herrmann; The stills on page 4 and page 10 from *The Charge of the Light Brigade* appear by kind permission of MGM; The photograph on page 7 is used by kind permission of Disney Enterprises, Inc.; The stills on pages 18 and 19 from *Steamboat Willie*, *The Skeleton Dance*, *Flowers and Trees*, *Three Little Pigs* and *Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs* are used by kind permission of Disney Enterprises, Inc.; The poster on page 21 is used by kind permission of the British Film Institute; 'Epitaph of an Unfortunate Artist' is from the *Complete Works of Robert Graves*, courtesy of Carcanet Press Limited, 1999; The photograph on page 26 appears by kind permission of Disney Enterprises, Inc.; The photograph on page 39 'Golf Ball Bounce' © Harold Edgerton, courtesy of the Science Photo Library; The Bugs Bunny sketch by Ken Harris on page 46 appears by kind permission of Warner Bros.; The photographs on page 328 are by Eadweard Muybridge, courtesy of the Kingston Museum and Heritage Service; The sketches on page 336 and page 337 appear by kind permission of Touchstone Pictures and Amblin Entertainment, Inc.

Every effort has been made to contact or trace all copyright holders. The publishers will be pleased to make good in future editions or reprints any omissions or corrections brought to their attention.


YEARS AGO ONE OF MY BETTER EFFORTS WAS A SCENE OF A WITCH SAYING, "I'M GOING TO GIVE YOU THE ELIXIR." I HAD HER HANDS WORKING BACKWARDS AND FORWARDS LIKE AN ITALIAN WAITER. (I'm just showing random drawings here)

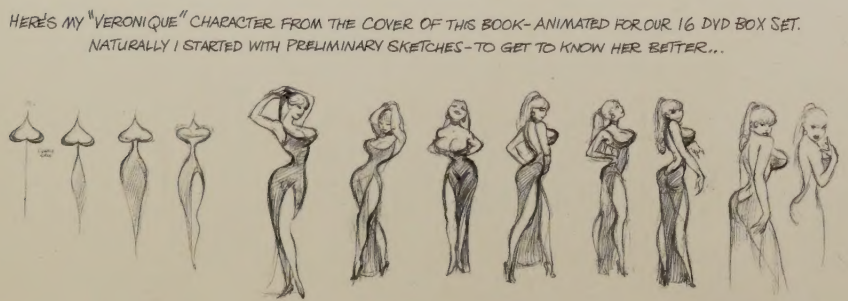


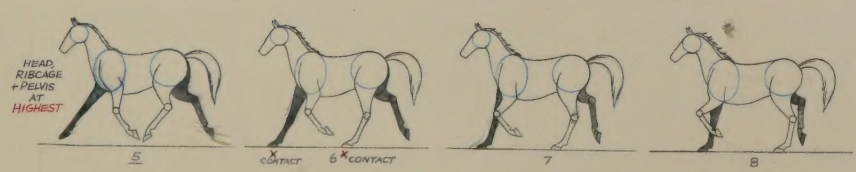
Animation is one of the hottest and most creative areas of film-making today. During his more than fifty years in the business, Richard Williams has been one of the true innovators, and serves as the link between the golden age of animation by hand and the new computer animation successes.

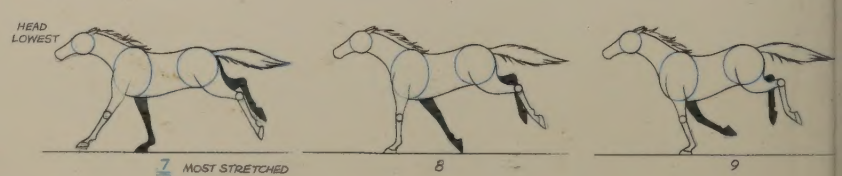
Using hundreds of drawings, Williams distills the secrets of the masters into a working system in order to create a book that has become the standard work on all forms of animation for professionals, students and fans.

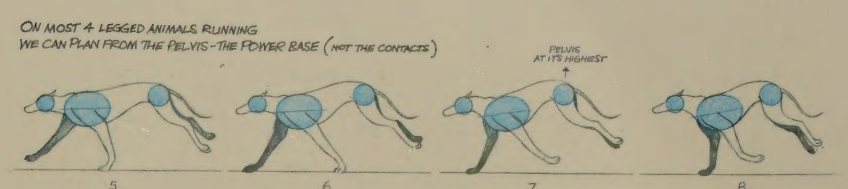
In this book, based on his sold-out worldwide Animation Masterclasses, Williams provides the underlying principles of animation that every animator – from beginner to expert, classic animator to computer animation whiz – needs.

This new Expanded edition includes more on animal action, invention and realism with sophisticated animation examples, as well as a promotional DVD of Richard Williams's Masterclass.


HERE'S MY "VERONIQUE" CHARACTER FROM THE COVER OF THIS BOOK- ANIMATED FOR OUR 16 DVD BOX SET.
NATURALLY I STARTED WITH PRELIMINARY SKETCHES - TO GET TO KNOW HER BETTER...







Cover design and illustration by Richard Williams

www.faber.co.uk

ISBN 0-571-23834-3

9 780571 238347 53500 US: $35.00